

# The minitoc package\*

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert  
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

3rd April 2008

---

\*This document corresponds to minitoc v57, dated 2008/04/03.

# Summary

<b>Table of contents</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>List of figures</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>List of tables</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>About this document</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>I User's Manual</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>1 The minitoc package</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>2 Frequently Asked Questions</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>3 Memento</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>4 Examples of documents</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>5 Messages</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>6 Jargon</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>7 Installation</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>8 Postface</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>II Implementation</b>	<b>258</b>
<b>9 Commented code of the minitoc package</b>	<b>260</b>
<b>10 Commented code of the mtcoff package</b>	<b>441</b>
<b>11 Commented code of the mtcmess package</b>	<b>457</b>
<b>12 Patch for the memoir class</b>	<b>458</b>
<b>13 Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files</b>	<b>460</b>

<b>Summary</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>III Complements</b>	<b>621</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>623</b>
<b>Changes history</b>	<b>662</b>
<b>Acknowledgments</b>	<b>698</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>701</b>

# Table of contents

<b>Summary</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Table of contents</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>List of figures</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>List of tables</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>About this document</b>	<b>22</b>
 <b>I User's Manual</b>	 <b>24</b>
<b>1 The minitoc package</b>	<b>26</b>
1.1 Introduction . . . . .	27
1.1.1 Important restrictions . . . . .	28
1.1.2 Version . . . . .	28
1.2 License . . . . .	28
1.3 Using the minitoc package . . . . .	29
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables . . . . .	29
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables . . . . .	29
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables . . . . .	31
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections . . . . .	35
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables . . . . .	36
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables . . . . .	37
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables . . . . .	37
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables . . . . .	37
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables . . . . .	39
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables . . . . .	41
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables . . . . .	41
1.4.7 Position of the titles . . . . .	41
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level . . . . .	41
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level . . . . .	42
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level . . . . .	42
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles . . . . .	42
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables . . . . .	43
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts . . . . .	43
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles . . . . .	44
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths . . . . .	44



## Table of contents 5

1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets . . . . .	44
1.4.13	Languages for the titles . . . . .	45
1.4.14	Altering the layout of the mini-tables . . . . .	45
1.5	Special Features . . . . .	47
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules . . . . .	47
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders . . . . .	48
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables . . . . .	48
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles . . . . .	50
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved) . . . . .	50
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC . . . . .	51
1.6	The <code>notoccite</code> option . . . . .	53
1.7	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options . . . . .	53
1.8	The <code>hints</code> option . . . . .	53
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS . . . . .	55
1.10	Why several $\LaTeX$ runs are required ? . . . . .	56
1.11	The <code>mtcoff</code> package . . . . .	56
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequently Asked Questions</b> . . . . .	<b>57</b>
2.0	Introduction . . . . .	58
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table . . . . .	59
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table . . . . .	59
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error . . . . .	59
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc . . . . .	59
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files . . . . .	59
2.6	Playing with the chapter number . . . . .	60
2.7	Supported document classes . . . . .	61
2.8	Compatibility with $\LaTeX$ versions . . . . .	61
2.9	Other mini-tables . . . . .	61
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ? . . . . .	62
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter . . . . .	62
2.12	Incompatibility with $\LaTeX$ 2.09 . . . . .	63
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part . . . . .	63
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines . . . . .	63
2.15	The <code>secttocs</code> are wrong . . . . .	63
2.16	Removing the lines of dots . . . . .	63
2.17	Using the <code>hyperref</code> package with <code>minitoc</code> . . . . .	63
2.18	Problem while upgrading <code>minitoc</code> . . . . .	64
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices . . . . .	64
2.20	Use with the <code>appendix</code> package . . . . .	65
2.21	Use with the <code>tocloft</code> package . . . . .	65
2.22	Use with the <code>memoir</code> class . . . . .	66
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths . . . . .	67
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes . . . . .	67
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents . . . . .	68
2.26	Defining your own <code>.mld</code> file . . . . .	71
2.27	Use with the <code>abstract</code> package . . . . .	71
2.28	Use with the <code>sectsty</code> package . . . . .	71
2.29	Strange alignment in the <code>minitocs</code> . . . . .	72
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands . . . . .	73

## Table of contents

6

2.31	Use with packages for captions . . . . .	73
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir . . . . .	73
2.33	Use with the varsects package . . . . .	74
2.34	Initial font settings . . . . .	74
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes . . . . .	76
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package . . . . .	76
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package . . . . .	76
2.38	Use with the fncychap package . . . . .	76
2.39	Use with the quotchap package . . . . .	76
2.40	Use with the romannum package . . . . .	77
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package . . . . .	77
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package . . . . .	77
2.43	Use with the captcont package . . . . .	77
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles . . . . .	77
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable . . . . .	78
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages . . . . .	79
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package . . . . .	80
2.48	Use with the flowfram package . . . . .	80
<b>3</b>	<b>Memento</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Examples of documents</b>	<b>91</b>
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file . . . . .	92
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file . . . . .	93
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file . . . . .	94
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file . . . . .	97
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file . . . . .	101
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file . . . . .	106
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file . . . . .	106
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file . . . . .	106
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file . . . . .	111
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file . . . . .	116
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file . . . . .	120
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file . . . . .	122
4.13	The mtc-fko.tex document file . . . . .	122
4.14	The mtc-fo1.tex document file . . . . .	123
4.15	The mtc-fo2.tex document file . . . . .	124
4.16	The mtc-gap.tex document file . . . . .	126
4.17	The mtc-hi1.tex document file . . . . .	126
4.18	The mtc-hi2.tex document file . . . . .	126
4.19	The mtc-hia.tex document file . . . . .	126
4.20	The mtc-hir.tex document file . . . . .	127
4.21	The mtc-hop.tex document file . . . . .	128
4.22	The mtc-liv.tex document file . . . . .	129
4.23	The mtc-mem.tex document file . . . . .	133
4.24	The mtc-mm1.tex document file . . . . .	133
4.25	The mtc-mu.tex document file . . . . .	135
4.26	The mtc-nom.tex document file . . . . .	136
4.27	The mtc-ocf.tex document file . . . . .	138

## Table of contents 7

4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file . . . . .	139
4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file . . . . .	141
4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file . . . . .	142
4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file . . . . .	144
4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file . . . . .	145
4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file . . . . .	146
4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file . . . . .	147
4.35	The <code>mtc-tsfx.tex</code> document file . . . . .	147
<b>5</b>	<b>Messages</b>	<b>150</b>
5.1	Introduction . . . . .	150
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package . . . . .	152
5.2.1	Informative messages . . . . .	152
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints . . . . .	160
5.2.2	Warning messages . . . . .	164
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints . . . . .	170
5.2.3	Error messages . . . . .	186
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package . . . . .	200
5.3.1	Warning messages . . . . .	200
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package . . . . .	203
<b>6</b>	<b>Jargon</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Installation</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Postface</b>	<b>247</b>
8.1	The origins . . . . .	247
8.2	New design in 1993 . . . . .	248
8.3	Developments in 1994 . . . . .	248
8.4	No developments in 1995 . . . . .	248
8.5	Developments in 1996 . . . . .	249
8.6	Developments in 1997 . . . . .	249
8.7	Developments in 1998 . . . . .	249
8.8	Developments in 1999 . . . . .	249
8.9	Developments in 2000 . . . . .	249
8.10	Developments in 2001 . . . . .	250
8.11	Developments in 2002 . . . . .	250
8.12	Developments in 2003 . . . . .	250
8.13	Developments in 2004 . . . . .	250
8.14	Developments in 2005 . . . . .	251
8.15	Developments in 2006 . . . . .	253
8.16	Developments in 2007 . . . . .	253
8.17	Developments in 2008 . . . . .	257
<b>II</b>	<b>Implementation</b>	<b>258</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package</b>	<b>260</b>
9.1	Introduction . . . . .	264
9.2	Identification code . . . . .	264

9.3	A file descriptor to write . . . . .	264
9.4	Indentation and skip . . . . .	265
9.5	Tests and flags . . . . .	266
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option . . . . .	266
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats . . . . .	267
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes . . . . .	267
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats . . . . .	268
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables . . . . .	268
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands . . . . .	268
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used . . . . .	269
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts . . . . .	270
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option . . . . .	271
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options . . . . .	271
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code> . . . . .	272
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages . . . . .	272
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	272
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	272
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	273
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	273
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	273
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	273
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	274
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	274
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	274
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	274
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	275
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	275
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	275
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded . . . . .	275
9.9.15	Check if the <code>floatrow</code> package is loaded . . . . .	275
9.9.16	Check if the <code>trivfloat</code> package is loaded . . . . .	276
9.9.17	Check if the <code>rotfloat</code> package is loaded . . . . .	276
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded ? . . . . .	276
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file . . . . .	277
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters . . . . .	278
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command . . . . .	279
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part . . . . .	279
9.15	Section level macros . . . . .	280
9.16	Corrections for numbering . . . . .	280
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command . . . . .	280
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section . . . . .	281
9.19	Chapter level macros . . . . .	281
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command . . . . .	281
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter . . . . .	282
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations . . . . .	282
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions . . . . .	283
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of $\text{\LaTeX}$ . . . . .	284
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers . . . . .	285
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations . . . . .	285

9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables . . . . .	288
9.28	Fake tables of contents . . . . .	290
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots . . . . .	291
9.30	Chapter level commands . . . . .	291
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections . . . . .	292
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables . . . . .	294
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles . . . . .	294
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment . . . . .	295
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands . . . . .	295
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command . . . . .	295
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command . . . . .	298
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command . . . . .	302
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued . . . . .	305
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands . . . . .	305
9.38	TOC entries without leaders . . . . .	306
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders . . . . .	306
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings . . . . .	307
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file . . . . .	310
9.41	Mini-lists of figures . . . . .	314
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file . . . . .	315
9.42	Mini-lists of tables . . . . .	317
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file . . . . .	317
9.43	Macro to write a contents line . . . . .	320
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots . . . . .	321
9.45	Part level commands . . . . .	321
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs . . . . .	322
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables . . . . .	323
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment . . . . .	324
9.49	The part level mini-tables : <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code> . . . . .	325
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command . . . . .	325
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command . . . . .	328
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command . . . . .	331
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs . . . . .	334
9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued . . . . .	334
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings . . . . .	334
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs . . . . .	337
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs . . . . .	340
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots . . . . .	343
9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots . . . . .	345
9.54	Section-level commands . . . . .	345
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co. . . . .	346
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning . . . . .	346
9.57	The <code>stc@verse</code> environment . . . . .	347
9.58	The <code>\secttoc</code> , <code>\sectlof</code> , and <code>\sectlot</code> commands . . . . .	347
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command . . . . .	347
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command . . . . .	350
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command . . . . .	353
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level . . . . .	355
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued) . . . . .	356

9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	357
9.62	End of section-level commands	367
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	367
9.64	Use with <code>\nofiles</code>	368
9.65	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	369
9.66	The horizontal rules and their default values	369
9.67	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	372
9.67.3	The <code>\mtcsettitlefont</code> command	376
9.67.4	The <code>\mtcsettitle</code> command	378
9.67.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	379
9.67.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	383
9.67.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	386
9.67.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	388
9.67.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	390
9.67.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	392
9.68	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	393
9.69	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	395
9.70	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	397
9.71	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	398
9.72	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	399
9.73	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	400
9.74	The “coffee breaks”	400
9.75	Initialization of counters	401
9.76	Declarations for simple options	401
9.76.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	401
9.76.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	401
9.76.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	402
9.76.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	402
9.76.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	402
9.77	The <code>insection</code> option	402
9.78	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	403
9.79	Language options	403
9.80	The <code>hints</code> option	408
9.80.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	408
9.80.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	408
9.80.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	409
9.80.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	409
9.80.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	409
9.80.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	410
9.80.1.6	Hint about the <code>titlesec</code> package	410
9.80.1.7	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	411
9.80.1.8	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	411
9.80.1.9	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	412
9.80.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	413
9.80.1.11	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	413
9.80.1.12	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	413
9.80.1.13	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	414
9.80.1.14	Hint about the <code>flowfram</code> package	414

9.80.1.15	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands . . . . .	414
9.80.1.15.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code> . . . . .	415
9.80.1.15.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code> . . . . .	415
9.80.1.15.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code> . . . . .	416
9.80.1.16	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands . . . . .	416
9.80.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code> . . . . .	417
9.80.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option . . . . .	417
9.80.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests . . . . .	418
9.80.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part) . . . . .	420
9.80.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part) . . . . .	422
9.80.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions . . . . .	424
9.80.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package . . . . .	425
9.80.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>vartsects</code> package . . . . .	425
9.80.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package . . . . .	426
9.80.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package . . . . .	426
9.80.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package . . . . .	427
9.80.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package . . . . .	427
9.80.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package . . . . .	427
9.80.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package . . . . .	428
9.80.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package . . . . .	428
9.80.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package . . . . .	428
9.80.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package . . . . .	429
9.80.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package . . . . .	429
9.80.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package . . . . .	429
9.80.2.19	Final part of the hint about the <code>float</code> package . . . . .	430
9.80.2.20	Final part of the hint about the <code>floatrow</code> package . . . . .	430
9.80.2.21	Final part of the hint about the <code>trivfloat</code> package . . . . .	430
9.80.2.22	Final part of the hint about the <code>rotfloat</code> package . . . . .	431
9.80.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected . . . . .	431
9.80.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used . . . . .	433
9.80.2.25	Check if some hints have been written . . . . .	434
9.81	Processing of options . . . . .	434
9.81.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option . . . . .	435
9.81.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option . . . . .	436
9.81.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option . . . . .	436
9.81.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option . . . . .	437
9.81.5	Saving the sectionning commands . . . . .	437
9.82	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands . . . . .	438
9.83	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file . . . . .	439
<b>10</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package</b>	<b>441</b>
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ? . . . . .	442
10.2	Identification of the package . . . . .	442
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions . . . . .	443
10.4	Faking simple commands . . . . .	446
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument . . . . .	447
10.6	Disabling the internal commands . . . . .	448
10.7	Disabling the font commands . . . . .	448



## Table of contents 12

10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	450
10.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	450
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	450
10.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> and <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> commands	450
10.12	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	451
10.13	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	451
10.14	Disabling the mini-table features commands	452
10.15	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	453
10.16	Caution for some commands	453
10.17	Disabling commands for “coffee”	455
10.18	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	455
10.19	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth</code> internal commands	455
10.20	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	455
10.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	456
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixnomenclature</code> command	456
10.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	456
<b>11</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package</b>	<b>457</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class</b>	<b>458</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files</b>	<b>460</b>
13.1	Overview	465
13.2	“Acadian” language: <code>acadian.mld</code>	471
13.3	“Acadien” language: <code>acadien.mld</code>	471
13.4	“Afrikaan” language: <code>afrikaan.mld</code>	472
13.5	“Afrikaans” language: <code>afrikaans.mld</code>	473
13.6	“Albanian” language: <code>albanian.mld</code>	473
13.7	“American” language: <code>american.mld</code>	475
13.8	“Arab” language: <code>arab.mld</code>	475
13.9	“Arab2” language: <code>arab2.mld</code>	477
13.10	“Arabi” language: <code>arabi.mld</code>	477
13.11	“Arabic” language: <code>arabic.mld</code>	478
13.12	“Armenian” language: <code>armenian.mld</code>	478
13.13	“Australian” language: <code>australian.mld</code>	478
13.14	“Austrian” language: <code>austrian.mld</code>	479
13.15	“Bahasa” language: <code>bahasa.mld</code>	480
13.16	“Bahasai” language: <code>bahasai.mld</code>	480
13.17	“Bahasam” language: <code>bahasam.mld</code>	481
13.18	“Bangla” language: <code>bangla.mld</code>	482
13.19	“Basque” language: <code>basque.mld</code>	483
13.20	“Bengali” language: <code>bengali.mld</code>	484
13.21	“Bicig” language: <code>bicig.mld</code>	485
13.22	“Bicig2” language: <code>bicig2.mld</code>	485
13.23	“Bicig3” language: <code>bicig3.mld</code>	486
13.24	“Bithe” language: <code>bithe.mld</code>	486
13.25	“Brazil” language: <code>brazil.mld</code>	488
13.26	“Brazilian” language: <code>brazilian.mld</code>	490
13.27	“Breton” language: <code>breton.mld</code>	490
13.28	“British” language: <code>british.mld</code>	491



13.29	“Bulgarian” language : bulgarian.mld . . . . .	491
13.30	“Bulgarianb” language : bulgarianb.mld . . . . .	492
13.31	“Buryat” language : buryat.mld . . . . .	493
13.32	“Buryat2” language : buryat2.mld . . . . .	494
13.33	“Canadian” language : canadian.mld . . . . .	494
13.34	“Canadien” language : canadien.mld . . . . .	494
13.35	“Castillan” language : castillan.mld . . . . .	497
13.36	“Castillian” language : castillian.mld . . . . .	497
13.37	“Catalan” language : catalan.mld . . . . .	497
13.38	“Chinese1” language : chinese1.ml[d o] . . . . .	498
13.39	“Chinese2” language : chinese2.ml[d o] . . . . .	501
13.40	“Croatian” language : croatian.mld . . . . .	502
13.41	“Czech” language : czech.mld . . . . .	503
13.42	“Danish” language : danish.mld . . . . .	504
13.43	“Devanagari” language : devanagari.mld . . . . .	506
13.44	“Dutch” language : dutch.mld . . . . .	507
13.45	“English” language : english.mld . . . . .	508
13.46	“English1” language : english1.mld . . . . .	509
13.47	“English2” language : english2.mld . . . . .	509
13.48	“Esperant” language : esperant.mld . . . . .	510
13.49	“Esperanto” language : esperanto.mld . . . . .	510
13.50	“Estonian” language : estonian.mld . . . . .	511
13.51	“Ethiopia” language : ethiopia.mld . . . . .	512
13.52	“Ethiopian” language : ethiopian.mld . . . . .	512
13.53	“Ethiopian2” language : ethiopian2.mld . . . . .	512
13.54	“Farsi1” language : farsi1.ml[d o] . . . . .	514
13.55	“Farsi2” language : farsi2.ml[d o] . . . . .	514
13.56	“Farsi3” language : farsi3.mld . . . . .	516
13.57	“Finnish” language : finnish.mld . . . . .	517
13.58	“Finnish2” language : finnish2.mld . . . . .	518
13.59	“Francais” language : francais.mld . . . . .	519
13.60	“French” language : french.mld . . . . .	520
13.61	“French1” language : french1.mld . . . . .	521
13.62	“French2” language : french2.mld . . . . .	522
13.63	“Frenchb” language : frenchb.mld . . . . .	523
13.64	“Frenchle” language : frenchle.mld . . . . .	523
13.65	“Frenchpro” language : frenchpro.mld . . . . .	523
13.66	“Galician” language : galician.mld . . . . .	524
13.67	“German” language : german.mld . . . . .	525
13.68	“Germanb” language : germanb.mld . . . . .	528
13.69	“Germanb2” language : germanb2.mld . . . . .	529
13.70	“Greek” language : greek.mld . . . . .	530
13.71	“Greek-mono” language : greek-mono.mld . . . . .	530
13.72	“Greek-polydemo” language : greek-polydemo.mld . . . . .	532
13.73	“Greek-polykatha” language : greek-polykatha.mld . . . . .	533
13.74	“Guarani” language : guarani.mld . . . . .	534
13.75	“Hangul1” language : hangul1.ml[d o] . . . . .	535
13.76	“Hangul2” language : hangul2.ml[d o] . . . . .	537
13.77	“Hangul3” language : hangul3.ml[d o] . . . . .	537

13.78	“Hangul4” language : hangul4.mld[o]	538
13.79	“Hangul-u8” language : hangul-u8.mld[o]	538
13.80	“Hanja1” language : hanja1.mld.mld[o]	539
13.81	“Hanja2” language : hanja2.mld[o]	539
13.82	“Hanja-u8” language : hanja-u8.mld[o]	540
13.83	“Hebrew” language : hebrew.mld	540
13.84	“Hebrew2” language : hebrew2.mld	541
13.85	“Hindi” language : hindi.mld	542
13.86	“Hindi-modern” language : hindi-modern.mld	542
13.87	“Hungarian” language : hungarian.mld	544
13.88	“Icelandic” language : icelandic.mld	544
13.89	“Indon” language : indon.mld	545
13.90	“Indonesian” language : indonesian.mld	545
13.91	“Interlingua” language : interlingua.mld	545
13.92	“Irish” language : irish.mld	546
13.93	“Italian” language : italian.mld	547
13.94	“Italian2” language : italian2.mld	549
13.95	“Japanese” language : japanese.mld[o]	549
13.96	“Japanese2” language : japanese2.mld[o]	550
13.97	“Japanese3” language : japanese3.mld[o]	550
13.98	“Japanese4” language : japanese4.mld[o]	551
13.99	“Japanese5” language : japanese5.mld[o]	551
13.100	“Japanese6” language : japanese6.mld[o]	552
13.101	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	552
13.102	“Khalkha” language : khalkha.mld	553
13.103	“Latin” language : latin.mld	554
13.104	“Latin2” language : latin2.mld	554
13.105	“Latinc” language : latinc.mld	555
13.106	“Latinc2” language : latinc2.mld	555
13.107	“Latvian” language : latvian.mld	556
13.108	“Latvian2” language : latvian2.mld	557
13.109	“Letton” language : letton.mld	557
13.110	“Letton2” language : letton2.mld	558
13.111	“Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	558
13.112	“Lithuanian2” language : lithuanian2.mld	559
13.113	“Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	559
13.114	“Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	562
13.115	“Magyar” language : magyar.mld	563
13.116	“Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	564
13.117	“Magyar3” language : magyar3.mld	564
13.118	“Malay” language : malay.mld	565
13.119	“Malayalam-b” language : malayalam-b.mld	565
13.120	“Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	566
13.121	“Malayalam-keli2” language : malayalam-keli2.mld	567
13.122	“Malayalam-mr” language : malayalam-mr.mld	567
13.123	“Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld[o]	568
13.124	“Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	568
13.125	“Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	569
13.126	“Malayalam-rachana3” language : malayalam-rachana3.mld	569

13.127 “Manju” language : manju.mld . . . . .	570
13.128 “Mexican” language : mexican.mld . . . . .	570
13.129 “Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld . . . . .	570
13.130 “Mongol” language : mongol.mld . . . . .	571
13.131 “Mongolb” language : mongolb.mld . . . . .	574
13.132 “Mongolian” language : mongolian.mld . . . . .	575
13.133 “Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld . . . . .	575
13.134 “Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld . . . . .	575
13.135 “Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld . . . . .	575
13.136 “Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld . . . . .	576
13.137 “Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld . . . . .	576
13.138 “Norsk” language : norsk.mld . . . . .	577
13.139 “Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld . . . . .	578
13.140 “Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld . . . . .	578
13.141 “Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld . . . . .	579
13.142 “Occitan” language : occitan.mld . . . . .	579
13.143 “Occitan2” language : occitan2.mld . . . . .	580
13.144 “Polish” language : polish.mld . . . . .	581
13.145 “Polish2” language : polish2.mld . . . . .	582
13.146 “Polski” language : polski.mld . . . . .	582
13.147 “Portuges” language : portuges.mld . . . . .	583
13.148 “Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld . . . . .	583
13.149 “Romanian” language : romanian.mld . . . . .	585
13.150 “Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld . . . . .	586
13.151 “Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld . . . . .	586
13.152 “Russian” language : russian.mld . . . . .	587
13.153 “Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld . . . . .	587
13.154 “Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld . . . . .	590
13.155 “Russianb” language : russianb.mld . . . . .	591
13.156 “Russianc” language : russianc.mld . . . . .	592
13.157 “Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.ml[d o] . . . . .	593
13.158 “Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.ml[d o] . . . . .	593
13.159 “Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.ml[d o] . . . . .	593
13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o] . . . . .	594
13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o] . . . . .	594
13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o] . . . . .	595
13.163 “Samin” language : samin.mld . . . . .	595
13.164 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld . . . . .	596
13.165 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld . . . . .	597
13.166 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld . . . . .	598
13.167 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld . . . . .	598
13.168 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld . . . . .	599
13.169 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld . . . . .	600
13.170 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld . . . . .	603
13.171 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld . . . . .	604
13.172 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld . . . . .	604
13.173 “Swahili” language : swahili.mld . . . . .	605
13.174 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld . . . . .	606
13.175 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld . . . . .	606

## **Table of contents** **16**

13.176 “Thai” language : thai.ml[d o] . . . . .	608
13.177 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld . . . . .	609
13.178 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld . . . . .	609
13.179 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld . . . . .	609
13.180 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld . . . . .	612
13.181 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld . . . . .	612
13.182 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld . . . . .	612
13.183 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld . . . . .	612
13.184 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld . . . . .	614
13.185 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld . . . . .	615
13.186 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld . . . . .	615
13.187 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld . . . . .	615
13.188 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld . . . . .	616
13.189 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld . . . . .	616
13.190 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld . . . . .	617
13.191 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld . . . . .	618
13.192 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld . . . . .	619

## **III Complements** **621**

### **Bibliography** **623**

### **Changes history** **662**

### **Acknowledgments** **698**

### **Index** **701**

# List of figures

1.1	Float barriers . . . . .	33
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry . . . . .	46
2.1	Three compilations for minitoc . . . . .	60
13.1	Language families in the world . . . . .	466
13.2	The political world . . . . .	466
13.3	Writing systems by country . . . . .	467
13.4	Areas of writing systems . . . . .	467
13.5	Language families and official languages in Africa . . . . .	468
13.6	Languages in Europe . . . . .	468
13.7	Languages families in Europe . . . . .	469
13.8	Languages in Europe . . . . .	470
13.9	Acadia today . . . . .	472
13.10	Afrikaans language areas . . . . .	472
13.11	Albanian language areas . . . . .	474
13.12	Language areas in Kosovo . . . . .	474
13.13	Countries where the arabic language is official . . . . .	475
13.14	Percentage of muslims by country . . . . .	476
13.15	The status of Islam by country . . . . .	476
13.16	Armenia and languages of Caucasus . . . . .	479
13.17	The Armenian diaspora . . . . .	479
13.18	Indonesia . . . . .	480
13.19	Malaysia . . . . .	481
13.20	Bangla (bengali) language areas . . . . .	482
13.21	The bengali diaspora . . . . .	483
13.22	The Basque country . . . . .	483
13.23	The Basque dialects . . . . .	484
13.24	Manchuria . . . . .	487
13.25	Brazil . . . . .	488
13.26	Dialects of Portuguese in Brazil . . . . .	489
13.27	Brittany . . . . .	490
13.28	Bulgaria . . . . .	492
13.29	Republic of Buryatia . . . . .	493
13.30	Official languages in Canada . . . . .	495
13.31	Canada . . . . .	495
13.32	Political map of Canada . . . . .	496
13.33	Linguistic map of Canada . . . . .	496

13.34	Catalan language areas . . . . .	498
13.35	Traditional and simplified Chinese versions of the Chinese word hànzi . . . . .	499
13.36	Areas using Chinese characters . . . . .	499
13.37	Languages in China . . . . .	500
13.38	People's Republic of China (PRC) . . . . .	500
13.39	Dialects in China . . . . .	501
13.40	Minorities in Croatia . . . . .	502
13.41	Main nationalities in ex-Yugoslavia in 1998 . . . . .	503
13.42	Czech Republic . . . . .	503
13.43	Czech dialects . . . . .	504
13.44	Denmark and Faeroe Islands . . . . .	504
13.45	Danish dialects . . . . .	505
13.46	Languages in the Netherlands and in Belgium . . . . .	507
13.47	The dutch language in the world . . . . .	507
13.48	Anglophone areas . . . . .	508
13.49	Estonia . . . . .	511
13.50	Ethiopian languages areas . . . . .	513
13.51	Farsi language areas . . . . .	515
13.52	Iranian tongues . . . . .	516
13.53	Finland . . . . .	517
13.54	Areas of the Finnish language . . . . .	518
13.55	Finnish dialects . . . . .	519
13.56	Francophone areas . . . . .	520
13.57	Regional dialects in France . . . . .	521
13.58	Galician language areas . . . . .	524
13.59	Linguistic map of the galician language . . . . .	525
13.60	Germanophone areas in Europa . . . . .	526
13.61	Germanophone areas . . . . .	526
13.62	German dialects . . . . .	527
13.63	The spread of the German language until ca. 1945 in Central Europe . . . . .	528
13.64	Distribution of the major West-Germanic dialectal varieties . . . . .	529
13.65	Greece . . . . .	531
13.66	Dialects of modern Greek . . . . .	531
13.67	Paraguay . . . . .	535
13.68	Korean language areas . . . . .	536
13.69	Hangûl and hanja characters . . . . .	536
13.70	Israël . . . . .	541
13.71	Languages in India . . . . .	543
13.72	Hindi proper and the hindi belt . . . . .	543
13.73	Iceland . . . . .	544
13.74	Ireland . . . . .	547
13.75	Italy . . . . .	548
13.76	Italophone areas in Europa . . . . .	548
13.77	Japan . . . . .	549
13.78	Kannada language areas . . . . .	553
13.79	Baltic languages and Latvia . . . . .	556
13.80	Dialects and administrative regions in Latvia . . . . .	556
13.81	Baltic languages and Lithuania . . . . .	558
13.82	Lusace and the Sorbians . . . . .	560
13.83	Sorbian dialects areas . . . . .	561

13.84	Sorbs	562
13.85	Hungaria and magyar speaking areas	563
13.86	Malayalam language areas	565
13.87	México	571
13.88	Indigenous languages of México	571
13.89	Mongol language areas	572
13.90	Linguistic map of the mongol language	572
13.91	Mongolia and Mongol autonomous regions in the People's Republic of China (PRC)	573
13.92	Languages in Norway	577
13.93	Occitan in France	580
13.94	Occitan dialects	580
13.95	Poland and minorities in Poland	581
13.96	Portugal	583
13.97	Lusophone areas	584
13.98	Dialects of Portuguese in Portugal	584
13.99	Portuguese dialects of Angola	585
13.100	Romanian language areas	585
13.101	Russian language areas	588
13.102	Areas where the russian language is official or spoken	588
13.103	Regions of Russia	589
13.104	Russian subjects	590
13.105	Sámi dialects areas	595
13.106	Scotland and the scottish gaelic language	596
13.107	Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina	597
13.108	Slovakia and its districts	599
13.109	Slovenia	600
13.110	The 17 autonomous communities in Spain	601
13.111	Languages in Spain	602
13.112	Hispanophone areas	602
13.113	States where spanish (castillan) is an official language	603
13.114	Swahili language areas	605
13.115	Swedish language areas	607
13.116	Thai language areas	608
13.117	The turkish alphabet	609
13.118	Turkey	610
13.119	Turkish language in the world	610
13.120	Uighur language areas	611
13.121	Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region	611
13.122	Languages in Ukraine	613
13.123	Ukraine	613
13.124	Vietnam	616
13.125	The vietnamese language in the world	617
13.126	Wales	618
13.127	Khalkha language areas	619

# List of tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	30
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	32
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	34
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	36
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	38
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	39
1.7	Available languages	40
1.8	Horizontal rules	47
1.9	Page numbers	47
1.10	Features for mini-tables	49
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	56
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	79
3.1	Package options	81
3.2	General commands	82
3.3	Commands : part level	83
3.4	Commands : chapter level	84
3.5	Commands : section level	85
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	86
3.7	Commands for page numbers	86
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	87
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	88
3.10	Adjustment commands	88
3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	89
3.12	Obsolete commands	90
5.1	Message identifiers	151
6.1	Category codes	210
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	211
6.3	Standard document classes	212
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	214
6.5	Various encodings	215
6.6	Most common font encodings	230
6.7	Most common font families	230
6.8	Most common font series	230
6.9	Most common font shapes	231



**List of tables** **21**

6.10	Most common font widths . . . . .	231
6.11	The five font parameters of some fonts . . . . .	231
6.12	Author commands for fonts . . . . .	231
6.13	Some systems derived from $\text{\TeX}$ and $\text{\LaTeX}$ . . . . .	233
7.1	List of files ( <code>minitoc.1</code> ), first part . . . . .	242
7.2	List of files ( <code>minitoc.1</code> ), second part . . . . .	243
7.3	List of the graphic files . . . . .	243
7.4	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files . . . . .	246
9.1	Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions . . . . .	283


# About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 25):
  - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 26, describes the essential commands to use the package;
  - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 57, may help you to solve some specific problems;
  - the chapter “Memento”, page 81, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
  - the chapter “Examples of documents”, page 91, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
  - the chapter “Messages”, page 150, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages (table 5.1 on page 151 will help you to find the meaning of a message);
  - the chapter “Jargon”, page 204, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
  - the chapter “Installation”, page 241, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
  - the chapter “Postface”, page 247, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 259, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 460, may be useful if you are interested by some language. This chapter contains many maps and illustrations.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 622, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, a list of acknowledgments, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [145], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables; as the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks (with the help of the `hyperref` package [356]), these mini-tables should help you to navigate within the document;
- some hyperlinks, placed in the right margin, contain a message identifier; the link points to the description of the message in the “Messages” chapter; try this one:  I0001
- the `calc` package [402] to make some computations with comfort;
- the `booktabs` package [155] to format the tables;
- the `doc` [303] and `docstrip` [267] packages to document the code;
- many other packages to improve the presentation of the documentation.

## **Part I**

# **User's Manual**

# Contents of the First Part

<b>1</b>	<b>The minitoc package</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Messages</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequently Asked Questions</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Jargon</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Memento</b>	<b>81</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Installation</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Examples of documents</b>	<b>91</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Postface</b>	<b>247</b>

# Chapter 1

## The minitoc package

### Contents

<b>1.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>27</b>
1.1.1	Important restrictions	28
1.1.2	Version	28
<b>1.2</b>	<b>License</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>1.3</b>	<b>Using the minitoc package</b>	<b>29</b>
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	29
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	29
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	31
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	35
<b>1.4</b>	<b>Typesetting of the mini-tables</b>	<b>36</b>
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	37
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	37
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	39
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	41
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	41
1.4.7	Position of the titles	41
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	41
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	42
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	42
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	42
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	43
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	43
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	44
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	44
1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	44
1.4.13	Languages for the titles	45
1.4.14	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	45
<b>1.5</b>	<b>Special Features</b>	<b>47</b>
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	47
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	48
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	48
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	50

1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	50
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	51
<b>1.6</b>	<b>The notoccite option</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>1.7</b>	<b>The listfiles and nolistfiles options</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>1.8</b>	<b>The hints option</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>1.9</b>	<b>Usage with MS-DOS</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>1.10</b>	<b>Why several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X runs are required?</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>1.11</b>	<b>The mtcff package</b>	<b>56</b>

## Figures

1.1	Float barriers	33
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	46

## Tables

1.1	Commands for a minitoc	30
1.2	Commands for a secttoc	32
1.3	Commands for a parttoc	34
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	36
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	38
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	39
1.7	Available languages	40
1.8	Horizontal rules	47
1.9	Page numbers	47
1.10	Features for mini-tables	49
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	56

## 1.1 Introduction

The minitoc package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 247. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”<sup>1</sup>) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report` [262]) or sections (classes like `article`<sup>2</sup>) [262]. Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use

<sup>1</sup> The minitoc package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

<sup>2</sup> As the standard `proc` class [261], and the `ltxdoc` [112] and `ltnews` [231] classes, load the standard `article` class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the `article` class.

section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

### 1.1.1 Important restrictions

**Note:** you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectioning level.



**Note:** the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.



### 1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #57. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 247) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 662.

## 1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don't bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and reasoned improvements are welcome.



## 1.3 Using the minitoc package

### 1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:  
`\minitoc`  
`\chapter`

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
```

in the preamble of the document<sup>3</sup>. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*<sup>4</sup> inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the following page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc*(*N*), where (*N*) is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter<sup>5</sup>. The suffix is *.mlf*(*N*) for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt*(*N*) for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 55 and section 2.5 on page 59). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending on the document class.

### 1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands<sup>6</sup> `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the  
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*  
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc*(*N*), *document.mlf*(*N*), and  
*document.mlt*(*N*) files.

<sup>3</sup> This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectionning commands; if you modify some sectionning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

<sup>4</sup> “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you are asking for details with a high value for minitocdepth. As an example, I once used a `\afterpage` command (`\afterpage` package [111]) to place the long minilof of chapter 13 on page 460 (so the minilof was forced to begin at the top of the next page).

<sup>5</sup> The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

<sup>6</sup> The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [110], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcoffset}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dominitoc</code>	
<code>\dominilof</code>	
<code>\dominilot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\chapter{...}</code>	
<code>\minitoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

`\dosecttoc` The commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, and `\dosectlot` (for mini-tables at the section level) and `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, and `\dopartlot` (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.

`\doparttoc`

`\dopartlof` The `\mtcprepare` command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for *all* the mini-tables.

`\dopartlot`

`\mtcprepare`

`\tableofcontents`

`\listoffigures`

`\listoftables`

All the preparation commands are *ignored* if the `\nofiles` command is invoked in the preamble, to avoid to overwrite the mini-table auxiliary files.

To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must *imperatively be put before* any command analog to the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables` commands, or their `\fake...` siblings.



W0098



It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption`-like command producing an entry in the list of figures (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot` commands); else disorder in the mini-tables might result.



### 1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. It is often better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add a section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2 on the next page.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 55 and section 2.5 on page 59).

`\usepackage` As floats (figures and tables) could drift<sup>7</sup> somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

W0056

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent `sectlofs` and `sectlots`. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [14] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier

<sup>7</sup> A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{secttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

becomes “porous” upwards<sup>8</sup> (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the following page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [268] and [306, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section.

In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [281] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [265].



<sup>8</sup> But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{parttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.ptc*(*N*), where (*N*) is the absolute part number. The suffix is *.plf*(*N*) for partial lists of figures and is *.plt*(*N*) for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 55 and section 2.5 on page 59).

**Note:** the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a minilof for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a partlof for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (secttoc, sectlof, and sectlot) and to the part-level mini-tables (parttoc, partlof, and partlot).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command



in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 31) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `document.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [126, 128] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

### 1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

<code>\addcontentsline</code>	<b>NOTE:</b> if using <code>\chapter*</code> and a
<code>\addstarredpart</code>	
<code>\addstarredchapter</code>	
<code>\addstarredsection</code>	<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}</code>

command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:



```
\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}
```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

<code>\addcontentsline</code>	<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}</code>
-------------------------------	--

So, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```
\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}
```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):  
`\adjustmtc` the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`  
`\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to  
 increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or  
`\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff`  
 package (see section 1.11 on page 56) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others),  
 but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic  
 commands of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

$$\backslash\mathrm{adjustptc}[n] \quad \backslash\mathrm{adjustmtc}[n] \quad \backslash\mathrm{adjuststc}[n]$$

where  $n$  is the increment (default: 1).

`\decrementptc` There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters:  
`\decrementmtc` `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`,  
`\decrementstc` and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.  
`\incrementptc` But a more clever way to solve this problem would be using commands similar to:  
`\incrementmtc`  
`\incrementstc`  
`\mtcaddpart` `\mtcaddchapter[title]`  
`\mtcaddchapter`  
`\mtcaddsection`

This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 73 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.



Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>

## 1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over several pages.



### 1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default.

`\mtcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. See tables 1.5 on the following page and 1.6 on page 39<sup>9</sup>.

`\mlfSfont`  
`\mltSfont`

Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence it is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed<sup>10</sup> (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can often be adjusted by changing some fonts.



### 1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtifont` Titles are typeset in the `\mtifont` (`\large\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\mtctitle`, `\mlftitle` and `\mltttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mltttitle`  
`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (the suffix `.mld` means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on page 40 and section 1.4.13 on page 45) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 71). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

### 1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is

`\ptcCfont`  
`\ptcSfont`

<sup>9</sup> Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

<sup>10</sup> This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [245]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [368]), for instance, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 72.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents <sup>†</sup>	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures <sup>†</sup>	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables <sup>†</sup>	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents <sup>†</sup>	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures <sup>†</sup>	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables <sup>†</sup>	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents <sup>†</sup>	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures <sup>†</sup>	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\sltttitle</code> Tables <sup>†</sup>	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
*for document classes with <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., book, report).			
**for document classes with no <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., article).			
<sup>†</sup> default for english; changed by the language definition files or <code>\renewcommand</code> .			
All these fonts use <code>\rmfamily</code> , <code>\upshape</code> , and <code>\mdseries</code> by default.			

`\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\ptcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands  
`\ptcSSfont` `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default,  
`\ptcPfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts.  
`\ptcSPfont`

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	Default setting
For the \parttoc entries:		
Chapter*	\ptcCfont*	\normalsize\bfseries*
Section	\ptcSfont	\normalsize\rmfamily* \small\bfseries**
Subsection	\ptcSSfont	(like \ptcfont)
Subsubsection	\ptcSSSfont	(like \ptcfont)
Paragraph	\ptcPfont	(like \ptcfont)
Subparagraph	\ptcSPfont	(like \ptcfont)
For the \minitoc entries:*		
Section	\mtcSfont	\small\bfseries
Subsection	\mtcSSfont	(like \mtcfont)
Subsubsection	\mtcSSSfont	(like \mtcfont)
Paragraph	\mtcPfont	(like \mtcfont)
Subparagraph	\mtcSPfont	(like \mtcfont)
For the \secttoc entries:**		
Subsection	\stcSSfont	\normalsize\bfseries
Subsubsection	\stcSSSfont	(like \stcfont)
Paragraph	\stcPfont	(like \stcfont)
Subparagraph	\stcSPfont	(like \stcfont)

\*for document classes with \chapter level (e.g., book, report).

\*\*for document classes with no \chapter level (e.g., article).

\plffont Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts \plffont and \pltfont, which  
\pltfont are \normalsize\rmfamily by default. There are also \plfSfont and \pltSfont for  
\plfSfont sub-figures and sub-tables entries.  
\pltSfont

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

\ptifont Titles are typeset in the \ptifont (\LARGE\bfseries by default) font and the text strings  
\ptctitle of the titles are defined by \ptctitle, \plftitle and \plttitle, which are the strings  
\plftitle “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title commands  
\plttitle should be redefined by \renewcommand or \mtcsettitle for languages other than english.  
\mtcsettitle  
\mtcselectlanguage The language definition files like french.mld and english.mld (and many others;  
for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the following page) are available. Read also  
section 1.4.13 on page 45. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language  
(see section 2.26 on page 71). You can change the language of these titles by using the  
\mtcselectlanguage{language} macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

– afrikaan (afrikaans)	– farsi1 <sup>c,f,g</sup>	– japanese5 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– romanian
– albanian	– farsi2 <sup>c,f,g</sup>	– japanese6 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– romanian2
– arab (arabic) <sup>c</sup>	– farsi3 <sup>c,j</sup>	– kannada <sup>c</sup>	– romanian3
– arab2 <sup>a,c</sup>	– finnish	– latin	– russian <sup>b,c</sup>
– arabi <sup>c,j</sup>	– finnish2	– latin2	– russianb <sup>b,c</sup>
– armenian <sup>c</sup>	– french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	– latinc	– russianc <sup>b,c</sup>
– bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) <sup>c</sup>	– french1	– latinc2	– russian2m <sup>c,e</sup>
– bahasam (malay, meyalu) <sup>c</sup>	– french2	– latvian (letton) <sup>e</sup>	– russian2o <sup>c,e</sup>
– bangla (bengali) <sup>c</sup>	– galician	– latvian2 (letton2) <sup>c</sup>	– russian-cca <sup>c,g,h</sup>
– basque	– german (austrian)	– lithuanian	– russian-cca1 <sup>c,g,h</sup>
– bicig (uighur) <sup>c,i</sup>	– germanb	– lithuanian2 <sup>c,h</sup>	– russian-lh <sup>c,g,h</sup>
– bicig2 (uighur2) <sup>c,i</sup>	– germanb2	– lowersorbian (lsorbian)	– russian-lhcyralt <sup>c,g,h</sup>
– bicig3 (uighur3) <sup>c,i</sup>	– greek <sup>c</sup>	– magyar (hungarian)	– russian-lhcyrkoi <sup>c,g,h</sup>
– bithe (manju) <sup>c</sup>	– greek-mono <sup>c,e</sup>	– magyar2	– russian-lhcyrwin <sup>c,g,h</sup>
– brazil (brazilian)	– greek-polydemo <sup>c,e</sup>	– magyar3	– samin
– breton	– greek-polykatha <sup>c,e</sup>	– malayalam-b <sup>c</sup>	– scottish
– bulgarian <sup>c</sup>	– guarani <sup>h</sup>	– malayalam-keli <sup>c</sup>	– serbian
– bulgarianb <sup>c</sup>	– hangul1 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– malayalam-keli2 <sup>c</sup>	– serbianc <sup>c</sup>
– buryat <sup>c</sup>	– hangul2 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– malayalam-mr <sup>c</sup>	– slovak
– buryat2 <sup>c</sup>	– hangul3 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– malayalam-omega <sup>c,e,g,h</sup>	– slovene
– catalan	– hangul4 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– malayalam-rachana <sup>c</sup>	– spanish (castillan, castillian)
– chinese1 <sup>c,g</sup>	– hangul-u8 <sup>c,e,f,g,h</sup>	– malayalam-rachana2 <sup>c</sup>	– spanish2
– chinese2 <sup>c,g</sup>	– hanja1 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– malayalam-rachana3 <sup>c</sup>	– spanish3 <sup>e,f</sup>
– croatian	– hanja2 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– mexican	– spanish4
– czech	– hanja-u8 <sup>c,e,f,g,h</sup>	– mongol <sup>c</sup>	– swahili
– danish	– hebrew <sup>c,h</sup>	– mongolb (mongolian) <sup>c,f,h</sup>	– swedish
– devanagari (hindi) <sup>c</sup>	– hebrew2 <sup>c,h</sup>	– ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	– swedish2
– dutch	– hindi-modern <sup>c</sup>	– ngermanb2	– thai <sup>c,d,f,g</sup>
– english <sup>†</sup> (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	– icelandic <sup>f</sup>	– norsk	– turkish
– english1	– interlingua	– norsk2	– ukrainian (ukraineb) <sup>b,c</sup>
– english2	– irish	– nynorsk	– uppersorbian (usorbian)
– esperant (esperanto)	– italian	– nynorsk2	– vietnam (vietnamese) <sup>c,d</sup>
– estonian	– italian2	– occitan	– welsh
– ethiopia (ethiopian) <sup>c</sup>	– japanese <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– occitan2	– xalx (khalkha) <sup>c</sup>
– ethiopian2 <sup>c,e,h</sup>	– japanese2 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– polish	– xalx2 <sup>c</sup>
	– japanese3 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– polish2 <sup>c,e</sup>	– xalx3 <sup>c</sup>
	– japanese4 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	– polski <sup>c</sup>	
		– portuguese (portuges)	

() The languages between parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

<sup>†</sup> The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory.

<sup>a</sup> The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [256, 257] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

<sup>b</sup> The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [59, 60], but russianb [266] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

<sup>c</sup> Some languages may require specific fonts.

<sup>d</sup> Requires the CJK package [123, 276, 277].

<sup>e</sup> Requires Lambda (Λ), the version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for Omega (Ω).

<sup>f</sup> Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

<sup>g</sup> Uses also a .mlo file.

<sup>h</sup> Requires a specific input encoding.

<sup>i</sup> The bicig language is also known as uighur.

<sup>j</sup> The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the A<sub>ar</sub>abi package [226].

### 1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot`.

More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\stcPfont` For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

### 1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\slttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on the page before and explained in section 1.4.13 on page 45) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 71). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

### 1.4.7 Position of the titles

#### 1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

`\doparttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof` and `\dopartlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title).

`\parttoc` The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one `parttoc` (or `partlof` or `partlot`), just use such an optional argument with the command `\parttoc` (or `\partlof` or `\partlot`).

### 1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

`\dominitoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for “empty” (“no” title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\minitoc` (or `\minilof` or `\minilot`).

### 1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

### 1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:  
`\dopartlof`  
`\dopartlot`  
`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,  
`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,  
`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,  
`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`  
`\dosectlof`  
`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positionning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`

`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,

`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,

`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`

`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positionning only for the title of the current mini-table.

`\sectlof`

`\sectlot`

### 1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse`  
`\tightmtctrue` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight)  
`\tightmtcfalse` or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\parskip` But with the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may  
`\parsep` sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set  
`\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the follow-  
ing options depends on the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option,  
`parskip` option and variants).

I0043

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight`  
`\ktightmtctrue` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the  
`\ktightmtcfalse` default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

### 1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:  
`\mtcsettitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectionning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlofs`) with the given font commands.

### 1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

### 1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

### 1.4.12 Simplified command for mini-table offsets

`\mtcsetoffset` To simplify the redefinition of the offsets for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetoffset` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}
```



For instance,

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-4em}
```

will set the macro `\mtcoffset` to the given value. This command checks that you set a offset for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its offset).

**NOTE:** the argument of `\mtcsetoffset` is *not* verified. It must be a length value, without shrink nor stretch part. A positive offset is towards the right, a negative one towards the left.



### 1.4.13 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb babel package [59, 60] of Johannes L. BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like ArabTeX [256, 257], Arabi [226], ArmTeX (armenian) [134], BangTeX (bangla, bengali) [335], CervanTeX (spanish) [47], Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X [337], ethiop [44], guarani [45], malayalam [4] and omal [5], MonTeX (mongol) [130, 133], CJK (chinese, korean-hangŭl/hanja, japanese, thai) [123, 276, 277], polski [330, 423] (polish), S<sub>W</sub>TeX [294] (swedish), FarsiTeX [152] (farsi or iranian), or vietnam [278] — latvian (letton), greek-mono, greek-polydemo, greek-polykatha, polish2, russian2m, russian2o and spanish3 need *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ), i.e., the Omega ( $\Omega$ ) version of L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X, (see [252]), or even found by searching on the Web (bulgarianb.mld for upper cyrillic bulgarian, japanese.mld for japanese, serbianc.mld for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome<sup>11</sup>. See table 1.7 on page 40.

But for some oriental languages<sup>12</sup>, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file<sup>13</sup>, not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of minitoc package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.



### 1.4.14 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 on the next page (this figure is adapted from [429]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

- `\@dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about

<sup>11</sup>I am searching for the titles in corsican, in particular.

<sup>12</sup>Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangŭl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

<sup>13</sup>The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

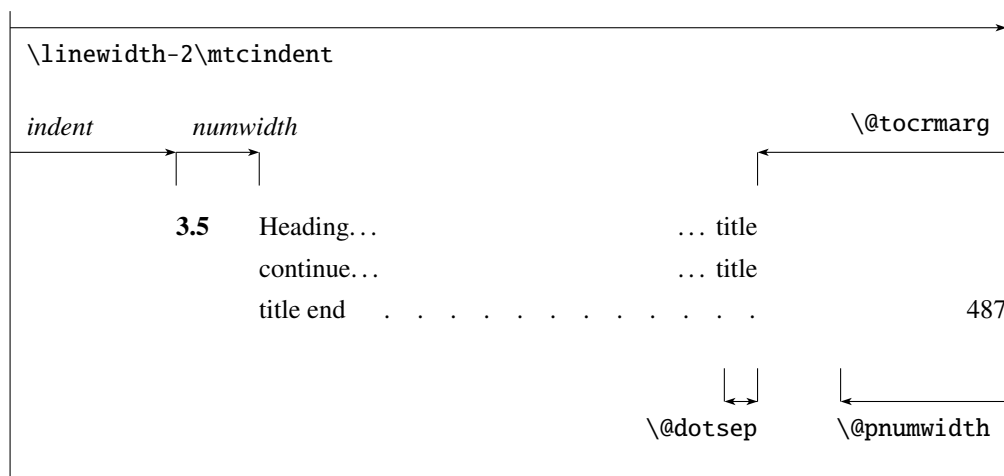


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of `1em` is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.

- `\@pnumwidth`, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a  $\LaTeX$  command containing the representation of a length (e.g., `1.55em`).
- `\@tocrmarg`, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than `\@pnumwidth`, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like `2.55em plus 1fil`); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

`\mtcsetformat` As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on the specified kinds of mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the `\mtcsetformat` command:

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for `\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to `2.55em plus 1fil` in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (`plus 1fil`) is useful if the table captions are long (it prevents most hyphenations).

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
rules in		no rules in		book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagewidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2 on the preceding page).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

## 1.5 Special Features

### 1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (\*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms<sup>14</sup> :

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

## 1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms<sup>14</sup> :

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (\*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.14 on page 45.

## 1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a `parttoc` (or a `partlof` or a `partlot`), in a `book`- or `report`-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the following page, whose meaning is often obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

---

<sup>14</sup>0 and o are the letter O, Ø is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\openparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\closeparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlof	\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\openpartlof	\empty
partlof	\closepartlof	\empty
partlof	\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlot	\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\openpartlot	\empty
partlot	\closepartlot	\empty
partlot	\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
minitoc	\beforeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\afterminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\openminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\closeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\thispageminitocstyle	\empty
minilof	\beforeminilof	\empty
minilof	\afterminilof	\empty
minilof	\openminilof	\empty
minilof	\closeminilof	\empty
minilof	\thispageminilofstyle	\empty
minilot	\beforeminilot	\empty
minilot	\afterminilot	\empty
minilot	\openminilot	\empty
minilot	\closeminilot	\empty
minilot	\thispageminilotstyle	\empty
secttoc	\beforesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\aftersecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\opensecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\closesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty
sectlof	\beforesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\aftersectlof	\empty
sectlof	\opensectlof	\empty
sectlof	\closesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty
sectlot	\beforesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\aftersectlot	\empty
sectlot	\opensectlot	\empty
sectlot	\closesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty
\mtcsetfeature{ <i>mini-table</i> }{before after open close pagestyle}{ <i>command</i> }		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: `parttoc...` `sectlot`. *keyword* is one of the followings: `before`, `after`, `open`, `close` or `pagestyle`. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

### 1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles<sup>15</sup>

`\mtcsetfeature` The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply  
`\thispagestyle` a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}` command, because in document classes defining the  
`\pagestyle` `\chapter` command (like `book` or `report`), the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages.  
`\cleardoublepage` If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour is a consequence from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short theoretical example<sup>16</sup>:



```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{pagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

## 1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

<sup>15</sup>This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [28], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the minitoc package.

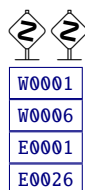
<sup>16</sup>This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.



But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



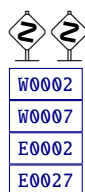
`\printindex` For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the  
`\addcontentsline` `\printindex` command:  
`\mtcaddchapter`  
`\mtcfixindex`

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



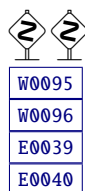
`\printnomenclature` For the nomenclature<sup>17</sup>, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands  
`\addcontentsline` just after the `\printnomenclature` command:  
`\mtcaddchapter`  
`\mtcfixnomenclature`

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the nomenclature entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



<sup>17</sup>If you are using the `nomenc` package [416] or the `nomentbl` package [151] (`nomentbl` calls `nomenc`).



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index or nomenclature) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc<N>` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 97), `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 101), and `mtc-nom.tex` (see section 4.26 on page 136) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.



## 1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [13] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run BibTeX using the `unsorted` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

## 1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`<sup>18</sup>. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run. Under Unix or Linux, you can try:

```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

## 1.8 The hints option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:



<sup>18</sup>This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

<code>\part</code>	• Alteration of some of the following commands <sup>19</sup> : <code>\part</code> , <code>\@part</code> , <code>\@spart</code> , <code>\chapter</code> , <code>\@chapter</code> , <code>\@schapter</code> , <code>\section</code> , <code>\@sect</code> , and <code>\@ssect</code> . Note that the <code>hyperref</code> (see section 2.17 on page 63) package alters these commands at <code>\begin{document}</code> , hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the <code>hyperref</code> must be loaded <i>before</i> <code>minitoc</code> .	
<code>\@chapter</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: <code>amsbook</code> (class), <code>memoir</code> (class), <code>appendix</code> , <code>placeins</code> (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), <code>scrbook</code> (class), <code>scrreprt</code> (class), <code>scrartcl</code> (class), <code>tocbibind</code> , and <code>tocloft</code> .	
<code>\@chapter</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are <i>incompatible</i> with the <code>minitoc</code> package: <code>amsart</code> (class), <code>amspdoc</code> (class), <code>alphanum</code> , <code>flowfram</code> <sup>20</sup> , <code>jura</code> (class), <code>titlesec</code> , and <code>titletoc</code> <sup>21</sup> .	W0026
<code>\@chapter</code>		W0027
<code>\@chapter</code>		W0025
<code>\@chapter</code>		W0097
<code>\@chapter</code>		W0029
<code>\@chapter</code>		W0040
<code>\@chapter</code>		W0099
<code>\parttoc</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> ; or the reverse.	
<code>\doparttoc</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> .	
<code>\dosectlot</code>		
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	• Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option).	W0056
<code>\listoftables</code>		
<code>\sectlof</code>	• If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the <code>shorttext</code> package option, see section 1.9 on the following page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the <code>hints</code> package option displays a warning.	W0053
<code>\sectlot</code>		W0054
		W0055
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	• If the <code>abstract</code> package [430] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code> , else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment.	I0040
<code>\mtcaddsection</code>		
	• If the <code>sectsty</code> package [295] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.	W0037
	• If the <code>varsects</code> package [398] (by Daniel TAUPIN <sup>†</sup> ) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0038
	• If the <code>fncychap</code> package [280] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0086
	• If the <code>hangcaption</code> package [233] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0092
	• If the <code>quotchap</code> package [403] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0087

<sup>19</sup>The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

<sup>20</sup>This package has its own system for minitocs.

<sup>21</sup>The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally *incompatible*, and it is very sad.

- If the romannum package [440] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0088
  - If the sfheaders package [283] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0089
  - If the alnumsec package [254] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0090
  - If the captcont package [127] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0091
  - If one of the caption [383, 384, 386], caption2<sup>22</sup> [385], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [434] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [213] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0033  
W0034  
W0035  
W0036
  - If one of the float [281], floatrow [265], trivfloat [444], or rotfloat [382] packages is used, you must remember that *you can not use* the minitoc facilities for preparing mini-tables of floats of the new defined types. I0053
  - If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 31). I0006
- `\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global `\firstsectionis` hint as reminder. W0003  
W0004  
W0005
- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

## 1.9 Usage with MS-DOS

Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc⟨N⟩` extensions will become `.M⟨N⟩`, where `⟨N⟩` is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf⟨N⟩` and `.mlt⟨N⟩` become `.F⟨N⟩` and `.T⟨N⟩`. The `.ptc⟨N⟩` extensions become `.P⟨N⟩`, where `⟨N⟩` is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf⟨N⟩` and `.plt⟨N⟩` become `.G⟨N⟩` and `.U⟨N⟩`. The `.stc⟨N⟩` extensions become `.S⟨N⟩`, where `⟨N⟩` is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf⟨N⟩` and `.slt⟨N⟩` become `.H⟨N⟩` and `.V⟨N⟩`. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11 on the following page. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 53) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 59.

<sup>22</sup>This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.



W0053  
W0054  
W0055

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$	.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$	.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$	.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$	.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$	.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$	.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$	.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$	.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$	.V $\langle N \rangle$

## 1.10 Why several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 60).

## 1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the *document.log* file. At least two L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the *.aux*, *.toc*, *.lof*, and *.lot* files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

## Chapter 2

# Frequently Asked Questions

### Contents

2.0	Introduction . . . . .	58
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table . . . . .	59
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table . . . . .	59
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error . . . . .	59
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc . . . . .	59
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files . . . . .	59
2.6	Playing with the chapter number . . . . .	60
2.7	Supported document classes . . . . .	61
2.8	Compatibility with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X versions . . . . .	61
2.9	Other mini-tables . . . . .	61
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files? . . . . .	62
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter . . . . .	62
2.12	Incompatibility with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09 . . . . .	63
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part . . . . .	63
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines . . . . .	63
2.15	The secttocs are wrong . . . . .	63
2.16	Removing the lines of dots . . . . .	63
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc . . . . .	63
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc . . . . .	64
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices . . . . .	64
2.20	Use with the appendix package . . . . .	65
2.21	Use with the tocloft package . . . . .	65
2.22	Use with the memoir class . . . . .	66
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths . . . . .	67
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes . . . . .	67
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents . . . . .	68
2.26	Defining your own .mld file . . . . .	71
2.27	Use with the abstract package . . . . .	71
2.28	Use with the sectsty package . . . . .	71
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs . . . . .	72
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands . . . . .	73
2.31	Use with packages for captions . . . . .	73
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir . . . . .	73

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	74
2.34	Initial font settings	74
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	76
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanumeric</code> package	76
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	76
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	76
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	76
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	77
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	77
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	77
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	77
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	77
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	78
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	79
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	80
2.48	Use with the <code>flowfram</code> package	80

## Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	60
-----	---	----

## Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	79
-----	---	----

## 2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 57, please upgrade to version #57. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 53), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example [351, 393]<sup>1</sup> (or “MCE”) reproducing the problem; this example should use the `hints` option).

<sup>1</sup> See also: <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=minxampl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.

## 2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X manual [259]. The `needspace` package [428] may also be useful.

## 2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.14 on page 45. There are yet some examples in chapter 4 on page 91, for some layouts, like mini-tables on two or three columns.

## 2.3 A “\” command in a contents line makes an error

`\\` Use `\protect\linebreak`. The `\\` command should be used only in tabular material  
`\protect` (tabular environment and similar, or in the `tabbing` environment) and in math arrays and  
`\linebreak` equations, or in the quote-like environments.

## 2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

*If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.*

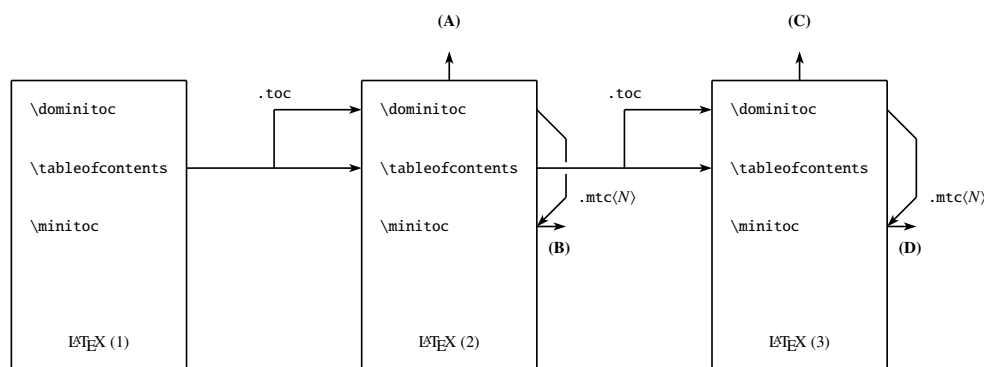
The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1 on the next page<sup>2</sup>. Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X at least three times.

## 2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

*This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?*

---

<sup>2</sup> I used the `pict2e` package [167], by Hubert GÄSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK, to prepare this figure.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

W0053  
W0054  
W0055

## 2.6 Playing with the chapter number

`\setcounter` `\chapter` *Do not cheat* with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like:

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the minitoc package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries in the TOC”, section 1.5.5 on page 51.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08), the numbering of chapters and that of minitocs are independent, so that problem just vanished.

The same remarks apply to the part and section counters.





## 2.7 Supported document classes

The minitoc package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article” [262]. There are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter” [263], which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported<sup>3</sup>. See also section 2.24 on page 67.

W0017

## 2.8 Compatibility with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X versions

Some users have failed to make minitoc to work. They got a message like:

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

## 2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have minilof, minilot and minibbl (mini-bibliographies per part, chapter or section). First, “minibbl” is another problem, strongly related to the B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the chapterbib [18], bibunits [195], multibib [196], bibtopic [24], and splitbib [290] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic minilofs and minilots. Minibbbls are not the aim of this package<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The minitoc package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

<sup>4</sup> See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=multibib>

## 2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all minitocs, one for all minilofs, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 31) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the  $\LaTeX$  run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with only one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 53.

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the  $\LaTeX$  run. If you run  $\LaTeX$  via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 56 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [33] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>  
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

## 2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots` for the part level in `book` | `report`-like and `article`-like documents, `secttocs`, `sectlofs` and `sectlots` for the section level in `article`-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an almost unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
<code>book</code>	*	*	
<code>report</code>	*	*	
<code>article</code>	*		*

## 2.12 Incompatibility with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09

`\protect`    The more recent version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,  
`\contentsline`    `.lof` and `.lof` files. The version #17 of `minitoc` attempts to be compatible with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09. Versions #18 and later are L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> specific, and no more compatible with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09, which is completely obsolete.

## 2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

## 2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364] (since version #43).

## 2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

## 2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.14 on page 45.

## 2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc

Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [356], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, using the work of Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS. Hence the *minitoc-hyper* package [414] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run, then re-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X the document. There will



be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from minitoc #30 to minitoc #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with minitoc #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* minitoc. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with minitoc.

## 2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, `.lot` files of the document, else the first  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

## 2.19 A local TOC for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc           % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices}    % create a part level subdivision \parttoc             % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 68.

## 2.20 Use with the `appendix` package

`\addcontentsline` `\adjustmtc` `\adjuststc` `appendices` If you use the `appendix` package [431] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with `minitocs` in the `appendices` environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening `\begin{appendices}` hides a `\addcontentsline` command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of `minitocs` or `secttocs`. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a `\adjustmtc` or `\adjuststc` command (depending on the level of the appendices, chapter or section) after *each* `\begin{appendices}` command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble *after* the loading of the `appendix` package:

I0042

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section<sup>5</sup>.

A rather more elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

See also the `mtc-amm.tex` example file (section 4.6 on page 106), which uses the `memoir` class [439, 441, 442], which includes itself the `appendix` package functionality (these packages and this class are from the same author).

## 2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [429].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction<sup>6</sup>, which fortunately

I0047

<sup>5</sup> In fact, the commands `\partend`, `\chapterend` and `\sectend` should not be used directly by the user, in normal circumstances.

<sup>6</sup> Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```



To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the `minitoc` section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

## 2.22 Use with the memoir class

The `memoir` class [439, 441, 442] offers basically the functionalities of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. Wilson), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on the preceding page, 1.5.5 on page 51, and 2.21 on the preceding page respectively). If your version of the `memoir` class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the `memoir` class *could be no more compatible* with the `minitoc` package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the `memoir` class is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the `memoir` class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsetttitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package).

	
E0028	
I0020	
I0027	
I0030	
I0032	
I0044	
M0001	

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the `memoir/tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

## 2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont`    Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsetttitle`    Since version #42, the `\mtcsetttitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\sltttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth`    Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

## 2.24 Compatibility with the $\mathcal{AMS}$ document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter`    Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are *incompatible* with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

W0026
W0027
I0041

## 2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

`mtchideinmaintoc` It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 64. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```
1 (*mtc - apx)
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4 [2007/03/22]%
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
9 \begin{document}
10 \doparttoc \dominitoc % prepare the mini-tables
11 \tableofcontents
12 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
13 \chapter{First}
14 \minitoc
15 First chapter
16 \section{First section} \lipsum[1]
17 \section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
18 \chapter{Second}
19 \minitoc
20 Second
21 \section{First section of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
22 \section{Second section of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
23 \appendix % begins the appendices
24 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
25 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
26 \mtcsettitle{parttoc}{List of Appendices} % changes the parttoc title
27 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
28 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the appendices in the main TOC,
29 % % but chapter-level entries would be still visible in the main TOC
30 % % if you use 0 in place of -1 as optional argument.
31 \chapter{First appendix}
32 \minitoc
33 First appendix
34 \section{First section} \lipsum[5]
35 \section{Second section} \lipsum[6]
```



```

36 \chapter{Second appendix}
37 \minitoc
38 Second appendix
39 \section{First section of second appendix} \lipsum[7]
40 \section{Second section of second appendix} \lipsum[8]
41 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
42 \end{document}
43 </mtc - apx>

```

`mtchideinmainlof` Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.

Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):



<pre> 44 &lt;{*mtc - hi1} 45 \documentclass{report} 46 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}% 47   [2007/01/04]% 48 \usepackage% 49   [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 50 \begin{document} 51 \dominilof \listoffigures 52 \dominilot \listoftables 53 \chapter{First} 54 \minilof \minilot 55 \begin{figure} 56 \caption{AAAA1} </pre>	<pre> 57 \end{figure} 58 \begin{figure} 59 \caption{AAAA2} 60 \end{figure} 61 \begin{table} 62 \caption{TAAAA1} 63 \end{table} 64 \begin{table} 65 \caption{TAAAA2} 66 \end{table} 67 \chapter{Second} 68 \minilof \minilot 69 %%----- </pre>
--	---

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 70 \begin{mtchideinmainlof} 71 \begin{mtchideinmainlot} 72 \begin{figure} 73 \caption{BBBB1} 74 \end{figure} 75 \begin{figure} 76 \caption{BBBB2} 77 \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> 78 \begin{table} 79 \caption{TBBBB1} 80 \end{table} 81 \begin{table} 82 \caption{TBBBB2} 83 \end{table} 84 \chapter{Third} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 85 \end{mtchideinmainlot} 86 \end{mtchideinmainlof} 87 %%----- 88 \minilof \minilot 89 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 90 \caption{CCCC1} 91 \end{figure} 92 \begin{figure} 93 \caption{CCCC2} 94 \end{figure} </pre>
--	--

<pre> 95 \begin{table} 96 \caption{TCCCC1} 97 \end{table} 98 \begin{table} </pre>	<pre> 99 \caption{TCCCC2} 100 \end{table} 101 \end{document} 102 \&lt;/mtc – hi1} </pre>
---	--

`\mtchideinmainlof` But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):

<pre> 103 \&lt;*mtc – hi2&gt; 104 \documentclass{report} 105 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}% 106 [2007/01/04] 107 \usepackage% 108 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 109 \begin{document} 110 \dominilof \listoffigures 111 \dominilot \listoftables 112 \chapter{First} 113 \minilof \minilot 114 \begin{figure} 115 \caption{AAAA1} </pre>	<pre> 116 \end{figure} 117 \begin{figure} 118 \caption{AAAA2} 119 \end{figure} 120 \begin{table} 121 \caption{TAAAA1} 122 \end{table} 123 \begin{table} 124 \caption{TAAAA2} 125 \end{table} 126 \chapter{Second} 127 \minilof \minilot </pre>
---	--

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.

<pre> 128 \begin{figure} 129 \mtchideinmainlof % &lt;-- 130 \caption{BBBB1} 131 \end{figure} 132 \begin{figure} 133 \caption{BBBB2} </pre>	<pre> 134 \endmtchideinmainlof % &lt;-- 135 \end{figure} 136 \begin{table} 137 \mtchideinmainlot % &lt;-- 138 \caption{TBBBB1} 139 \end{table} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.

<pre> 140 \begin{table} 141 \caption{TBBBB2} 142 \endmtchideinmainlot % &lt;-- 143 \end{table} 144 \chapter{Third} 145 \minilof \minilot 146 \begin{figure} 147 \caption{CCCC1} </pre>	<pre> 148 \end{figure} 149 \begin{figure} 150 \caption{CCCC2} 151 \end{figure} 152 \begin{table} 153 \caption{TCCCC1} 154 \end{table} 155 \begin{table} </pre>
--	--



<pre>156 \caption{TCCCC2} 157 \end{table}</pre>	<pre>158 \end{document} 159 \&lt;/mtc – hi2&gt;</pre>
---	---

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is much more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

## 2.26 Defining your own .mld file

<pre>\mtcsettitle \mtcselectlanguage</pre>	<p>First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via <code>\renewcommand</code> or better via <code>\mtcsettitle</code>. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the <i>language</i>[.mld-.mlo] pairs of language definition files.</p>
--	---

## 2.27 Use with the abstract package

<pre>\mtcaddchapter \mtcaddsection   \chapter   abstract</pre>	<p>If the abstract package [430] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code>, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the <code>hints</code> option and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your abstract environment.</p>
--	---

I0040

## 2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the sectsty package [295] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0037

## 2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

*In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.*

<code>\l@part</code>	The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like <code>\l@part</code> ,
<code>\l@chapter</code>	<code>\l@chapter</code> , <code>\l@section</code> , etc.
<code>\l@section</code>	
<code>\l@subsection</code>	The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which
<code>\l@subsubsection</code>	are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the <code>report</code> and
<code>\l@paragraph</code>	<code>book</code> classes) and lower levels, these commands are ( <code>book</code> class, <code>book.cls</code> ) by default:
<code>\l@subparagraph</code>	
<code>\renewcommand</code>	
<code>\@dottedtocline</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}</code>
<code>\mtcsetfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}</code>
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of

`\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes [262], the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends on the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 39), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.



There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section` ... `\l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a @ in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [429] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see *also* section 2.21 on page 65.



- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 43) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 39), or similar.

## 2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is *necessary* to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages. 
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectioning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence 

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

## 2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [383, 384, 386], `caption2`<sup>7</sup> [385], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [434] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [213] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036

## 2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [356] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [439, 441, 442], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

<sup>7</sup> This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

## 2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the varsects package [398] (by Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0038

## 2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the parttoc as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes<sup>8</sup>:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the minitoc package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the parttoc, partlofs, and partlots. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

In the initialization of the minitoc package, we have a sequence of commands:



```

\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)

```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a parttoc (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the parttoc, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

<sup>8</sup> The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

Note that if you say:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

after loading the minitoc package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a minitoc font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

## 2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [317, 318, 364], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 51. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

I0043

## 2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are *incompatible* with `minitoc`.



## 2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [59, 60], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \addto\captions $\textit{language1}$ {\mtcselectlanguage{\mathit{language2}}}}
```

where  $\textit{language1}$  is the language name for `babel` and  $\textit{language2}$  the language name for `minitoc`; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, for instance).

## 2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the `fncychap` package [280] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0086

## 2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the `quotchap` package [403] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0087



## 2.40 Use with the `romannum` package

If the `romannum` package [440] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0088

## 2.41 Use with the `sfheaders` package

If the `sfheaders` package [283] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0089

## 2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [254] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0090

## 2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [127] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0091

## 2.44 Vertical spaces (gaps) for `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the `book` and `report` document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:



```
160 \*mtc-gap>
161 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
162 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}[2007/01/04]%
```

We use the `vruler` package (by Zhuhan JIANG) to display a vertical ruler showing the position of the titles:

```
163 \usepackage{txfonts,vruler} % vertical graduation to note positions (Zhuhan Jiang)
164 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
165 \begin{document}
166 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][0pt] % with vruler package
167 \doparttoc \faketableofcontents
168 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
169 \parttoc
170 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
171 \part{Second part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads`    We set large gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.  
`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
172 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
173 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
174 \parttoc
175 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
176 \part{Third part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads`    We set small gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.  
`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
177 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
178 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
179 \parttoc
180 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
181 \end{document}
182 \</mtc-gap>
```

## 2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend on the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1 on the next page.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

## 2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

*I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:*

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

*If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a `minitoc` without page numbers as I wanted.*

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in minitocs). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [429, pages 45-56]; `XXX` is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
183 <*mtc - tlo>
184 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
185 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}[2007/06/13]%
```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```
186 \usepackage{tocloft}
187 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
188 \begin{document}
```

`\mtcsetfont` We define the global font for the `minitoc` entries:

```
189 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
190 \frontmatter
191 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

`\cftpagenumbersoff` For the section entries in the `minitocs`, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by  
`\cftsecfont` using commands from the `tocloft` package:

```
192 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
193 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
194 \mainmatter
195 \chapter{First Chapter} \minitoc
196 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
197 \chapter{Second Chapter} \minitoc
198 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
199 \end{document}
200 </mtc - tlo>
```

## 2.47 Use with the `hangcaption` package

If the `hangcaption` package [233] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0092

## 2.48 Use with the `flowfram` package

The `flowfram` package [394, 395], which has its own system of `minitocs`, is hence *incompatible* with `minitoc`.

  
W0097

# Chapter 3

## Memento

### Tables

3.1	Package options . . . . .	81	3.8	Commands for mini-tables features .	87
3.2	General commands . . . . .	82	3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	88
3.3	Commands: part level . . . . .	83	3.10	Adjustment commands . . . . .	88
3.4	Commands: chapter level . . . . .	84	3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc . . . . .	89
3.5	Commands: section level . . . . .	85	3.12	Obsolete commands . . . . .	90
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules . . .	86			
3.7	Commands for page numbers . . . .	86			

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the <i>document.log</i> file. Useful to detect some problems. Option <i>nohints</i> is inadvisable.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 40. Default: `english`.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <i>language.mld</i> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}</code>	Changes the offset for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}*{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table}*{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>parttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\plfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\pltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{parttoc partlof partlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

\*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

\*\* : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minitocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mlfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilots. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc minilof minilot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mlttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

\*: [x] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

\*\* : defaults like `\mtcfont`.



Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>secttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\slfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>sectlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\sltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>sectlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

\*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

\*\* : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\openparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\openpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlof file.
<code>\openpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlot file.
<code>\closeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\closepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlof file.
<code>\closepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlot file.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\openminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\openminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilof file.
<code>\openminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilot file.
<code>\closeminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\closeminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilof file.
<code>\closeminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilot file.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\opensecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\opensectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\opensectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\closesecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\closesectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\closesectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominiloof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\miniloof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument  $p$ , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument  $p$  has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by $n$ .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by $n$ .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by $n$ .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the index in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the nomenclature in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of tables.

\*: recommended form.

Table 3.11: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	54	[430]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	55	[254]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	76	[102]
* C	amsart	<i>AMS</i>	67	[7]
C	amsbook	<i>AMS</i>	67	[7]
* C	amsproc	<i>AMS</i>	67	[7]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	65	[431]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	55	[127]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	55	[383, 384, 386]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	55	[385]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	55	[434]
P	float	Anselm LINGNAU	55	[281]
P	floatrow	Olga G. LAPKO	55	[265]
* P	flowfram	Nicola L. C. TALBOT	80	[394, 395]
P	fnycchap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	76	[280]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	80	[233]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	63	[322, 325–327, 353, 356, 357]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	76	[102]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	55	[213]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	66	[439, 441, 442]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	53	[13]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	31	[14]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	54	[403]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	55	[440]
P	rotfloat	Sebastian RAHTZ and Leonor BARROCA	55	[382]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and scrcprt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	76	[317, 318, 364]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	71	[295]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	77	[283]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	35	[128]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	35	[126]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	54	[46]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	54	[46]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	51	[432]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	65, 79	[429]
P	trivfloat	Joseph A. WRIGHT	55	[444]
P	varsects	Daniel TAUPIN <sup>†</sup>	54	[398]

\*: *Incompatible* with minitoc. C: Class. P: Package.

Any class not defining the main standard sectionning commands is *incompatible* with minitoc.

Table 3.12: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{<i>N</i>}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{<i>N</i>}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{<i>N</i>}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first section.
These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).	

## Chapter 4

# Examples of documents

### Contents

---

4.1	The <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> document file	92	4.19	The <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> document file	126
4.2	The <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> document file	93	4.20	The <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> document file	127
4.3	The <code>mtc-3co.tex</code> document file	94	4.21	The <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> document file	128
4.4	The <code>mtc-add.tex</code> document file	97	4.22	The <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> document file	129
4.5	The <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> document file	101	4.23	The <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> document file	133
4.6	The <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> document file	106	4.24	The <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> document file	133
4.7	The <code>mtc-apx.tex</code> document file	106	4.25	The <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> document file	135
4.8	The <code>mtc-art.tex</code> document file	106	4.26	The <code>mtc-nom.tex</code> document file	136
4.9	The <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> document file	111	4.27	The <code>mtc-ocf.tex</code> document file	138
4.10	The <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> document file	116	4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	139
4.11	The <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> document file	120	4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	141
4.12	The <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> document file	122	4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	142
4.13	The <code>mtc-fko.tex</code> document file	122	4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	144
4.14	The <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> document file	123	4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	145
4.15	The <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> document file	124	4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	146
4.16	The <code>mtc-gap.tex</code> document file	126	4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	147
4.17	The <code>mtc-hi1.tex</code> document file	126	4.35	The <code>mtc-tsf.tex</code> document file	147
4.18	The <code>mtc-hi2.tex</code> document file	126			

---

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of some specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 68, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 69, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 70, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 77, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 80,

Note that the `lipsum` package [197] is often used to provide filling text.

## 4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

`\mtcindent` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [301] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a `minitoc` is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

<pre> 201 &lt;*mtc - 2c&gt; 202 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% 203     {report} 204 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}% 205     [2007/01/04] 206 \usepackage{multicol} 207 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 208 \usepackage% 209     [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc} 210 \usepackage[latin]{babel} 211 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} 212 \begin{document} 213 \dominitoc \tableofcontents </pre>
---	---

`multicols` Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a `minitoc` on one full width column, then the  
`\minitoc` body of the chapter on two columns:

<pre> 214 \chapter{Primum capitulum} 215 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 216 \section{Prima sectio} 217 \lipsum[1-2] 218 \section{Secunda sectio} 219 \lipsum[3-4] 220 \end{multicols} 221 \chapter{Secundum capitulum} </pre>	<pre> 222 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 223 \section{Prima sectio} 224 \lipsum[5-6] 225 \section{Secunda sectio} 226 \lipsum[7-8] 227 \section{Tertia sectio} 228 \lipsum[9-10] 229 \end{multicols} </pre>
---	---

`multicols` A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the `minitoc` are in the first  
`\minitoc` column:

<pre> 230 \begin{multicols}{2} 231 \chapter{Tertium capitulum} 232 \minitoc 233 \section{Prima sectio} 234 \lipsum[11-12] </pre>	<pre> 235 \section{Secunda sectio} 236 \lipsum[13-14] 237 \section{Tertia sectio} 238 \lipsum[15-16] 239 \end{multicols} </pre>
--	---

`multicols` A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the `minitoc` and the chapter body  
`\minitoc` on two columns (the `minitoc` is in the first column):

<pre> 240 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum} 241 \begin{multicols}{2} 242 \minitoc 243 \section{Prima sectio} 244 \lipsum[16-17] 245 \section{Secunda sectio} </pre>	<pre> 246 \lipsum[18-19] 247 \section{Tertia sectio} 248 \lipsum[20-21] 249 \end{multicols} 250 \end{document} 251 &lt;/mtc - 2c&gt; </pre>
---	---



## 4.2 The mtc-2nd.tex document file

This document tests the french2.mld minitoc language definition file (section 13.62 on page 522) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the french2 minitoc package language option<sup>1</sup>:

```

252 \*mtc-2nd
253 %% Test de french2.mld:
254 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
255 %% compilez 3 fois.
256 \documentclass{report}
257 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
258 [2007/01/04]
259 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
260 \usepackage[french]{babel}
261 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
262 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
263 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
264 \usepackage{mypatches}
265 \begin{document}

```

\ifmtcsecondpart We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

266 \ifmtcsecondpart
267 Il n'y a que 2 parties: seconde.
268 \else
269 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
270 \fi
271 \clearpage

```

\doparttoc The body of the document, with two parts:  
\fakeableofcontents

```

\doparttoc
\parttoc
272 \doparttoc
273 \fakeableofcontents
274 \part{P1}
275 \parttoc
276 \chapter{P1C1}
277 \chapter{P1C2}
278 \part{P2}
279 \parttoc
280 \chapter{P2C1}
281 \chapter{P2C2}

```

---

<sup>1</sup> The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.

```

282% Commentez la ligne suivante puis recompilez 2 ou 3 fois.
283\end{document}
284\part{P3}
285\parttoc
286\chapter{P3C1}
287\chapter{P3C2}
288\end{document}
289</mtc - 2nd>

```

```
\part*{Partie étoilée}
\mtcaddpart[Partie étoilée]
\adjustptc[-2] % IMPORTANT <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
\parttoc
\chapter*{Premier chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Premier chapitre étoilé]
\chapter*{Second chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Second chapitre étoilé]
```

### 4.3 The mtc-3co.tex document file

First, we will use a wide paper format (A3) to set the text on two columns and the main TOC on three columns, with the `multitoc` package [376] (by Martin SCHRÖDER).

```

290 \*mtc - 3co>
291 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
292 \ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
293   [2007/02/19]
294 \usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
295 \usepackage{lipsum}
296 \usepackage{multicol}
297 \usepackage{toc}{multitoc}
298 \renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{f3}

```

```

\mtcindent Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for
\mtcsetformat the minitocs. We alter the mtc@verse environment to add a multicols environment2:
\multicolumnmtc
\mtc@verse 299 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\endmtc@verse 300 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
multicols 301 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
302 \mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
303 \newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
304 \makeatletter
305 \let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
306 \let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
307 \def\mtc@verse#1{\SV@mtc@verse#1\removelastskip%
308 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
309 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
310 \def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
311 \makeatother
312 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the `lipsum` package [197] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```

313 \begin{document}
314 \dominitoc
315 \tableofcontents
316 \chapter{First chapter}
317 \minitoc
318 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used `\mtcsetformat` to avoid hyphenations).

```

319 \section{First section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
320 \section{Second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
321 \section{Third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
322 \section{Fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
323 \section{Fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
324 \section{Sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
325 \section{Seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
326 \section{Eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
327 \section{Ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
328 \section{Tenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
329 \section{Eleventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
330 \section{Twelfth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
331 \section{Thirteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
332 \section{Fourteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
333 \section{Fifteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
334 \section{Sixteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
335 \section{Seventeenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
336 \section{Eighteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

---

<sup>2</sup> Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```

337 \section{Nineteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
338 \section{Twentieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
339 \section{Twenty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
340 \section{Twenty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
341 \section{Twenty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
342 \section{Twenty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
343 \subsection{A very long subsection title, for the fun in
344 a multicolumn table of contents} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
345 \section{Twenty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
346 \section{Twenty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
347 \section{Twenty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
348 \section{Twenty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
349 \section{Twenty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
350 \section{Thirtieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
351 \section{Thirty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
352 \section{Thirty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
353 \section{Thirty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
354 \section{Thirty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
355 \section{Thirty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
356 \section{Thirty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
357 \section{Thirty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
358 \section{Thirty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
359 \section{Thirty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
360 \section{Fortieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
361 \section{Forty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
362 \section{Forty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
363 \section{Forty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
364 \section{Forty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
365 \section{Forty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
366 \section{Forty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
367 \section{Forty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
368 \section{Forty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
369 \section{Forty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
370 \section{Fiftieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
371 \section{Fifty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
372 \section{Fifty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
373 \section{Fifty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
374 \section{Fifty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
375 \section{Fifty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
376 \section{Fifty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
377 \section{Fifty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
378 \section{Fifty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
379 \section{Fifty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
380 \end{multicols}
381 \clearpage
382 \end{document}
383 </mtc - 3co>

```

## 4.4 The mtc-add.tex document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the tocbibind package [432].

```

384 (*mtc - add)
385 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
386 %% \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
387 \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
388 [2007/01/04]
389 \usepackage{url}
390 \usepackage{tocbibind}
391 \usepackage{makeidx}
392 \makeatletter
393 \newif\ifscan@allowed
394 \scan@allowedtrue
395 \makeatother
396 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
397 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
398           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%

```

Load the minitoc package, or mtcoff.

```

399 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
400 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}

401 \makeindex
402 \begin{document}

```

```

\dominitoc We call the mini-table preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 403 \dominitoc \dominilof \dominilot

```

```

\tableofcontents We are using the tocbibind package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must
\mtcaddchapter take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 51:
\listoffigures
\listoftables 404 \tableofcontents \mtcaddchapter
405 \listoffigures \mtcaddchapter
406 \listoftables \mtcaddchapter

```

```

\chapter For a chapter, we want a minitoc, a minilof and a minitoc:
\minitoc
\minilof 407 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
\minilot 408 \minitoc \mtcskip
\mtcskip 409 \minilof \mtcskip
410 \minilot

```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

411 \section{First section}
412
413 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
414 \begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}
415
416 \section{Second section}
417 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
418 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
419 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
420 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
421 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
422 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
423 \index{would}\index{yes}%
424 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
425 But I imagine that he would, yes.}\
426 \hbox{}\hfill
427 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
428 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
429
430 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
431 \begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}

```

`\chapter*` A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

432 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
433 \index{chapter!starred}
434 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
435 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
436 %% \mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
437 %% \addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
438 %%%
439 %% \mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
440 %% \mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
441 %%%
442 \index{tests}
443
444 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
445 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
446 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
447 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
448 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
449 and at this chapter.
450 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
451 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
452 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
453 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
454 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
455 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%

```

```

456 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
457 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
458 \index{variations}\index{you}%
459 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
460
461 \chapter{Third chapter}
462 \index{chapter!normal}
463 \minitoc \mtcskip
464 \minilof \mtcskip
465 \minilot
466 \section{Third section}
467
468 \begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
469 \begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}
470
471 \section{Fourth section}
472
473 \begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
474 \begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

`\bibliography`

`\adjustmtc`

```

475 \nocite*
476 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
477 \bibliographystyle{plain}
478 \bibliography{mtc-add}
479 \adjustmtc

```

`\printindex` As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

`\mtcfixindex`

```

480 \printindex
481 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
482 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
483 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
484 %% \mtcaddchapter
485 %%
486
487 \appendix
488 \chapter{App.~1}
489 \index{chapter!appendix}
490 \minitoc \mtcskip
491 \minilof \mtcskip
492 \minilot
493 \section{Fifth section}
494
495 \begin{figure} \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
496 \begin{table} \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}
497

```

```

498 \section{Sixth section}
499
500 \begin{figure} \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
501 \begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

502 \chapter{App.~2}
503 \index{chapter!appendix}
504 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
505 \minitoc \mtcskip
506 \minilof \mtcskip
507 \minilot
508 \section{Seventh section}
509 \begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
510 \begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
511
512 \section{Eighth section}
513
514 \begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
515 \begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
516
517 \end{document}
518 </mtc – add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [147]:

```

519 <*mtc – addbib>
520 @MISC{minitoc,
521   TITLE="The {\textsf{minitoc}} package",
522   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
523   ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
524   NOTE="{\url{http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
525   MONTH=apr,
526   YEAR=2008}
527

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [146]:

```

528 @MISC{fminitoc,
529   TITLE="Le paquetage {\textsf{minitoc}}",
530   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
531   ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
532   NOTE="{\url{http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
533   MONTH=apr,
534   YEAR=2008}
535

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [145]:



```

536 @MISC{shorttoc,
537   TITLE="The {\textsf{shorttoc}} package",
538   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
539   ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
540   NOTE="{\url{http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf}}",
541   MONTH=aug,
542   YEAR=2002}
543

```

- a novel [23] from which a short citation is taken:

```

544 @BOOK{dark,
545   TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
546   AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
547   PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
548   ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
549   YEAR=1993}
550 </mtc – addbib>

```

But the database created this way must be trimmed of some spurious lines; on Unix-like systems, do<sup>3</sup>:

```
cat mtc-add.bib | grep -v '^%%' > addbib;mv addbib mtc-add.bib
```

## 4.5 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocbibind package [432] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

551 (*mtc – ads)
552 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
553 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
554 [2007/01/04]
555 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
556 \makeatletter \newif\ifscan@allowed \scan@allowedtrue \makeatother
557 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
558 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
559           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
560 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
561 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}
562 \makeindex

```

<sup>3</sup> Note that we should use no preamble for this file in minitoc.ins; nevertheless, some spurious lines are still generated. This problem is not yet corrected now, so we keep the solution.

```

\doarttoc The preparation commands:
\doartlof
\doartlot 563 \begin{document}
\dosecttoc 564 \doarttoc \doartlof \doartlot
\dosectlof 565 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot
\dosectlot

\setcounter The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we
\tableofcontents use the tocibind package, we must add some \mtcaddsection commands:
\mtcaddsection
\listoffigures 566 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
\listoftables 567 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
568 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
569 \tableofcontents \mtcaddsection
570 \listoffigures \mtcaddsection
571 \listoftables \mtcaddsection

\parttoc The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their
\partlof section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.
\partlot
\secttoc 572 \part{Part~1}
\sectlof 573 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
\sectlot 574
\mtcskip 575 \section{First section}
576 \index{section!normal}
577 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
578 \subsection{First subsection}
579
580 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
581 \begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}
582
583 \subsection{Second subsection}
584 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
585 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
586 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
587 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
588 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
589 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
590 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
591 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
592 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
593 \hbox{\hfill Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}}%
594 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
595 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
596 \begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}

\section* Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several
\mtcaddsection solutions (good or bad).

597 \section*{Second section, starred}
598 \index{section!starred}

```

```

599%% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
600\mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
601%% \mtcaddsection[] % BAD
602%% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
603%% \mtcaddsection % BAD
604 %%%%%%%%%%%
605\index{tests}
606
607This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
608the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
609only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
610\verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
611For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
612and at this section.
613\index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
614\index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
615\index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
616\index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
617\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
618\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
619\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
620\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
621\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
622\index{variations}\index{you}%
623I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
624
625\section{Third section}
626\index{section!normal}
627\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
628\subsection{Third subsection}
629
630\begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
631\begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}
632
633\subsection{Fourth subsection}
634
635\begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
636\begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}
637
638\subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
639\subsubsection{And yet another one}
640
641\part{Part~2}
642\parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
643
644\section{Fourth section}
645\index{section!normal}
646\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
647\subsection{Fifth subsection}
648
649\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
650\begin{table}[tp] \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}
651
652\subsection{Sixth subsection}

```

```

653 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
654 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
655 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
656 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
657 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
658 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
659 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
660 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
661 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
662 \hbox{}\hfill
663 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
664 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}%
665
666 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
667 \begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}
668
669 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
670 \index{section!starred}
671 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
672 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
673 %% \mtcaddsection[] % OK
674 %% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
675 %% \mtcaddsection % OK
676 %%%%%%%%%%%
677 \index{tests}
678
679 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
680 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
681 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
682 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
683 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
684 and at this section.\index{a}%
685 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
686 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
687 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
688 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
689 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
690 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
691 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
692 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
693 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
694 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
695 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
696
697 \section{Sixth section}
698 \index{section!normal}
699 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
700 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
701
702 \begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
703 \begin{table} \caption{Seventh table} \end{table}
704
705 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
706

```

```

707 \begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
708 \begin{table} \caption{Eighth table} \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [432] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

709 \nocite*
710 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
711 \bibliographystyle{plain}
712 \bibliography{mtc-add}
713 \adjuststc

```

`\printindex` The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [432] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```

714 \printindex
715 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
716 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
717 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
718 %% \mtcaddsection
719
720 \appendix
721 \section{App.~1}
722 \index{section!appendix}
723 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
724 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
725
726 \begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
727 \begin{table} \caption{Ninth table} \end{table}
728
729 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
730
731 \begin{figure} \caption{Tenth figure} \end{figure}
732 \begin{table} \caption{Tenth table} \end{table}
733
734 \section{App.~2}
735 \index{section!appendix}
736 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
737 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
738 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
739
740 \begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
741 \begin{figure} \caption{Twelfth figure} \end{figure}
742
743 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
744
745 \begin{figure} \caption{Thirteenth figure} \end{figure}
746 \begin{figure} \caption{Fourteenth figure} \end{figure}
747
748 \end{document}
749 </mtc – ads>

```

## 4.6 The mtc-amm.tex document file

`\dominitoc` This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document  
`\tableofcontents` when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

<pre> \adjustmtc \minitoc 750 \*mtc-amm)           751 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}           752 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}%           753 [2007/08/29]           754 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text           755 \usepackage{hyperref}           756 \usepackage{memhfixc}           757 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} </pre>	<pre>           758 \begin{document}           759 \dominitoc \tableofcontents           760 \adjustmtc           761 \chapter{First chapter}           762 \minitoc           763 \lipsum[1]           764 \section{First section}           765 \lipsum[2] </pre>
---	---

`appendices` The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with  
`\addappheadtotoc` `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

<pre> \chapter \minitoc 766 \begin{appendices}           767 \addappheadtotoc           768 \adjustmtc %correction!           769 \chapter{Afterthoughts}           770 \minitoc           771 \lipsum[3]           772 Afterthoughts appendix           773 \section{Further remarks}           774 \lipsum[4]           775 \chapter{Last wills}           776 \minitoc           777 \section{Testament}           778 \lipsum[5] </pre>	<pre>           779 \end{appendices}           780 \chapter{Conclusion}           781 \minitoc           782 \section{Bye}           783 \lipsum[6]           784 \chapter{Back from Hell}           785 \minitoc           786 \section{Not dead yet!}           787 \lipsum[7]           788 \section{I will survive}           789 \lipsum[8]           790 \end{document}           791 \&lt;/mtc-amm) </pre>
---	---

## 4.7 The mtc-apx.tex document file

The `mtc-apx.tex` document file is described in section 2.25 on page 68.

## 4.8 The mtc-art.tex document file

`\stcindent` This is a basic document using the `minitoc` package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it  
`\stcfont` must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its  
`\stcSSfont` preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

792 \*mtc-art)
793 %% mtc-art.tex
794 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #57

```

```

795%% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
796%% article (\section must be defined)
797\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
798\ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
799 [2007/06/06]
800\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
801%% \usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
802\usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
803\setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
804\setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
805\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
806%% % font for secttocs, default
807\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
808%% % font for secttocs, subsections
809%% \renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sfont}%
810%% % you can make experiments with
811%% % \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
812%% % but it is ‘fontomania’...
813\raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent on the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

814%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
815%% resetting section number in each part
816%% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
817%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
818\begin{document}
```

```

\dosecttoc The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 819\dosecttoc
\doparttoc 820\dosectlof[c] % center titles of the sectlofs
\dopartlof 821\dosectlot
\dosectlot 822\doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
823\dopartlof % added in version #15
824\dopartlot % added in version #15

```

```

\fakeableofcontents It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.
\fakeistoffigures
\fakeistoftables 825\fakeableofcontents % or \tableofcontents
826\fakeistoffigures % to check compatibility
827\fakeistoftables % to check compatibility

```

`\part` There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a  
`\parttoc` parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:  
`\partlof`  
`\partlot` 828 `\part{First Part}` `\parttoc` `\partlof[r]` `\partlot`

`\section` A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section  
`\secttoc` contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).  
`\sectlof`  
`\mtcskip` 829 `\twocolumn\sloppy` % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,  
830 % but works. Ideas to make it better?  
831 `\section{AAAAA}` % a section with a lot of sections  
832 `\secttoc[r]` % secttoc title on the right  
833 `\mtcskip` `\sectlof` %ADDED  
834 `\lipsum[1]`  
835 `\subsection{S1}` `\lipsum[2]`  
836 `\subsection{S2}` `\lipsum[3]`  
837 `\subsection{S3}` `\lipsum[4]`  
838 `\subsection*{S4}`  
839 %% `\addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}`  
840 `\lipsum[5]`

A lot of subsections:

841 <code>\subsection{S5}</code> <code>\lipsum[6]</code>	854 <code>\subsection{S18}</code> <code>\lipsum[19]</code>
842 <code>\subsection{S6}</code> <code>\lipsum[7]</code>	855 <code>\subsection{S19}</code> <code>\lipsum[20]</code>
843 <code>\subsection{S7}</code> <code>\lipsum[8]</code>	856 <code>\subsection{S20}</code> <code>\lipsum[21]</code>
844 <code>\subsection{S8}</code> <code>\lipsum[9]</code>	857 <code>\subsection{S21}</code> <code>\lipsum[22]</code>
845 <code>\subsection{S9}</code> <code>\lipsum[10]</code>	858 <code>\subsection{S22}</code> <code>\lipsum[23]</code>
846 <code>\subsection{S10}</code> <code>\lipsum[11]</code>	859 <code>\subsection{S23}</code> <code>\lipsum[24]</code>
847 <code>\subsection{S11}</code> <code>\lipsum[12]</code>	860 <code>\subsection{S24}</code> <code>\lipsum[25]</code>
848 <code>\subsection{S12}</code> <code>\lipsum[13]</code>	861 <code>\subsection{S25}</code> <code>\lipsum[26]</code>
849 <code>\subsection{S13}</code> <code>\lipsum[14]</code>	862 <code>\subsection{S26}</code> <code>\lipsum[27]</code>
850 <code>\subsection{S14}</code> <code>\lipsum[15]</code>	863 <code>\subsection{S27}</code> <code>\lipsum[28]</code>
851 <code>\subsection{S15}</code> <code>\lipsum[16]</code>	864 <code>\subsection{S28}</code> <code>\lipsum[29]</code>
852 <code>\subsection{S16}</code> <code>\lipsum[17]</code>	865 <code>\subsection{S29}</code> <code>\lipsum[30]</code>
853 <code>\subsection{S17}</code> <code>\lipsum[18]</code>	866 <code>\subsection{S30}</code> <code>\lipsum[31]</code>

`\FloatBarrier` We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are  
`\section*` subsections and figures). The `insection` package option should ensure that floating objects  
`\mtcaddsection` (like figures) do not drift outside their section.  
`\sectlof`  
`\sectlot` 867 `\onecolumn\fussy` % back to one column  
868 `\section{BBBBB}`  
869 `\secttoc`  
870 `\mtcskip` % put some skip here  
871 `\sectlof` % a sectlof  
872 `\lipsum[32]`  
873 `\subsection{T1}` `\lipsum[33]`  
874 `\begin{figure}[t]` % tests compatibility with floating bodies  
875 `\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}`



```

876 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
877 \caption{F1}           % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
878 \end{figure}
879 \FloatBarrier
880 \subsubsection[tt1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectioning command
881 \lipsum[34]
882 \paragraph{TTT1} \lipsum[35]
883 \subparagraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[36]
884 \begin{figure}[t]
885 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
886 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
887 \caption{f2}{F2}       % tests optional arg. of a caption
888 \end{figure}
889 \FloatBarrier
890 \subsection{T2} \lipsum[37]
891 \section*{CCCCC}      % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
892 %% \addstarredsection{CCCCC}
893 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
894 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
895 \lipsum[38]
896 \subsection{U1} \lipsum[39]
897 \subsubsection{UU1} \lipsum[40]
898 \paragraph{UUU1} \lipsum[41]
899 \subparagraph{UUUU1} \lipsum[42]
900 \subsection{U2} \lipsum[43]
901 \part{Second Part}
902 \parttoc
903 \partlof[c]
904 \partlot
905 %%                      % the following section should have no secttoc,
906 \section{DDDDD}         % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
907 %% \secttoc
908 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
909 %                      % the secttoc appears
910 \lipsum[44]
911 \subsection{V1} \lipsum[45]
912 \subsubsection{VV1} \lipsum[46]
913 \paragraph{VVV1} \lipsum[47]
914 \subparagraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[48]
915 \begin{figure}[t]       % tests compatibility with floating bodies
916 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
917 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
918 \caption{F3}           % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
919 \end{figure}
920 \FloatBarrier
921 \lipsum[49] \subsection{V2} \lipsum[50]

```

```

\mtcskip We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):
\section
\chapter 922 \section{EEEEEE} % this section should have a secttoc
\secttoc 923 {% % left brace, see below
\sectlof 924 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
\sectlot 925 % try with different values.
\FloatBarrier 926 \secttoc
\part 927 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\parttoc 928 } % right brace
\partlof 929 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change on secttocdepth.
\partlot 930 \lipsum[51]
931 \subsection{W1} % with the given depth
932 \lipsum[52]
933 \subsubsection{WW1} \lipsum[53]
934 \paragraph{WWW1} \lipsum[54]
935 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
936 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
937 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
938 \caption{F4} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
939 \end{figure}
940 \FloatBarrier
941 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
942 \subparagraph{WWW1} \lipsum[55]
943 \subsection{W2} \lipsum[56]
944 \chapter*{}
945 \part{Appendices}
946 \parttoc \mtcskip
947 \partlof \mtcskip
948 \partlot
949 \FloatBarrier
950 \appendix
951 \section{Comments} \lipsum[57]
952 \secttoc
953 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
954 \subsection{C1} \lipsum[58]
955 \subsection{C2} \lipsum[59]
956 \subsection{C3} \lipsum[60]
957 \begin{figure}[hb] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
958 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
959 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
960 \caption{F5} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
961 \end{figure}
962 \FloatBarrier
963 \subsection{C4} \lipsum[61]
964 \FloatBarrier
965 \section{Evolution}
966 \secttoc
967 \sectlof % empty
968 \sectlot % empty
969 \lipsum[62]
970 \subsection{D1} \lipsum[63] \subsection{D2} \lipsum[64]
971 \subsection{D3} \lipsum[65] \subsection{D4} \lipsum[66]
972 \end{document}
973 </mtc - art>

```

## 4.9 The mtc-bk.tex document file

```

\setcounter This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a
\mtcindent book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a copy of this file and can
\mtcfont alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble
\mtcSfont follows:
\mtcSSfont

974 (*mtc - bk)
975 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
976 % mtc-bk.tex
977 % This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #57 package file.
978 % You can alter most of parameters to test.
979 % Class: book/report (\chapter must be defined).
980 % You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc commands and parameters.
981 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
982 % \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
983 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
984 [2007/06/06]
985 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
986 % \usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
987 % \usepackage{mtcoff}
988 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
989 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
990 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
991 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
992 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
993 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
994 % \renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
995 % you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
996 % but it is "fontomania"...
997 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent on the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

998 %% TEST: uncomment the next line to test resetting chapter number in each part
999 % \makeatletter \@addtoreset{chapter}{part} \makeatother
1000 %% END TEST

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence
\noptcrule of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

```

1001 \begin{document}
1002 \mtcpagenumbers
1003 \noptcrule
1004 % \nomtcrule % suppresses minitoc rules
1005 % \nomtcpagenumbers % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1006 % \nomlfpagenumbers % ----- minilof ----
1007 % \nomltpagenumbers % ----- minilot ----

```

```

\dominitoc The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:
\dominilof
\dominilot 1008 \dominitoc
\doparttoc 1009 \dominilof[c] % centers title of minilof's
\dopartlof 1010 \dominilot
\dopartlot 1011 \doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
           1012 \dopartlof % added in version #15
           1013 \dopartlot % added in version #15

\tableofcontents It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.
\listoffigures
\fakeinfoftables 1014 \tableofcontents % or \faketableofcontents
                  1015 \listoffigures % or \fakeinfoftables
                  1016 \fakeinfoftables % or \infoftables

```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```
1017 %% \addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0
```

```

\part There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:
\parttoc
\partlof 1018 \part{First Part}
\partlot 1019 \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot[r]

```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```

1020 \twocolumn\sloppy % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1021 \chapter{AAAAA} % a chapter with a lot of sections
1022 \minitoc[r] % minitoc title on the right
1023 \lipsum[1]
1024 \section{S1} \lipsum[2]
1025 \section{S2} \lipsum[3]
1026 \section{S3} \lipsum[4]

```

```

\section* A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:
\addtocontentsline

```

```

1027 \section*{S4}
1028 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
1029 \lipsum[5]

```

A lot of subsections:

1030 \section{S5} \lipsum[6]	1035 \section{S10} \lipsum[11]
1031 \section{S6} \lipsum[6]	1036 \section{S11} \lipsum[12]
1032 \section{S7} \lipsum[7]	1037 \section{S12} \lipsum[13]
1033 \section{S8} \lipsum[9]	1038 \section{S13} \lipsum[14]
1034 \section{S9} \lipsum[10]	1039 \section{S14} \lipsum[15]

1040 \section{S15} \lipsum[16]	1049 \section{S24} \lipsum[25]
1041 \section{S16} \lipsum[17]	1050 \section{S25} \lipsum[26]
1042 \section{S17} \lipsum[18]	1051 \section{S26} \lipsum[27]
1043 \section{S18} \lipsum[19]	1052 \section{S27} \lipsum[28]
1044 \section{S19} \lipsum[20]	1053 \section{S28} \lipsum[29]
1045 \section{S20} \lipsum[21]	1054 \section{S29} \lipsum[30]
1046 \section{S21} \lipsum[22]	1055 \section{S30} \lipsum[31]
1047 \section{S22} \lipsum[23]	1056 \subsection{SS1} \lipsum[32]
1048 \section{S23} \lipsum[24]	1057 \section{S31} \lipsum[33]

\chapter We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

\minitoc

\minilof 1058 \onecolumn\fussy % back to one column

\minilot 1059 \chapter{BBBBB}

\mtcskip 1060 \minitoc

1061 \mtcskip % put some skip here

1062 \minilof % a minilof

1063 \mtcskip % put some skip here

1064 \minilot % a minilot

1065 \lipsum[34]

1066 \section{T1} \lipsum[35]

1067 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies

1068 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}

1069 \begin{picture}(100,50)

1070 \end{picture}

1071 \caption{F1} % (tables are similar)

1072 \end{figure}

1073 \begin{table}[b] % tests compatibility with floating bodies

1074 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}

1075 \begin{picture}(100,50)

1076 \end{picture}

1077 \caption{T1} % (tables are similar)

1078 \end{table}

1079 \clearpage

1080 \subsection{tt1}{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command

1081 \lipsum[36]

1082 \subsubsection{TTT1} \lipsum[37]

1083 \paragraph{TTT1} \lipsum[38]

1084 \begin{figure}

1085 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}

1086 \begin{picture}(100,50)

1087 \end{picture}

1088 \caption[f2]{F2} % tests optional arg. of a caption

1089 \end{figure}

1090 \section{T2} \lipsum[39]

\chapter\* A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning

\addstarredchapter commands must also be starred.

\addcontentsline

\section\* 1091 \chapter\*{CCCCC} % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.

\paragraph\* 1092 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}

\part 1093 \lipsum[40]

\parttoc

\partlof

```

1094 \section*{U1}
1095 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1096 \lipsum[41]
1097 \subsection*{UU1}
1098 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
1099 \lipsum[42]
1100 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
1101 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1102 \lipsum[43]
1103 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1104 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1105 \lipsum[44]
1106 \section*{U2}
1107 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1108 \lipsum[45]
1109 \part{Second Part}
1110 \parttoc
1111 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1112 %%                                % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1113 \chapter{DDDDD}                    % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1114 %% \minitoc                        % the minitoc appears
1115 \lipsum[46]
1116 \section{V1} \lipsum[47]
1117 \subsection{VV1} \lipsum[48]
1118 \subsubsection{VVV1} \lipsum[49]
1119 \paragraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[50]
1120 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1121 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1122 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1123 \end{picture}
1124 \caption{F3}                       % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1125 \end{figure}
1126 \lipsum[51]
1127 \section{V2} \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1128 \chapter{EEEE}                    % this chapter should have a minitoc
1129 {%                                % left brace, see below
1130 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}        % depth of mini table of contents;
1131                                     % try with different values.
1132 \minitoc
1133 }                                    % right brace
1134 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1135 %% on minitocdepth.
1136 \lipsum[53]
1137 \section{W1}                        % with the given depth
1138 \lipsum[54]
1139 \subsection{WW1} \lipsum[55]

```

```

1140 \subsubsection{WWW1} \lipsum[56]
1141 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1142 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1143 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1144 \end{picture}
1145 \caption{F4}              % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1146 \end{figure}
1147 \lipsum[57]
1148 \paragraph{WWW1} \lipsum[58]
1149 \subparagraph{WWW1} \lipsum[59]
1150 \section{W2} \lipsum[60]

```

`\appendix` Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its

`\part`

`\parttoc` `parttoc`:

```

1151 \appendix
1152 \part{Appendices}
1153 \parttoc

```

`mtchideinmaintoc` Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional

`\chapter` argument:

`\minitoc`

```

1154 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1155 \chapter{Comments}
1156 \minitoc
1157 \section{C1} \lipsum[61]
1158 \section{C2} \lipsum[62]
1159 \section{C3} \lipsum[63]
1160 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1161 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1162 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1163 \end{picture}
1164 \caption{F5}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1165 \end{figure}
1166 \section{C4}
1167 \chapter{Evolution}
1168 \minitoc
1169 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1170 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1171 \section{D1} \lipsum[64]
1172 \section{D2} \lipsum[65]
1173 \section{D3} \lipsum[66]
1174 \section{D4} \lipsum[67]

```

`mtchideinmaintoc` We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this

`\addtocontents` `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1175 %% this line closes the omitted part
1176 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1177 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC

```

```

1178 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1179 \lipsum[68]
1180 \end{document}
1181 </mtc – bk>

```

## 4.10 The mtc-bo.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the tocloft package [429]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a minitoc and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads the geometry package [408], which defines the global page layout, the multicol package [301], the color package [116], because we want a colored background for the minitoc, the tocloft package [429], to change some parameters of the minitoc, and, at least, the minitoc package itself:

```

1182 <*mtc – bo>
1183 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1184 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1185 [2007/04/17]
1186 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1187 lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1188 \usepackage{multicol}
1189 \usepackage{color}

```

```

\setlength We use the tocloft package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the
\addtolength minitoc:
\cftsecindent
\cftsecnumwidth 1190 \usepackage{tocloft}
\cftsubsecindent 1191 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
\cftsubsecnumwidth 1192 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
\cftsubsubsecindent 1193 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
\cftsubsubsecnumwidth 1194 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1195 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1196 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1197 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

\cftpagenumbersoff Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands from tocloft:

```

1198 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1199 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

```

\mtcindent We load the minitoc package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the
\nomtcrule minitoc title. The hyperref package [357] can also be loaded (after minitoc).
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mtctitle

```



```

1200 \usepackage[francais,tight]{minitoc}
1201 \usepackage{hyperref}
1202 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1203 \nomtcrule          % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1204 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1205 %                  (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1206 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

We load also some packages for the french language (some are local):

```

1207 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1208 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1209 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1210 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
1211 \usepackage{mypatches}

```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```

1212 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1213 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT « RENCONTRE » AU LIEU DE « CHAPITRE » %
1214 % Sans saut de ligne (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ) %
1215 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1216 \makeatletter
1217 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1218   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1219   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1220    \interlinepenalty\@M
1221    \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1222     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1223     \fi
1224     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1225     \vskip 10\p@
1226   }}
1227 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1228   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1229   {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1230    \interlinepenalty\@M
1231    \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1232    \vskip 10\p@
1233   }} \makeatother

```

We define an environment (pageUn) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a multicols environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```

1234 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1235 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES %
1236 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1237 % param1: date de la rencontre
1238 % param2: nombre de périodes

```

```

1239 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1240 % param4: messages
1241 % param5: lecture
1242 % param6: exercices
1243 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1244 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1245 \parindent = 0.0in
1246 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1247 \begin{multicols}{2}
1248     {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1249     \textit{(#2)}}
1250     \vfill\columnbreak
1251     \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1252     #1
1253 \end{multicols}
1254 \vspace{-18pt}
1255 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1256
1257 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt} \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1258 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1259
1260 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1261 \colorbox[cmk]{.1,0,0}{%
1262     \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1263         \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1264         \minitoc%
1265     }}
1266 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1267
1268 \mtcskip
1269
1270 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1271
1272 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1273 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1274
1275 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1276
1277 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1278 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1279
1280 %: LECTURE
1281 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1282
1283 % EXERCICES
1284 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1285
1286 %\newpage
1287 \end{multicols}%
1288 }
1289 %{\newpage}
1290 {\hrule}
1291
1292 %\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne

```

```

1293
1294 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1295 %\parindent = 0.0in
1296 \parskip = 0.1in
1297
1298 %%%%%%%%%%%
1299 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS %
1300 %%%%%%%%%%%
1301 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1302 %\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1303

```

The body of the document:

```

1304 %%%%%%%%%%%
1305 %: BEGIN %
1306 %%%%%%%%%%%
1307 \begin{document}
1308 \dominitoc \faketableofcontents
1309 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1310 %\minitoc
1311 \begin{pageUn}
1312     {%1      Date du cours
1313             lundi 25 août
1314             }
1315     {%2      Durée du cours
1316             2 périodes
1317             }
1318     {%3      Liste des documents à~distribuer
1319             \item Plan de cours
1320             \item Fiche d'identification
1321             \item Grille horaire
1322             \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1323             }
1324     {%4      Ne pas oublier
1325             \item Acheter le livre de référence
1326             \item Apporter une disquette
1327             }
1328     {%5      Lecture
1329             Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp
1330             }
1331     {%6      Exercice
1332             Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1333             }
1334 \end{pageUn}
1335
1336 %%%%%%%%%%%
1337 \section{Titre de la section} %
1338 %%%%%%%%%%%
1339
1340 Texte dans la section
1341
1342 %%

```

```

1343 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1344 %%
1345 Bla bla bla
1346
1347 %%
1348 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1349 %%
1350 Bla bla bla
1351
1352
1353 %%%%%%%%%%%
1354 \section{Titre d'une autre section} %
1355 %%%%%%%%%%%
1356
1357 Texte dans la section
1358
1359 %%
1360 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1361 %%
1362 Bla bla bla
1363
1364 %%
1365 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1366 %%
1367 Bla bla bla
1368
1369 %%%%%%%%%%%
1370 \section{Encore une autre section} %
1371 %%%%%%%%%%%
1372
1373 Texte dans la section
1374
1375 \end{document}
1376 </mtc - bo>

```

## 4.11 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

`\dominitoc` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

`\tableofcontents`

```

1377 <*mtc - ch0>
1378 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1379 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1380 [2007/01/04]
1381 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1382 \begin{document}
1383 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`\chapter*` The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC  
`\mtcaddchapter` for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:  
`\minitoc`

```
1384 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1385 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1386 \minitoc
1387 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1388 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1389 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1390 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1391
1392 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1393 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1394 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1395 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1396 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1397 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1398 things by halves around here.
1399
1400 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1401 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1402 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1403 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1404
1405 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1406 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1407 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1408 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1409 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1410 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1411 things by halves around here.
```

`\chapter` The second chapter is normal:  
`\minitoc`

```
1412 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1413 \minitoc
1414 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1415 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1416 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1417 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1418
1419 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1420 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1421 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1422 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1423 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1424 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1425 things by halves around here.
1426 \end{document}
1427 </mtc - ch0>
```

## 4.12 The `mtc-cri.tex` document file

```

\mtcsetdepth This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and
\doparttoc   starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented:
\dominitoc   just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file.
\tableofcontents
  \part* 1428 (*mtc – cri)
\mtcaddpart 1429 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
  \adjustptc 1430 {report}
  \parttoc 1431 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}%
  \chapter* 1432 [2007/01/04]
\mtcaddchapter 1433 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
  \chapter 1434 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
  \minitoc 1435 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
  \section 1436 \usepackage%
  1437 [french2,tight]%
  1438 {minitoc}
  1439
  1440 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}
  1441
  1442 \begin{document}
  1443 \doparttoc \dominitoc
  1444 \tableofcontents
  1445 \part*{Présentation générale}
  1446 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale]
  1447 \adjustptc[-2]
  1448 \parttoc
  1449
  1450 Texte de la
  1451 présentation générale\ldots
  1452
  1453 \chapter*{Les auteurs}
  1454 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs]
  1455 Présentation des auteurs\ldots
  1456
  1457 \chapter*{Les lecteurs}
  1458 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs]
  1459 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots
  1460
  1461 \part{Première partie}
  1462 \parttoc
  1463 \chapter*{Introduction}
  1464 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
  1465 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
  1466 \minitoc
  1467 \section{Première section~A}
  1468 \section{Deuxième section~A}
  1469 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
  1470 \minitoc
  1471 \section{Première section~B}
  1472 \section{Deuxième section~B}
  1473
  1474 \part{Deuxième partie}
  1475 \parttoc
  1476 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
  1477 \minitoc
  1478 \section{Première section~C}
  1479 \section{Deuxième section~C}
  1480 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
  1481 \minitoc
  1482 \section{Première section~D}
  1483 \section{Deuxième section~D}
  1484 \end{document}
  1485 \end{mtc – cri}

```

## 4.13 The `mtc-fko.tex` document file

This is a document using the `scrbook` class. Without any precaution, some entries in the minitocs are not in the right font (bold sans serif) like in the main table of contents; moreover, the language of the minitoc titles is not correct because the options of the `babel` package are not transferred to the minitoc package. To solve the language problem, we just set “*german*” as a *global* option in the `\documentclass` command (babel and minitoc will hence use this global option).

```

1486 <*mtc – fko>
1487 \documentclass[german,a4paper,oneside]{scrbook}
1488 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fko.tex}%
1489 [2007/02/19]

```

`\mtcindent` Then we load the packages and set some parameters:

```

1490 \usepackage{babel}
1491 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1492 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} % optional

```

`\mtcsetfont` Then we set explicitly the fonts for the entries<sup>4</sup> and the font of the titles of the minitocs, knowing that the font command `\sectfont` is defined in `scrbook.cls`; we change also the

`\mtcsetttitlefont` title for the minitocs:

`\sectfont`

`\mtcsetttitle`

```

1493 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\sectfont\small}
1494 \mtcsetttitlefont{minitoc}{\sectfont\large}
1495 \mtcsetttitle{minitoc}{Inhalt}

```

`\dominitoc` Then the body of the document, with a chapter (with a minitoc) containing a section. The

`\tableofcontents` section entry did not appear in bold sans serif in the original document (before the corrections).

`\chapter`

`\minitoc`

```

1496 \begin{document}
1497 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1498 %
1499 \chapter{Ein serifenloses Kapitel}
1500 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
1501 \section{Dieser Text ist in minitoc serifenlos}
1502 Auch der Text \glqq Inhaltsangabe\grqq\ will
1503 so wie koma es definiert.
1504 \end{document}
1505 </mtc – fko>

```

## 4.14 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

`\doparttoc` This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the

`\dominitoc` chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

`\tableofcontents`

`\part`

```

1506 <*mtc – fo1>
1507 \documentclass{report}
1508 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
1509 [2007/01/04]
1510 \usepackage{lipsum}
1511 \usepackage{txfonts}

```

---

<sup>4</sup> Here we only gave the commands for the section entries in the minitocs, but analog commands may be used for lower entries.

```

1512 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1513 \begin{document}
1514 \doparttoc \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1515 \part{Introduction} \clearpage

```

`\parttoc` A first copy, with default fonts:

```

1516 \parttoc \clearpage

```

`\mtcsetfont` A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

`\parttoc`

```

1517 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1518 \parttoc \clearpage

```

`\mtcsetfont` A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

`\parttoc`

```

1519 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1520 \parttoc \clearpage

```

`\mtcsetfont` A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

`\parttoc`

`\chapter` 1521 `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}`

`\minitoc` 1522 `\parttoc \clearpage`

`\section` 1523 `\chapter{A very short chapter}`

`\subsection` 1524 `\minitoc`

1525 `\lipsum[1]`

1526 `\section{First section} \lipsum[2]`

1527 `\subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3]`

1528 `\subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]`

1529 `\section{Second section} \lipsum[5]`

1530 `\subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6]`

1531 `\subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]`

1532 `\end{document}`

1533 `</mtc – fo1>`

## 4.15 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of `mtc-fo1.tex` (see section 4.14 on the preceding page).

```

1534 <*mtc – fo2>
1535 \documentclass{report}
1536 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1537 [2007/01/04]

```



```

1538 \usepackage{lipsum}
1539 \usepackage{txfonts}
1540 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

```

\ptcfont   We declare the fonts with the old method:
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont 1541   \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont}      % (subsections)
\ptcPfont   1542   \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont}      % (subsubsections)
\ptcSPfont  1543   \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont}        % (paragraphs)
\plffont    1544   \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont}       % (subparagraphs)
\plfSfont   1545   \def\plffont{\ptcfont}           % (figures)
\pltfont    1546   \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont}         % (subfigures)
\pltSfont   1547   \def\pltfont{\ptcfont}          % (tables)
\doparttoc  1548   \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont}          % (subtables)
\dominitoc  1549 \begin{document}
\tableofcontents 1550 \doparttoc \dominitoc
\part       1551 \tableofcontents
           1552 \part{Introduction}
           1553 \clearpage

```

\parttoc A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```

1554 \parttoc \clearpage

```

\mtcsetfont A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```

\parttoc
1555 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1556 \parttoc \clearpage

```

\mtcsetfont A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```

\parttoc
1557 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1558 \parttoc \clearpage

```

\mtcsetfont A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```

\parttoc
1559 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1560 \parttoc \clearpage
1561 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1562 \minitoc
1563 \lipsum[1]
1564 \section{First section} \lipsum[2]
1565 \subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3] \subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]
1566 \section{Second section} \lipsum[5]
1567 \subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6] \subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]
1568 \end{document}
1569 </mtc – fo2>

```

## 4.16 The mtc-gap.tex document file

The mtc-gap.tex document file is described in section 2.44 on page 77.

## 4.17 The mtc-hi1.tex document file

The mtc-hi1.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 69.

## 4.18 The mtc-hi2.tex document file

The mtc-hi2.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 70.

## 4.19 The mtc-hia.tex document file

<pre> \dosectlot This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some \listoftables tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class. \section \sectlot 1570 (*mtc – hia) 1571 \documentclass% 1572 [oneside,a4paper]{article} 1573 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}% 1574 [2007/01/04] 1575 \usepackage{lipsum} 1576 \usepackage% 1577 [tight,insection]% 1578 {minitoc} 1579 \dosectlot 1580 \begin{document} 1581 \listoftables </pre>	<pre> 1582 \section{First section} 1583 \sectlot 1584 \lipsum[1] 1585 \begin{table}[hb] 1586 \caption{My first visible table} 1587 \end{table} 1588 \lipsum[2] 1589 \begin{table}[ht] 1590 \caption{A second visible table} 1591 \end{table} 1592 \lipsum[3] </pre>
---	---

\mtchideinmainlot For the *first* hidden table, we add \mtchideinmainlot *before* its caption:

<pre> \section \sectlot 1593 \begin{table}[hb] 1594 \mtchideinmainlot 1595 \caption{My first hidden table} 1596 \end{table} 1597 \lipsum[4-6] 1598 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1599 \caption{A second hidden table} 1600 \end{table} 1601 \lipsum[7] 1602 \section{Second section} 1603 \sectlot 1604 \lipsum[8] </pre>
---	--



`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:



<pre> 1605 \begin{table}[hb] 1606 \caption{My last hidden table} 1607 \endmtchideinmainlot 1608 \end{table} 1609 \lipsum[9] 1610 \begin{table}[ht] 1611 \caption{A third visible table} 1612 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1613 \lipsum[10] 1614 \begin{table}[hb] 1615 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1616 \end{table} 1617 \lipsum[11] 1618 \end{document} 1619 \end{mtc-hia} </pre>
---	---

## 4.20 The `mtc-hir.tex` document file

`\dominilot` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the `report` class.

`\listoftables`

`\chapter`

`\minilot`

```

1620 (*mtc - hir)
1621 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
1622 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}%
1623 [2007/01/04]
1624 \usepackage{lipsum}
1625 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1626 \dominilot
1627 \begin{document}
1628 \listoftables
1629 \chapter{First chapter}

```

```

1630 \minilot
1631 \lipsum[1]
1632 \begin{table}[hb]
1633 \caption{My first visible table}
1634 \end{table}
1635 \lipsum[2]
1636 \begin{table}[ht]
1637 \caption{A second visible table}
1638 \end{table}
1639 \lipsum[3]

```

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

`\chapter`

`\minilot`

```

1640 \begin{table}[hb]
1641 \mtchideinmainlot % <--
1642 \caption{My first hidden table}
1643 \end{table}
1644 \lipsum[4-6]
1645 \begin{table}[ht]

```

```

1646 \caption{A second hidden table}
1647 \end{table}
1648 \lipsum[7]
1649 \chapter{Second chapter}
1650 \minilot
1651 \lipsum[8]

```

`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:



<pre> 1652 \begin{table}[hb] 1653 \caption{My last hidden table} 1654 \endmtchideinmainlot % &lt;-- 1655 \end{table} 1656 \lipsum[9] 1657 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1658 \caption{A third visible table} 1659 \end{table} 1660 \lipsum[10] 1661 \begin{table}[hb] 1662 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1663 \end{table} </pre>
--	---

```

1664 \lipsum[11]
1665 \end{document}

```

```

1666 </mtc – hir>

```

## 4.21 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class scrbook.

```

1667 <*mtc – hop>
1668 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1669 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1670 [2007/01/04]
1671 \usepackage{lipsum}
1672 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1673 \begin{document}

```

```

\dominitoc We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF
\dominilof file is prepared):
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 1674 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1675 \dominilof \fakelistoffigures

```

```

\part* A starred part with its entry in the TOC:
\mtcaddpart
1676 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1677 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

```

\chapter Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:
\minitoc
\minilof 1678 \chapter{Chapter 1}
1679 \minitoc \minilof
1680 \section{Section one of first chapter} \lipsum[1]
1681 \begin{figure}
1682 \centering Test
1683 \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1684 \end{figure}
1685
1686 \section{Section two of first chapter} \lipsum[2]
1687 \begin{figure}
1688 \centering Test
1689 \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1690 \end{figure}
1691
1692 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1693 \minitoc \minilof
1694
1695 \section{Section one of second chapter} \lipsum[3]

```

```

1696 \begin{figure}
1697     \centering Test
1698     \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1699 \end{figure}
1700 \cleardoublepage
1701 \section{Section two of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
1702 \begin{figure}
1703     \centering Test
1704     \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1705 \end{figure}
1706 \end{document}
1707 </mtc - hop>

```

## 4.22 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1708 <*mtc - liv>
1709 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1710 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
1711 [2007/01/04]

```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine `\cleardoublepage`:

```

1712 \makeatletter
1713 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1714 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
1715   \if@twoside
1716     \ifodd\c@page\else
1717       \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
1718     \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
1719   \fi
1720   \fi
1721 }%
1722 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1723 \makeatother

```

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```

1724 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1725 \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}

```

We load two packages, `tocloft` [429], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [295], to customize the sectionning commands:

```
1726 \usepackage{tocloft}
1727 \usepackage{sectsty}
```

We load the minitoc package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```
1728 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
1729 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
1730 \usepackage{franc,frnew,mypatches}
1731 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}
```

```
\addtolength We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the
\cftsubsecindent minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:
\cftsetrmarg
\setcounter 1732 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
\chapterfont 1733 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
\thesection 1734 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
\sectionfont 1735 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
\raggedright 1736 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
1737 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
1738 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
1739 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)
```

Some informations for the title page:

```
1740 \title{Systèmes d'occultation} \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}
```

```
\dominitoc And the document body5:
\tableofcontents
\chapter 1741 \begin{document}
\minitoc 1742
\section 1743 \maketitle
\subsection 1744
\subsection* 1745 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
\subsubsection 1746
\addcontentsline 1747 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}%
1748 \label{chap+controle}
1749 \minitoc
1750
1751 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
1752 \index{taylorisme}
1753 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
1754 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
1755 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
1756 industrielle.
1757
1758 \subsection*[Après l'usine, le centre d'appel]\index{centre d'appel}
1759 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
1760 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
```

<sup>5</sup> The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

1761 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux  
 1762 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux  
 1763 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.  
 1764  
 1765 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}  
 1766 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour  
 1767 son destinataire.  
 1768  
 1769 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}  
 1770 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les  
 1771 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles  
 1772 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles  
 1773 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la  
 1774 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous  
 1775 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.  
 1776  
 1777 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}  
 1778 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les  
 1779 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]  
 1780  
 1781 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}  
 1782 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de  
 1783 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été  
 1784 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]  
 1785  
 1786 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}  
 1787 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle  
 1788 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public  
 1789 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]  
 1790  
 1791 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}  
 1792 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés  
 1793 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes  
 1794 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]  
 1795  
 1796 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}  
 1797 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système  
 1798 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître  
 1799 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un  
 1800 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les  
 1801 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]  
 1802  
 1803 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}  
 1804 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un  
 1805 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de  
 1806 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent  
 1807 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]  
 1808  
 1809 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}  
 1810 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne  
 1811 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]  
 1812  
 1813 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}  
 1814 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion

1815 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]  
1816  
1817 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}  
1818 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons  
1819 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup  
1820 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du  
1821 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]  
1822  
1823 \chapter{Le travail informatique}  
1824 \minitoc  
1825  
1826 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}  
1827  
1828 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}  
1829 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin  
1830 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des  
1831 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,  
1832 on pensait~[...]  
1833  
1834 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}  
1835 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du  
1836 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus  
1837 au sujet de la programmation.  
1838  
1839 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}  
1840 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres principes.  
1841 Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la préserver~[...]  
1842  
1843 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}  
1844 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}  
1845  
1846 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et  
1847 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?  
1848 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre  
1849 préoccupation.  
1850  
1851 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}  
1852 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions  
1853 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires  
1854 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le  
1855 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]  
1856  
1857 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}  
1858 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la  
1859 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les  
1860 expressions qui vont composer un programme.  
1861  
1862 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}  
1863 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe  
1864 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités  
1865 de programme fut la \emph{programmation  
1866 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]  
1867  
1868 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}



```

1869 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
1870 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
1871 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
1872
1873 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
1874 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
1875 modèle~[...]
1876 \end{document}
1877 </mtc – liv>

```

## 4.23 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

<pre> 1878 &lt;*mtc – mem&gt; 1879 \documentclass% 1880   [oneside]{memoir} 1881 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}% 1882   [2007/01/04] 1883 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 1884 %% \usepackage{hyperref} 1885 %% \usepackage{memhfixc} 1886 \usepackage% 1887   [tight]{minitoc} 1888 %% \usepackage{mtcoff} 1889 \begin{document} </pre>
--	--

\dominitoc We use the starred form \tableofcontents\* specific of the memoir class. Note that the the  
\tableofcontents\* \chapter command has *two* optional arguments in the memoir class.

<pre> \chapter \minitoc 1890 \dominitoc \section 1891 \tableofcontents* 1892 1893 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC} 1894 \minitoc 1895 \lipsum[1] \newpage \lipsum[2] 1896 \section{S-1-one} \lipsum[3] 1897 \section{S-1-two} \lipsum[4] </pre>	<pre> 1898 1899 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC} 1900 \minitoc 1901 \lipsum[4] \newpage \lipsum[5] 1902 \section{S-2-one} \lipsum[6] 1903 \section{S-2-two} \lipsum[7] 1904 \end{document} 1905 &lt;/mtc – mem&gt; </pre>
---	---

## 4.24 The mtc-mm1.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the necessary adaptations for fonts. First, the preamble:

```

1906 <*mtc – mm1>
1907 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
1908 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
1909   [2007/01/04]
1910 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text

```

`\providecommand` We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```
\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1911 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 1912 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
```

`\renewcommand` Then we redefine them:

```
\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1913 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
1914 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
```

`\mtcsetfont` We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, but without any success:

```
1915%% hyperref before minitoc, optional
1916%% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref}\usepackage{memhfixc}
1917\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1918\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
1919\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape
```

`\providecommand` But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```
\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1920 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 1921 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
\renewcommand 1922 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
1923 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```
\mtcsettitle
1924 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
1925%% this is working beautifully ->
1926 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}
```

`\dominitoc` The document body:

```
\tableofcontents*
\chapter 1927 \begin{document}
\minitoc 1928 \dominitoc \tableofcontents*
\section 1929
1930 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
1931 \minitoc
1932 \section{This section} \lipsum[1]
1933 \section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
1934 \section{Third section} \lipsum[3]
1935 \end{document}
1936 </mtc - mm1>
```

## 4.25 The mtc-mu.tex document file

`\mtcindent` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted  
`\dominitoc` in the text with the wrapfig package [17].  
`\tableofcontents`

```

1937 (*mtc - mu)
1938 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
1939 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
1940 [2007/01/04]
1941 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1942 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1943 \usepackage{wrapfig}
1944 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
1945 \begin{document}
1946 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`wrapfigure` A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the  
`minipage` half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:  
`\chapter`  
`\linewidth` 1947 \chapter{Mulspren}\label{chapter+mulspren}  
`\vspace` 1948 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}  
`\baselineskip` 1949 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}  
`\minitoc` 1950 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}  
1951 \minitoc  
1952 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}  
1953 \end{minipage}  
1954 \end{wrapfigure}

The remaining of the text:

```

1955 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
1956 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
1957 These gulfs were often created when programming environments used
1958 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
1959 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
1960 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
1961 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
1962 notations helped users understand programs.
1963 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
1964 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
1965 programming gulfs.
1966 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
1967 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
1968 programming gulfs.
1969
1970 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
1971 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
1972 benefits of multiple notations.
1973 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one

```

```

1974 similar to conventional code.
1975 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
1976 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
1977 This is programming using dual notations.
1978 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
1979 Mulspren's language signature is \LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}.
1980
1981 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
1982 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.
1983
1984 \section{section 1}
1985 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
1986 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
1987 \section{section 3}
1988 \section{section 4}
1989 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
1990 bla bla bla bla bla}

```

thebibliography I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

```

\bibitem
1991 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
1992 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
1993 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
1994 \newblock Mulspren: a multiple language simulation programming
1995 environment.
1996 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
1997 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
1998 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
1999
2000 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
2001 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2002 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.
2003 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
2004 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
2005 Australia, 2005.
2006 Australian Computer Society, Inc.
2007 \end{thebibliography}
2008 \end{document}
2009 \<mtc - mu>

```

## 4.26 The mtc-nom.tex document file

This document<sup>6</sup> shows the interaction of the minitoc package with the nomencl package [416], when this package uses its option intoc.

```

2010 \<mtc - nom>
2011 \documentclass[oneside]{book}

```

<sup>6</sup> It is derived from the example given in the documentation of nomencl.

```
2012 \ProvidesFile{mtc-nom.tex}%
2013 [2007/04/02]
```

`\makenomenclature` We load the packages and prepare the nomenclature:

```
2014 \usepackage[intoc]{nomencl}
2015 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2016 \makenomenclature
2017 \begin{document}
```

`\dominitoc` We prepare the minitocs and the table of contents:  
`\tableofcontents`

```
2018 \dominitoc
2019 \tableofcontents
```

`\chapter` A first chapter, with its minitoc, a section and some entries for the nomenclature:  
`\minitoc`  
`\section` 2020 `\chapter{Angels}`  
`\nomenclature` 2021 `\minitoc`  
2022 `\section{Main equations}`  
2023 `\begin{equation}`  
2024 `a=\frac{N}{A}`  
2025 `\end{equation}`%  
2026 `\nomenclature{$a$}{The number of angels per unit area}%`  
2027 `\nomenclature{$N$}{The number of angels per needle point}%`  
2028 `\nomenclature{$A$}{The area of the needle point}%`  
2029 `The equation  $\sigma = m a$`   
2030 `\nomenclature{$\sigma$}{The total mass of angels per unit area}%`  
2031 `\nomenclature{$m$}{The mass of one angel}`  
2032 `follows easily.`

`\printnomenclature` We print the nomenclature; but that adds a chapter entry in the TOC because of the `intoc`  
`\mtcfixnomenclature` option of the `nomencl`, hence we add a correction with `\mtcfixnomenclature` (try to remove the correction and look at the result: the next minitocs are wrong):

```
2033 \printnomenclature \mtcfixnomenclature
```

`\chapter` A second chapter, with its minitoc, a section, and an entry in the nomenclature. This entry will  
`\minitoc` be present in the nomenclature printed above.  
`\section`  
`\nomenclature` 2034 `\chapter{Demons}`  
2035 `\minitoc`  
2036 `\section{False equations}`  
2037 `\begin{equation} i=\sqrt{-1} \end{equation}`  
2038 `\nomenclature{$i$}{The imaginary unit}%`  
2039 `\end{document}`  
2040 `</mtc - nom>`

## 4.27 The mtc-ocf.tex document file

This document shows the use of the `open` and `close` features of the `minitoc` package to prepare a `minitoc` on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [136] is used to have a wide text area.

```

2041 (*mtc - ocf)
2042 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2043 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ocf.tex}%
2044 [2007/04/02]
2045 \usepackage{multicol} % to make multi-columns.
2046 \usepackage[french]{babel}
2047 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2048 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
2049 \usepackage{fullpage}
2050 % to allow a page breaks before a section
2051 \let\osection\section \def\section{\penalty-1\relax\osection}
2052 %
2053 \usepackage[french,tight]{minitoc}

```

`\mtcsetfeature multicols` The “open” feature for minitocs opens a `multicols` environment, with 3 columns:

```
2054 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\vspace{-1ex}\begin{multicols}{3}}
```

`\mtcsetfeature multicols` The “close” feature for minitocs close the `multicols` environment:

```
2055 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\vspace{-1.5ex}}
```

As the `multicols` environment adds some vertical spacing before and after it, we added some corrections.

`\mtcsetfeature \raggedcolumns \flushcolumns` As the number of sections is not a multiple of three (or some entries are long), we cannot always balance the columns nicely, so we use `ragged columns`, using the “before” and “after” features:

```

2056 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2057 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}

```

`\dominitoc \tableofcontents` And the body of the document, a chapter with many sections, listed in a `minitoc`:

<code>\chapter</code>	2058 \begin{document}	2065 \section{Bravo}
<code>\minitoc</code>	2059 \dominitoc	2066 \section{Charlie}
<code>\section</code>	2060 \tableofcontents	2067 \section{Delta}
	2061 \chapter{Premier chapitre}	2068 \section{Echo}
	2062 \minitoc	2069 \section{Fox-Trot}
	2063 % A lot of sections	2070 \section{Golf}
	2064 \section{Alfa}	2071 \section{Hotel}

2072 \section{India}	2082 \section{Sierra}
2073 \section{Juliet}	2083 \section{Tango}
2074 \section{Kilo}	2084 \section{Uniform}
2075 \section{Lima}	2085 \section{Victor}
2076 \section{Mike}	2086 \section{Whiskey}
2077 \section{November}	2087 \section{X-Ray}
2078 \section{Oscar}	2088 \section{Yankee}
2079 \section{Papa}	2089 \section{Zulu}
2080 \section{Quebec}	2090 \end{document}
2081 \section{Romeo}	2091 </mtc – ocf>

## 4.28 The mtc-ofs.tex document file

This document shows the use of the `\mtcsetoffset` command to shift a minitoc to the left, trying to put it along the left margin of the text. The `open` and `close` features of the minitoc package are also used to prepare the minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [136] is used to have a wide text area.

```

2092 < *mtc – ofs>
2093 \documentclass[a4paper]{book}
2094 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ofs.tex}%
2095 [2007/04/17]
2096 \usepackage{lipsum}
2097 \usepackage{multicol}
2098 \usepackage{fullpage}
2099 %\usepackage[a4paper]{geometry}
2100 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

`\setlength` We remove the minitoc indentation and set up the `open` and `close` features:  
`\mtcindent`

```

\mtcsetfeature 2101 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\raggedcolumns 2102 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\kern1sp\vspace*{-.1ex}\begin{multicols}{4}[\kern-2.5ex]}
\flushcolumns 2103 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\kern-2.ex}
multicols      2104 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
                2105 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}

```

`\dominitoc` We begin the document with a chapter and its minitoc:  
`\faketableofcontents`

```

\chapter 2106 \begin{document}
\minitoc 2107 \dominitoc \faketableofcontents
          2108 \chapter{Introduction}
          2109 \minitoc

```

`\mtcsetoffset` As the minitoc is not aligned on the left margin of the text, we set a negative offset and print  
`\mtcskip` again the minitoc:  
`\minitoc`

```

2110 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-1.75em}
2111 \mtcskip \minitoc

```

```

\mtcsetoffset But then the minitoc does not use the full width of the text; it would be better to modify both
\setlength the offset and the indentation, each by the half of the total correction:
\mtcindent
\mtcskip 2112 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-0.875em}
\minitoc 2113 \setlength{\mtcindent}{-0.875em}
2114 \mtcskip \minitoc

```

```

\section Then a lot of sections, with some text:

```

```

2115 \section{Alfa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2116 \section{Bravo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2117 \section{Charlie} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2118 \section{Delta} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2119 \section{Echo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2120 \section{Fox-Trot} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2121 \section{Golf} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2122 \section{Hotel} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2123 \section{India} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2124 \section{Juliet} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2125 \section{Kilo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2126 \section{Lima} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2127 \section{Mike} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2128 \section{November} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2129 \section{Oscar} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2130 \section{Papa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2131 \section{Quebec} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2132 \section{Romeo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2133 \section{Sierra} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2134 \section{Tango} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2135 \section{Uniform} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2136 \section{Victor} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2137 \section{Whiskey} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2138 \section{X-Ray} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2139 \section{Yankee} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2140 \section{Zulu} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2141 \end{document}
2142 </mtc - ofs>

```

**Note:** if you add a sub-section in this example, the corresponding entry in the minitoc may stick out if it appears in the last column, and the offset and the indentation should then be corrected again.





## 4.29 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

`\l@subfigure` This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures  
`\@dottedxxxline` (here with the subfigure package [126]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their  
`\ext@subfigure` depth.

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
2143 \*mtc - sbf
2144 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2145 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2146 [2007/01/04]
2147 \usepackage{subfigure}
2148 \makeatletter
2149 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{\@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2150 \makeatother
```

We load the varioref [302] package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```
2151 \usepackage{varioref}
2152 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

`\newcommand` We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:  
`\goodap`  
`\subfigtopskip` 2153 \newcommand{\goodap}{%  
`\subfigbottomskip` 2154 \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%  
`\setcounter` 2155 \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}  
2156 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}  
2157 \begin{document}

`\mtcsetdepth` We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:  
`\mtcsetfont`

```
2158 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2159 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2160 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2161 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2162 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2163 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2164 %% no tables in this document
2165 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2166 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2167 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2168 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```

\dominilof We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 2169 \dominilof \listoffigures \tableofcontents

```

```

\chapter A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:
\minilof
\mtcskip 2170 \chapter{First Chapter}
\mtcsetdepth 2171 \minilof \mtcskip
2172 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1} \minilof

```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```

2173 \begin{figure}
2174 \centering
2175   \fbox{%
2176     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2177       \raggedright
2178       \begin{center}
2179         \subfigure[First]{%
2180           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2181           \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2182         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2183           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2184         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2185           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2186         \caption{Three subfigures.}\label{3figs}%
2187       \end{center}
2188       \vspace{4pt}%
2189       This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2190       Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2191     \end{minipage}}
2192 \end{figure}
2193 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
2194 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2195 \end{document}
2196 \</mtc - sbf>

```

### 4.30 The mtc-scr.tex document file

`\setcounter` This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class [317, 318, 364], `screpr`. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2197 \<*mtc - scr>
2198 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{screpr}
2199 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2200 [2007/01/04]
2201 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}

```

```

2202 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2203 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2204 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The hyperref package, if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc:

```

2205 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

`\pagenumbering` With a KOMA-Script class [317, 318, 364], use the `k-tight` package option in place of  
`\dominitoc` `tight`; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:  
`\tableofcontents`

```

2206 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2207 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2208 \begin{document}
2209 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2210 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`\listoftables` In this document class, with the `liststotoc` class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a  
`\mtcaddchapter` chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```

2211 \listoftables \mtcaddchapter

```

`\pagenumbering` With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after  
`\chapter` `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the `tocbibind`  
`\setcounter` package.

```

\appendix
\minitoc 2212 \clearpage
\section 2213 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits
2214 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1
2215
2216 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}
2217
2218 Text.
2219
2220 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}
2221
2222 \begin{table}
2223   \centering
2224   \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2225     \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} & \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft \\
2226     \\
2227     \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2228     Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort \\
2229   \end{longtable}
2230   \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2231 \end{table}
2232
2233 Text.
2234

```

```

2235 \appendix
2236 \chapter{Dokumente}
2237 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2238
2239 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2240 Text.\
2241 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2242 \end{document}
2243 </mtc – scr>

```

### 4.31 The mtc-syn.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

`\dominitoc` We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2244 (*mtc – syn)
2245 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2246 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2247 [2007/01/04]
2248 \usepackage{minitoc}
2249 \begin{document}
2250 \dominitoc

```

`\chapter*` Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument  
`\mtcaddchapter` is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2251 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2252 \mtcaddchapter % Added for a starred chapter
2253 % without entry in the ToC
2254 Dedication goes here
2255
2256 \chapter*{Abstract}
2257 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2258 % with an entry in the ToC
2259 Abstract goes here
2260
2261 \chapter*{Declaration}
2262 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2263 % with an entry in the ToC
2264 Declaration goes here

```

`\tableofcontents` The table of contents comes here. Looking at the *document.log* file shows that the minitoc  
`\decrementmtc` files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```

2265 \tableofcontents \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

```

<pre> \chapter The following chapters are normal (unstarred): \minitoc \section 2266 \chapter{Chapter One} 2267 \minitoc 2268 \section{Section 1} Some text. 2269 \section{Section 2} Some text. 2270 2271 \chapter{Chapter Two} 2272 \minitoc </pre>	<pre> 2273 \section{Another Section 1} 2274 Some more text. 2275 \section{Another Section 2} 2276 Some more text. 2277 \end{document} 2278 \&lt;/mtc – syn&gt; </pre>
---	---

### 4.32 The mtc-tbi.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbind package [432].

<pre> 2279 \*mtc – tbi&gt; 2280 \documentclass[a4paper]{report} </pre>	<pre> 2281 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}% 2282 [2007/01/04] </pre>
--	---

<pre> \dominitoc We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option nottoc for the tocbind package: \tableofcontents 2283 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbind} 2284 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} </pre>	<pre> 2285 \begin{document} 2286 \dominitoc \tableofcontents </pre>
--	---

<pre> \mtcaddchapter As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction<sup>7</sup>: 2287 %% tocbind compatibility 2288 %% not used if nottoc option : </pre>	<pre> 2289 %% \mtcaddchapter[] </pre>
---	---------------------------------------

<pre> \chapter* A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it; \mtcaddchapter 2290 \chapter*{Introduction} </pre>	<pre> 2291 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction] </pre>
---	--

<pre> \chapter Some normal chapters: \minitoc \section 2292 \chapter{Title of chapter~1} 2293 \minitoc 2294 \section{as1} \section{as2} 2295 \chapter{Title of chapter~2} 2296 \minitoc 2297 \section{bs1} \section{bs2} </pre>	<pre> 2298 \chapter{Title of chapter~3} 2299 \minitoc 2300 \section{cs1} \section{cs2} 2301 \chapter{Title of chapter~4} 2302 \minitoc 2303 \section{ds1} \section{ds2} </pre>
---	--

<sup>7</sup> It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

`\chapter*` Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:  
`\mtcaddchapter`

2304 <code>\chapter*{Conclusion}</code>		2305 <code>\mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]</code>
---	--	--

`\chapter*` Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in  
`\mtcaddchapter` the TOC:

<code>\minitoc</code> <code>\section*</code> 2306 <code>\chapter*{Appendices}</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> 2307 <code>\mtcaddchapter[Appendices]</code> 2308 <code>\minitoc</code> 2309 <code>\section*{first appendix}</code> 2310 <code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}%</code>		2311 <code>{first appendix}</code> 2312 <code>\section*{second appendix}</code> 2313 <code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}%</code> 2314 <code>{second appendix}</code>
---	--	--

`\listoffigures` The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the `tocbibind` package), so a correction must  
`\mtcaddchapter` be applied:

2315 <code>%% tocbibind compatibility</code>		2316 <code>\listoffigures \mtcaddchapter</code>
--	--	---

`thebibliography` The `tocbibind` package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the  
`\bibitem` recommended correction:

<code>\adjustmtc</code> 2317 <code>\begin{thebibliography}{3}</code> 2318 <code>\bibitem {s1}{title ...}</code> 2319 <code>\end{thebibliography}</code> 2320 <code>%% tocbibind compatibility</code>		2321 <code>\adjustmtc</code> 2322 <code>\end{document}</code> 2323 <code>&lt;/mtc - tbi&gt;</code>
--	--	--

### 4.33 The `mtc-tlc.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of the `article` class. It is the example of [306, page 58], modernized.

2324 <code>&lt;*mtc - tlc&gt;</code>		2326 <code>\ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}%</code>
2325 <code>\documentclass{article}</code>		2327 <code>[2007/01/04]</code>

`\setlength` Dimensions of the text on the page:  
`\textwidth`

<code>\textheight</code> 2328 <code>\setlength{\textwidth}%</code> 2329 <code>{124.20126pt}</code>		2330 <code>\setlength{\textheight}%</code> 2331 <code>{19\baselineskip}</code>
---	--	---

<pre> \setlength We load the minitoc package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for \stcindent the secttocs: \mtcsetfont \mtcsetdepth 2332 \usepackage{minitoc}                 2333 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}                 2334 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}% </pre>	<pre>                 2335 {\footnotesize}                 2336 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3} </pre>
<pre> \dosecttoc We prepare the secttocs, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed: \fakeableofcontents     \section 2337 \begin{document}     \secttoc 2338 \dosecttoc[e] \fakeableofcontents     \subsection 2339 \subsubsection 2340 \section{Afghanistan} \secttoc                 2341 \subsection{Geography}                 2342 \subsubsection{Total area}                 2343 647,500 km2                 2344 \subsubsection{Land area}                 2345 647,500 km2                 2346 \subsubsection{History} \ldots </pre>	
	<pre> 2347 2348 \section{Albania} \secttoc 2349 \subsection{Geography} 2350 \subsubsection{Total area} 2351 28,750 km2 2352 \subsubsection{Land area} 2353 27,400 km2 2354 \subsubsection{History} \ldots 2355 \end{document} 2356 \&lt;/mtc - tlc&gt; </pre>

### 4.34 The mtc-tlo.tex document file

The mtc-tlo.tex document file is described in section 2.46 on page 80.

### 4.35 The mtc-tsf.tex document file

This document<sup>8</sup> shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfig package [128]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth. The old package fullpage [136] is used to have a wide text area.

The preamble loads the subfig package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2357 \<mtc - tsf>
2358 \documentclass{report}
2359 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}[2008/04/03]%
2360 \usepackage{fullpage}
2361 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2362 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

---

<sup>8</sup> It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the subfig package [128].

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2363 \newdimen\testtemp
2364 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2365   \testtemp #1%
2366   \advance\testtemp .5pt \divide\testtemp 2%
2367   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2368     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2369   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2370   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2371     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt}\hfil}}
2372 %%
2373 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2374 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2375   \fbox{\vbox to 1in{%
2376     \vfil\hbox to 2in{\parbox{2in}{\centering #1}}\vfil
2377     \vbox to 0pt{\vss\hbox to 2in{\hfil\ru{1.1in}\hfil}}}}}

```

```

\setcounter The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and
\dominilof the list of figures:
\listoffigures
2378 \begin{document}
2379 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2} \dominilof \listoffigures
2380 \newpage

```

```

\chapter A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print its minilof twice, with different depths:
\minilof
\mtcskip 2381 \chapter{Reference Test}
\mtcsetdepth 2382 \minilof \mtcskip
2383 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2384 \minilof
2385
2386 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2387   \centering
2388   \subfigure{%
2389     \label{fig+A}\figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\(no opt)}}
2390   \quad
2391   \subfigure[][%
2392     \label{fig+B}\figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\(empty opt)}}\\
2393
2394   \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2395     \label{fig+C}\figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\(opt)}}
2396   \quad
2397   \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2398     \label{fig+D}\figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\(empty opt and opt)}}
2399   \quad
2400   \subfigure[][][%
2401     \label{fig+E}\figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\(both empty opt)}}\\
2402
2403   \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2404     \label{fig+F}\figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\(both opt)}}

```



```

2405 \quad
2406 \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][\%
2407 \label{fig+G}\figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\(opt and empty opt)}}
2408
2409 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2410 \label{fig+main}%
2411 \end{figure}
2412
2413 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2414 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2415 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2416 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2417 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2418
2419 \section{Centering Test}
2420 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2421 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2422 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2423 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2424 have centered labels.
2425 \end{document}
2426 </mtc - tsf>

```

# Chapter 5

## Messages

### Contents

<b>5.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Messages from the minitoc package</b>	<b>152</b>
5.2.1	Informative messages	152
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	160
5.2.2	Warning messages	164
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	170
5.2.3	Error messages	186
<b>5.3</b>	<b>Messages from the mtcoff package</b>	<b>200</b>
5.3.1	Warning messages	200
<b>5.4</b>	<b>Message from the mtcpatchmem package</b>	<b>203</b>

### Tables

<b>5.1</b>	<b>Message identifiers</b>	<b>151</b>
------------	----------------------------	------------

## 5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and is associates, mtcoff and mtcpatchmem<sup>1</sup>. The table 5.1 on the next page lists all messages; in this table, you can click on a message identifier to find quickly its meaning.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation,

<sup>1</sup> The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may vary.

Table 5.1: Message identifiers (click on a message identifier to see its meaning).

E0001	E0002	E0003	E0004	E0005	E0006	E0007	E0008	E0009	E0010
E0011	E0012	E0013	E0014	E0015	E0016	E0017	E0018	E0019	E0020
E0021	E0022	E0023	E0024	E0025	E0026	E0027	E0028	E0029	E0030
E0031	E0032	E0033	E0034	E0035	E0036	E0037	E0038	E0039	E0040
E0041	E0042	E0043							
F0001	F0002	F0003	F0004	F0005	F0006	F0007	F0008	F0009	
I0000									
I0001	I0002	I0003	I0004	I0005	I0006	I0007	I0008	I0009	I0010
I0011	I0012	I0013	I0014	I0015	I0016	I0017	I0018	I0019	I0020
I0021	I0022	I0023	I0024	I0025	I0026	I0027	I0028	I0029	I0030
I0031	I0032	I0033	I0034	I0035	I0036	I0037	I0038	I0039	I0040
I0041	I0042	I0043	I0044	I0045	I0046	I0047	I0048	I0049	I0050
I0051	I0052	I0053							
M0001									
W0001	W0002	W0003	W0004	W0005	W0006	W0007	W0008	W0009	W0010
W0011	W0012	W0013	W0014	W0015	W0016	W0017	W0018	W0019	W0020
W0021	W0022	W0023	W0024	W0025	W0026	W0027	W0028	W0029	W0030
W0031	W0032	W0033	W0034	W0035	W0036	W0037	W0038	W0039	W0040
W0041	W0042	W0043	W0044	W0045	W0046	W0047	W0048	W0049	W0050
W0051	W0052	W0053	W0054	W0055	W0056	W0057	W0058	W0059	W0060
W0061	W0062	W0063	W0064	W0065	W0066	W0067	W0068	W0069	W0070
W0071	W0072	W0073	W0074	W0075	W0076	W0077	W0078	W0079	W0080
W0081	W0082	W0083	W0084	W0085	W0086	W0087	W0088	W0089	W0090
W0091	W0092	W0093	W0094	W0095	W0096	W0097	W0098	W0099	

but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).

- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.
- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
  - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
  - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.

- *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
- *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
- *COMMAND* The name of the command.
- *COUNTER* The name of a  $\LaTeX$  counter.
- *document* The name of your document, without its `.tex` extension.
- *EXTENSION* The extension part of the name of a file.
- *FILE* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the *document.toc* file, the *document.lof* file, or the *document.lot* file).
- *INTERNAL\_NAME* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
- *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
- *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
- *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
- *NEW\_TITLE* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsetttitle`.
- *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
- *OFFSET* The new value of an offset redefined by `\mtcsetoffset`.
- *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
- *SEQUENCE* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
- *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
- *VALUE* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 457.

## 5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

### 5.2.1 Informative messages

I0000

---

Package: minitoc 2008/04/03 v57 Package minitoc (JPDF)

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPDF” are my initials. This message has no real identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`, but, for indexing it, we use `I0000`.

---

I0001

```
Package minitoc Info: I0001
(minitoc)          *** minitoc package, version 57 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

---

I0002

```
Package minitoc Info: I0002
(minitoc)          Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

---

I0003

```
Package minitoc Info: I0003
(minitoc)          chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

---

I0004

```
Package minitoc Info: I0004
(minitoc)          chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

---

I0005

```
Package minitoc Info: I0005
(minitoc)          compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the `hyperref` package.

I0006

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0006
(minitoc)           document.EXTENSION is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

I0007

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0007
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0008

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0008
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0009

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0009
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document.maf* file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 53. This option is the default since version #48.

I0010

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0010
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language<sup>2</sup> by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

---

<sup>2</sup> The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

I0011

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0011
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

I0012

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0012
(minitoc)           Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

I0013

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0013
(minitoc)           \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)           "COUNTER" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0014

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0014
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)           "\SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *INTERNAL\_NAME* with the given *SEQUENCE*.

I0015

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0015
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "macro" as "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *SEQUENCE* of font commands.

I0016

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

I0017

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "NEW_TITLE" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

I0018

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\INTERNAL_NAME` macro which the given sequence *SEQUENCE*.

I0019

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0019
(minitoc(hints))   No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))   in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

I0020

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0020
(minitoc)          old version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.



---

I0021

Package minitoc Info: I0021  
(minitoc) Page numbers are activated  
(minitoc) for the *ARG1*s on input line *LINE*.

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

---

I0022

Package minitoc Info: I0022  
(minitoc) Page numbers are inhibited  
(minitoc) for the *ARG1*s on input line *LINE*.

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

---

I0023

Package minitoc Info: I0023  
(minitoc) part level macros available.

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

---

I0024

Package minitoc Info: I0024  
(minitoc) PREPARING MINITOCs FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *FILE*.

---

I0025

Package minitoc Info: I0025  
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *FILE*.

---

I0026

Package minitoc Info: I0026  
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *FILE*.

---

I0027

```
Package minitoc Info: I0027
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

---

I0028

```
Package minitoc Info: I0028
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

---

I0029

```
Package minitoc Info: I0029
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

---

I0030

```
Package minitoc Info: I0030
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.
```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

---

I0031

```
Package minitoc Info: I0031
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

I0032

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0032
(minitoc)           This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)           a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)           incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)           We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

I0033

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0033
(minitoc)           Writing document.EXTENSION.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

I0034

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0034
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINILOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *FILE*.

I0035

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0035
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *FILE*.

I0036

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0036
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *FILE*.

I0037

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0037
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominilot` command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *FILE*.

I0038

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0038
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dopartlot` command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *FILE*.

I0039

---

```
Package minitoc Info: I0039
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosectlot` command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *FILE*.

### 5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

I0040

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0040
(minitoc(hints))      The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))      loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))      You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))      documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.27](#) on page [71](#).

I0041

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0041
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.24](#) on page [67](#).

I0042

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0042
(minitoc(hints))      --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 65.

I0043

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0043
(minitoc(hints))      --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 51. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364] compatible with `minitoc`.

I0044

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0044
(minitoc(hints))      --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `memoir` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 66.

I0045

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0045
(minitoc(hints))      The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))      has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))      on input line LINE.
```

A `minitoc` preparation command has been invoked more than once.

I0046

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0046
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 51.

I0047

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0047
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 65.

I0048

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0048
(minitoc(hints))          Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))          hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))          because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))          commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))          without any previous check.

```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

I0049

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0049
(minitoc(hints))          ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints are eventually given below.

```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

I0050

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0050
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0051

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0051
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0052

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0052
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset redefines the offset
(minitoc)                "OFFSET" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetoffset` macro changes the value of the specified offset and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0053

---

```

Package minitoc Info: I0053
(minitoc)                You have loaded the PACK package;
(minitoc)                please be aware that the minitoc package
(minitoc)                facilities can not be used for new types
(minitoc)                of floats defined by the PACK package
```

The minitoc package does not manage new types of floats defined via the float [281], floatrow [265], trivfloat [444] and rotfloat [382] packages<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> As the trivfloat and rotfloat packages load the float package, this message will then appear twice!

## 5.2.2 Warning messages

W0001

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0001
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0002

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0002
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0003

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0003
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0004

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0004
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.



W0005

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0005
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0006

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0006
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0007

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0007
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0008

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0008
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0009

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0009
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0010

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0010
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command.  
Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0011

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0011
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command.  
Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0012

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0012
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command.  
Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0013

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0013
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTTocs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command.  
Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0014

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0014
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command.  
Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0015

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0015
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0016

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0016
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0017

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0017
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.

```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

W0018

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0018
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

W0019

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0019
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.

```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

---

W0020

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0020
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

---

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , but the minitoc package will still try to continue. It would be better to update your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  installation.




---

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  installation as soon as possible.




---

W0093

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0093
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                The full list of the missing language files
(minitoc)                is given in the W0094 warning message.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The full list of the missing language files is given in the W0094 warning message.

I0050

I0051

W0094

W0094

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0094
(minitoc)                Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)                ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

W0095

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0095
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixnomenclature without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0096

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0096
(minitoc)                \mtcfixnomenclature can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0098

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0098
(minitoc)                --- You have used the \nofiles command
(minitoc)                in your preamble; all preparation commands
(minitoc)                in the body of the document will be ignored.
```

You have used the `\nofiles` command in the preamble of your document; hence the preparation commands will be ignored in your document. Please verify that the mini-table auxiliary files are in their final state. See page 30.

### 5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

---

W0023

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0023
(minitoc(hints))           --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))           of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 63.

---

W0024

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0024
(minitoc(hints))           Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))           in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the `document.log` file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

---

W0025

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0025
(minitoc(hints))           --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))           with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the alphanum package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.




---

W0026

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0026
(minitoc(hints))           --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))           with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the amsart document class which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0027

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0027
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0028

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0028
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \chapter command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0029

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0029
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0030

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0030
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \part command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0031

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0031
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))      loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))      You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))      ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 31, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



W0032

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0032
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))      too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))      dated of 2005/04/18 at least.

```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

W0033

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0033
(minitoc(hints))      The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 73.

W0034

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0034
(minitoc(hints))      The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption2` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 73. Note that the `caption2` package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the `caption` package.



W0035

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0035
(minitoc(hints))             The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 73.

W0036

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0036
(minitoc(hints))             The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 73.

W0037

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0037
(minitoc(hints))             The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 71.

W0038

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0038
(minitoc(hints))             The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 74.

W0039

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0039
(minitoc(hints))             --- The \section command is altered
                                after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0040

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0040
(minitoc(hints))          --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. See note 21 on page 54.



W0041

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0041
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                          empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0042

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0042
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                          empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0043

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0043
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                          empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

W0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0044
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

W0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0045
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

W0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0046
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

W0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0047
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0048

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0048
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0049

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0049
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0050

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0050
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0051

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0051
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0052

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0052
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0053

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0053
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 55.

W0054

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0054
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 55.

W0055

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0055
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 55.

W0056

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0056
(minitoc(hints))           You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))           \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))           option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page 31.

---

W0057

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0057
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

---

W0058

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0058
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

---

W0059

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0059
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

---

W0060

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0060
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

---

W0061

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0061
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

W0062

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0062
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

W0063

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0063
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

W0064

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0064
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

W0065

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0065
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

W0066

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0066
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))              \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0067

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0067
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0068

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0068
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0069

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0069
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0070

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0070
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.



---

W0071

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0071
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

---

W0072

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0072
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

---

W0073

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0073
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

---

W0074

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0074
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

---

W0075

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0075
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

---

W0076

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0076
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

---

W0077

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0077
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

---

W0078

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0078
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

---

W0079

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0079
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

W0080

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0080
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

W0081

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0081
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))           but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0082

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0082
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0083

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0083
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0084

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0084
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))           with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))           but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))           which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))           Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))           use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 31, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0085

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0085
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 31, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0086

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0086
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 76.

W0087

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0087
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 76.

W0088

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0088
(minitoc(hints))      The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `romannum` package alters the numbering of some sectioning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.40 on page 77.

W0089

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0089
(minitoc(hints))           The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `sfheaders` package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.41 on page 77.

W0090

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0090
(minitoc(hints))           The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `alnumsec` package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.42 on page 77.

W0091

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0091
(minitoc(hints))           The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `captcont` package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.43 on page 77.

W0092

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0092
(minitoc(hints))           The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `hangcaption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.47 on page 80.

W0097

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0097
(minitoc(hints))           --- The flowfram package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))           with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `flowfram` package which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package, because it has its own definitions for minitocs. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0099

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0099
(minitoc(hints))          --- The titlesec package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the titlesec package, but it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. See note 21 on page 54.



### 5.2.3 Error messages

E0001

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0001
(minitoc)          But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixglossary macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0002

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0002
(minitoc)          But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixindex macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0003

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0003
(minitoc)          Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

E0004

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0004
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

E0005

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0005
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

E0006

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0006
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0007

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0007
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0008

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0008
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0009

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0009
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```



The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0010

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0010
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0011

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0011
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0012

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0012
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a feature param
(minitoc)          (before, after, open, close, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, `open`, `close`, or `thispagestyle`.

E0013

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0013
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

E0014

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0014
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

E0015

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0015
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc, ...`, `sectlot`).

E0016

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)          pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

E0017

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)          argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0018

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)          argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists<sup>4</sup> :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

E0019

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0019
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0020

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0020
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists<sup>4</sup> :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

<sup>4</sup> O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

E0021

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0021
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0022

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0022
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

E0023

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0023
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are *incompatible*. You should verify them.



E0024

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0024
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

E0025

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0025
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are *incompatible*. One is likely to be misspelt.



E0026

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0026
(minitoc)          The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)          is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0027

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0027
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0028

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0028
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.
```

Your version of the memoir class is really *incompatible* with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.



E0029

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0029
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

E0030

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0030
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

E0031

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0031
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

E0032

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0032
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

E0033

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0033
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.



E0034

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0034
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

E0035

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0035
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

E0036

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0036
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

E0037

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0037
(minitoc)                The \COMMAND command is incompatible
(minitoc)                with the document class.
```

```
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
...
```

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (`\COMMAND`) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

E0038

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0038
(minitoc)                Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)                A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)                We will try to continue with
(minitoc)                current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory `LANGUAGE.mld` language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

E0039

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0039
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixnomenclature not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0040

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0040
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixnomenclature
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to `chapter`) or be `part`, `chapter`, or `section`.

E0041

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0041
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset attempts to use
(minitoc)                an undefined mini-table type (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You are trying to set the offset for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0042

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0042
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0043

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0043
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

## 5.3 Messages from the `mtcoff` package

The `mtcoff` package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

### 5.3.1 Warning messages

F0001

---

```

Package mtcoff Warning: F0001
(mtcoff)          \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)          by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)          on input line LINE.

```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0002

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0002
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0003

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0003
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0004

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0004
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0005

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0005
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0006

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0006
(mtcff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0007

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0007
(mtcff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the `document.log` file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

F0008

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0008
(mtcff)                The macro \kernafterSTRING
(mtcff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

F0009

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0009
(mtcff)                The macro \STRINGoffset
(mtcff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\STRINGoffset` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the horizontal position of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

## 5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

---

M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: `mtcpatchmem` package to patch the `memoir` class.

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter [12](#) on page [458](#).

# Chapter 6

## Jargon

### Contents

<a href="#">“.” . . . . 205</a>	<a href="#">E . . . . . 214</a>	<a href="#">J . . . . . 220</a>	<a href="#">O . . . . . 232</a>	<a href="#">T . . . . . 237</a>
<a href="#">A . . . . . 206</a>	<a href="#">F . . . . . 216</a>	<a href="#">K . . . . . 220</a>	<a href="#">P . . . . . 233</a>	<a href="#">U . . . . . 239</a>
<a href="#">B . . . . . 208</a>	<a href="#">G . . . . . 218</a>	<a href="#">L . . . . . 220</a>	<a href="#">Q . . . . . 235</a>	<a href="#">V . . . . . 240</a>
<a href="#">C . . . . . 209</a>	<a href="#">H . . . . . 218</a>	<a href="#">M . . . . . 222</a>	<a href="#">R . . . . . 235</a>	<a href="#">W . . . . . 240</a>
<a href="#">D . . . . . 213</a>	<a href="#">I . . . . . 219</a>	<a href="#">N . . . . . 228</a>	<a href="#">S . . . . . 235</a>	<a href="#">X . . . . . 240</a>

### Tables

<a href="#">6.1</a>	<a href="#">Category codes . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">210</a>	<a href="#">6.8</a>	<a href="#">Most common font series . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">230</a>
<a href="#">6.2</a>	<a href="#">Encoding schemes implemented in</a>		<a href="#">6.9</a>	<a href="#">Most common font shapes . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">231</a>
	<a href="#">CJK . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">211</a>	<a href="#">6.10</a>	<a href="#">Most common font widths . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">231</a>
<a href="#">6.3</a>	<a href="#">Standard document classes . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">212</a>	<a href="#">6.11</a>	<a href="#">The five font parameters of some fonts</a>	<a href="#">231</a>
<a href="#">6.4</a>	<a href="#">Depths for sectionning commands . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">214</a>	<a href="#">6.12</a>	<a href="#">Author commands for fonts . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">231</a>
<a href="#">6.5</a>	<a href="#">Various encodings . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">215</a>	<a href="#">6.13</a>	<a href="#">Some systems derived from T<sub>E</sub>X and</a>	
<a href="#">6.6</a>	<a href="#">Most common font encodings . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">230</a>		<a href="#">L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">233</a>
<a href="#">6.7</a>	<a href="#">Most common font families . . . . .</a>	<a href="#">230</a>			

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages (often from the abstract), and from [4, 5, 130, 133, 249, 262, 269–271, 287, 288, 291, 306, 317, 318, 328, 329, 418].





<b>.aux</b>	The suffix of the name for an <i>auxiliary</i> file of a $\text{\LaTeX}$ document. It carries some information from a $\text{\LaTeX}$ run to the next.
<b>.cls</b>	The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via <code>\documentclass</code> .
<b>.dtx</b>	The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a $\text{\LaTeX}$ package or class. This file is often associated with a <code>.ins</code> file to generate the package or class. Compiling a <code>.dtx</code> file with $\text{\LaTeX}$ generates the documentation.
<b>.F</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Fnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
<b>.G</b>	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Gnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
<b>.H</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Hnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
<b>.ins</b>	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a $\text{\LaTeX}$ package or class. When compiled with $\text{\LaTeX}$ , it extracts the files of the package or class from an <code>.dtx</code> file.
<b>.lof</b>	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
<b>.log</b>	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
<b>.lot</b>	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
<b>.M</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Mnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
<b>.maf</b>	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
<b>.mld</b>	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
<b>.mlf</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mlfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
<b>.mlo</b>	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <code>.mld</code> file; hence the <code>.mld</code> file must load a <code>.mlo</code> file.
<b>.mlt</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mltnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
<b>.mtc</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mtcnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
<b>.P</b>	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Pnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.

<b>.plf</b>	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.plfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
<b>.plt</b>	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.pltmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
<b>.ptc</b>	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.ptcn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
<b>.S</b>	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Snn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
<b>.slf</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.slfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
<b>.slt</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.sltmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.
<b>.stc</b>	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.stcn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
<b>.sty</b>	The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via <code>\usepackage</code> .
<b>.T</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Tnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
<b>.tex</b>	The suffix of the name of a T <sub>E</sub> X or L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X normal source file.
<b>.toc</b>	The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
<b>.U</b>	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Unn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
<b>.V</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Vnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.

## A

**absolute numbering** The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

**abstract** The abstract package [430] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

I0040

**adjustment** Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`,

`\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `\mtcfixnomenclature`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



**after** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 49.

**afterpage** The `afterpage` [111] package is used to add code to be executed *after* the next page break.

**alnumsec** The `alnumsec` package [254] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. Its output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [102]), but you can use the standard  $\LaTeX$  sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 55 and section 2.42 on page 77).

W0090

**alphanum** The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [102], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0025

$\mathcal{AMS}$  The American Mathematical Society <sup>1</sup>. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.

W0026

W0027

I0041

**amsart**, **amsart.cls** A document class for articles [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society ( $\mathcal{AMS}$ ). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0026

**amsbook**, **amsbook.cls** A document class for books [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society ( $\mathcal{AMS}$ ). This class is compatible with the `minitoc` package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 67.

I0041

**amsproc**, **amsproc.cls** A document class for conference proceedings [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society ( $\mathcal{AMS}$ ). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0027

**Antomega** `Antomega` [252] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ), based on the original `omega.sty` file of the *Omega* project ( $\Omega$ ). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (.mld) use titles taken from `Antomega`: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

**appendices** See appendix below.

**appendix** The `appendix` package [431] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for instance, for per chapter/section appendices. If this

I0042

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.ams.org>

package is used with minitoc, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 65).

**Arabi** *Arabi* [226] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in *arabi.mld* and *farsi3.mld* come from the *arabic.ldf* and *farsi.ldf* files of this system.

**ArabT<sub>E</sub>X** ArabT<sub>E</sub>X [256, 257] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in *arab.mld* (or *arabic.mld*), *arab2.mld* and *hebrew.mld* come from ArabT<sub>E</sub>X, while those of *hebrew2.mld* come from *babel* [59, 60].

**ArmT<sub>E</sub>X** ArmT<sub>E</sub>X [134] is a package (prepared by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documents in the armenian language. The titles in *armenian.mld* come from ArmT<sub>E</sub>X.

**article** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class [262]. It has sectionning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

**\AtBeginDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

**\AtEndDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

**autoconfiguration** Since version #28, minitoc detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

**auxiliary** During the preparation of a document, the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are *document.aux* (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), *document.toc* for the table of contents, *document.lof* for the list of figures, and *document.lot* for the list of tables. The minitoc package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are *document.extension*, the table 1.11 on page 56 lists the possible extensions. See also the *.maf* extension above.

## B

**babel** The *babel* package [59, 60] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the *babel* package.

- BangTeX** A package for typesetting documents in the bangla (bengali) language using the TeX/LaTeX systems; see [335].
- before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 49.
- BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in LaTeX documents. Distributed with LaTeX. See [291, 339, 340, 379].
- bibtopic** A LaTeX package [24] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.
- bibunits** The bibunits package [195] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `natbib` [137, 138], `overcite` [16] and KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364].
- book** A standard LaTeX document class [262]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).
- booktabs** This nice package [155] helps to the preparation of better tables, *without* vertical rules nor double rules.

## C

- calc** The `calc` [402] package makes easier the numeric computations (on counters and dimensions) when preparing a LaTeX document.
- cappuccino** See “minutes” below.
- captcont** The `captcont` package [127] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [128] in particular. W0091
- caption** The `caption` package [383, 384, 386] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages. W0033
- caption2** The<sup>2</sup> `caption2` package [385] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular `caption` package [383, 384, 386] and has been superseed by the new release of the regular `caption` package version 3.0 in December 2003. `caption2` is still W0034

<sup>2</sup> This text comes from the documentation of the `caption` package. The `caption` and `caption2` packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

Table 6.1: Category codes

	Category	Meaning
0	Escape character	(\ usually)
1	Beginning of group	{ usually)
2	End of group	} usually)
3	Math shift	(\\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab	(& usually)
5	End of line	( <i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter	(# usually)
7	Superscript	(^ usually)
8	Subscript	(_ usually)
9	Ignored character	( <i>null</i> usually)
10	Space	(_ usually)
11	Letter	(A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character	(none of the above or below)
13	Active character	(~ usually)
14	Comment character	(% usually)
15	Invalid character	( <i>delete</i> usually)

some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the `caption` package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the `caption2` package should be used instead of the `caption` package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

**CATALOG** A plain text file which contains basic infos about the `minitoc` package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

**catcode** Short for “category code”. In<sup>3</sup> the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that  $\text{\TeX}$  might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that  $\text{\TeX}$  responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The  $\text{\TeX}$ book*” led you to believe that there were just two types — the escape character and the others — and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

**ccaption** The `ccaption` package [434] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are

W0035

<sup>3</sup> This definition is taken from “*The  $\text{\TeX}$ book*” [246, 248].

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

**chnpage** The `chnpage` package (by Peter R. WILSON) provides commands to change the page layout in the middle of a document, and to robustly check for typesetting on odd or even pages.

**Chapter 0** Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the `minitoc` package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and `co.`). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in `minitoc` version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 50.

**chapterbib** The `chapterbib` package [18] allows multiple bibliographies in a  $\LaTeX$  document, including items `\cite`d in more than one bibliography. Despite the name “`chapterbib`”, *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

**checkfiles** A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.76.2 on page 401.

**CJK** The CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare  $\LaTeX$  documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into  $\TeX$  since some of the values used for the encodings’ second bytes are reserved for control characters: ‘{’, ‘}’, and ‘\’. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in  $\LaTeX$ ; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article [262]	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
proc [261]	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc [112]	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltnews [231]	For preparing the announcement of a L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X release; analog to the article class.
report [262]	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
book [262]	For real books.
letter [263]	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides [300]	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT <sub>E</sub> X <sup>a</sup> instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

<sup>a</sup> <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [287, 288]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the .mlo files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.13 on page 45.

**class** The **class**<sup>4</sup> is the first information L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes [262]. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 61.

**close** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately after (*close*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 49. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 138.

**cmk** An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.

**CMR** For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

**comp.text.tex** The Usenet news group about T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, in english.

<sup>4</sup> This note is extracted from [329], then adapted.



**Computer Modern** A set of fonts [245] designed by Donald E. KNUTH for T<sub>E</sub>X. Initially they were built with METAFONT [140, 247] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

**counter** A T<sub>E</sub>X register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in T<sub>E</sub>X, but L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from T<sub>E</sub>X,  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X [104], allows more counters. Omega ( $\Omega$ ) also offers more counters.

**CTAN** The *Comprehensive T<sub>E</sub>X Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the T<sub>E</sub>X related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are<sup>5</sup>:

- ftp.dante.de (Cologne [Köln], Germany)
  - anonymous ftp /tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)
  - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/>
  - World Wide Web access on <http://www.dante.de/>
  - Administrator: <mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de>
- ftp.tex.ac.uk (Cambridge, England, UK)
  - anonymous ftp /tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)
  - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/>
  - NFS mountable from <nfs.tex.ac.uk:/tex-archive>
  - World Wide Web access on <http://www.tex.ac.uk/>
  - Administrator: <mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk>
- tug.ctan.org (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
  - anonymous ftp /tex-archive (/pub/archive)
  - World Wide Web access on <http://www.ctan.org/>
  - Administrator: <mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org>

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

## D

**dblaccnt** I needed to use the dblaccnt [304] package to typeset “The pdfT<sub>E</sub>X Program” entry [189] in the bibliography, because its author’s first name contains a double accent (Thế Thành HàN).

**de.comp.text.tex** The Usenet news group about T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, in german.

**depth** In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectioning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectioning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the secnumdepth counter),

---

<sup>5</sup> This list may change in the future.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the `parttocs`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

**descriptor** (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For  $\text{\TeX}$  (and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

**devanagari.sty** The *Devanāgarī for  $\text{\TeX}$*  (Devanāgarī) package [337] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with  $\text{\TeX}$ . Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for  $\text{\TeX}$ .

## E

**em** A length unit equal (approximately) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

**emk** An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 10 on page 244.

**en-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [181] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
<code>ansinew</code>	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
<code>applemac</code>	Macintosh encoding.
<code>ascii</code>	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
<code>cp1250</code>	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
<code>cp1251</code>	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
<code>cp1252</code>	Synonym for <code>ansinew</code> .
<code>cp1257</code>	Windows 1257 (Baltic) code page.
<code>cp437</code>	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
<code>cp437de</code>	IBM 437 code page (German version).
<code>cp850</code>	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
<code>cp852</code>	IBM 852 code page.
<code>cp855</code>	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
<code>cp865</code>	IBM 865 code page.
<code>cp866</code>	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
<code>decmulti</code>	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
<code>latin1</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
<code>latin2</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
<code>latin3</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, <code>latin5</code> is the preferred character set for Turkish.
<code>latin4</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
<code>latin5</code>	Is essentially the same as <code>latin1</code> , except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
<code>next</code>	Next encoding.

**encoding** This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended T<sub>E</sub>X). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [124, 142, 409]), etc. See table 6.5 and [272, 299].

**environment** An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

- $\varepsilon$ -TeX**  $\varepsilon$ -TeX [104] is an extended version of TeX, with much more registers and many new primitives; it supports also left-to-right and right-to-left writing.
- ethiop** A L<sup>A</sup>TeX package [44] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [59, 60].
- extension** The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 55 and 2.5 on page 59. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

## F

**farsi.sty** See FarsiTeX below.

**FarsiTeX** A package [152] to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L<sup>A</sup>TeX2.09. See also sections 13.54 on page 514 and 13.55 on page 514.

**features** A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Five features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the whole mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the whole mini-table), a “open” feature, executed just before inserting the mini-table file, a “close” feature, executed just after inserting the mini-table file, and a “pagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 49.

**filecontents** A special L<sup>A</sup>TeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.13 on page 45) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

**\firstchapteris** An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 50.

**\firstpartis** Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

**\firstsectionis** Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

**float** This package [281] (by Anselm LINGNAU) improves the interface for defining floating objects such as figures and tables in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. It adds the notion of a ‘float style’ that governs appearance of floats. New kinds of floats may be defined using a `\newfloat` command analogous to `\newtheorem`. This package also incorporates the functionality of David P. CARLISLE’s package [here](#), giving floating environments a [H] option which means ‘PUT IT HERE’ (as opposed to the standard [h] option which means ‘You may put it here if you like’).

I0053

**\FloatBarrier** A macro from the `placeins` package [14]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

**floatrow** This package [265] (by Olga G. LAPKO) is an extension of the `float` package [281] (by Anselm LINGNAU), reusing its code, with extensions from the `rotfloat` package [382] (by Axel SOMMERFELDT).

I0053

**flowfram** This package [394, 395] is designed to enable you to create text *frames* in a document such that the contents of the document environment flow from one frame to the next in the order that they were defined. This is useful for creating posters or magazines or any other form of document that does not conform to the standard one or two column layout. As this package defines its own system of minitocs, it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0097

**fminitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

**fminitoc.dtx** The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fminitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fminitoc.lan** A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fminitoc.pdf** The french documentation in PDF format.

**fminitoc.ps** The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` script).

**fmk** An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 10 on page 244.

**fncychap** The `fncychap` package [280] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.38 on page 76).

W0086

**fr.comp.text.tex** The Usenet newsgroup about T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, in french.

**franc.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**frbib.sty** A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fr-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [181] tool to add an URL field.

**frnew.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

## G

**geometry** The `geometry` package [408] provides a flexible and complete user interface to page dimensions. You can specify them by using intuitive parameters to get your desired page layout. For instance, if you want to set margins (the left, right, top and bottom margins) to 2cm from each edge of the paper, what you need is just:

```
\usepackage[margin=2cm]{geometry}
```

This powerful (and recommended) package is used in some example documents and in this documentation.

**guarani** A  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package to compose text in Guaraní, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [45] and section 13.74 on page 534.

## H

**hangcaption** The `hangcaption` package [233] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992,  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 2.09).

W0092

**Hindi** For the Hindi language, see the `Devanāgarī` package [337] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available. See also [139] about the Hindi language.

**hint** An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).

**hints** An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the consistency between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).

**H<sup>Λ</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ) (see below). Written by Un KOAUNGHI [249, in korean]. It uses special Hangûl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.

**hyperlink** In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.

**hyperref** The hyperref package [356] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for HyperT<sub>E</sub>X dvi processors, for embedded pdfmark commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (dvips and dvipsone), for dviwindo, for pdfT<sub>E</sub>X, for T<sub>E</sub>X4ht, and for VTEX's pdf and HTML backends.

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperT<sub>E</sub>X project, described in [344]. It extends the functionality of all the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

W0023

W0028

W0030

W0039

## I

**ifmtarg** The ifmtarg package [443] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty ("empty" meaning zero or more spaces only).

**ifthen** The ifthen package [114] implements an `\ifthenelse` command for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

**imk** An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from minitoc.ins and minitoc.dtx; note that imk must be run before running emk or fmk. See item 10 on page 244.

**insection** The insection package option loads the placeins package [14] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use sectlofs or sectlots in your document. See section 1.2 on page 32.

W0056

**insertion** The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are (see table 3.9 on page 88):

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

**INSTALL** A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 241.

## J

**\jobname** A  $\text{\TeX}$  primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by  $\text{\TeX}$  (or  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

**jura** The jura class [102], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents.

W0029

## K

**Kannada $\text{\TeX}$**  A project [445] to use  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for typesetting in the Kannada language. See section 13.101 on page 552.

**k-loose** A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the loose package option for standard classes.

**k-tight** A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the tight package option for standard classes.

**KOMA-Script** KOMA-Script [317, 318, 364] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (scrartcl, scrbook, scrlettr, scrlltr2, and scrreprt) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

I0043

The scrbook, scrreprt, and scrartcl classes are compatible with the minitoc package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 51). The scrlettr and scrlltr2 have no sectioning commands, so the minitoc package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes book, report, and article. There is also a replacement for the standard class letter.

## L

**Lambda** The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  format (in the  $\text{\TeX}$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega ( $\Omega$ ) is called “*Lambda*” ( $\Lambda$ ).



**Lamed** The  $\LaTeX$  format (in the  $\TeX$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph ( $\aleph$ ) is called “*Lamed*” ( $\beth$ ).

**$\LaTeX$**   $\LaTeX$  [259] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books.  $\LaTeX$  uses  $\TeX$  [246, 248] as its formatting engine (from [329]).

In fact,  $\LaTeX$  is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout.  $\LaTeX$  was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [259]. It uses the  $\TeX$  formatter as its typesetting engine. These days  $\LaTeX$  is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the  $\LaTeX$  package was (deeply) updated by the  $\LaTeX$ 3 team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of  $\LaTeX$ 2.09 some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called  $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$ .

$\LaTeX$  is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to  $\LaTeX$  in an ASCII environment, you type `LaTeX`.  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$  is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed `LaTeX2e`.

**$\LaTeX$ 2.09** An obsolete version of the  $\LaTeX$  program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it<sup>6</sup>. Use the current version of  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$ , which is supported and much more efficient.

**$\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$**  The current version of the  $\LaTeX$  program, after 1994; it is supported.

**$\LaTeX$ 3** The future version of  $\LaTeX$ , whose development is still in progress.

**leaders** A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regularly spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

**letter** A standard document class [263] to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectioning commands nor structure, the minitoc package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.



**lipsum** The lipsum package [197] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).

**listfiles** An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the  $\LaTeX$  run) in the `document.maf` file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 53.

**LOF, LoF** An acronym for “list of figures”.

**lofdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

<sup>6</sup> Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.

**loose** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.

**LOT, LoT** An acronym for “list of tables”.

**lotdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

**LPPL** The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

**ltxdoc** A standard  $\LaTeX$  document class [112], for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

**ltnews** A standard  $\LaTeX$  document class [231], for preparing the announcement of a  $\LaTeX$  release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

## M

**\makeatletter** and **\makeatother** Many<sup>7</sup> internal commands of  $\LaTeX$ , of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands *should never be used in a package or class file*.

**makefile** A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

**mcaption** The `mcaption` package [213] provides a `margincap` environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

**MCE** A minimal [complete] example is the smallest possible complete document that illustrates a problem. A minimal example file should not include any packages or code that do not contribute to the problem, but must include a document class and the `document` environment (from [393]). See also [351], <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=minxmpl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.



W0036

<sup>7</sup> Informations from [306, page 843].

**memoir, memoir.cls** A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [439, 441, 442]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 66.

**mini-bibliography** See **minibbl** below.

**mini-list** Synonym for “mini-table” below.

**mini-lof** See “minilof” below.

**mini-lot** See “minilot” below.

**mini-table** This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only tables of contents for chapters.

**mini-toc** See “minitoc” below.

**minibbl** Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 61.

**minilof** A list of figures for a chapter.

**minilofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

**minilot** A list of tables for a chapter.

**minilotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

**minitoc** A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

**minitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.

**minitoc.bug** A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 57.

**minitocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

**minitoc.dtx** The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.

**minitoc-hyper.sty** A special version [414] of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS to work with the powerful hyperref package [356]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [414] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*

E0028
I0020
I0027
I0030
I0032
I0044
M0001



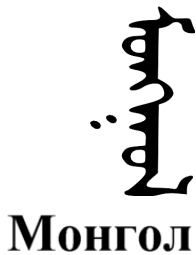
- minitoc.ins** The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with  $\text{\LaTeX}$  produces most of the files of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.l** A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in `minitoc.l` are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.
- minitoc.lan** A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.pdf** The english documentation in PDF format.
- minitoc.pre** This file contains a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.ps** The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` scripts).
- minitoc.sty** This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.sum** A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 81.
- minitoc-tds.zip** A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.
- minutes** The minutes package [279] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter! <sup>8</sup>
- MonTeX** MonTeX [130, 133] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russiānc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [132]. See also:

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian\\_writing\\_systems](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_writing_systems)  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_language)  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian\\_script](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_script)  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Clear\\_script](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Clear_script)  
<http://www.indiana.edu/~mongsoc/mong/language.htm>  
<http://www.viahistoria.com/SilverHorde/main.html?research/MongolScripts.html>  
[http://www.krysstal.com/writing\\_evolution.html](http://www.krysstal.com/writing_evolution.html)  
<http://mongolxel.webz.cz/qaguchin/index.htm>

The following description is extracted from [133].

MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian.

<sup>8</sup> The little cups ☕ come from the `marvosym` package [212].



Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

**Mongolian** The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

**Xalx** or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

**Buryat** is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, \xalx{H/h}) for marking the difference to /s/.

**Bicig** (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root *bicig* whereas the Manju commands have the name root *bi*the.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

**Manju** Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [131] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

- MS-DOS** (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of file-names with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.
- mtc-2c.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout. See section 4.1 on page 92.
- mtc-2nd.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package and its french2 language option. See section 4.2 on page 93.
- mtc-add.bib** A small bibliographic data base for the mtc-add.tex and mtc-ads.tex example documents. See section 4.4 on page 97.
- mtc-3co.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.3 on page 94.
- mtc-add.tex** An example document showing how to use \mtcaddchapter and the tocbibind package [432] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 97.
- mtc-ads.tex** An example document showing how to use \mtcaddsection and the tocbibind package [432] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 101. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.
- mtc-amm.tex** An example file showing the use of the appendices environment in a memoir class document with the minitoc package. See section 4.6 on page 106.
- mtc-apx.tex** An example file showing the use of the mtchideinmaintoc environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices. See section 2.25 on page 68.
- mtc-art.tex** An example of document (article class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.8 on page 106.
- mtc-bk.tex** An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.9 on page 111.
- mtc-bo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout and using the tocloft package [429]. See section 4.10 on page 116.
- mtc-ch0.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred first chapter. See section 4.11 on page 120.
- mtc-cri.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with starred parts and chapters. See section 4.12 on page 122.
- mtc-fko.tex** An example file showing the problem of fonts in minitocs when using the scrbook class. See section 4.13 on page 122.
- mtc-fo1.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.14 on page 123.
- mtc-fo2.tex** Another example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.15 on page 124.

**mtc-gap.tex** An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands. See section 2.44 on page 77.

**mtc-hi1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments. See section 2.25 on page 69.

**mtc-hi2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:

- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
- `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.

See section 2.25 on page 70.

**mtc-hia.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an `article` class document. See section 4.19 on page 126.

**mtc-hir.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a `report` class document. See section 4.20 on page 127.

**mtc-hop.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `scrbook` document class. See section 4.21 on page 128.

**mtc-liv.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a book with customized table of contents and minitocs. See section 4.22 on page 129.

**mtc-mem.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `memoir` class. See section 4.23 on page 133.

**mtc-mm1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `memoir` class, if you want to change some fonts. See section 4.24 on page 133.

**mtc-mu.tex** A document using a `minitoc` set in a `wrapfigure` environment with the `wrapfig` package [17]. See section 4.25 on page 135.

**mtc-nom.tex** A document showing an interaction between the `minitoc` package and the `nomencl` package [416]. See section 4.26 on page 136.

**mtc-ocf.tex** A document using the `open` and `close` features to prepare a `minitoc` on three columns. See section 4.27 on page 138.

**mtc-ofs.tex** A document using the `open` and `close` features to prepare a `minitoc` on three columns and `\mtcsetoffset` to shift the `minitoc` to align it on the left. See section 4.28 on page 139.

**mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `subfigure` package [126]. See section 4.29 on page 141.

**mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a KOMA-Script class [317, 318, 364], `scrreprt`. See section 4.30 on page 142.

**mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters. See section 4.31 on page 144.



- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocbinind package [432]. See section 4.32 on page 145.
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [306, page 58], modernized. See section 4.33 on page 146.
- mtc-tlo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [429] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables. See section 2.46 on page 80.
- mtc-tsfs.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [128]. See section 4.35 on page 147.
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for an unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode (`\mu` means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.
- multibib** The multibib package [196] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [195] or chapterbib [18], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.
- multicol** The multicol package [301] defines the `multicols` environment (with a “s”) to typeset text on several columns. Used in some example documents.
- multitoc** This package [376] allows setting only the table of contents, list of figures and/or list of tables in two or more columns (using the multicol package [301], of course). The number of columns can be configured via commands; the multicolumn toc(s) can be selected via package options. The `mtc-3co.tex` example document uses this package; see section 4.3 on page 94.



## N

- natbib** It is a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> (but with some support for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2.09) package [137, 138] to act as generalized interface for standard and non-standard bibliographic style files ( $\text{\BibTeX}$ ).



**needspace** The needspace package [428] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.

**NFSS** The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> font selection system [271] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Every text font in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  has five *attributes*:

**encoding** This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  are  $\text{\KerTeX}$ ’s “ $\text{\TeX}$  text” encoding (OT1), and the “ $\text{\TeX}$  text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the  $\text{\TeX}$  Users Group members during a  $\text{\TeX}$  Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [272, 299].

**family** The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For instance, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and  $\text{\KerTeX}$ ’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

**series** How heavy or expanded a font is. For instance, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

**shape** The form of the letters within a font family. For instance, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

**size** The design size of the font, for instance “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6 on the next page.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for instance a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7 on the following page. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8 on the next page. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9 on page 231. The most common values for the font width are listed in table 6.10 on page 231.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for instance 10pt or 1.5in or 3mm; if no unit is specified, pt is assumed. These five parameters specify every  $\text{\LaTeX}$  font, see table 6.11 on page 231, for instance.

These five parameters are displayed whenever  $\text{\LaTeX}$  gives an overfull box warning, for instance:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X extended text (“Cork encoding”)
TS1	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (African languages)
T5	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (Vietnamese)
T7	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T <sub>E</sub> X text (as defined by Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
OT2	T <sub>E</sub> X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T <sub>E</sub> X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T <sub>E</sub> X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T <sub>E</sub> X math italic (Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
OMS	T <sub>E</sub> X math symbols (Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
OMX	T <sub>E</sub> X math large symbols (Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
X2	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
L7x	Encoding used for the Lithuanian language
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some V <sub>T</sub> eX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software
PD1	Implements the PDFDocEncoding for use with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> ’s NFSS.
PU	Implements the Unicode encoding for use with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X’s NFSS.

Table 6.7: Most common font families

Family	Description
cmr	Computer Modern Roman
cmss	Computer Modern Sans
cmtt	Computer Modern Typewriter
cmm	Computer Modern Math Italic
cmsy	Computer Modern Math Symbols
cmex	Computer Modern Math Extensions
ptm	Adobe Times
phv	Adobe Helvetica
pcr	Adobe Courier
lazy	Additional L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X symbols

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Series	Description
ul	Ultra light
el	Extra light
l	Light
sl	Semi light
m	Medium
sb	Semi bold
b	Bold
eb	Extra bold
bx	Bold extended
ub	Ultra bold
c	Condensed

The table 6.12 on the next page lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>9</sup> The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
n	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
it	Italic
sl	Slanted (or “oblique”)
sc	Caps and small caps
u	Unslanted (upright italic)

Table 6.10: Most common font widths

Width	%	Description
uc	50.0	Ultra condensed
ec	50.0	Extra condensed
c	50.0	Condensed
sc	50.0	Semi condensed
m	50.0	Medium
sc	50.0	Semi extended
c	50.0	Extended
ec	50.0	Extra extended
uc	50.0	Ultra extended

Table 6.11: The five font parameters of some fonts

L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X specification					Font	T <sub>E</sub> X name
OT1	cmr	m	n	10	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	cmr10
OT1	cmss	m	sl	1pc	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	cmssi12
OML	cmm	m	it	10pt	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	cmmi10
T1	ptm	b	it	1in	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	ptmb8t at 1in

Table 6.12: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
\textrm... or \rmfamily	family	cmr
\textsf... or \sffamily	family	cmss
\texttt... or \ttfamily	family	cmtt
\textmd... or \mdseries	series	m
\textbf... or \bfseries	series	bx
\textup... or \upshape	shape	n
\textit... or \itshape	shape	it
\textsl... or \slshape	shape	sl
\textsc... or \scshape	shape	sc
\tiny	size	5pt
\scriptsize	size	7pt
\footnotesize	size	8pt
\small	size	9pt
\normalsize	size	10pt
\large	size	12pt
\Large	size	14.4pt
\LARGE	size	17.28pt
\huge	size	20.74pt
\Huge	size	24.88pt
\textnormal	normal	normal text

**nocheckfiles** A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

**nohints** A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

**nolistfiles** An option of the `minitoc` package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 53.

**notoccite** This option of the `minitoc` package loads the `notoccite` package [13] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 53.

## O

**Omega** The Omega typesetting system<sup>10</sup> ( $\Omega$ ) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of  $\text{\TeX}$  that is aimed primarily at improving  $\text{\TeX}$ ’s multilingual abilities.

When the  $\text{\TeX}$  program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then  $\text{\TeX}$  has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze  $\text{\TeX}$ , mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the  $\text{\TeX}$  code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of  $\text{\TeX}$ . Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for  $\text{\TeX}$  users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  format (in the  $\text{\TeX}$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” ( $\Lambda$ ). Extending Omega with the  $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$  [104] extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” ( $\aleph$ ) [49, 186] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for Aleph is known as “*Lamed*” ( $\aleph$ ). There is an experimental system, named  $\text{\LuaTeX}$  [215, 216], which will regroup  $\text{\pdfTeX}$ , Aleph,  $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$  and other developments. A promising development is  $\text{\XeTeX}$  [239] by Jonathan KEW, with  $\text{\X}\text{\LaTeX}$ .

**open** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately before (*open*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the docu-

<sup>10</sup>Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [202, 203, 206, 348, 349]. See <http://omega.enstb.org/> for more information.

Table 6.13: Some systems derived from T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Omega & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \\
 & & + & & & & + \\
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\
 \hline
 & & \aleph & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \beth
 \end{array}$$

mentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 49. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 138.

## P

**package** Packages<sup>11</sup> are a very important feature of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. These are extensions to the basic L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- **AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society<sup>12</sup>, should be in any installation<sup>13</sup>.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X usage, but all are useful.

**pagestyle** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 49.

**partlof** A list of figures for a part.

**partlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

**partlot** A list of tables for a part.

**partlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

<sup>11</sup>This info is taken from [250, page 12–13] and adapted.

<sup>12</sup><http://www.ams.org>

<sup>13</sup>They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

**parttoc** A table of contents for a part.

**parttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the parttocs.

**PDF** Portable Document Format [172]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

**placeins** The placeins package [14] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flatter` package (described in [268] and [306, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 31.

**placeins.txt** A plain text file containing the documentation of the `placeins` package [14].

**PLATEX** A version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the polish (`polski`) language. It has been replaced by the `polski` package. See [330, 423]. But the *same* name was referring also to a version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the japanese language, PLATEX 2<sub>ε</sub> [224, 237].

**pmk** An example of shell script to prepare the `minitoc` package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 10 on page 244.

**PostScript** A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

**preamble** In the main file of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

**preparation** The preparation commands of the `minitoc` package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are (see table 3.9 on page 88):

<code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , <code>\dopartlot</code> ,	(part level)
<code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> , <code>\dominilot</code> ,	(chapter level)
<code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , <code>\dosectlot</code> ,	(section level)
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	(all levels)

**proc** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the `minitoc` package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

**pseudo-chapter** Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the `minitoc` package. See section 1.3.4 on page 35.

W0031  
W0032  
W0084  
W0085



## Q

**quotchap** The quotchap package [403] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.39 on page 76).

W0087

## R

**README** is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

**report** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class [262]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

**rmk** An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 10 on page 244.

**romannum** The romannum package [440] changes the numbers (for sectioning commands) generated by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [426]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 55 and section 2.40 on page 77).

W0088

**rotating** The rotating [355] package performs all the different sorts of rotation one might like, including complete figures.

**rotfloat** The packrotfloat [382] package provides commands to define new floats of various styles (`plain`, `boxed`, `ruled`, and userdefined ones); the rotating package [355] provides new environments (`sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`) which are rotated by 90° or 270°. But what about new rotated floats, e.g. a rotated ruled one? This package makes this possible; it builds a bridge between both packages and extend the commands from the `float` package to define rotated versions of the new floats, too.

I0053

**rubber** `rubber` [33] is a wrapper for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B<sub>u</sub>L<sub>o</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X**, **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

## S

**scrartcl** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrbook** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrreprt** See KOMA-Script above.

**sectionning commands** These are the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the `minitoc` package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the `minitoc` commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the `minitoc` commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the `minitoc` package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the `minitoc` commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 28. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the `minitoc` package.

**sectlof** A list of figures for a section.

**sectlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlofs`.

**sectlot** A list of tables for a section.

**sectlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlots`.

**sectsty** The `sectsty` package [295] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.28 on page 71).

W0037

**secttoc** A table of contents for a section.

**secttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the `secttocs`.

**sfheaders** The `sfheaders` package [283] (for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub>) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the `part`, `chapter`, `section`, `subsection`... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 55 and section 2.41 on page 77).

W0089

**shell** In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

**shorttext** An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 59.

W0020






**shorttoc** The `shorttoc` package [145] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.



- SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the Japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [123, 276, 277].
- SL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** A version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the Swedish language. See [294].
- splitbib** A L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package [290] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...
- stdclsdv** The stdclsdv package [426] is intended to be used by the authors of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.
- strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.
- subfig** The subfig package [128] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single figure or table environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.
- subfigure** The subfigure package [126] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [128].
- suffix** See “extension” above.

## T

- TDS** The T<sub>E</sub>X Directory Structure [406, 407]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T<sub>E</sub>X system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T<sub>E</sub>X files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.
- T<sub>E</sub>X** T<sub>E</sub>X is a computer program created by Donald E. KNUTH [246, 248]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T<sub>E</sub>X as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T<sub>E</sub>X is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T<sub>E</sub>X is converging to  $\pi$  and is now at 3.141592.
- T<sub>E</sub>X is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T<sub>E</sub>X becomes TeX.

- thailatex** The thailatex package [296] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [123, 276, 277].
- tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is loose.
- titlesec** The titlesec package [46] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.  W0099
- titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.  W0040
- The titletoc.sty file is not part of the titlesec package; it's an independent package, but it's described in the titlesec package documentation [46].
- tmk** A script file which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [406, 407] (to be adjusted to your system).
- TOC, ToC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The tocbibind package [432] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 51.  I0046
- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.
- tocloft** The tocloft package [429] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 65 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.  I0047
- TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- token** A token<sup>14</sup> is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “cat-code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T<sub>E</sub>X's tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T<sub>E</sub>X to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For instance, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{<sub>1</sub>’ already inside token lists of T<sub>E</sub>X would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{<sub>12</sub>’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are 

<sup>14</sup>This definition is taken from “The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook” [246, 248].

different, since they can change their interpretation at any time.  $\text{\TeX}$ 's digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.

**trivfloat** The trivfloat package [444] (by Joseph A. WRIGHT) provides a quick method for defining new float types in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . A single command sets up a new float in the same style as the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  kernel `figure` and `table` float types.

I0053

**txfonts** The txfonts package [368] provides the TX fonts, which consist of

1. virtual text roman fonts using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with some modified and additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
2. virtual text sans serif fonts using Adobe Helvetica (or URW NimbusSanL) with additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
3. monospaced typewriter fonts in the OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
4. math alphabets using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with modified metrics;
5. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of Computer Modern math fonts (CMSY, CMMI, CMEX, and Greek letters of CMR);
6. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of AmS fonts (MSAM and MSBM);
7. additional math fonts of various symbols.

All fonts are in the Type 1 format (in `.afm` and `.pfb` files). Necessary `.tfm` and `.vf` files together with  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> package files and font map files (`.map`) for dvips are provided.

## U

**UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).

**UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.

**urlbst** A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [181], to add a webpage  $\text{\BibTeX}$  entry type, and add support for general `url` and `lastchecked` fields, to (most)  $\text{\BibTeX}$  `.bst` files. Optionally adds basic support for `eprint` and `doi` fields, and  $\text{\HyperTeX}$ / $\text{\hyperref}$  support, too. See [344, 356].

**UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK.

ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with  $\text{\TeX}$ . See table 6.2 on page 211.

## V

**varsects** The varsects package [398] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: article, book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.33 on page 74).

W0038

## W



**Wikipedia** The Wikipedia is a free, multilingual, open content (neutral, verifiable, modifiable and improvable by anyone) encyclopedia project operated by the non-profit Wikimedia Foundation. Its name is a portemanteau of the words *wiki* (a type of collaborative website) and *encyclopedia*. Launched in 2001 by Jimmy WALES and Larry SANGER, it is the largest, fastest growing and most popular general reference work currently available on the Internet.

**wrapfig** The wrapfig package [17] provides the wrapfigure and wraptable environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.

## X

**xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.

**xr** The xr package [110] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David P. CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the minitoc package to implement the preparation commands (like  $\backslash\text{dominitoc}$ ). If you use also the hyperref package [356], use xr-hyper [113] in place of the xr package.

# Chapter 7

## Installation

### Tables

7.1	List of files ( <code>minitoc.1</code> ), first part . . . . .	242
7.2	List of files ( <code>minitoc.1</code> ), second part . . . . .	243
7.3	List of the graphic files . . . . .	243
7.4	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files . . . . .	246

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #57).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See tables 7.1 on the next page and 7.2 on page 243. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.
- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself<sup>1</sup>.

The table 1.7 on page 40 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$  finds the `.sty` files.

<sup>1</sup> The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the `minitoc` package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0094

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1), first part

<b>class (0) :</b> -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx <b>class (1) :</b> -minitoc.sty -mtcoff.sty -mtcmess.sty -mtcpatchmem.sty -acadian.mld -acadien.mld -afrikaan.mld -afrikaans.mld -albanian.mld -american.mld -arab.mld -arab2.mld -arabi.mld -arabic.mld -armenian.mld -australian.mld -austrian.mld -bahasa.mld -bahasai.mld -bahasam.mld -bangla.mld -basque.mld -bengali.mld -bicig.mld -bicig2.mld -bicig3.mld -bithe.mld -brazil.mld -brazilian.mld -breton.mld -british.mld -bulgarian.mld -bulgarianb.mld -buryat.mld -buryat2.mld -canadian.mld -canadien.mld -castillan.mld -castillian.mld -catalan.mld -chinese1.ml[d o] -chinese2.ml[d o] -croatian.mld -czech.mld -danish.mld -devanagari.mld -dutch.mld -english.mld -english1.mld -english2.mld -esperant.mld	-esperanto.mld -estonian.mld -ethiopia.mld -ethiopian.mld -ethiopian2.mld -farsi1.ml[d o] -farsi2.ml[d o] -farsi3.mld -finnish.mld -finnish2.mld -français.mld -french.mld -french1.mld -french2.mld -frenchb.mld -frenchle.mld -frenchpro.mld -galician.mld -german.mld -germanb.mld -germanb2.mld -greek.mld -greek-mono.mld -greek-polydemo.mld -greek-polykatha.mld -guarani.mld -hangul1.ml[d o] -hangul2.ml[d o] -hangul3.ml[d o] -hangul4.ml[d o] -hangul-u8.ml[d o] -hanja1.ml[d o] -hanja2.ml[d o] -hanja-u8.ml[d o] -hebrew.mld -hebrew2.mld -hindi.mld -hindi-modern.mld -hungarian.mld -icelandic.mld -indon.mld -indonesian.mld -interlingua.mld -irish.mld -italian.mld -italian2.mld -japanese.ml[d o] -japanese2.ml[d o] -japanese3.ml[d o] -japanese4.ml[d o] -japanese5.ml[d o] -japanese6.ml[d o] -kannada.mld -khalkha.mld -latin.mld -latin2.mld	-latinc.mld -latinc2.mld -latvian.mld -latvian2.mld -letton.mld -letton2.mld -lithuanian.mld -lithuanian2.mld -lowersorbian.mld -lsorbian.mld -magyar.mld -magyar2.mld -magyar3.mld -malay.mld -malayalam-b.mld -malayalam-keli.mld -malayalam-keli2.mld -malayalam-mr.mld -malayalam-omega.ml[d o] -malayalam-rachana.mld -malayalam-rachana2.mld -malayalam-rachana3.mld -manju.mld -mexican.mld -meyalu.mld -mongol.mld -mongolb.mld -mongolian.mld -naustrian.mld -newzealand.mld -ngerman.mld -ngermanb.mld -ngermanb2.mld -norsk.mld -norsk2.mld -nynorsk.mld -nynorsk2.mld -occitan.mld -occitan2.mld -polish.mld -polish2.mld -polski.mld -portuges.mld -portuguese.mld -romanian.mld -romanian2.mld -romanian3.mld -russian.mld -russianb.mld -russianc.mld -russian2m.mld -russian2o.mld -russian-cca.ml[d o] -russian-cca1.ml[d o] -russian-lh.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o]	-russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o] -samin.mld -scottish.mld -serbian.mld -serbianc.mld -slovak.mld -slovene.mld -spanish.mld -spanish2.mld -spanish3.mld -spanish4.mld -swahili.mld -swedish.mld -swedish2.mld -thai.ml[d o] -turkish.mld -uighur.mld -uighur2.mld -uighur3.mld -UKenglish.mld -ukraineb.mld -ukrainian.mld -uppersorbian.mld -USenglish.mld -usorbian.mld -vietnam.mld -vietnamese.mld -welsh.mld -xalx.mld -xalx2.mld -xalx3.mld <b>class (2) :</b> -INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG -minitoc.l <b>class (3) :</b> -mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfs.tex
--	--	--	---

See continuation in table 7.2 on the next page.

Table 7.2: List of files (minitoc.1), second part

<b>class (4) :</b> -minitoc.bug -minitoc.sum	-minitoc.pre -en-mtc.bst	-fminitoc.bib -fminitoc.ist -fminitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty -fr-mtc.bst	<b>class (9) :</b> -fminitoc.pdf
<b>class (5) :</b> -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -minitoc.bib -minitoc.ist -minitoc.lan	<b>class (6) :</b> <i>The list of the graphic files is given in table 7.3.</i> <b>class (7) :</b> -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx	<b>class (8) :</b> -minitoc.pdf	<b>class (10) :</b> -cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk <b>class (11) :</b> -minitoc-tds.zip

Table 7.3: List of the graphic files (class 6)

acadien.pdf, africa-lf.pdf, africa-lo.pdf, afrsud-1.pdf, afrsud-p.pdf, albania.pdf, alba-eth.pdf, allemand.jpg, angloi.pdf, arab-1.jpg, arabw.png, armeniad.pdf, armenian-1.png, armeniar.jpg, baltes.pdf, bangla.png, bangla1.pdf, bangla2.pdf, basque-de.pdf, basque-df.pdf, basque1.pdf, basque2.pdf, belgique.pdf, bengali-m.jpg, bosnia.pdf, brazil.pdf, brazilp.pdf, bretagne.pdf, bulgariar.jpg, bulgarski.png, bulgmap.png, buryatia-1.pdf, buryatia.pdf, canada.pdf, canada-1.pdf, canada-pe.png, canada-pf.pdf, canada1.pdf, catalan-d.pdf, catalan-p.pdf, caucasus.pdf, china-ae.png, china-af.png, china-ch.pdf, china-l.pdf, china-w.png, chine1.pdf, chine2.pdf, croatie1.pdf, croatie2.pdf, cz1.pdf, cz3.png, czechd.pdf, danemark.jpg, danishd.pdf, danishg.pdf, devanagari.png, dutchw.pdf, ecosse1.pdf, ecosse2.pdf, ecosse3.pdf, espa-1.pdf, espa-o.png, estonia-a.pdf, estonia-b.pdf, eth2.png, ethiolang.png, ethiopia.pdf, ethiopia-p.pdf, euro-lan.pdf, euro-lan1.pdf, euro-lan2.png, euskara.pdf, farsi.pdf, farsi-logo.png, feroe.jpg, finlande1.png, finlande2.pdf, finnishd.pdf, finnishl.pdf, france-lr.png, franco.png, fswahili.pdf, gael-ft.pdf, galicia-m.pdf, galicia-mp.pdf, galician-1.pdf, galles1.pdf, galles2.pdf, germ-w.pdf, german-c.pdf, german-d.pdf, german-m.pdf, grece1.pdf, grece2.pdf, greeka.png, greekm.jpg, hangul.png, hanja.png, hanzi.png, hin.png, hindi-b.png, hindi-p.png, hispano.png, hrv.png, hun1.png, hun2.jpg, inde1.pdf, inde2.jpg, indonesia1.pdf, indonesia2.pdf,	iranian.jpg, irish.png, irlande.pdf, islam-pbc.png, islam-sw.pdf, islande.png, islandep.jpg, isr1.pdf, isr2.pdf, italian.pdf, italo1.png, italysm.png, ivrit.png, japon1.pdf, japon2.jpg, kannada-n.png, karnad1.jpg, karnataka.jpg, kerala.jpg, khalkha.pdf, korean1.png, korean2.jpg, kos-alb.png, kos-ml.png, lamed3.png, lang-g.png, latvian-d.pdf, latvian-r1.png, lettonie.pdf, lituanie.png, luso1.pdf, luso2.pdf, malayalam.png, malaysia1.pdf, malaysia2.pdf, malayalam.pdf, manchu.jpg, manchuria.jpg, manjuc.jpg, manjui.png, mex1.pdf, mex2.pdf, mex3.pdf, mexip.pdf, meyalu.png, mondep.png, mongasie.pdf, mongolcy.png, mongolian.pdf, mongols.pdf, mongoltr.png, neder.pdf, nihongo.png, norvege-c.pdf, norvege-t.pdf, occdial1.jpg, occdial2.png, occitanie.pdf, occtaur.jpg, paraguay.png, paraguayp.pdf, polmin.jpg, pologne.pdf, portu-a.png, portu-b.png, portu-p.jpg, portugal.pdf, romanian.pdf, rus-re.png, rus-su.pdf, russian.png, russian-e.pdf, russian-f.png, russian-n.png, same.png, same-f.pdf, serbial.pdf, slovak-ok.pdf, slovakia.pdf, slovenian.pdf, slovenie.pdf, sorabe-1.jpg, sorabe-2.jpg, sorben.jpg, sorbian.jpg, spain.pdf, suede-a.pdf, suede-f.pdf, svenska.png, swahili.pdf, swahili-m.png, sweden.pdf, thai.pdf, thai.png, turkish.png, turquie.pdf, uighur.pdf, ukra.png, ukraine.jpg, ukraine.pdf, viet2.pdf, viet3.pdf, viet-w.pdf, wiki.png, wikif.png, wrs-a.png, wrs-c.pdf, xinjiang.png, xinjiangc.png, xyugo.pdf.
--	--

## (2) Informative text files:

- **INSTALL** is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).

- `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on the page before.
  - `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
  - `CATALOG` contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
  - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-3co.tex`, `mtc-add.bib`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fko.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mml.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-nom.tex`, `mtc-ocf.tex`, `mtc-ofs.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsf.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 57) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 81).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english. `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.
- (6) *The list of the graphic files is given in table 7.3 on the preceding page; they are images to include.*
- (7) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french<sup>2</sup>.
- (8) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (9) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (10) `pmk` is a shell script<sup>3</sup> to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’.imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts<sup>4</sup> and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):

<sup>2</sup> This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the `minitoc.dtx` file, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

<sup>3</sup> You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

<sup>4</sup> In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk` (but *not* `cmk`).



- `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’` `.imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
- `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
- `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
- `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
- `tmk`, which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [406, 407] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.4 on the next page; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc-tds.zip`;
- `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF formate (recto-verso printing ).

- (11) `minitoc-tds.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the `minitoc` package.

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds `.sty` files;
4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7) and (10) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
5. the files of (8) and (9) must be installed as on-line documentation;
6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’` `.rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.

- **with `tmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file<sup>5</sup> of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;

<sup>5</sup> The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc-tds.zip` file.



Table 7.4: A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files

TDS Root Directory						
bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	minitoc/	minitoc/
(A)	(B)	(C)			(F)	(G)
		examples/	images/			
		(H)	(I)			
(A) fminitoc.bib, minitoc.bib;			mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.pdf, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.pdf, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.pdf, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.pdf, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfc.pdf, mtc-tsfc.tex;			
(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;						
(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG, fminitoc.lan, fminitoc.pdf, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;						
(D) fminitoc.ist, minitoc.ist;						
(E) cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;						
(F) fminitoc.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;						
(G) minitoc.sty, mtcocff.sty, mtcmess.sty, mtcpatchmem.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;						
(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf,						
			(I) The list of the graphic files is given in table 7.3 on page 243.			

- the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (11) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.

- **with `pmk`:**

- the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
- the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc-tds.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the minitoc package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using minitoc with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

# Chapter 8

## Postface

### Contents

<b>8.1</b>	<b>The origins . . . . .</b>	<b>247</b>	<b>8.10</b>	<b>Developments in 2001 . . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>New design in 1993 . . . . .</b>	<b>248</b>	<b>8.11</b>	<b>Developments in 2002 . . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
<b>8.3</b>	<b>Developments in 1994 . . . . .</b>	<b>248</b>	<b>8.12</b>	<b>Developments in 2003 . . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
<b>8.4</b>	<b>No developments in 1995 . . . . .</b>	<b>248</b>	<b>8.13</b>	<b>Developments in 2004 . . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
<b>8.5</b>	<b>Developments in 1996 . . . . .</b>	<b>249</b>	<b>8.14</b>	<b>Developments in 2005 . . . . .</b>	<b>251</b>
<b>8.6</b>	<b>Developments in 1997 . . . . .</b>	<b>249</b>	<b>8.15</b>	<b>Developments in 2006 . . . . .</b>	<b>253</b>
<b>8.7</b>	<b>Developments in 1998 . . . . .</b>	<b>249</b>	<b>8.16</b>	<b>Developments in 2007 . . . . .</b>	<b>253</b>
<b>8.8</b>	<b>Developments in 1999 . . . . .</b>	<b>249</b>	<b>8.17</b>	<b>Developments in 2008 . . . . .</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>8.9</b>	<b>Developments in 2000 . . . . .</b>	<b>249</b>			

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 662. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

### 8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite`

command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under  $\text{\LaTeX}$  (in fact, by the underlying  $\text{\TeX}$  program itself). As some descriptors are already used by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

## 8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

## 8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the forming of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ , replacing the ageing  $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$ , some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *mini-toc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [59, 60], by Johannes L. BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

## 8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

## 8.5 Developments in 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtcoff` to keep its name short.

## 8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` commande is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

## 8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

## 8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

## 8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [356], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS [414].

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [432] is documented.

I0046

Aliases for some languages are added.

## 8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

## 8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

## 8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [14] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [439, 441, 442].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [13].

## 8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the `.mld` files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [431].

I0042

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

## 8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the  $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [430].

I0040

The `minitoc` package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (`sectsty` package [295], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

I0043

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [317, 318, 364] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [439, 441, 442].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the  $\LaTeX$  compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [398].

W0038

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.



## 8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “\*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

I0043

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [181]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

## 8.16 Developments in 2007

Removed the preparation of documentation in PostScript format.

Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format to PostScript format.

Added hints about the `fncychap` [280], `quotchap` [403], `romannum` [440], `sfheaders` [283], `aliumsec` [254], and `captcont` [127] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 91.

W0086

W0087

W0088

W0089

W0090

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [233].

W0092

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tnk` script and a table describing a TDS-compliant structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS-compliant hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

Added the `mtc-fko.tex` example file.

Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.

Features in the index.

Added the “open” and “close” features.

Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.

Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.

Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.

Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and `siblings`, using `\mtc@toks`.

Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.

Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.

Added internal hyperlinks for messages.

Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.

Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.

Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.

Added flagging of macros in example files.

Added a clickable table of all messages.

Added a local `minitoc` in the “Jargon” chapter.

Added `lithuanian2.mld`.

Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.

Added a hint (warning `W0097`) about the `flowfram` [394, 395] package (incompatible).

W0097

Added a *hint* (`I0053`) about the `float` [281], `floatrow` [265], `trivfloat` [444], and `rotrfloat` [382] packages.

I0053

Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.

Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.

Changed the color of hyperlinks.

Revised the format of headers.

Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

Added `swahili.mld`.

Added stuff (files) for maps of areas of some languages.

Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.

Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on page 243).

Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing (`\jobname.mtc1` file).

Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas DEININGER).

The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.

Added a hint (warning W0099) about the `titlesec [46]` package.

W0099

Complete indexing of the messages.

Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.

Using the `chnghpage` package [427] to make increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.

Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.

Updated `czech.mld`.

Removed `\l@xsection`.

Graphic files are indexed separately.

Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.

Updated `galician.mld`, `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.

Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.

Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.

Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

Added occitan.mld.

Updated croatian.mld, danish.mld, dutch.mld, galician.mld, germanb2.mld, greek.mld, icelandic.mld, interlingua.mld, polish.mld, scottish.mld, and turkish.mld.

## 8.17 Developments in 2008

Corrected polski.mld.

Added table 6.10 on page 231.

Added many maps about languages and dialects, etc.

Better captions for maps.

Added an entry for the Wikipedia in the jargon.

Splitted the TDS hierarchy into two tables 7.4 on page 246 and 7.3 on page 243.

The page numbers in the index are now hyperlinks (thanks to François PÉTIARD).

Colors added in figure 1.1 on page 33.

Corrected an error of message number.

Updated from the babel package version v3.8j of 2008/03/16.

## **Part II**

# **Implementation**

## Contents of the Second Part

---

<b>9</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package</b>	<b>260</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package</b>	<b>441</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package</b>	<b>457</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class</b>	<b>458</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files</b>	<b>460</b>

---

## Chapter 9

# Commented code of the minitoc package

### Contents

---

<b>9.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>264</b>
<b>9.2</b>	<b>Identification code</b>	<b>264</b>
<b>9.3</b>	<b>A file descriptor to write</b>	<b>264</b>
<b>9.4</b>	<b>Indentation and skip</b>	<b>265</b>
<b>9.5</b>	<b>Tests and flags</b>	<b>266</b>
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	266
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	267
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	267
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	268
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	268
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	268
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	269
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	270
<b>9.6</b>	<b>Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option</b>	<b>271</b>
<b>9.7</b>	<b>Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options</b>	<b>271</b>
<b>9.8</b>	<b>Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code></b>	<b>272</b>
<b>9.9</b>	<b>Checking the presence of some packages</b>	<b>272</b>
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	272
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	272
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	275



9.9.15	Check if the floatrow package is loaded	275
9.9.16	Check if the trivfloat package is loaded	276
9.9.17	Check if the rotfloating package is loaded	276
<b>9.10</b>	<b>Is the memoir class loaded?</b>	<b>276</b>
<b>9.11</b>	<b>Testing the emptiness of a file</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>9.12</b>	<b>Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters</b>	<b>278</b>
<b>9.13</b>	<b>Patching the <code>\part</code> command</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>9.14</b>	<b>Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>9.15</b>	<b>Section level macros</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>9.16</b>	<b>Corrections for numbering</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>9.17</b>	<b>Patching the <code>\section</code> command</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>9.18</b>	<b>Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section</b>	<b>281</b>
<b>9.19</b>	<b>Chapter level macros</b>	<b>281</b>
<b>9.20</b>	<b>Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command</b>	<b>281</b>
<b>9.21</b>	<b>Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter</b>	<b>282</b>
<b>9.22</b>	<b>Miscellaneous declarations</b>	<b>282</b>
<b>9.23</b>	<b>Autoconfiguration of extensions</b>	<b>283</b>
<b>9.24</b>	<b>Detecting obsolete versions of <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math></b>	<b>284</b>
<b>9.25</b>	<b>Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers</b>	<b>285</b>
<b>9.26</b>	<b>Default values for the page-number customizations</b>	<b>285</b>
<b>9.27</b>	<b>“Features” for the mini-tables</b>	<b>288</b>
<b>9.28</b>	<b>Fake tables of contents</b>	<b>290</b>
<b>9.29</b>	<b>Depth counters for minilofs and minilots</b>	<b>291</b>
<b>9.30</b>	<b>Chapter level commands</b>	<b>291</b>
<b>9.31</b>	<b>Starred parts, chapters or sections</b>	<b>292</b>
<b>9.32</b>	<b>Font commands for the mini-tables</b>	<b>294</b>
<b>9.33</b>	<b>Internal commands to position the mini-table titles</b>	<b>294</b>
<b>9.34</b>	<b>The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment</b>	<b>295</b>
<b>9.35</b>	<b>The <code>\minitoc</code>, <code>\minilof</code>, and <code>\minilot</code> commands</b>	<b>295</b>
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	295
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	298
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	302
<b>9.36</b>	<b>Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>9.37</b>	<b>The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>9.38</b>	<b>TOC entries without leaders</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>9.39</b>	<b>Mini-tables with or without leaders</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>9.40</b>	<b>The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings</b>	<b>307</b>
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	310
<b>9.41</b>	<b>Mini-lists of figures</b>	<b>314</b>
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	315
<b>9.42</b>	<b>Mini-lists of tables</b>	<b>317</b>
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	317
<b>9.43</b>	<b>Macro to write a contents line</b>	<b>320</b>
<b>9.44</b>	<b>Depth counters for partlofs and partlots</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>9.45</b>	<b>Part level commands</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>9.46</b>	<b>Fonts for the parttocs</b>	<b>322</b>
<b>9.47</b>	<b>Default titles for part-level mini-tables</b>	<b>323</b>
<b>9.48</b>	<b>The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment</b>	<b>324</b>
<b>9.49</b>	<b>The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code>, <code>\partlof</code>, and <code>\partlot</code></b>	<b>325</b>
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	325
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	328
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	331
<b>9.50</b>	<b>Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs</b>	<b>334</b>

<b>9.51</b>	<b>Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued</b>	<b>334</b>
<b>9.52</b>	<b>The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings</b>	<b>334</b>
9.52.1	Processing macros for the <code>parttocs</code>	337
9.52.2	Processing macros for the <code>partlofs</code>	340
9.52.3	Processing macros for the <code>partlots</code>	343
<b>9.53</b>	<b>Depth counters for <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code></b>	<b>345</b>
<b>9.54</b>	<b>Section-level commands</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>9.55</b>	<b>Fonts commands for <code>secttocs</code> and <code>co.</code></b>	<b>346</b>
<b>9.56</b>	<b>Internal macros for title positioning</b>	<b>346</b>
<b>9.57</b>	<b>The <code>stc@verse</code> environment</b>	<b>347</b>
<b>9.58</b>	<b>The <code>\secttoc</code>, <code>\sectlof</code>, and <code>\sectlot</code> commands</b>	<b>347</b>
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command	347
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	350
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	353
<b>9.59</b>	<b>Auxiliary internal commands, section level</b>	<b>355</b>
<b>9.60</b>	<b>Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)</b>	<b>356</b>
<b>9.61</b>	<b>The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings</b>	<b>357</b>
<b>9.62</b>	<b>End of section-level commands</b>	<b>367</b>
<b>9.63</b>	<b>The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command</b>	<b>367</b>
<b>9.64</b>	<b>Use with <code>\nofiles</code></b>	<b>368</b>
<b>9.65</b>	<b>Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>9.66</b>	<b>The horizontal rules and their default values</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>9.67</b>	<b>The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands</b>	<b>370</b>
9.67.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	372
9.67.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	376
9.67.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	378
9.67.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	379
9.67.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	383
9.67.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	386
9.67.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	388
9.67.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	390
9.67.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	392
<b>9.68</b>	<b>The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings</b>	<b>393</b>
<b>9.69</b>	<b>Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC</b>	<b>395</b>
<b>9.70</b>	<b>Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC</b>	<b>397</b>
<b>9.71</b>	<b>Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC</b>	<b>398</b>
<b>9.72</b>	<b>The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>9.73</b>	<b>The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command</b>	<b>400</b>
<b>9.74</b>	<b>The “coffee breaks”</b>	<b>400</b>
<b>9.75</b>	<b>Initialization of counters</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>9.76</b>	<b>Declarations for simple options</b>	<b>401</b>
9.76.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	401
9.76.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	401
9.76.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	402
9.76.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	402
9.76.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	402
<b>9.77</b>	<b>The <code>insection</code> option</b>	<b>402</b>
<b>9.78</b>	<b>The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options</b>	<b>403</b>
<b>9.79</b>	<b>Language options</b>	<b>403</b>
<b>9.80</b>	<b>The <code>hints</code> option</b>	<b>408</b>
9.80.1	First part: <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	408
9.80.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	408
9.80.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	409

9.80.1.3	Hint about the tocibind package . . . . .	409
9.80.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes . . . . .	409
9.80.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package . . . . .	410
9.80.1.6	Hint about the titlesec package . . . . .	410
9.80.1.7	Hint about the titletoc package . . . . .	411
9.80.1.8	Hint about the placeins package . . . . .	411
9.80.1.9	Hint about the memoir class . . . . .	412
9.80.1.10	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes . . . . .	413
9.80.1.11	Hint about the amsbook class . . . . .	413
9.80.1.12	Hint about the abstract package . . . . .	413
9.80.1.13	Hint about the jura class . . . . .	414
9.80.1.14	Hint about the flowfram package . . . . .	414
9.80.1.15	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands . . . . .	414
9.80.1.15.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code> . . . . .	415
9.80.1.15.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code> . . . . .	415
9.80.1.15.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code> . . . . .	416
9.80.1.16	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands . . . . .	416
9.80.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code> . . . . .	417
9.80.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option . . . . .	417
9.80.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests . . . . .	418
9.80.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part) . . . . .	420
9.80.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part) . . . . .	422
9.80.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions . . . . .	424
9.80.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package . . . . .	425
9.80.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package . . . . .	425
9.80.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package . . . . .	426
9.80.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package . . . . .	426
9.80.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package . . . . .	427
9.80.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package . . . . .	427
9.80.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package . . . . .	427
9.80.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package . . . . .	428
9.80.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package . . . . .	428
9.80.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package . . . . .	428
9.80.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package . . . . .	429
9.80.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package . . . . .	429
9.80.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package . . . . .	429
9.80.2.19	Final part of the hint about the <code>float</code> package . . . . .	430
9.80.2.20	Final part of the hint about the <code>floatrow</code> package . . . . .	430
9.80.2.21	Final part of the hint about the <code>trivfloat</code> package . . . . .	430
9.80.2.22	Final part of the hint about the <code>rotfloat</code> package . . . . .	431
9.80.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected . . . . .	431
9.80.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used . . . . .	433
9.80.2.25	Check if some hints have been written . . . . .	434
<b>9.81</b>	<b>Processing of options . . . . .</b>	<b>434</b>
9.81.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option . . . . .	435
9.81.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option . . . . .	436
9.81.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option . . . . .	436
9.81.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option . . . . .	437
9.81.5	Saving the sectionning commands . . . . .	437
<b>9.82</b>	<b>Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands . . . . .</b>	<b>438</b>
<b>9.83</b>	<b>The <code>fmini.toc.dtx</code> file . . . . .</b>	<b>439</b>

---

## 9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the minitoc package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file<sup>1</sup> are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

## 9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
2427 <*minitoc>
```

<pre>\NeedsTeXFormat \ProvidesPackage \mtcPackageInfo \RequirePackage</pre>	<pre>This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is written in the <i>document.log</i> file. This package will not work with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X2.09.  2428 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]% 2429 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}% 2430     [2008/04/03 v57 Package minitoc (JPDF)] % message I0000 2431 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14] 2432 \mtcPackageInfo[I0001]{minitoc}% 2433     {*** minitoc package, version 57 ***\@gobble}</pre>	<pre>I0000 I0001</pre>
---	--	------------------------

## 9.3 A file descriptor to write

`\tf@mtc` A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is `\tf@mtc`. The `\newwrite` minitoc package uses only one file descriptor for writing. See section 9.23 on page 283.

```
2434 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

<sup>1</sup> The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

## 9.4 Indentation and skip

```

\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip   \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default:
\mtcskipamount \bigskipamount).
\parskip
\addvspace 2435 \newlength\mtcindent
            2436 \newskip\mtcskipamount
            2437 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
            2438 \def\mtcskip{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}

```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
\mtcgapafterheads
            2439 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
            2440 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
\kernafterparttoc names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
\kernafterpartlof \renewcommand.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 2441 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 2442 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 2443 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 2444 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 2445 }%
\kernafterminilot 2446 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
                2447 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
                2448 }%
                2449 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2450 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2451 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2452 }%
                2453 }%
                2454 }%
                2455 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2456 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
                2457 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
                2458 }%

```

```

\@ifundefined We defines horizontal offets by which the margins in the mini-tables are corrected (added to
\ptcoffset the right margin and subtracted from the left margin). These are commands, not lengths2, to
\pfloffset be redefined by \renewcommand.
\pltoffset
\mtcoffset 2459 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%
\mlfoffset 2460 \def\ptcoffset{0pt}%
\mltoffset 2461 \def\plfoffset{0pt}%
\sltoffset 2462 \def\pltoffset{0pt}%
\sfloffset 2463 }%
\sltoffset 2464 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2465 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%
2466 {}%
2467 \def\stcoffset{0pt}%
2468 \def\slfoffset{0pt}%
2469 \def\sltoffset{0pt}%
2470 }%
2471 {}%
2472 {}%
2473 \def\mtcoffset{0pt}%
2474 \def\mlfoffset{0pt}%
2475 \def\mltoffset{0pt}%
2476 }%

```

## 9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags<sup>3</sup> (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.80 on page 408) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

### 9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ But first, we define some flags for the hints option:
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

```

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

<sup>2</sup> We avoid to allocate a precious length register.

<sup>3</sup> Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native  $\text{\TeX}$  engine (much more with  $\varepsilon\text{-TeX}$  [104], but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure and debug than a code programmed with counters, IMHO.

```

2477 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
2478 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
2479 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false

```

### 9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```

\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 2480 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false

```

### 9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is a
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ recent enough version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc).
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2481 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2482 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
2483 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
2484 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
2485 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ We do the same for some caption-related packages:
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2486 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2487 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2488 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2489 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2490 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2491 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2492 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 2493 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
2494 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
2495 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ And the varsects package and other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2496 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2497 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2498 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2499 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2500 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 2501 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
2502 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
2503 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ And yet other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 2504 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 2505 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2506 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2507 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
2508 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
2509 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false

```

### 9.5.4 Flags for packages dealing with floats

```

\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ We must warn about a limitation with the float [281], floatrow [265], trivfloat [444], and
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ rotfloat [382] packages.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ 2510 \newif\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ \@mtc@floatLoaded@false
2511 \newif\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false
2512 \newif\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false
2513 \newif\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false

```

### 9.5.5 Insertion of empty mini-tables

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2514 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2515 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2516 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2517 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2518 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2519 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2520 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2521 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
2522 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

### 9.5.6 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ The part counter:

2523 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
2524 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```



`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` The chapter counter:

```
2525 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
2526 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}
```

`\if@mtc@section@def@` The section counter:

```
2527 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
2528 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}
```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```
2529 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
2530 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
2531 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
2532 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
2533 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
2534 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

## 9.5.7 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.80 on page 408).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

`\if@partlof@used@`

`\if@partlot@used@` 2535 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false

`\if@doparttoc@used@` 2536 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false

`\if@dopartlof@used@` 2537 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false

`\if@dopartlot@used@` 2538 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false

2539 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false

2540 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false

```

\if@minitoc@used@ For the chapter level:
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 2541 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2542 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 2543 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 2544 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
2545 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
2546 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false

```

```

\if@secttoc@used@ For the section level:
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 2547 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2548 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2549 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2550 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
2551 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
2552 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false

```

```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2553 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
2554 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
2555 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

### 9.5.8 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one (see [234, page 204]). So we define a specific flag:

```
2556 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:  
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

2557 \AtBeginDocument{%
2558   \ifmtcsecondpart
2559     \global\mtcsecondparttrue
2560   \else
2561     \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
2562   \fi}

```

```

\AtEndDocument   At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:
\ifmtcsecondpart
  \@mainaux 2563 \AtEndDocument{%
            2564 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
            2565   \mtcsecondparttrue
            2566 \else
            2567   \mtcsecondpartfalse
            2568 \fi
            2569 \if@files
            2570   \ifmtcsecondpart
            2571     \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2572       {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
            2573   \else
            2574     \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2575       {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
            2576   \fi
            2577 \fi}

```

So we need two  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.62 on page 522) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 93.

## 9.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command
\if@mtc@notoccite@ (redefinable command) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile, used by this option (this has been
                    requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [13]). See section 1.6 on page 53.

```

```

2578 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
2579 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
2580   {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}

```

## 9.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

```

\iftightmtc We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and
\ifktightmtc k-loose options):

```

```

2581 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
2582 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse

```

## 9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [356]. A flag is defined, then  
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` this preparation is performed in an `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This  
`\@ifpackageloaded` action defines some commands for the hyperref package.

I0005

```

2583 \mtcPackageInfo[I0005]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
2584 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
2585 \AtBeginDocument{%
2586   \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
2587     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
2588     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
2589     \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
2590     \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
2591     \let\toclevel@starpart\toclevel@part
2592     \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
2593     \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
2594     \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
2595     \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
2596     \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
2597     \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
2598   }{}%

```

## 9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

### 9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the sectsty package [295] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when  
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@` minitoc is loaded and also in an `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been  
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@` loaded. See section 9.80.2.6 on page 425.  
`\@ifpackageloaded`

```

2599 \@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}%
2600 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the varsects package [398] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test  
`\AtBeginDocument` when minitoc is loaded and also in an `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have  
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@` been loaded. See section 9.80.2.7 on page 425.  
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@`

```

2601 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
2602 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [280] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.8 on page 426.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@

2603 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}%
2604 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [233] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.80.2.9 on page 426.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

2605 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}%
2606 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [403] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.10 on page 427.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

2607 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}%
2608 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [440] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.11 on page 427.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

2609 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}%
2610 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [283] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.12 on page 427.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

2611 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}%
2612 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.8 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [254] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.13 on page 428.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

2613 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}%
2614 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.9 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [127] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.14 on page 428.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

2615 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}%
2616 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.10 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [383, 384, 386] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.15 on page 428.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

2617 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}%
2618 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [385] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.16 on page 429.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

2619 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}%
2620 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [434] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.17 on page 429.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

2621 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2622 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [213] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.18 on page 429.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

2623 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2624 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.14 Check if the float package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the float package [281] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.19 on page 430.
\if@mtc@floatLoaded@

2625 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{float}{\@mtc@floatLoaded@true}{}%

```

### 9.9.15 Check if the floatrow package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the floatrow package [265] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.20 on page 430.
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@

```

```
2626 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{floatrow}{\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true}}}%
```

### 9.9.16 Check if the trivfloat package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the trivfloat package [444] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.21 on page 430.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
```

```
2627 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{trivfloat}{\@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true}}}%
```

### 9.9.17 Check if the rotfloat package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the rotfloat package [382] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.22 on page 431.
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
```

```
2628 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{rotfloat}{\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true}}}%
```

## 9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

```
\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir [439, 441, 442] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ adjustments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ chapter 12 on page 458). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ memoir.cls.
```

```
2629 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
2630 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
2631 \mtcPackageInfo[I0030]{minitoc}%
2632 {the memoir class is loaded:
2633 \MessageBreak
2634 compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
2635 {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
2636 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
2637 \ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
2638 {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[I0020]{minitoc}%
2639 {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2640 {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[I0027]{minitoc}%
2641 {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2642 \mtcPackageInfo[I0032]{minitoc}%
2643 {This version of the memoir class uses
2644 \MessageBreak
2645 a version of \string\chapter\space which is
2646 \MessageBreak
2647 incompatible with the minitoc package.
```

I0030

I0020

I0027

I0032



```

2648      \MessageBreak
2649      We try to patch\@gobble}%
2650  \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
2651 \fi

```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ And now the patch:

E0028

```

2652 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
2653 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
2654   \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{{}\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}%
2655   \mtcPackageError[E0028]{minitoc}%
2656     {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
2657     {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
2658 \fi

```

## 9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

```

\mtc@ifmtarg Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package
\mtc@xifmtarg ifmtarg [443], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by
\mtc@EndWhile Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [420, Vol III, page 408]). The group is necessary to keep local
\mtc@WhilePreCondition the catcode change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While 2659 \begingroup
\mtc@While 2660 \catcode'\Q=3
\mtc@WhileNext 2661 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
2662   \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
2663   \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
2664 \endgroup
2665 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
2666 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
2667   \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
2668   \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
2669   \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
2670   \mtc@@While
2671 }
2672 \def\mtc@@While{%
2673   \mtc@WhilePreCondition
2674   \mtc@WhileCondition
2675   \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
2676     \mtc@WhileBody
2677     \mtc@@While
2678   }%
2679   \else
2680     \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
2681   \fi
2682   \mtc@WhileNext
2683 }

```

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue
\if@mtc@FE if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the is file not empty. An inexistent file is empty.
\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an
\mtc@EndWhile eternity (33 s for 106 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.
\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline 2684 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\tf@mtc 2685 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\@inputcheck 2686 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
2687 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to \mtc@Rline\relax
2688 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2689 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
2690 \def\mtc@Rline{}
2691 \else
2692 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2693 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}{\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
2694 \fi}
2695 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
2696 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
2697 \if@mtc@checkfiles
2698 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
2699 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
2700 \mtc@While{\if@mtc@LI\relax}{\mtc@Body}\mtc@EndWhile}%
2701 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
2702 \else
2703 \@mtc@FEfalse%
2704 \fi}
2705 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
2706 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
2707 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2708 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
2709 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2710 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
2711 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2712 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

## 9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

```

\mtc@onebackpart It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
\mtc@onebackchapter macros are:
\mtc@onebacksection
\addtocounter 2713 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
2714 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
2715 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

### 9.13 Patching the `\part` command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and  
`\mtc@svspart` a warning is displayed<sup>4</sup>. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version)  
`\mtc@svpart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the  
`\@spart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 334.  
`\@part`  
`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14) is also skipped if `\part` is not defined.

W0018
I0023

```

2716 \@ifundefined{part}{%
2717   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0018]{minitoc}%
2718   {part level macros NOT available}
2719 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
2720   \mtcPackageInfo[I0023]{minitoc}%
2721   {part level macros available\@gobble}
2722   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
2723   \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
2724   \let\mtc@svpart\@part
2725   \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

### 9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an  
`\mtc@ifmtarg` optional argument, the title of the part as if should appear in the TOC.  
`\contentsline`  
`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omit-  
`\adjustptc` ted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the .toc file. If it is not empty,  
`\l@xpart` we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}` line in the .toc file. We always add a  
`\l@part` `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the ptc  
 counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 321). Using `xpart` as first argument  
 of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the  
 entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never  
 be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2726 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
2727   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
2728   {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
2729   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
2730   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
2731   \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

2732 }%

```

<sup>4</sup> Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

## 9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the minitoc package with the class of your document.

I0004

I0029

W0017

I0028

```

2733 \ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0004]{minitoc}%
2734         {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2735 \ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0029]{minitoc}%
2736         {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2737 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0017]{minitoc}%
2738     {no section or chapter level macros available
2739     \MessageBreak
2740     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
2741 {\mtcPackageInfo[I0028]{minitoc}%
2742     {section level macros available\@gobble}%

```

## 9.16 Corrections for numbering

`\mtc@onebacksect` As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement the secttoc counter (stc) via `\mtc@onebacksect` when the corresponding commands are executed. Hence we patch these commands.

```

\mtcsv@tableofcontents 2743 \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 2744 \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 2745 \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
2746 \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
2747 \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
2748 \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}

```

## 9.17 Patching the `\section` command

`\mtc@svsection` If the `\section` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@sect` (for the unstarred version) or `\@ssect` (for the starred version, `\section*`): we add `\stepcounter{stc}` to increment the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case<sup>5</sup>.

```

\section
\stepcounter 2749 \let\mtc@svsection\section
2750 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
2751 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect

```

<sup>5</sup> Version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter.

## 9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

`\mtcaddsection` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the `\mtcaddsection` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{section}{title...}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@section` `\contentsline{xsect}{}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `stc` counter, via `\adjuststc` (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 345). Using `xsect` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xsect` will be invoked in place of `\l@section` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2752 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][]{%
2753   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}{}}%
2754   {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
2755   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}{}}%
2756   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}{}}%
2757   \adjuststc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```

2758 }{}%

```

## 9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like book or report. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\ifundefined{chapter}`.

I0003

```

2759 \mtcPackageInfo[I0003]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}

```

## 9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 305).

```

2760 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}

```

## 9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we `\adjustmtc` add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the .toc file. We always add a `\l@xchapter` `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment `\l@chapter` the mtc counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 292). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2761 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][{}]{%
2762   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}{%
2763     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
2764   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
2765   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
2766   \adjustmtc}%
2767 }%
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 280.

## 9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

`\newread` The `\newread` command must be redeclared as being `\outer` (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).  
`\newtoks` We need a token register (`\mtc@toks`), a temporary string (`\mtc@string`), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (`\mtc@zrule`) and a command discouraging page breaks (`\mtc@BBR`, for “bad break”).  
`\mtc@toks`  
`\mtc@string`  
`\mtc@strut` For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to  
`\mtc@strutbox` follow the current font.  
`\mtc@hstrut`  
`\mtc@hstrutbox` 2768 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@n}  
`\mtc@v` 2769 \newtoks\mtc@toks  
`\mtc@zrule` 2770 \def\mtc@string{\relax}  
`\mtc@BBR` 2771 \newbox\mtc@strutbox  
2772 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}  
2773 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox  
2774 \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}  
2775 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox  
2776 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}  
2777 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox  
2778 \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}  
2779 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}  
2780 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}  
2781 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}

Table 9.1: Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc0</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(0)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

## 9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a trick to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files<sup>6</sup>. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the *document.log* file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (\*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```

\newif (0) First, a message and a new flag:
\if@mtc@longext@ 2782 \mtcPackageInfo[I0002]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 2783 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\immediate 2784 \newif\if@mtc@longext@\@mtc@longext@false
\openout
\write (1) We write "\@mtc@longext@true" in \jobname.mtc0. But if the OS has short
\closeout extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
\input
\jobname 2785 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
2786 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@true}
2787 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write "\@mtc@longext@false" in \jobname.mtc.

2788 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2789 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@false}
2790 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc0. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

2791 \input{\jobname.mtc0}

```

I0002

(4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc0`, but false if we read from

I0012

I0031

W0019

<sup>6</sup> It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the *document.log* file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the *.toc*, *.lof* and *.lot* files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TEX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the *document.log* file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectionning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

\jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```

2792 \if@mtc@longext@
2793 \mtcPackageInfo[I0012]{minitoc}%
2794 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used@gobble}
2795 \mtcPackageInfo[I0031]{minitoc}%
2796 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
2797 \MessageBreak
2798 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names@gobble}%
2799 \else
2800 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0019]{minitoc}%
2801 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
2802 \MessageBreak
2803 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
2804 \MessageBreak
2805 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
2806 \fi

```

- (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 277).

```

2807 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2808 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2809 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
2810 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

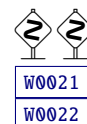
## 9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

\@inputcheck This code detects old versions of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands, \@inputcheck and \reset@font. If you get one of these messages, you are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X installation, which is just rusting since... a lot of years!

```

2811 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
2812 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0021]{minitoc}%
2813 {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
2814 \MessageBreak
2815 Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
2816 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
2817 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0022]{minitoc}%
2818 {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
2819 \MessageBreak
2820 Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
2821 \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```





## 9.25 Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

```

\@undottedtocline The (internal) macro \@undottedtocline is a modified version of the standard command
\ifundottedmtc \@dottedtocline. It will be used in customization macros.
\undottedmtcfalse

2822 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
2823 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
2824   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
2825     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
2826     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
2827      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
2828      \interlinepenalty\@M
2829      \leavevmode
2830      \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
2831     \hskip -\leftskip
2832     #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
2833     \null\par}%
2834   \fi}

```

## 9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [439, 441, 442] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```
2835 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers

2836 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
2837   \cftpagenumberon{section}
2838   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
2839   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
2840   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
2841   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
2842 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
2843   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
2844   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
2845   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
2846   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
2847   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
    2848 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
    2849   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
    2850   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
    2851   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
    2852   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
    2853 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
    2854   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
    2855   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
    2856   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
    2857   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers
    2858 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
    2859   \cftpagenumberson{chapter}
    2860   \cftpagenumberson{section}
    2861   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
    2862   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
    2863   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
    2864   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
    2865 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
    2866   \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
    2867   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
    2868   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
    2869   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
    2870   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
    2871   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
    \slfpagenumbers 2872 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 2873 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
    \plfpagenumbers 2874 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 2875 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
    2876 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
    2877 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
    \sltpagenumbers 2878 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 2879 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
    \pltpagenumbers 2880 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 2881 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
    2882 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
    2883 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
2884 \else
```

```
\mtcpagenumbers First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2885 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 2886 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2887 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 2888 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
2889 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
2890 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mlfpagenumbers Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2891 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 2892 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2893 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 2894 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
2895 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
2896 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mltpagenumbers Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 2897 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 2898 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2899 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 2900 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
2901 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
2902 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
2903 \fi
```

```
\ptcpagenumbers Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 2904 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 2905 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2906 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 2907 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 2908 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 2909 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 2910 \stcpagenumbers
2911 \slfpagenumbers
2912 \sltpagenumbers
```

## 9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has five “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature, an “open” feature, an “close” feature, and a “pagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each parttoc. Usually such features contain only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

An “open” feature contains code to be executed just before the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either prepare some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

An “close” feature contains code to be executed just after the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either finish some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

A “pagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “pagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “pagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter    If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 2913 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 2914   \let\beforeparttoc\empty
                2915   \let\beforepartlof\empty
                2916   \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```

2917   {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
2918   \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
2919   \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\beforeinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforeminilof`

```
\beforeminilot 2920 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
                2921 \let\beforeminilof\empty
                2922 \let\beforeminilot\empty
```

`\beforesecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforesectlof`

```
\beforesectlot 2923 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
                2924 \let\beforesectlof\empty
                2925 \let\beforesectlot\empty
```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterparttoc`

```
\afterpartlof 2926 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 2927   \let\afterparttoc\empty
                2928   \let\afterpartlof\empty
                2929   \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```
2930   {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
2931    \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
2932    \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\afterinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterminilof`

```
\afterminilot 2933 \let\afterinitoc\empty
                2934 \let\afterminilof\empty
                2935 \let\afterminilot\empty
```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\aftersectlof`

```
\aftersectlot 2936 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
                2937 \let\aftersectlof\empty
                2938 \let\aftersectlot\empty
```

```

\openparttoc By default, the “open” and “close” features do nothing:
\openpartlof
\openpartlot 2939 \let\openparttoc\empty \let\closeparttoc\empty
\openminitoc 2940 \let\openpartlof\empty \let\closepartlof\empty
\openminilof 2941 \let\openpartlot\empty \let\closepartlot\empty
\openminilot 2942 \let\openminitoc\empty \let\closeminitoc\empty
\opensecttoc 2943 \let\openminilof\empty \let\closeminilof\empty
\opensectlof 2944 \let\openminilot\empty \let\closeminilot\empty
\opensectlot 2945 \let\opensecttoc\empty \let\closesecttoc\empty
                2946 \let\opensectlof\empty \let\closesectlof\empty
                2947 \let\opensectlot\empty \let\closesectlot\empty

```

```

\thispagestyle By default, all the “pagestyle” features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only
\thispageparttocstyle the first page of the mini-table. If \chapter is not defined, there is no default “pagestyle”
\thispagepartlofstyle features at the part level.
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageinitocstyle 2948 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 2949 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 2950 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 2951 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofstyle 2952 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 2953 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
                2954 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}}
                2955 \def\thispageinitocstyle{\empty}
                2956 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
                2957 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
                2958 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
                2959 \def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
                2960 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.67.8 on page 388, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is a much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

## 9.28 Fake tables of contents

```

\faketableofcontents If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, with-
\fakeistoffigures out inserting it into your document. This \faketableofcontents command is a stripped off
\fakeistoftables version of the standard command \tableofcontents. We define in the same way the anal-
\fake@starttoc og commands \fakeistoffigures and \fakeistoftables, using in fact just a stripped
\if@filesw version \fake@starttoc of \@starttoc. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and
\newwrite stc counters now, if they are defined7.
\immediate
\openout

```

---

<sup>7</sup> Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

```

2961 \def\fakeableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
2962   \ifundefined{c@ptc}{ }\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
2963   \ifundefined{c@mtc}{ }\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
2964   \ifundefined{c@stc}{ }\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
2965   }
2966 \def\fakeistofffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
2967 \def\fakeistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
2968 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup \makeatletter
2969   \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
2970     \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
2971     \jobname.#1\relax \fi
2972   \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

## 9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the necessary new counters:
  \newcounter      minilofdepth and minilofdepth. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the
  \setcounter      loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:
  \c@lofdepth
  \c@lotdepth
2973 \AtBeginDocument{%
2974   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{ }%
2975   { \newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
2976   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{ }%
2977   { \newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
2978 }%

```

## 9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

```

\mtc@markboth First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
  \@mkboth
2979 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
2980 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth

```

### 9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

`\addst@rred` We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: `\part*`, `\chapter*`  
`\addcontentsline` and `\section*`. The section-level is different depending on the presence of the `\chapter`  
`\stepcounter` command. Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the `.toc` file, with  
`\c@ptc` the right depth to print it (see `\l@star...` later, in section 9.65 on page 369).  
`\c@mtc`

```
\c@stc 2981 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
2982   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
2983   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
2984     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
2985       \stepcounter{ptc}%
2986     \fi
2987   }%
2988   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
2989     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
2990       \stepcounter{mtc}%
2991     \fi
2992     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix\relax
2993       \stepcounter{mtc}%
2994     \fi
2995   }%
2996   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
2997     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
2998   %%      \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
2999     \stepcounter{stc}%
3000   \fi
3001   }%
3002 }%
```

`\addstarredsection` If `\chapter` is not defined, we just define `\addstarredsection`:

```
\chapter
\addst@rred 3003 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3004   \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
3005 }%
```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

```
3006 {%
```



W0003

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
@if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\newcounter command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\setcounter mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\adjustmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\decrementmtc
\incrementmtc 3007 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\themtc 3008 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\columnwidth 3009 {\mtcPackageWarning[W0003]{minitoc}%
3010 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3011 \MessageBreak
3012 command}%
3013 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
3014 \newcounter{mtc}
3015 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3016 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
3017 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3018 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
3019 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
3020 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
3021 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}

\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 3022 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
\slt@rule 3023 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
\mtcindent 3024 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
3025 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
3026 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
3027 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
3028 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
3029 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

### 9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

`\mtcfont` We define these commands with full NFSS [271] descriptions. These definitions are effective if `\chapter` is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the `\mtcsetfont` macro (section 9.67.2 on page 372) and the `\mtcsettitlefont` macro later (section 9.67.3 on page 376).

```
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 3030 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 3031 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 3032 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 3033 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 3034 \let\mlffont\mtcfont \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 3035 \let\mltfont\mtcfont \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
3036 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

`\coffeeont` And `\coffeeont` is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [279].

```
3037 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}
```

### 9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized in `\df@mtitc`, `\do@mtitc` `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro later (section 9.35.1 on the following page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```
\c@mti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 3038 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 3039 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 3040 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3041 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3042 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

```
\l@mti Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 3043 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 3044 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 3045 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 3046 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt
```

```
3047 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
3048 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti
```

### 9.34 The mtc@verse environment

`mtc@verse` Each minitoc is placed inside a `mtc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\mtc@verse` and `\endmtc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\list` `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to `\mtcindent`. `\endmtc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break. The `mtc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\mtcoffset`).

```
\topsep
\parsep
\mtcindent 3049 \def\mtc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
3050 \list{}}%
3051 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \partopsep=\z@
3052 \listparindent=\itemindent \topsep=lex
3053 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3054 \leftmargin=\mtcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
3055 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+1}%
3056 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-1}%
3057 }%
3058 \item[]
3059 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}
```

### 9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

#### 9.35.1 The \minitoc command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call  
`\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the  
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3060 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{ \minitoc@}]{\minitoc@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called  
 (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.80.2.2 on page 418).

```
3061 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
3062 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix  
`\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mtc` (long extensions) or `.M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute  
 number of the minitoc.

```
3063 \if@mtc@longext@
3064 \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
3065 \else
3066 \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
3067 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is  
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

I0006

```
3068 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3069 \if@mtc@FE
3070 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3071 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3072 \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
3073 \else
```

`\thispagemininitocstyle` We call `\thispagemininitocstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because,  
 by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually  
 there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
3074 \thispagemininitocstyle
3075 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```

```

\beforeminitoc We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page
samepage breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
\do@mtitc corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules
\e@mti are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
\n@mti top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.
\c@mti
\l@mti 3076 \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 3077 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3078 \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3079 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
\mtctitle 3080 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3081 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 3082 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 3083 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 3084 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3085 \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
3086 \raggedright
tabular 3087 \parskip=\z@%
3088 \reset@font\mtcfont%
3089 \parindent=\z@%
3090 \nopagebreak[4]%
3091 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3092 \par\noindent %
3093 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
3094 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3095 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3096 \end{tabular}%
3097 \else
3098 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3099 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
3100 \end{tabular}%
3101 \fi

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
\mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:
\mtcindent
\mtc@offset 3102 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3103 \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3104 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3105 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3106 \begin{mtc@verse}{\mtc@offset}%

\c@tocdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth
\c@minitocdepth (\c@minitocdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where
\\ tocdepth has been forced to minitocdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low
\mtc@BBR enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

3107 \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3108 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
\@dottedtocline minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
\@undottedtocline by Donald ARSENEAU for his notocite package [13]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile macro \mtc@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
\mtc@setform \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
\openminitoc The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
\closeminitoc file.
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 3109 \beginngroup
3110 \makeatletter
3111 \ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
3112 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3113 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3114 \mtc@setform%
3115 \openminitoc
3116 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3117 \closeminitoc
3118 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3119 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3120 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminitoc. The blank line (\) is
\ essential.
samepage
\afterminitoc 3121 \end{mtc@verse}%
3122 \kernafterminitoc
3123 \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3124 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3125 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}

\mtc@bottom@rule And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 3126 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3127 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3128 \vskip -2.5ex
3129 \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}

```

### 9.35.2 The \minilof command

\minilof The \minilof command is very similar to the \minitoc command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).

`\chapter`

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3130 \def\minilof{\ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.80.2.2 on page 418).

```
3131 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
3132 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlf (long extensions) or .F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
3133 \if@mtc@longext@%
3134   \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
3135 \else
3136   \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
3137 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```
3138   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3139   \if@mtc@FE
3140   \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3141     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3142   \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
3143   \else
```

I0006

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```
3144      \thispageminilofstyle
3145 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```
\l@mti 3146      \beforeminilof
\r@mti 3147      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3148      \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3149      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 3150      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3151      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 3152      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 3153      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 3154      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3155      \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3156      \raggedright
3157      \parskip=\z@
3158      \reset@font\mlffont
3159      \parindent=\z@
3160      \nopagebreak[4]%
3161      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3162      \par\noindent
3163      \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
3164      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3165      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3166      \end{tabular}%
3167      \else
3168      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3169      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\ \hline
3170      \end{tabular}%
3171      \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtcindent
\mlffoffset 3172      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3173      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3174      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3175      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3176      \begin{mtc@verse}{\mlffoffset}%
```



`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth  
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where  
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low  
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
indentation.

```
3177 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3178 {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
3179 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3180 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the  
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for  
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [13]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some  
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.  
`\openminilof` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table  
`\closeminilof` file.  
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3181 \begingroup
3182 \makeatletter
3183 \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
3184 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3185 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3186 \mlf@setform
3187 \openminilof
3188 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3189 \closeminilof
3190 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
3191 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3192 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),  
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line (`\`) is  
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilof 3193 \end{mtc@verse}%
3194 \kernafterminilof
3195 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3196 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3197 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi%
```

### 9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic minilot).  
`\chapter`

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call  
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the  
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3198 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{ \minilot@}]{ \minilot@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.80.2.2 on page 418).

```
3199 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3200 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix  
`\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlt (long extensions) or .T (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilot.

```
3201 \if@mtc@longext@%
3202   \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
3203 \else
3204   \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
3205 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```

3206      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3207      \if@mtc@FE
3208      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3209          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3210      \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
3211      \else

```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```

3212      \thispageminilotstyle
3213      %      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

```

\do@mtitc
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti 3214      \beforeminilot
\r@mti 3215      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3216      \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3217      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 3218      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3219      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 3220      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 3221      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 3222      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3223      \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3224      \raggedright
3225      \parskip=\z@%
3226      \reset@font\mltfont%
3227      \parindent=\z@%
3228      \nopagebreak[4]%
3229      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3230      \par\noindent
3231      \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
3232      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3233      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
3234      \end{tabular}%
3235      \else
3236      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3237      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\\hline
3238      \end{tabular}%
3239      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and  
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtcindent
\mltoffset 3240      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3241      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
           3242      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
           3243      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
           3244      \begin{mtc@verse}\mltoffset}%
```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth  
`\c@minilotdepth` (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where  
`\` `lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low  
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
indentation.

```
3245      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3246      {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3247      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3248      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputing the  
`\@dottedtocline` minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for  
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [13]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some  
`\mlt@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.  
`\openminilot` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table  
`\closeminilot` file.  
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3249 \beginngroup
           3250 \makeatletter
           3251 \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
           3252 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
           3253 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
           3254 \mlt@setform
           3255 \openminilot
           3256 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
           3257 \closeminilot
           3258 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
           3259 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
           3260 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),  
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\`) is  
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilot 3261      \end{mtc@verse}%
           3262      \kernafterminilot
```

```

3263 \nopagebreak[4]\m!t@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3264 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3265 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi}%

```

### 9.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

`\l@xchapter` First, we define `\l@xchapter` which is like `\l@chapter`, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its printing (except if you cheat):

`\@dottedtocline`

`\l@chapter`

`\xchapter` 3266 `\def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}`

3267 `\def\xchapter{xchapter}`

`\@chapter` Then we patch `\@chapter` (the non-starred branch of `\chapter`) to add pseudo-chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).

`\sv@chapter`

`\addcontentsline`

`\ignorespaces`

```

3268 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
3269 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[{\#1}]{#2}\relax%
3270 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
3271 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
3272 \ignorespaces}

```

`\mtc@schapter` We also patch `\@schapter` (the starred branch of `\chapter`) to add marks in the TOC to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to take slices from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as `\relax`, they should not perturbate other packages.

`\@schapter`

`\addtocontents`

`\chapterbegin`

`\chapterend`

```

3273 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
3274 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
3275 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
3276 \let\chapterbegin\relax
3277 \let\chapterend\relax

```

### 9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

`\addstarredsection` If the command `\chapter` is undefined, we define the command `\addstarredsection` (only if `\section` is defined). If the command `\chapter` is defined, we define the command `\addstarredchapter`. If the command `\part` is defined, we define the command `\addstarredpart`. We use the utility command `\addst@rred` defined in section 9.31 on page 292.

`\chapter`

`\section`

`\part`

`\addst@rred`

```

3278 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3279   {\@ifundefined{section}%
3280    {\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
3281    {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
3282 \@ifundefined{part}%
3283   {\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}

```

### 9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro `\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

3284 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3285   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3286     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3287     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3288      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3289      \interlinepenalty\@M
3290      \leavevmode
3291      \@tempdima #3\relax
3292      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3293      {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak \nobreak\null
3294      \par}%
3295   \fi}

```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:

```

3296 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
3297   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3298     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3299     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3300      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3301      \interlinepenalty\@M
3302      \leavevmode
3303      \@tempdima #3\relax
3304      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3305      {#4}\nobreak \hfill \nobreak\null
3306      \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
3307      \par}%
3308   \fi}

```

### 9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).  
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,  
`\minilot@`  
`\@dottedtocline`  
`\@Undottedtoclinep`  
`\sv@minitoc@`  
`\sv@minilof@`  
`\sv@minilot@`

if true, replace locally `\@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `\@Undottedtoclinep`. Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```

3309 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
3310   \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
3311   \def\minitoc#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3312     \sv@minitoc#[1]}}%
3313   \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
3314   \def\minilof#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3315     \sv@minilof#[1]}}%
3316   \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
3317   \def\minilot#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3318     \sv@minilot#[1]}}}

```

`\sv@parttoc@` For the part level:

`\sv@partlof@`

`\sv@partlot@` 3319 `\@ifundefined{part}{}{}%`

`\ifundottedmtc` 3320 `\let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@`

`\parttoc@` 3321 `\def\parttoc#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi`

`\partlof@` 3322 `\sv@parttoc#[1]}}%`

`\partlot@` 3323 `\let\sv@partlof@\partlof@`

3324 `\def\partlof#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi`

3325 `\sv@partlof#[1]}}%`

3326 `\let\sv@partlot@\partlot@`

3327 `\def\partlot#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi`

3328 `\sv@partlot#[1]}}}`

`\sv@secttoc@` For the section level:

`\sv@sectlof@`

`\sv@sectlot@` 3329 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%`

`\ifundottedmtc` 3330 `\@ifundefined{section}{}{}%`

`\secttoc@` 3331 `\let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@`

`\sectlof@` 3332 `\def\secttoc#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi`

`\sectlot@` 3333 `\sv@secttoc#[1]}}%`

3334 `\let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@`

3335 `\def\sectlof#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi`

3336 `\sv@sectlof#[1]}}%`

3337 `\let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@`

3338 `\def\sectlot#[1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi`

3339 `\sv@sectlot#[1]}}}}}`

## 9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course,  
`\dominilof` very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and  
`\dominilot`  
`\contentsline`  
`\chapbegin`  
`\starchapter`

`\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

```

\dominitoc As \dominitoc has an optional argument, whose default value is “l” (left), it calls
\dominitoc@ \dominitoc@ with a argument delimited by brackets.
@@dominitoc
@ifdominitoc@used@ The macros are \dominitoc (user interface), which calls \dominitoc@[1] (or with the
                    optional argument of \dominitoc). Then \dominitoc@[1] processes its argument and
                    calls @@dominitoc. @@dominitoc calls \dominitoc (passing \jobname as argument)
                    then close the minitoc file written. @@dominitoc reset to zero the counter of mini-tables,
                    calls \MTC@next#1.toc (where #1 is the value of \jobname), then reset again to zero
                    the counter of mini-tables. Each call to \dominitoc@ (i.e., to \dominitoc) sets the flag
                    \@dominitoc@used@true. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have
                    correctly called \minitoc after \dominitoc and that both or neither have been called). See
                    section 9.80.2.2 on page 418. The code is similar for \dominilof and \dominilot.
```

```

\dominitoc The \dominitoc command extracts information from the .toc file and create the minitocs
\@dominitoc files, with the adequate extension.
\MTC@next
@ifnextchar 3340 \def\@dominitoc#1{%
            3341 \makeatletter
            3342 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
            3343 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
            3344 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dominitoc@}{\dominitoc@[1]}}
```

```

\dominilof The \dominilof command extracts information from the .lof file and create the minilofs
\@dominilof files, with the adequate extension.
\MLF@next
@ifnextchar 3345 \def\@dominilof#1{%
            3346 \makeatletter
            3347 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
            3348 \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
            3349 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

```

\dominilot The \dominilot command extracts information from the .lot file and create the minilots
\@dominilot files, with the adequate extension.
\MLT@next
@ifnextchar 3350 \def\@dominilot#1{%
            3351 \makeatletter
            3352 \setcounter{mtc}{0}}
```



```

3353 \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3354 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}

```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint  
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\df@mtitc 3355 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 3356 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 3357 \if@dominitoc@used@
  \c@mti 3358 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 3359 {The \string\dominitoc \space command
  \r@mti 3360 \MessageBreak
  @@dominitoc 3361 has been invoked more than once
  3362 \MessageBreak}
  3363 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  3364 \fi
  3365 \fi
  3366 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
  3367 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\e@mti%
  3368 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
  3369 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
  3370 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
  3371 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
  3372 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  3373 @@dominitoc}

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint  
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\df@mtilf 3374 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 3375 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 3376 \if@dominilof@used@
  \c@mti 3377 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 3378 {The \string\dominilof \space command
  \r@mti 3379 \MessageBreak
  @@dominilof 3380 has been invoked more than once
  3381 \MessageBreak}
  3382 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  3383 \fi
  3384 \fi
  3385 \global\@dominilof@used@true
  3386 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
  3387 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
  3388 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
  3389 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
  3390 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
  3391 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  3392 @@dominilof}

```

```

\if@dominilot@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilt 3393 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\e@mti 3394 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3395 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 3396 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3397 {The \string\dominilot \space command
\r@mti 3398 \MessageBreak
@@dominilot 3399 has been invoked more than once
3400 \MessageBreak}
3401 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3402 \fi
3403 \fi
3404 \global\@dominilot@used@true
3405 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
3406 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
3407 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
3408 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
3409 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
3410 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3411 \@dominilot}

@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file
@@dominilof descriptor.
@@dominilot
\tf@mtc 3412 \def@@dominitoc{ \@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3413 \def@@dominilof{ \@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3414 \def@@dominilot{ \@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

I0045

### 9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros <sup>8</sup>:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 3415 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3416 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
3417 \MTC@loop{#1}%
3418 }

```

<sup>8</sup> This code is derived from the xr package [110], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission. Some modifications were made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of hyperref, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the hyperlink argument in the contents lines.

```

\MTC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 3419 \def\MTC@toc{%
              3420   \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
              3421 }

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
                  \arabic   esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
                  \chapter   but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
                  \themtc
                  \tf@mtc 3422 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
                          3423   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
                          3424   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
                          3425     \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
                  \themtc   it (after closing the file descriptor):
                  \mtcname
                  \tf@mtc 3426   \if@mtc@longext@%
\closeout 3427     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\openout 3428     {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
              3429     \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
              3430     \else
              3431     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              3432     {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
              3433     \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
              3434     \fi
              3435     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              3436     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
              3437     \fi

\if@mtc@longext@ We need a similar code to detect TOC entries for appendices in the memoir class9:
                  \themtc
                  \mtcname 3438   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
                  \tf@mtc 3439     \stepcounter{mtc}%
\closeout 3440     \if@mtc@longext@%
\openout 3441     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              3442     {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
              3443     \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
              3444     \else
              3445     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              3446     {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
              3447     \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
              3448     \fi
              3449     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              3450     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
              3451     \fi

```

I0033

I0033

<sup>9</sup> Tim ARNOLD has signaled the problem; thanks!

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register `\mtc@toks` is used as a verbatim memory.

```
3452 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectionning commands, below `\chapter`:

`\section`

```
\subsection 3453 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
```

```
\paragraph 3454 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
\subparagraph 3455 \fi
```

```
3456 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
```

```
3457 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3458 \fi
```

```
3459 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
```

```
3460 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3461 \fi
```

```
3462 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
```

```
3463 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3464 \fi
```

```
3465 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
```

```
3466 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3467 \fi
```

`\coffee` A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for `\coffee`:

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`

```
3468 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
```

```
3469 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
```

```
3470 \fi
```

`\starchapter` If it is `\starchapter` (for a starred chapter), we increment the `mtc` counter, build a new minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.

I0033

`\if@mtc@longext@`

```
\mtcname 3471 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
```

```
\themtc 3472 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

```
\tf@mtc 3473 \if@mtc@longext@
```

```
\closeout 3474 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
\openout 3475 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3476 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
```

```
3477 \else
```

```
3478 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
3479 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3480 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
```

```
3481 \fi
```

```
3482 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

```
3483 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
```

```
3484 \fi
```

```

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 3485 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 3486 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 3487 \fi
3488 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
3489 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3490 \fi
3491 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
3492 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3493 \fi
3494 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
3495 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3496 \fi
3497 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
3498 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3499 \fi
3500 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
\MTC@next process the first one:
\MTC@list
3501 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc 3502 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 3503 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3504 \mtcPackageWarning[W0010]{minitoc}%
3505 {No file #1.
3506 \MessageBreak
3507 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
3508 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3509 \else
3510 \mtcPackageInfo[I0024]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
3511 \expandafter\MTC@read
3512 \fi
3513 }

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
\read
\@inputcheck 3514 \def\MTC@read{%
\MTC@line 3515 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

```

\MTC@test The ..... make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
\MTC@line
  \MTC@ 3516 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@%
        3517 }%

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit
\MTC@contentsline chapters10:

\MTC@test Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\MTC@contentsline the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\contentsline the next file in the list.
\mtc@string
  \@input 3518 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{%
\MTC@list 3519 \ifx#1\contentsline
\chapterend 3520 \let\mtc@string\string
\closeout 3521 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\tf@mtc 3522 \let\mtc@string\relax
\openout 3523 \else\ifx#1\@input
\chapterbegin 3524 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
3525 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\addtocounter 3526 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
\MTC@toc 3527 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
\MTC@read 3528 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3529 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3530 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3531 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3532 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3533 \else
3534 \expandafter\MTC@read
3535 \fi
3536 }%

```

## 9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

<sup>10</sup>The macro \MTC@test has been patched to call \MTC@contentsline with four parameters instead of three (thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS). The same remark applies to similar macros.

## 9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:  
`\MLF@list`  
`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
3537 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3538   \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
3539   \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:  
`\MLF@list`  
`\MLF@explist` 3540 `\def\MLF@lof{\%`  
 3541 `\ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}`

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

```
3542 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{\%
3543   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3544   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3545     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@mtc@longext@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mlfname 3546 \if@mtc@longext@
\closeout 3547 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3548 {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
\openout 3549 \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
3550 \else
3551 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3552 {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
3553 \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
3554 \fi
3555 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3556 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
3557 \fi
```

`\figure` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

```
\subfigure
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3558 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
3559 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3560 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
```

```

3561 \fi
3562 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
3563 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3564 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
3565 \fi
3566 }

```

\MLF@explist The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the first one:

\MLF@next

\MLF@list

```

3567 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

\MLF@loop And now, we scan the .lof file:

\openin

\@inputcheck 3568 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax

\MLF@lof 3569 \ifeof\@inputcheck

\MLF@read 3570 \mtcPackageWarning[W0008]{minitoc}%

3571 {No file #1.

3572 \MessageBreak

3573 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%

3574 \expandafter\MLF@lof

3575 \else

3576 \mtcPackageInfo[I0034]{minitoc}%

3577 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%

3578 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

W0008
I0034

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:

\read

\@inputcheck 3579 \def\MLF@read{%

3580 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

\MLF@line The . . . . . make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:

\MLF@test

```

\MLF@ 3581 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line. . . . \MLF@%
3582 }%

```

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.



```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 3583 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{%
\chapterend 3584 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3585 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3586 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3587 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3588 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3589 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 3590 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 3591 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3592 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3593 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3594 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3595 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3596 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
3597 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

## 9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

### 9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

```

\MLT@next This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
\MLT@list
\MLT@loop Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

3598 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3599 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
3600 \MLT@loop{#1}}

\MLT@lot Checks if the list is empty:
\MLT@list
\MLT@explist 3601 \def\MLT@lot{%
3602 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}

```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
3603 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3604   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3605   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3606     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@mtc@longext@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mltname 3607 \if@mtc@longext@
\closeout 3608 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3609 {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc@gobble}%
\openout 3610 \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
3611 \else
3612 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3613 {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc@gobble}%
3614 \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
3615 \fi
3616 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3617 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
3618 \fi
```

`\table` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

```
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3619 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
3620 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3621 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
3622 \fi
3623 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
3624 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3625 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
3626 \fi
3627 }
```

`\MLT@explist` The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLT@next` to process the first one:

```
\MLT@next
\MLT@list
3628 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}
```

`\MLT@loop` And now, we scan the `.lot` file:

W0009

```
\openin
\@inputcheck 3629 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLT@lot 3630 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLT@read
```

I0037

```

3631 \mtcPackageWarning[W0009]{minitoc}%
3632 {No file #1.
3633 \MessageBreak
3634 MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
3635 \expandafter\MLT@lot
3636 \else
3637 \mtcPackageInfo[I0037]{minitoc}%
3638 {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
3639 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

```

```

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3640 \def\MLT@read{%
3641 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

```

```

\MLT@line The . . . . . make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
\MLT@ 3642 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line. . . . \MLT@%
3643 }%

```

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 3644 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{%
\chapterend 3645 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3646 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3647 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3648 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3649 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3650 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 3651 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 3652 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3653 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3654 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3655 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3656 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3657 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
3658 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a \@ifundefined{chapter} alternative).

```

3659 }%

```

### 9.43 Macro to write a contents line

`\mtc@dot` The `\MTC@WriteContentsline` macro makes the definition of `\MTC@contentsline` shorter.  
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` An extra `\edef` level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):  
`\mtc@param`  
`\write` The arguments of `\MTC@WriteContentsline` are:  
`\tf@mtc`  
`\@resetfont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;  
`\mtc@string` #2: font shorthand =: `\csname #2font\endcsname`;  
`\contentsline` #3: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;  
`\mtc@toks` #4: the #4 argument of `\MTC@contentsline` (hyperlink).

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`.

```

3660 \def\mtc@dot{.}
3661 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3662   \def\mtc@param{#4}%
3663   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3664     {\string\resetfont
3665      \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3666      \string\mtc@string
3667      \string\contentsline{#1}%
3668      {\the\mtc@toks}%
3669      {\string\resetfont
3670       \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3671       \space #3%
3672      }%
3673      \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
3674      \else
3675        {#4}%
3676      \fi
3677    }%
3678  }%
3679 }
```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:  
`\write`  
`\tf@mtc`  
`\@resetfont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;  
`\coffeeFont` #2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.  
`\mtc@string`  
`\mtc@toks`

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`. Le registre *token* `\mtc@toks` est utilisé pour passer l’entrée à `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`.

```

3680 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3681   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3682     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee\font \string\mtc@string
3683       {\the\mtc@toks}%
3684     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee\font \space #3%
3685       }%
3686     }%
3687   }%
3688 }

```

## 9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\newcounter
\setcounter
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
3689 \AtBeginDocument{%
3690   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3691   {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
3692   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3693   {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
3694 }%

```

## 9.45 Part level commands

`\xpart` If `\part` is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (`ptc`) for the parttocs and related commands (`\theptc`, `\Thepart`, `\adjustptc`, `\decrementptc`, `\incrementptc`), the obsolete command `\firstpartis`, and the depth counter `parttocdepth`.

```

\theptc
\Thepart
\adjustptc
\decrementptc
\incrementptc
\firstpartis
\firstpartis
3695 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
3696 {%
3697 \def\xpart{xpart}
3698 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
3699 \def\firstpartis#1%
3700   {\mtcPackageWarning[W0004]{minitoc}%
3701     {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3702       \MessageBreak
3703       command}%
3704     \@firstpartis@used@true}
3705 \newcounter{ptc}
3706 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
3707 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
3708 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
3709 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
3710 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}

```

W0004

```

3711 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
3712 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

```

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is `\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```

3713 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3714   {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
3715   {\let\ptc@rule\relax}

```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```

3716 \newlength\ptcindent
3717 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}

```

## 9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

`\ptcfont` We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if `\chapter` is defined  
`\ptcSfont` (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):  
`\ptcSSfont`

```

\ptcSSSfont 3718 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\ptcPfont 3719   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSPfont 3720   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\plffont 3721   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plfSfont 3722   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\pltfont 3723   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
\pltSfont 3724   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
\ptifont 3725   \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
3726   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
3727   \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
3728   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
3729   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3730 }%

```

`\ptcfont` If `\chapter` is defined, the fonts are larger and `\ptcCfont` must be defined:  
`\ptcCfont`  
`\ptcSfont` 3731 {%  
`\ptcSSfont` 3732 \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc  
`\ptcSSSfont` 3733 \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)  
`\ptcPfont` 3734 \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)  
`\ptcSPfont` 3735 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)  
`\plffont` 3736 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)  
`\plfSfont`  
`\pltfont`  
`\pltSfont`  
`\ptifont`

```

3737 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
3738 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
3739 \let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
3740 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
3741 \let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
3742 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
3743 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3744 }

```

## 9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

`\parttoc` We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables  
`\partlof` (`\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot`). This formatting is different if `\chapter` is defined or  
`\partlot` undefined.

`\c@pti` If `\chapter` is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or  
`\l@pti` empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).  
`\r@pti`

```

\@pti 3745 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 3746 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3747 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
3748 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
3749 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3750 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}}%

```

`\@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more  
`\n@pti` complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

3751 {%
3752 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}} \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:  
`\if@twocolumn`

```

\@topnewpage 3753 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@l{#1}]%
\@afterheading 3754 \else \@makehead@l{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\ptifont 3755 \def\@makehead@l#1{%
\@makehead@l 3756 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3757 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3758 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3759 }}

```

```

\l@pti For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3760 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]
\@makehead@r 3761 \else \@makehead@r{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 3762 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
\ptifont 3763 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3764 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3765 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3766 }}

```

```

\c@pti For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3767 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]}%
\@makehead@c 3768 \else \@makehead@c{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 3769 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
\ptifont 3770 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3771 {\parindent \z@ \centering \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3772 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3773 }}%
3774 }

```

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:
\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 3775 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 3776 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilf 3777 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti \let\df@ptilt\l@pti
\do@ptilt
\df@ptilt

```

## 9.48 The ptc@verse environment

```

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to
\ptc@verse the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and
\endptc@verse \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then
\ call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent,
\@centercr \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is
\list active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight
\itemsep option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to
\itemindent \ptcindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break. The
\listparindent ptc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like
\topsep \ptcoffset).
\parsep
\parskip 3778 \def\ptc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
\partopsep 3779 \list{}}%
\ptcindent 3780 \topsep=\lex \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@
\iftightmtc 3781 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
\ifktightmtc 3782 \leftmargin=\ptcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin

```



```

3783 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
3784 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3785 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}
3786 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}
3787 }%
3788 \item[]}
3789 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should be placed after a `\part` command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the formatting is different and depends on the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

### 9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First, `\parttoc@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3790 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\parttoc@}{\parttoc@d}}

```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart
3791 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
3792 \global\@parttoc@used@true
3793 \if@mtc@longext@%
3794 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
3795 \else
3796 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
3797 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

I0006

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3798      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          3799      \if@mtc@FE
          3800      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
          3801      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
          3802      \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
          3803      \else

```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```

3804      \beforeparttoc

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle 3805      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 3806      \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
\ptctitle 3807      \thispageparttocstyle
          3808      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}}%

```

`\do@ptitc` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```

\@pti
\@npti
\@cpti 3809      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@lpti 3810      \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\@e@pti
\@rpti 3811      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\@n@pti
\@dfpti 3812      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 3813      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\@l@pti
\ptctitle 3814      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 3815      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\@df@ptitc
samepage 3816      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
          3817      \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\ptcfont
          3818      \raggedright \reset@font\ptcfont \parskip=\z@ \parindent=\z@%
          3819      \nopagebreak[4]\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
          3820      \par\noindent \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptitc 3821      \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v 3822      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 3823      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\hline 3824      \end{tabular}%
3825      \else
3826      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3827      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
3828      \end{tabular}%
3829      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position close the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
3830      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3831      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3832      \itemindent=\z@ \labelwidth=\z@ \labelsep=\z@ \listparindent=\z@

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

\c@parttocdepth
\mtc@BBR 3833      \begin{ptc@verse}{\ptc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
3834      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\closeparttoc
\@tocfile 3835 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 3836 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 3837 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
3838      {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3839 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
3840      {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
3841      \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}{}
3842 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3843 \ptc@setform
3844 \openparttoc
3845 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3846 \closeparttoc

```

```

3847 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
3848 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3849 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
3850 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterparttoc`.

`\mtc@zrule` samepage

```

\afterparttoc 3851 \kernafterparttoc
3852 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3853 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3854 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
3855 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

### 9.49.2 The `\partlof` command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, `\partlof@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3856 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\partlof@]{\partlof@d}}

```

`\partlof@` The `\partlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlof@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

`\if@partlof@used@`

`\if@mtc@longext@`

`\@tocfile`

`\Thepart`

```

3857 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
3858 \global\@partlof@used@true
3859 \if@mtc@longext@%
3860 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
3861 \else
3862 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
3863 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3864 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3865 \if@mtc@FE
3866 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3867 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3868 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
3869 \else

```

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
3870      \beforepartlof
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:  
`\@mkboth`

```
\thispagepartlofstyle 3871      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\MakeUppercase 3872      {\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 3873      \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
3874      \thispagepartlofstyle
3875      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
3876      }%
```

`\do@ptilf` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti 3877      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 3878      \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\e@pti
\r@pti 3879      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti
\df@pti 3880      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 3881      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\plftitle 3882      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 3883      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf
samepage 3884      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
3885      \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```
\parskip
\plffont
3886      \raggedright
3887      \parskip=\z@%
3888      \reset@font\plffont%
```

`\plf@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlof.

```
\ptifont
\do@ptilf 3889      \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 3890      \nopagebreak[4]%
\plftitle 3891      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 3892      \par\noindent
3893      \ifx\plf@rule\relax
3894      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3895      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
```

```

3896      \end{tabular}%
3897      \else
3898      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3899      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\ \hline
3900      \mtc@hstrut\\
3901      \end{tabular}%
3902      \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:  
 \mtc@BBR  
 \ptcindent

```

3903      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3904      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3905      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3906      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

ptc@verse We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to partlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.  
 \plfoffset  
 \mtc@BBR

```

3907      \begin{ptc@verse}{\plfoffset}%
3908      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3909      {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
3910       \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3911      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\plf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its  
 \@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat  
 \@undottedtocline are activated via \plf@setform. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and  
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just  
 \plf@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.  
 \openpartlof

```

\closepartlof 3912 \begin{group}
  \@tocfile 3913 \makeatletter
  \mtc@strut 3914 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
  ptc@verse 3915 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
  3916 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  3917 \plf@setform
  3918 \openpartlof
  3919 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  3920 \closepartlof
  3921 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
  3922 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  3923 \global\@nbreakfalse\end{group}
  3924 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\plf@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.

`\mtc@zrule` samepage

```

\afterpartlof 3925      \kernafterpartlof
                3926      \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
                3927      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                3928      \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
                3929      \afterpartlof\fi}

```

### 9.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3930 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\partlot@}{\partlot@d}}

```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

`\if@partlot@used@` `\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile` `\Thepart`

```

3931 %
3932 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
3933 \global\@partlot@used@true
3934 \if@mtc@longext@%
3935   \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
3936 \else
3937   \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
3938 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

I0006

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3939      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
                3940      \if@mtc@FE
                3941      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
                3942      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
                3943      \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
                3944      \else

```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```

3945      \beforepartlot

```

```

\mtc@markboth  If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:
\mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 3946  \ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\MakeUppercase 3947  \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 3948  \global\let\mkboth\markboth
3949  \thispagepartlotstyle
3950  \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
3951  }%

```

```

\do@ptilt  A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
\@pti  partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
\n@pti
\c@pti 3952  \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 3953  \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\@pti
\r@pti 3954  \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\n@pti
\df@pti 3955  \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 3956  \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\plttitle 3957  \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 3958  \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
3959  \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 3960  \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\@pti\relax\fi

```

```

\raggedright  We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot,
\parskip  then we set the font:
\pltfont
3961  \raggedright
3962  \parskip=\z@%
3963  \reset@font\pltfont%
3964  \parindent=\z@%
3965  \nopagebreak[4]%
3966  \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3967  \par\noindent

```

```

\plt@rule  The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular  the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\columnwidth  the partlot.
\ptifont
\do@ptilt 3968  \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 3969  \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 3970  \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 3971  \end{tabular}%
3972  \else
3973  \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3974  \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
3975  \mtc@hstrut\\
3976  \end{tabular}%
3977  \fi

```



`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting  
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:  
`\ptcindent`

```

3978 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3979 \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3980 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3981 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is  
`\pltoffset` forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.  
`\mtc@BBR`

```

3982 \begin{ptc@verse}{\pltoffset}%
3983 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3984 {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
3985 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3986 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its  
`\@dottedtocline` undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat`  
`\@undottedtocline` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just  
`\plt@setform` before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.  
`\openpartlot`

```

\closepartlot 3987 \begingroup
\@tocfile 3988 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 3989 \ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
ptc@verse 3990 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
3991 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3992 \plt@setform
3993 \openpartlot
3994 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3995 \closepartlot
3996 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
3997 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3998 \global\@nobeckfalse\endgroup
3999 \end{ptc@verse}%
```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter`  
`\mtc@zrule` is not defined), and `\afterpartlot`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.  
`samepage`

```

\afterpartlot 4000 \kernafterpartlot
4001 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4002 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4003 \par\ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4004 \afterpartlot\fi}
```

## 9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

`\@dottedtocline` The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to `\l@subsection`, only the arguments have been altered:

```

\l@xpart
\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter 4005 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect    4006 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
          4007 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
          4008 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
          4009 \def\psect{psect}

```

## 9.51 Patching the `\part` command, continued

`\sv@part` We patch both branches of the `\part` command: `\@part` (unstarred `\part`) and `\@spart` (`\part*`). We add the incrementation of the `ptc` counter to both branches. In the unstarred branch, we add `xpart` entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we add a `\partbegin` line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real (`\relax`).

```

\sv@spart
\mtc@svpart
\@part
\addtocontents
\sv@spart
\ptc@spart
\@spart 4010 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 4011 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 4012 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend   4013 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
          4014 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
          4015 \stepcounter{ptc}}
          4016 \let\sv@spart\@spart
          4017 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
          4018 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
          4019 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
          4020 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
          4021 \let\partend\relax
          4022 \let\partbegin\relax

```

## 9.52 The `\doparttoc` command and its siblings

`\doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command works like the `\dominitoc` command, `\dopartlof` like `\dominiloof` and `\dopartlot` like `\dominilot`.

`\@doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.ptc`( $N$ )  
`\PTC@next` files (`.ptc` becomes `.P` on MS-DOS).  
`\setcounter`

```
4023 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
4024   \makeatletter
4025   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4026   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlof` The `\dopartlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.plf`( $N$ )  
`\PLF@next` files (`.plf` becomes `.G` on MS-DOS).  
`\setcounter`

```
4027 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
4028   \makeatletter
4029   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4030   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlot` The `\dopartlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.plt`( $N$ )  
`\PLT@next` files (`.plt` becomes `.U` on MS-DOS).  
`\setcounter`

```
4031 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
4032   \makeatletter
4033   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4034   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\doparttoc` We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:  
`\dopartlof`

```
\dopartlot 4035 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
\@ifnextchar 4036 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
4037 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}
```

`\doparttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\doparttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of  
`\if@mtc@hints@` parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
`\if@doparttoc@used@`

```
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4038 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
\df@ptitc 4039 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4040 \if@doparttoc@used@
\n@pti 4041 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4042 {The \string\doparttoc \space command
\l@pti 4043 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4044 has been invoked more than once
4045 \MessageBreak}
4046 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4047 \fi
4048 \fi
4049 \global\@doparttoc@used@true
4050 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\@pti%
```

```

4051 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
4052 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
4053 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
4054 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
4055 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4056 \@@doparttoc}

```

\dopartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\dopartlof@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4057 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
\df@ptilf 4058 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4059 \if@dopartlof@used@
\n@pti 4060 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4061 {The \string\dopartlof \space command
\l@pti 4062 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4063 has been invoked more than once
4064 \MessageBreak}
4065 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4066 \fi
4067 \fi
4068 \global\dopartlof@used@true
4069 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\@pti%
4070 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
4071 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
4072 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
4073 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
4074 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4075 \@@dopartlof}

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\dopartlot@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 4076 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 4077 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4078 \if@dopartlot@used@
\n@pti 4079 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4080 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\l@pti 4081 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4082 has been invoked more than once
4083 \MessageBreak}
4084 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4085 \fi
4086 \fi
4087 \global\dopartlot@used@true
4088 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\@pti%
4089 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
4090 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
4091 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
4092 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%

```

```
4093 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4094 \@@dopartlot}
```

```
\@@doparttoc  These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
\@@dopartlof  file descriptor.
\@@dopartlot
  \tf@mtc 4095 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4096 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4097 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

### 9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

```
\PTC@next  Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
\PTC@list
\PTC@loop 4098 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          4099   \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
          4100   \PTC@loop{#1}}
```

```
\PTC@toc  Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 4101 \def\PTC@toc{%
          4102   \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}
```

```
\PTC@contentsline  The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
  \part             esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc           created.
  \tf@mtc
  \ptcname 4103 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\MTc@WriteContentsLine 4104   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
          4105     \stepcounter{ptc}%
          4106     \if@mtc@longext@%
          4107       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4108       {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
          4109       \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
          4110     \else
          4111       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4112       {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
          4113       \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
          4114     \fi
          4115     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          4116     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
          4117   \fi
          4118   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
          4119     \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

I0033

`\if@mtc@longext@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open  
`\ptcname` it:

```

4120 \if@mtc@longext@%
4121 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4122 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4123 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4124 \else
4125 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4126 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
4127 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4128 \fi
4129 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4130 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4131 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```

4132 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters,  
`\chapter` sections, etc.:

```

\pchapter
\section 4133 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 4134 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 4135 \fi
\subsubsection 4136 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
\paragraph 4137 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 4138 \fi
4139 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
4140 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
4141 \fi
4142 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4143 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4144 \fi
4145 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
4146 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
4147 \fi
4148 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4149 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4150 \fi
4151 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4152 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4153 \fi
4154 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4155 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4156 \fi
4157 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4158 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4159 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectionning commands:

```

\starchapter
\starsection 4160 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 4161 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubsubsection 4162 \fi
\starparagraph 4163 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starsubparagraph 4164 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4165 \fi
4166 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
4167 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4168 \fi
4169 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4170 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4171 \fi
4172 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4173 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4174 \fi
4175 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4176 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4177 \fi
4178 }
```

`\PTC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\PTC@next` to process the first one:

`\PTC@next`

`\PTC@list`

```
4179 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}
```

`\PTC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

`\PTC@toc`

`\PTC@read`

```

4180 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4181 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4182 \mtcPackageWarning[W0013]{minitoc}%
4183 {No file #1
4184 \MessageBreak
4185 PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4186 \expandafter\PTC@toc
4187 \else
4188 \mtcPackageInfo[I0025]{minitoc}%
4189 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
4190 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

`\PTC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

`\PTC@line`

```

4191 \def\PTC@read{%
4192 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

W0013
I0025

\PTC@test The . . . . . make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:  
 \PTC@line

```
4193 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line. . . . \PTC@%
4194 }%
```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add  
 \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process  
 \PTC@list the next file in the list.

```
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read 4195 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{%
\partend 4196 \ifx#1\contentsline
4197 \let\mtc@string\string
4198 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4199 \let\mtc@string\relax
4200 \else\ifx#1\@input
4201 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
4202 \else\ifx#1\partend
4203 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4204 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4205 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4206 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4207 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4208 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
4209 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%
```

### 9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

\PLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@loop 4210 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4211 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
4212 \PLF@loop{#1}}
```

\PLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@explist 4213 \def\PLF@lof{%
4214 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}
```



```

\PLF@contentsline The macro \PLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects inter-
  \part           esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc         created.
  \tf@mtc
  \plfname 4215 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 4216   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
  4217     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
  \plfname       it:

```

I0033

```

  4218   \if@mtc@longext@%
  4219     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  4220     {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
  4221     \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
  4222   \else
  4223     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  4224     {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
  4225     \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
  4226   \fi
  4227   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  4228   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
  4229   \fi

```

```

  \figure The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
  \subfigure we filter the relevant contents lines:
  \mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4230   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
  4231     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
  4232     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
  4233   \fi
  4234   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
  4235     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
  4236     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
  4237   \fi
  4238 }

```

```

\PLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next to
  \PLF@next   process the first one:
  \PLF@list
  4239 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

```

\PLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
  \PLF@lof  process the next entry in the list.
  \PLF@read

```

W0011

I0035

```

4240 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4241   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4242     \mtcPackageWarning[W0011]{minitoc}%
4243     {No file #1
4244       \MessageBreak
4245       PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4246   \expandafter\PLF@lof
4247 \else
4248   \mtcPackageInfo[I0035]{minitoc}%
4249   {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
4250   \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

\PLF@read Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\PLF@line

```

4251 \def\PLF@read{%
4252   \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line

```

\PLF@test The . . . . . make sure that \PLF@test has enough arguments:

\PLF@line

```

4253   \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line. . . . \PLF@%
4254 }%

```

\PLF@test The \PLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\PLF@list the next file in the list.
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read 4255 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{%
\partend 4256   \ifx#1\contentsline
4257     \let\mtc@string\string
4258     \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4259     \let\mtc@string\relax
4260   \else\ifx#1\@input
4261     \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
4262   \else\ifx#1\partend
4263     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4264     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4265   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4266     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4267   \fi\fi\fi\fi
4268   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
4269   \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%

```

## 9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:  
`\PLT@list`  
`\PLT@loop` 4270 `\def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%`  
4271 `\edef\PLT@list{#2}%`  
4272 `\PLT@loop{#1}}`

`\PLT@lot` Check if the list is empty:  
`\PLT@list`  
`\PLT@explist` 4273 `\def\PLT@lot{%`  
4274 `\ifx\PLT@list@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}`

`\PLT@contentsline` The macro `\PLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.  
`\part`  
`\theptc`  
`\tf@mtc`  
`\plname` 4275 `\def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%`  
`\PLT@WriteContentsLine` 4276 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart`  
4277 `\stepcounter{ptc}%`

`\if@mtc@longext@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open  
`\plname` it:

I0033

4278 `\if@mtc@longext@%`  
4279 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%`  
4280 `{Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%`  
4281 `\def\plname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%`  
4282 `\else`  
4283 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%`  
4284 `{Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%`  
4285 `\def\plname{\jobname.U\theptc}%`  
4286 `\fi`  
4287 `\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc`  
4288 `\immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plname`  
4289 `\fi`

`\table` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. Now,  
`\subtable` we filter the relevant contents lines:  
`\mtc@toks`  
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` 4290 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table`  
4291 `\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%`  
4292 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%`  
4293 `\fi`  
4294 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable`

```

4295 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4296 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
4297 \fi
4298 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:

\PLT@list

```

4299 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}

```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

\PLT@lot

\PLT@read

```

4300 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4301 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4302 \mtcPackageWarning[W0012]{minitoc}%
4303 {No file #1
4304 \MessageBreak
4305 PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4306 \expandafter\PLT@lot
4307 \else
4308 \mtcPackageInfo[I0038]{minitoc}%
4309 {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
4310 \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}

```

W0012
I0038

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```

4311 \def\PLT@read{%
4312 \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line

```

\PLT@test The . . . . . make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```

4313 \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line. . . . .\PLT@%
4314 }%

```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

\mtc@string

\PLT@list

\PLT@lot

\PLT@read

\partend

```

4315 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{%
4316   \ifx#1\contentsline
4317     \let\mtc@string\string
4318     \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4319     \let\mtc@string\relax
4320   \else\ifx#1\@input
4321     \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
4322   \else\ifx#1\partend
4323     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4324     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4325   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4326     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4327     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4328   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
4329   \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 321):

```

4330 }%

```

## 9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create new counters for the depths of the corresponding mini-tables: `sectlofdepth` and `sectlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\setcounter
4331 \AtBeginDocument{%
4332   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4333   {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
4334   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4335   {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
4336 }%

```

## 9.54 Section-level commands

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The section-level commands are defined only if `\chapter` is *not* defined, hence in article-like document classes, and only if `\section` is defined:

```

4337 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@

```

W0005

```

\firstsectionis We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
\adjuststc stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
\decrementstc depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
\incrementstc the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
\stc@rule sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
\stcindent
\columnwidth 4338 \def\firstsectionis#1{\mtcPackageWarning[W0005]{minitoc}%
4339 {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
4340 \MessageBreak
4341 command}%
4342 \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4343 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4344 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4345 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4346 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4347 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
4348 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4349 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

## 9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4350 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 4351 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 4352 \let\stcSSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 4353 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 4354 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 4355 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 4356 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 4357 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
4358 \let\sltSfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
4359 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

## 9.56 Internal macros for title positioning

```

\l@sti Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of \dosecttoc and
\c@sti \secttoc commands (and siblings). Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a
\r@sti vertical correction for empty titles, from Frank MITTELBACH):
\e@sti
\n@sti 4360 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
4361 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
4362 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
4363 \def\e@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
4364 \def\n@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\do@stitle By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stitle
\do@stilf 4365 \let\do@stitle\l@sti
\df@stilf 4366 \let\df@stitle\l@sti
\do@stilt 4367 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt 4368 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti 4369 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
4370 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

## 9.57 The stc@verse environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored. The `stc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\stcoffset`).

```

4371 \def\stc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
4372 \list{}}%
4373 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \topsep=1ex
4374 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
4375 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
4376 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
4377 \leftmargin=\stcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
4378 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}%
4379 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}%
4380 }%
4381 \item[]}%
4382 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 9.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

### 9.58.1 The \secttoc command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4383 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[\secttoc@]{\secttoc@[d]}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `\if@secttoc@used@` secttoc file):

```
\@tocfile
\thetc 4384 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
4385 \global\@secttoc@used@true
4386 \if@mtc@longext@%
4387 \def\@tocfile{stc\thetc}%
4388 \else
4389 \def\@tocfile{S\thetc}%
4390 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

I0006

```
\@tocfile
4391 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4392 \if@mtc@FE
4393 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4394 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4395 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
4396 \else
```

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
4397 \beforesecttoc
4398 \thispagesecttocstyle
```

`\do@sttc` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```
\n@sti
\c@sti 4399 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\l@sti 4400 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\r@sti 4401 \if #1e\let\do@sttc\e@sti
\df@sti 4402 \else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\n@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4403 \else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sti
\stctitle 4404 \else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4405 \else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sti
samepage 4406 \else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc
4407 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4408 \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\e@sti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc, `\parskip` then we set the font: `\stcfont`



```

4409      \raggedright
4410      \parskip=\z@%
4411      \reset@font\stcfont%
4412      \parindent=\z@%
4413      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```

\stifont
\do@sttc 4414      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4415      \par\noindent
\stctitle 4416      \nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4417      \ifx\stc@rule\relax
4418      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4419      \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
4420      \end{tabular}%
4421      \else
4422      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4423      \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
4424      \end{tabular}%
4425      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
4426      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4427      \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4428      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4429      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\stc@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth 4430      \begin{stc@verse}{\stc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
\mtc@BBR 4431      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\opensecttoc
\closesecttoc 4432 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4433 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4434 \stc@setform%
stc@verse

```

```

4435 \ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
4436 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4437 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4438 \stc@setform%
4439 \opensecttoc
4440 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4441 \closesecttoc
4442 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
4443 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4444 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4445 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
samepage
\aftersecttoc 4446 \kernaftersecttoc
4447 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\@null\leavevmode\%
4448 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4449 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

### 9.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4450 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[\sectlof@]{\sectlof@[d]}}

```

\sectlof@ The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 4451 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
4452 \global\@sectlof@used@true
4453 \if@mtc@longext@%
4454 \def\@tocfile{slf\thestc}%
4455 \else
4456 \def\@tocfile{H\thestc}%
4457 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not  
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:  
`\@tocfile`

I0006

```

4458      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4459      \if@mtc@FE
4460      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4461          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4462      \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
4463      \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation  
`\thispagesectlofsty` code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4464      \thispagesectlofsty
4465      %\mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
4466      \beforesectlof

```

`\do@stilf` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,  
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\do@sti
\c@sti 4467      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 4468      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
\r@sti 4469      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
\df@sti 4470      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4471      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 4472      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4473      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
samepage 4474      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4475      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,  
`\parskip` then we set the font:

```

\slffont
4476      \raggedright
4477      \parskip=\z@%
4478      \reset@font\slffont%
4479      \parindent=\z@%
4480      \nolowpagebreak[4]%

```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and  
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of  
`\stifont` the sectlof.

```

\columnwidth
\do@stilf 4481      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nolowpagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4482      \par\noindent
\slftitle
\hline

```

```

4483 \ifx\slf@rule\relax
4484 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4485 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
4486 \end{tabular}%
4487 \else
4488 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4489 \mtc@hstrut
4490 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
4491 \end{tabular}%
4492 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:  
 \mtc@BBR  
 \stcindent

```

4493 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4494 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4495 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4496 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.  
 \slfoffset  
 \c@tocdepth  
 \c@sectlofdepth 4497 \begin{stc@verse}{\slfoffset}%  
 \mtc@BBR 4498 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%  
 4499 {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth  
 4500 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}  
 4501 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat  
 \@dottedtocline are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and  
 \@undottedtocline the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just  
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.  
 \slf@setform  
 \opensectlof

```

\closesectlof 4502 \begingroup
  \@tocfile 4503 \makeatletter
  \mtc@strut 4504 \ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
  stc@verse 4505 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{%
  4506 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  4507 \slf@setform%
  4508 \opensectlof
  4509 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  4510 \closesectlof
  4511 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
  4512 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.
samepage
\aftersectlof 4513      \kernaftersectlof
                4514      \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
                4515      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                4516      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```

### 9.58.3 The \sectlot command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4517 \def\sectlot{\ifnextchar{\sectlot@}\sectlot@d}}
```

```

\sectlot@ The \sectlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlot@used@ (for a
\if@sectlot@used@ consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot
\if@mtc@longext@ file):
\@tocfile
\thestc 4518 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
        4519 \global\@sectlot@used@true
        4520 \if@mtc@longext@%
        4521   \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
        4522 \else
        4523   \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
        4524 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not  
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:  
`\@tocfile`

I0006

```

4525      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4526      \if@mtc@FE
4527      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4528        {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4529      \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
4530      \else

```

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation  
`\thispagesectlotstyle` code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4531      \thispagesectlotstyle
4532      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
4533      \beforesectlot

```

```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
\@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
\n@sti
\c@sti 4534 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 4535 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\@sti
\r@sti 4536 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
\df@sti 4537 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4538 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\sltttitle 4539 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4540 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
samepage 4541 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4542 \mtc@CkStr{\sltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot,
\parskip then we set the font:
\sltfont
4543 \raggedright
4544 \parskip=\z@%
4545 \reset@font\sltfont%
4546 \parindent=\z@%
4547 \nopagebreak[4]%

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\stifont the sectlot.
\columnwidth
\do@stilt 4548 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4549 \par\noindent
\sltttitle 4550 \ifx\stc@rule\relax
\hline 4551 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4552 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4553 \end{tabular}%
4554 \else
4555 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4556 \mtc@hstrut
4557 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4558 \end{tabular}%
4559 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
4560 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4561 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4562 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4563 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally)
\c@tocdepth to sectlotdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 4564 \begin{stc@verse}{\sltoffset}%
4565 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4566 {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
4567 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4568 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slt@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \slt@setform. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
\slt@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
\opensectlot
\closesectlot 4569 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4570 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4571 \ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
stc@verse 4572 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
4573 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
4574 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4575 \slt@setform%
4576 \opensectlot
4577 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4578 \closesectlot
4579 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4580 \end{stc@verse}%

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
samepage
\aftersectlot 4581 \kernaftersectlof
4582 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4583 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4584 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi%
```

## 9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and
\@dottedtocline LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line
\l@schapter (except if you cheat).
\l@schapter
\l@schapter 4585 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4586 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4587 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4588 \def\xsect{xsect} \def\schapter{schapter}
```

## 9.60 Patching the `\section` command (continued)

`\@sect` We patch the both branches of the `\section` command: `\@sect` for the unstarred version and `\addcontentsline` `\@ssect` for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (`\@sect`), we add a `xsect` contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test `\ifnum #2=1` restricts the action to the section level macros (because `\@sect` is also used by `\subsection` and below, which have no mini-tables).

```
4589 \let\sv@sect\@sect
4590 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4591   \ifnum #2=1\relax
4592     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4593     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4594 \fi
4595 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
```

`\section` If it is a section (unstarred or starred via `\starsection`), we add a `xsect` entry in the LOF  
`\starsection` and in the LOT.  
`\addcontentsline`

```
4596 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
4597   \expandafter
4598   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
4599     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4600     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4601 \fi
4602   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
4603     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4604     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4605 \fi
```

`\@svsec` And the remainder of the section header formatting:  
`\refstepcounter`  
`\@tempskipa` 4606 `\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`  
`\@hangfrom` 4607 `\let\@svsec\@empty`  
`\addcontentsline` 4608 `\else`  
`\numberline` 4609 `\refstepcounter{#1}%`  
`\@svsechd` 4610 `\edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%`  
`\@xsect` 4611 `\fi`  
4612 `\@tempskipa #5\relax`  
4613 `\ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@`  
4614 `\begingroup #6\relax`  
4615 `\@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%`  
4616 `{\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%`  
4617 `\endgroup`  
4618 `\csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline`  
4619 `{toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`  
4620 `\else`  
4621 `\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%`



```

4622             \fi
4623             #7}%
4624 \else
4625   \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
4626   \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
4627   {#7}\addcontentsline
4628   {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4629             \else
4630             \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
4631             \fi
4632   #7}}%
4633 \fi
4634 \@xsect{#5}}

```

\@sect Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands \sectbegin \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 4635 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4636 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4637   \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4638   \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4639   \fi
4640   \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
4641 \let\sectend\relax
4642 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

\dosecttoc The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc(N) files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).

\STC@next

```

4643 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
4644   \makeatletter
4645   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4646   \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

\dosectlof The \dosectlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .slf(N) files (.slf becomes .H on MS-DOS).

\SLF@next

```

4647 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
4648   \makeatletter
4649   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4650   \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.slt`(*N*) files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).  
`\@dosectlot`  
`\PLT@next`

```
4651 \def\dosectlot#1{%
4652   \makeatletter
4653   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4654   \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:  
`\dosectlof`  
`\dosectlot` 4655 `\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}`  
`\@ifnextchar` 4656 `\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}`  
4657 `\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}`

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of  
`\if@mtc@hints@` secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

I0045

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 4658 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 4659 \if@mtc@hints@
\@stitle 4660   \if@dosecttoc@used@
\@stitle 4661   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@stitle 4662   {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
\@stitle 4663   \MessageBreak
\@stitle 4664   has been invoked more than once
\@stitle 4665   \MessageBreak}
4666   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4667   \fi
4668 \fi
4669 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
4670 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@stitle
4671 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\@stitle
4672 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\@stitle
4673 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\@stitle
4674 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\@stitle
4675 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4676 \@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of  
`\if@mtc@hints@` sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

I0045

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4677 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 4678 \if@mtc@hints@
\@stitle 4679   \if@dosectlof@used@
\@stitle 4680   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@stitle 4681   {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\@stitle 4682   \MessageBreak
\@stitle 4683   has been invoked more than once
\@stitle 4684   \MessageBreak}
```

```

4685 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4686 \fi
4687 \fi
4688 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
4689 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
4690 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
4691 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
4692 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
4693 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
4694 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4695 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of  
 \if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\if@dosectlot@used@ 4696 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\df@stilt 4697 \if@mtc@hints@
\e@sti 4698 \if@dosectlot@used@
\n@sti 4699 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 4700 {The \string\dosectlot \space command
\l@sti 4701 \MessageBreak
\r@sti 4702 has been invoked more than once
4703 \MessageBreak}
4704 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4705 \fi
4706 \fi
4707 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
4708 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
4709 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
4710 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
4711 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
4712 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
4713 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4714 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the  
 \@@dosectlof file descriptor.  
 \@@dosectlot

```

\tf@mtc 4715 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4716 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4717 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 4718 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4719 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
4720 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\STC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\STC@list
\STC@explist 4721 \def\STC@toc{%
              4722   \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4723 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\stcname 4724   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4725   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
              4726     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname         it:

              4727   \if@mtc@longext@
              4728     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4729     {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
              4730     \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
              4731   \else
              4732     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4733     {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
              4734     \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
              4735   \fi
              4736   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              4737   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
              4738   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline or
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline \MTC@WriteCoffeeline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\coffee 4739 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subsection 4740 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsubsection 4741   \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\paragraph 4742   \fi
\subparagraph 4743   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
              4744     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
              4745   \fi
              4746   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
              4747     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
              4748   \fi
              4749   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
              4750     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
              4751   \fi
              4752   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
              4753     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
              4754   \fi

```

I0033

`\starsection` A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:

```

\stepcounter
  \thetc 4755 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \arabic 4756 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@mtc@longext@ 4757 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
  \stcname 4758 \if@mtc@longext@%
  \closeout 4759 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  \openout 4760 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  4761 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  4762 \else
  4763 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  4764 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetc}%
  4765 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetc}%
  4766 \fi
  4767 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  4768 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
  4769 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 4770 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \starparagraph 4771 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 4772 \fi
  4773 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  4774 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
  4775 \fi
  4776 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  4777 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
  4778 \fi
  4779 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
  4780 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  4781 \fi
  4782 }

```

`\STC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\STC@next` to process the first one.

```

\STC@next
\STC@list
4783 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

`\STC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
4784 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
4785 \ifeof@inputcheck
4786 \mtcPackageWarning[W0016]{minitoc}%
4787 {No file #1
4788 \MessageBreak
4789 SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%

```

W0016

I0026

```

4790 \expandafter\STC@toc
4791 \else
4792 \mtcPackageInfo[I0026]{minitoc}%
4793 {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
4794 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```

\STC@line
4795 \def\STC@read{%
4796 \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line

```

\STC@test The . . . . . make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

```

\STC@line
4797 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line. . . . \STC@%
4798 }%

```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\STC@list 4799 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{%
\STC@toc 4800 \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 4801 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4802 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4803 \let\mtc@string\relax
4804 \else\ifx#1\@input
4805 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
4806 \else\ifx#1\sectend
4807 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4808 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4809 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4810 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4811 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4812 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
4813 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%

```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```

\SLF@list
\SLF@loop 4814 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4815 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
4816 \SLF@loop{#1}}

```

```

\SLF@lof    Check if the list is empty:
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist 4817 \def\SLF@lof{%
              4818   \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4819 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\slfname 4820   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4821   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
              4822     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\slfname         it:

              4823   \if@mtc@longext@%
              4824     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4825     {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
              4826     \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
              4827   \else
              4828     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4829     {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
              4830     \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
              4831   \fi
              4832   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              4833   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
              4834   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\MTC@WriteContentsline we filter the relevant contents lines:
\figure
\subfigure 4835   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
              4836   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
              4837     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
              4838   \fi
              4839   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
              4840     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
              4841   \fi
              4842 }

\SLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to
\SLF@next     process the first one.
\SLF@list
              4843 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

I0033

\SLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
 \SLF@lof process the next entry in the list.  
 \SLF@read

W0014
I0036

```

4844 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4845   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4846     \mtcPackageWarning[W0014]{minitoc}%
4847       {No file #1
4848         \MessageBreak
4849         SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4850     \expandafter\SLF@lof
4851   \else
4852     \mtcPackageInfo[I0036]{minitoc}%
4853     {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
4854     \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The ..... make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:  
 \SLF@test  
 \SLF@line 4855 \def\SLF@read{%  
 4856 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line  
 4857 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@%  
 4858 }%

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit  
 \SLF@contentsline sections;

```

\mtc@string
\SLF@list 4859 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{%
\SLF@lof 4860   \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 4861     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4862     \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4863     \let\mtc@string\relax
4864     \else\ifx#1\@input
4865       \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
4866     \else\ifx#1\sectend
4867       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4868       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4869     \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4870       \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4871     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4872     \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
4873     \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%

```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:  
 \SLT@list  
 \SLT@loop 4874 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%  
 4875 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%  
 4876 \SLT@loop{#1}}



```

\SLT@lot    Check if the list is empty:
\SLT@list
\SLT@explist 4877 \def\SLT@lot{%
              4878   \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

```

```

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section          found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4879 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\sltname 4880   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4881   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
                        4882     \stepcounter{stc}%

```

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname         it:

```

I0033

```

4883   \if@mtc@longext@%
4884     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4885     {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
4886     \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
4887   \else
4888     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4889     {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
4890     \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
4891   \fi
4892   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4893   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
4894 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\MTC@WriteContentsline we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

```

\table
\subtable 4895   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
4896   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
4897     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
4898   \fi
4899   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
4900     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
4901   \fi
4902 }

```

```

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next     process the first one.
\SLT@list

```

```

4903 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
 \SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.  
 \SLT@read

W0015
I0039

```

4904 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4905   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4906     \mtcPackageWarning[W0015]{minitoc}%
4907       {No file #1
4908         \MessageBreak
4909         SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4910   \expandafter\SLT@lot
4911 \else
4912   \mtcPackageInfo[I0039]{minitoc}%
4913     {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
4914   \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

```

\SLT@read The . . . . . make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:
\SLT@test
\SLT@line 4915 \def\SLT@read{%
4916   \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
4917   \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@%
4918   }%

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit sections;  
 \SLT@contentsline

```

\mtc@string
\SLT@list 4919 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{%
\SLT@lot 4920   \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 4921     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4922     \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4923     \let\mtc@string\relax
4924   \else\ifx#1\@input
4925     \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
4926   \else\ifx#1\sectend
4927     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4928     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4929   \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4930     \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4931   \fi\fi\fi\fi
4932   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
4933   \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

## 9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```
4934 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
4935 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
```

## 9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```
\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 4936 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\{\mtcprepare@\}\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 4937 \def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
  \jobname 4938 \@ifundefined{part}}}%
  \doparttoc 4939 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}}%
  \dopartlof 4940 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}}%
  \dopartlot 4941 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}}%
  \dominitoc 4942 }%
  \dominilof 4943 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
  \dominilot 4944 \@ifundefined{section}}}%
  \dosecttoc 4945 {%
  \dosectlof 4946 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}}%
  \dosectlot 4947 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}}%
  \dosectlot 4948 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}}%
\mtcPackageInfo 4949 }%
4950 }%
4951 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}}%
4952 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}}%
4953 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}}%
4954 }%
4955 \if@mtc@hints@
4956 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4957 \mtcPackageInfo[I0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
4958 {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
4959 \MessageBreak
4960 hints about the preparation commands,
4961 \MessageBreak
4962 because it invokes ALL the preparation
4963 \MessageBreak
4964 commands allowed by the document class,
4965 \MessageBreak
4966 without any previous check\@gobble}%
4967 \fi
4968 }
```

I0048

## 9.64 Use with `\nofiles`

`\nofiles` In case the document uses the `\nofiles` command (in its preamble), the auxiliary files for the mini-tables should not be overwritten by the preparation commands, so these ones must be just faked; as these commands may have an optional argument, they will be faked using the internal  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro `\@ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`. Problem signaled by Andreas DEININGER.

```
4969 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

`\AtBeginDocument` A test is placed in a `\AtBeginDocument` and gives a warning if `\nofiles` is used:

```
\if@filesw
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 4970 \AtBeginDocument{\if@filesw\relax\else
4971   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0098]{minitoc}%
4972   {--- You have used the \string\nofiles\space command
4973   \MessageBreak
4974   in your preamble; all preparation commands
4975   \MessageBreak
4976   in the body of the document will be ignored}
```

Since `\nofiles` has been used, we must disable all the preparation commands:

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for part level mini-tables:

```
\doparttoc
\dopartlof 4977 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dopartlot 4978 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
4979 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for chapter level mini-tables:

```
\dominitoc
\dominilof 4980 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 4981 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
4982 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for section level mini-tables:

```
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 4983 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 4984 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
4985 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
```

```

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
4986 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

End of the inhibition of the preparation commands and of the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
4987 \fi}
```

## 9.65 Necessary \l@... commands

```

\l@listof  Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
\l@starpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection 4988 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\l@starsubsection 4989 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\l@starsubsubsection 4990 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starparagraph 4991 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starsubparagraph 4992 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
4993 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
4994 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
4995 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
4996 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 9.66 The horizontal rules and their default values

```

\columnwidth We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the various
\noptcrule kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding hor-
\nomtcrule izontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules. We begin with rules for mini-tables of
\nostcrule contents.
\ptcrule
\ptc@rule 4997 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\mtcrule 4998 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\mtc@rule 4999 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 5000 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\stc@rule 5001 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5002 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5003 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5004 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5005 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

```

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of figures:
\toplfrule
\nomlfrule 5006 \def\toplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\noslfrule 5007 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\plfrule 5008 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\plf@rule 5009 \def\plf@rule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlf@rule 5010 \def\mlf@rule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlf@rule 5011 \def\slf@rule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\slf@rule 5012 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slf@rule 5013 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slf@rule 5014 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of tables:
\nopltrule
\nomltrule 5015 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
\nosltrule 5016 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
\pltrule 5017 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
\plt@rule 5018 \def\plt@rule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mltrule 5019 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlt@rule 5020 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 5021 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 5022 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slt@rule 5023 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

## 9.67 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands<sup>11</sup> have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

### 9.67.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

<sup>11</sup>The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
5024 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
5025 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
5026 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
5027 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
5028 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
5029 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
5030 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
5031 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
5032 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
5033 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
5034 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
5035 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
5036 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
5037 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
5038 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
5039 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
5040 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
5041 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms<sup>12</sup> and meaning false or true<sup>13</sup>:

```
5042 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
5043 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
5044 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
5045 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
5046 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
5047 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
5048 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
5049 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
5050 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
5051 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
5052 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
5053 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
5054 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
5055 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
5056 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
5057 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
5058 %
5059 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{}\def\mtc@YN@on{}
5060 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{}\def\mtc@YN@ON{}
```

<sup>12</sup>This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter\csname ... \endcsname`.

<sup>13</sup>O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

```

5061 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{ }\def\mtc@YN@yes{}
5062 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{ }\def\mtc@YN@YES{}
5063 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{ }\def\mtc@YN@y{}
5064 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{ }\def\mtc@YN@Y{}
5065 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{ }\def\mtc@YN@true{}
5066 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{ }\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{}
5067 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{ }\def\mtc@YN@t{}
5068 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{ }\def\mtc@YN@T{}
5069 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{ }\def\mtc@YN@vrai{}
5070 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{ }\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{}
5071 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{ }\def\mtc@YN@v{}
5072 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{ }\def\mtc@YN@V{}
5073 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{ }\def\mtc@YN@OUI{}
5074 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{ }\def\mtc@YN@oui{}
5075 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{ }\def\mtc@YN@O{}
5076 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{ }\def\mtc@YN@o{}
5077 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{}
5078 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{}

```

### 9.67.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectionning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the highest sectionning level); “\*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

5079 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
5080 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
5081 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
5082 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
5083 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
5084 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
5085 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
5086 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{ }\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{}
5087 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{ }\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{}
5088 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{S}
5089 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{S}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like subsection (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [271] basic commands usually.



`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5090 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
5091 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The  
`\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`.  
`\@nameuse`

E0013

```
5092 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5093 \@mtc@setfont@true
5094 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5095   \@mtc@setfont@false
5096   \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5097   \mtcPackageError[E0013]{minitoc}%
5098     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5099     \MessageBreak
5100     (#1).
5101     \MessageBreak
5102     It should be a mini-table type
5103     \MessageBreak
5104     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5105   {Correct the source code.
5106   \MessageBreak
5107   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5108 \else
5109   \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5110 \fi
```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and  
`\if@mtc@setfont@` the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph  
`\@nameuse` keyword, we get SP.

E0014

```
5111 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5112 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5113   \@mtc@setfont@false
5114   \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5115   \mtcPackageError[E0014]{minitoc}%
5116     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5117     \MessageBreak
5118     (#2).
5119     \MessageBreak
5120     It should be a sectionning level
5121     \MessageBreak
```

```

5122      (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5123      {Correct the source code.
5124      \MessageBreak
5125      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5126 \else
5127   \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5128 \fi

```

```

\mtc@tmp@name Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev 5129 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

```

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get mtcSSfont, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a \csname ... \endcsname pair to apply the constructed command).

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the
mini-table, and the kind 14 of the entry must be consistent with that of the mini-table), so we
must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (quarks) with
@mtcck at the end of their names).

```

```

5130 \def\parttoc@mtcck{parttoc@mtcck}
5131 \def\minitoc@mtcck{minitoc@mtcck}
5132 \def\secttoc@mtcck{secttoc@mtcck}
5133 \def\partlof@mtcck{partlof@mtcck}
5134 \def\minilof@mtcck{minilof@mtcck}
5135 \def\sectlof@mtcck{sectlof@mtcck}
5136 \def\partlot@mtcck{partlot@mtcck}
5137 \def\minilot@mtcck{minilot@mtcck}
5138 \def\sectlot@mtcck{sectlot@mtcck}
5139 \def\part@mtcck{part@mtcck}
5140 \def\chapter@mtcck{chapter@mtcck}
5141 \def\appendix@mtcck{appendix@mtcck}
5142 \def\section@mtcck{section@mtcck}
5143 \def\subsection@mtcck{subsection@mtcck}
5144 \def\subsubsection@mtcck{subsubsection@mtcck}
5145 \def\paragraph@mtcck{paragraph@mtcck}
5146 \def\subparagraph@mtcck{subparagraph@mtcck}
5147 \def\figure@mtcck{figure@mtcck}
5148 \def\table@mtcck{table@mtcck}
5149 \def\subfigure@mtcck{subfigure@mtcck}
5150 \def\subtable@mtcck{subtable@mtcck}
5151 \@mtc@setfont@true
5152 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\parttoc@mtcck\relax
5153   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5154   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5155   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5156   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

<sup>14</sup> “Kind” being sectionning, (sub-)figure, or (sub-)table.

```

5157 \fi
5158 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlof@mtcck\relax
5159   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5160   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5161 \fi
5162 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlot@mtcck\relax
5163   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5164   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5165 \fi
5166 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minitoc@mtcck\relax
5167   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5168   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5169   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5170   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5171   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5172   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5173   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5174 \fi
5175 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
5176   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5177   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5178   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5179   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5180   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5181 \fi
5182 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
5183   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5184   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5185   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5186   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5187   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5188 \fi
5189 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
5190   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5191   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5192   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5193   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5194   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5195   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5196   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5197   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5198 \fi
5199 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
5200   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5201   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5202   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5203   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5204   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5205   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5206 \fi
5207 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
5208   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5209   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5210   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

```

5211 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5212 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5213 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5214 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed  
 \mtc@tmp@name macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log  
 \mtc@mta@abbrev that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*); if the  
 \mtc@level@abbrev combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.  
 \mtc@toks

I0015
E0024

```

5215 \if@mtc@setfont@
5216 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
5217 \mtc@toks{#3}
5218 \mtcPackageInfo[I0015]{minitoc}%
5219 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
5220 \MessageBreak
5221 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5222 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5223 \else
5224 \mtcPackageError[E0024]{minitoc}%
5225 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
5226 \MessageBreak
5227 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5228 {Correct the source code.
5229 \MessageBreak
5230 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5231 \fi}

```

### 9.67.3 The \mtcsetttitlefont command

\mtcsetttitlefont This command is very similar to the \mtcsetfont command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetttitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

\if@mtc@setttitlefont@ The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [271] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5232 \newif\if@mtc@setttitlefont@\@mtc@setttitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsetttitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsetttitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
5233 \newcommand{\mtcsetttitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored  
`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@` into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:  
`\@nameuse`

E0022

```
5234 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5235 \@mtc@setttitlefont@true
5236 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
5237   \mtc@setttitlefont@false
5238   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5239   \mtcPackageError[E0022]{minitoc}%
5240     {\string\mtcsetttitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
5241     \MessageBreak
5242     (#1).
5243     \MessageBreak
5244     It should be a mini-table type
5245     \MessageBreak
5246     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5247   {Correct the source code.
5248   \MessageBreak
5249   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5250 \else
5251   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5252 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:  
`\mtc@tmptf@name`

I0018

E0034

```
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5253 \if@mtc@setttitlefont@
\mtc@toks 5254   \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
5255   \mtc@toks{#2}%
5256   \mtcPackageInfo[I0018]{minitoc}%
5257   {\string\mtcsetttitlefont\space redefines the macro
5258   \MessageBreak
5259   "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
5260   \MessageBreak
5261   "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5262   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5263 \else
5264   \mtcPackageError[E0034]{minitoc}%
5265   {The macro \string\mtcsetttitlefont\space uses
5266   \MessageBreak
5267   an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5268   {Correct the source code.
5269   \MessageBreak
5270   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5271 \fi
5272 }
```

### 9.67.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5273 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
5274 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in

E0021

`\if@mtc@settitle@` `\mtc@mtati@abbrev:`

`\@nameuse`

```
5275 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5276 \@mtc@settitle@true
5277 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5278   \@mtc@settitle@false
5279   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5280   \mtcPackageError[E0021]{minitoc}%
5281     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
5282     \MessageBreak
5283     (#1).
5284     \MessageBreak
5285     It should be a mini-table type
5286     \MessageBreak
5287     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5288     {Correct the source code.
5289     \MessageBreak
5290     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5291 \else
5292   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5293 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitle@` And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

`\mtc@tmpti@name`

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` 5294 `\if@mtc@settitle@`

`\mtc@toks` 5295 `\def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}%`

5296 `\mtc@toks{#2}%`

I0017

E0033

```

5297 \mtcPackageInfo[I0017]{minitoc}%
5298   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
5299     \MessageBreak
5300     "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
5301     \MessageBreak
5302     "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5303 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5304 \else
5305 \mtcPackageError[E0033]{minitoc}%
5306   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
5307     \MessageBreak
5308     an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5309   {Correct the source code.
5310     \MessageBreak
5311     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5312 \fi
5313 }

```

### 9.67.5 The `\mtcsetformat` command

`\@namedef` We define first the keywords (family `formatparam`) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

5314 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
5315 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
5316 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
5317 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
5318 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
5319 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
5320 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
5321 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```

5322 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

```

    \@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:
    \ptcpnumwidth
    \mtcpnumwidth 5323 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \stcpnumwidth 5324 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \plfpnumwidth 5325 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \mlfpnumwidth 5326 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \slfpnumwidth 5327 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \pltpnumwidth 5328 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \mltpnumwidth 5329 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    \sltpnumwidth 5330 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
    5331 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

\@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtclofrmargin 5332 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrmargin 5333 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 5334 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflofrmargin 5335 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflotrmargin 5336 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 5337 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltlofrmargin 5338 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrmargin 5339 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
5340 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 5341 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 5342 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 5343 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 5344 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 5345 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 5346 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 5347 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 5348 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
5349 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
5350 }%
```

```

\mtcsetformat The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the mtc@verse-like
environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by
\mtcsetformat.

```

```

\ptc@setform The \ptc@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:
ptc@verse
5351 \def\ptc@setform{%
5352 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
5353 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
5354 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
5355 }

```

```

\mtc@setform The \mtc@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:
mtc@verse
5356 \def\mtc@setform{%
5357 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
5358 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
5359 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
5360 }

```



`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
5361 \def\stc@setform{%
5362 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
5363 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
5364 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
5365 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
5366 \def\plf@setform{%
5367 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5368 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5369 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5370 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
5371 \def\mlf@setform{%
5372 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
5373 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
5374 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
5375 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
5376 \def\slf@setform{%
5377 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
5378 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
5379 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
5380 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
5381 \def\plt@setform{%
5382 \let\@pnumwidth\pltppnumwidth\relax
5383 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
5384 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
5385 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
5386 \def\mlt@setform{%
5387 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
```

```

5388 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5389 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5390 }

```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```

5391 \def\slt@setform{%
5392 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5393 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5394 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5395 }

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, with has the following syntax:  
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```

5396 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
5397 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:  
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```

5398 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5399 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5400 \@mtc@setformat@true
5401 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5402   \@mtc@setformat@false
5403   \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5404   \mtcPackageError[E0015]{minitoc}%
5405     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
5406     \MessageBreak
5407     (#1).
5408     \MessageBreak
5409     It should be a mini-table type
5410     \MessageBreak
5411     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5412   {Correct the source code.
5413   \MessageBreak
5414   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5415 \else \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5416 \fi

```

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:  
`\@nameuse`

E0016

```

5417 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5418 \@mtc@setformat@false
5419 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5420 \mtcPackageError[E0016]{minitoc}%
5421   {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5422   \MessageBreak
5423   (#2).
5424   \MessageBreak
5425   It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5426   \MessageBreak
5427   pagewidth, totrightmargin, dotinterval}%
5428 {Correct the source code.
5429   \MessageBreak
5430   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5431 \else
5432 \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}%
5433 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value (*via* `\edef`  
`\mtc@tmpfm@name` because it can contain some complex code):  
`\mtc@mtf@abbrev`

```

\mtc@fparam@abbrev 5434 \if@mtc@setformat@
5435 \mtc@toks{#3}%
5436 \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}%
5437 \mtcPackageInfo[I0016]{minitoc}%
5438   {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
5439   \MessageBreak
5440   "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5441 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5442 \else
5443 \mtcPackageError[E0025]{minitoc}%
5444   {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
5445   \MessageBreak
5446   first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5447 {Correct the source code.
5448   \MessageBreak
5449   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5450 \fi
5451 }

```



I0016

E0025

### 9.67.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

`\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@` We define some flags:  
`\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

```
5452 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5453 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@
```

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro  
`\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro  
`\mtcsetpagenumbers@` only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
5454 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
5455   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5456   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5457   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}
5458    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}
5459    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
5460   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5461   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
5462    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
5463    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
5464   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5465   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
5466    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
5467    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
5468   \else
5469   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
5470   \fi
5471 }
```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

```
5472 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in  
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

E0017

```
5473 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5474 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
5475 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
5476 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5477   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5478   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5479   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5480   \mtcPackageError[E0017]{minitoc}{%
```

```

5481      {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
5482       \MessageBreak
5483       argument (#1)}%
5484      {It should be a mini-table type
5485       \MessageBreak
5486       (parttoc...sectlot)
5487       \MessageBreak
5488       Correct the source code.
5489       \MessageBreak
5490       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5491 \else
5492   \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5493 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5494 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 5495 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
5496   \@mtc@spn@ok@false
5497   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5498   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5499   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5500   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5501   \mtcPackageError[E0018]{minitoc}%
5502     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
5503      \MessageBreak
5504      argument (#2)}%
5505     {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
5506      \MessageBreak
5507      Correct the source code.
5508      \MessageBreak
5509      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5510 \else
5511   \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5512   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5513   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5514   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mttpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
5515   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5516     \mtcPackageInfo[I0022]{minitoc}%
5517     {Page numbers are inhibited
5518      \MessageBreak
5519      for the #1s}
5520   \else
5521     \mtcPackageInfo[I0021]{minitoc}%
5522     {Page numbers are activated
5523      \MessageBreak for the #1s}
5524   \fi
5525   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5526 \fi
5527 }

```

E0018

I0022

I0021

### 9.67.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```
\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
5528 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
5529 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
\mtcsetrules We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
\@ifundefined \mtcsetrules@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only
\mtcsetrules@ once, for the specified type of mini-table.
```

```
5530 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
5531   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5532   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5533   {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}}
5534   \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
5535   \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
5536   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5537   {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}}
5538   \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
5539   \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
5540   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5541   {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}}
5542   \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
5543   \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
5544   \else
5545   \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
5546   \fi
5547 }
```

```
\mtcsetrules@ Then the \mtcsetrules@ internal macro, which has two arguments:
```

```
5548 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in a  
`\if@mtc@setrules@` macro `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:  
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev`

E0019

```

\@nameuse 5549 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5550 \@mtc@setrules@true
5551 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
5552 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5553 \@mtc@setrules@false
5554 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5555 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5556 \mtcPackageError[E0019]{minitoc}%
5557 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
5558 \MessageBreak
5559 (#1)}%
5560 {It should be a mini-table type
5561 \MessageBreak
5562 (parttoc...sectlot)
5563 \MessageBreak
5564 Correct the source code.
5565 \MessageBreak
5566 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5567 \else
5568 \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5569 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@sru@ok@` Then the second argument, a keyword of the `YN` family, and store the result in a macro  
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev` `\mtc@rusw@abbrev`. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.  
`\mtc@mttru@abbrev`

E0020

I0008

I0007

```

if@setrules@false 5570 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 5571 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 5572 \@mtc@sru@ok@false
5573 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5574 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5575 \@mtc@setrules@false
5576 \mtcPackageError[E0020]{minitoc}%
5577 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
5578 \MessageBreak
5579 (#2)}%
5580 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
5581 \MessageBreak
5582 Correct the source code.
5583 \MessageBreak
5584 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5585 \else
5586 \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5587 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
5588 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5589 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
5590 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5591 \mtcPackageInfo[I0008]{minitoc}%
5592 {Horizontal rules are inhibited
5593 \MessageBreak

```

```

5594         for the #1s}
5595     \else
5596         \mtcPackageInfo[I0007]{minitoc}%
5597         {Horizontal rules are activated
5598         \MessageBreak
5599         for the #1s}
5600     \fi
5601     \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5602 \fi
5603 }

```

### 9.67.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “pagestyle” is used.

A family (`ltypetable`) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```

5604 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
5605 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
5606 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
5607 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
5608 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
5609 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
5610 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
5611 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
5612 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

5613 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
5614     \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
5615 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
5616     \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
5617 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@open}{open}%
5618     \def\mtc@featureparam@open{open}
5619 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@close}{close}%
5620     \def\mtc@featureparam@close{close}
5621 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
5622     \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

5623 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
5624 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
5625 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@open}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@open\endcsname{}
5626 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@close}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@close\endcsname{}
5627 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
5628     \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```



The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

```
\if@mtc@setfeature@ We define a flag and the \mtcsetfeature command, with three arguments:
\mtcsetfeature
```

```
5629 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
5630 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%
```

```
\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family, and store the result in
\mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev:
```

E0011

```
5631 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5632 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5633 \@mtc@setfeature@true
5634 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5635   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5636   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5637   \mtcPackageError[E0011]{minitoc}%
5638     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
5639     \MessageBreak
5640     (#1).
5641     \MessageBreak
5642     It should be a mini-table type
5643     \MessageBreak
5644     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5645   {Correct the source code.
5646   \MessageBreak
5647   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5648 \else
5649   \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5650 \fi
```

```
\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in
\mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted
\mtc@featparam@third as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.
\@nameuse
```

E0012

```
5651 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5652   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5653   \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5654   \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
5655   \mtcPackageError[E0012]{minitoc}%
5656     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
```

```

5657     \MessageBreak
5658     (#2).
5659     \MessageBreak
5660     It should be a feature param
5661     \MessageBreak
5662     (before, after, open, close, pagestyle)}%
5663     {Correct the source code.
5664     \MessageBreak
5665     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5666 \else
5667   \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
5668   \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
5669 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces  
 \mtc@tmpfeat@name (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third  
 \mtc@featparam@abbrev respectively), then this macro is executed:  
 \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev  
 \mtc@featparam@third

I0014

E0023

```

5670 \if@mtc@setfeature@
5671   \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
5672     {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}%
5673     \mtc@toks{#3}}%
5674   \mtcPackageInfo[I0014]{minitoc}%
5675   {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
5676   \MessageBreak
5677   "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as
5678   \MessageBreak
5679   "\the\mtc@toks"}}%
5680   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5681 \else
5682   \mtcPackageError[E0023]{minitoc}%
5683     {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
5684     \MessageBreak
5685     first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5686     {Correct the source code.
5687     \MessageBreak
5688     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5689 \fi}

```

### 9.67.9 The \mtcsetdepth command

This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitle command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the subfig package [128]).



\if@mtc@setdepth@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5690 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

\mtcsetdepth Then we define the \mtcsetdepth command, with two arguments:

```
5691 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtade@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family. The result is stored in  
 \if@mtc@setdepth@ \mtc@mtade@abbrev:  
 \@nameuse

E0009

```
5692 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5693 \@mtc@setdepth@true
5694 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5695   \@mtc@setdepth@false
5696   \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5697   \mtcPackageError[E0009]{minitoc}%
5698     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
5699     \MessageBreak
5700     (#1).
5701     \MessageBreak
5702     It should be a mini-table type
5703     \MessageBreak
5704     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5705   {Correct the source code.
5706   \MessageBreak
5707   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5708 \else
5709   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5710 \fi
```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:  
 \mtc@tmpde@name

E0008

I0013

E0010

```
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 5711 \if@mtc@setdepth@
  \mtc@toks 5712   \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
  \setcounter 5713   \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
  5714     {\mtcPackageError[E0008]{minitoc}%
  5715     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
  5716     \MessageBreak
  5717     an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
  5718     {Correct the source code.
  5719     \MessageBreak
  5720     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
  5721   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
  5722   \mtcPackageInfo[I0013]{minitoc}%
  5723   {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
  5724   \MessageBreak
  5725   "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
  5726   \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
  5727 \else
```

```

5728 \mtcPackageError[E0010]{minitoc}%
5729     {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
5730     {Correct the source code.
5731     \MessageBreak
5732     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
5733 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

### 9.67.10 The `\mtcsetoffset` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{value}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *value* is the offset value for a mini-table.

`\if@mtc@setoffset@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5734 \newif\if@mtc@setoffset@\@mtc@setoffset@true
```

`\mtcsetoffset` Then we define the `\mtcsetoffset` command, with two arguments:

```
5735 \newcommand{\mtcsetoffset}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtaof@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in `\if@mtc@setoffset@` `\mtc@mtaof@abbrev:`

E0042

`\@nameuse`

```

5736 \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
5737 \if@mtc@setoffset@true
5738 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5739     \@mtc@setoffset@false
5740     \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
5741     \mtcPackageError[E0042]{minitoc}%
5742     {\string\mtcsetoffset \space has a wrong first argument
5743     \MessageBreak
5744     (#1).
5745     \MessageBreak
5746     It should be a mini-table type
5747     \MessageBreak
5748     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5749     {Correct the source code.
5750     \MessageBreak
5751     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5752 \else
5753     \edef\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5754 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setoffset@ And we construct the name of the effective offset and gave it the value:
  \mtc@tmpof@name
\mtc@mtaof@abbrev 5755 \if@mtc@setoffset@
  \mtc@toks 5756 \def\mtc@tmpof@name{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset.}
  \setcounter 5757 \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset}%
    5758 {\mtcPackageError[E0041]{minitoc}%
    5759 {\string\mtcsetoffset \space attempts to use
    5760 \MessageBreak
    5761 an undefined offset (\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset).}%
    5762 {Correct the source code.
    5763 \MessageBreak
    5764 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{%
    5765 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
    5766 \mtcPackageInfo[I0052]{minitoc}%
    5767 {\string\mtcsetoffset\space redefines
    5768 \MessageBreak
    5769 "\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
    5770 \expandafter\def\csname \mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset\endcsname{#2}}%
    5771 \else
    5772 \mtcPackageError[E0043]{minitoc}%
    5773 {\string\mtcsetoffset:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
    5774 {Correct the source code.
    5775 \MessageBreak
    5776 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
    5777 \fi}% end of \mtcsetoffset

```

E0041  
I0052  
E0043

## 9.68 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```
5778 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false
```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
  mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
  \if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
  \mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
  \arabic
\addtocontents 5779 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
  \setcounter 5780 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
    5781 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
    5782 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[E0005]{minitoc}%
    5783 {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
    5784 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}}\fi
    5785 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
    5786 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
    5787 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}%

```

E0005  
E0031

```

5788 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@else\mtcPackageError[E0031]{minitoc}%
5789      {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
5790      {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
5791 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5792 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must ver-
\if@mtc@Himlof@ ify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these
mtchideinmainlof environments. This must be done after the loading of the packages.
\mtc@savelofdepth
\empty First, for the list of figures:
\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 5793 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\mtc@svf@tocdepth 5794 \AtBeginDocument{%
\arabic 5795 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
\addtocontents 5796 \providecommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\empty}
\setcounter 5797 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5798 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
5799 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5800 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5801 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5802 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5803 \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5804 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5805 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5806 {\if@mtc@Himlof@else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
5807 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5808 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5809 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
5810 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5811 }}%
5812 {%
5813 \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
5814 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
5815 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5816 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
5817 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5818 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5819 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5820 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
5821 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5822 {\if@mtc@Himlof@else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
5823 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5824 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5825 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
5826 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}%

```

E0003

E0029

```

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 5827 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@savelotdepth 5828 \AtBeginDocument{%
\empty 5829 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 5830 \providecommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\empty}
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 5831 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 5832 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
5833 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
\arabic 5834 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
\addtocontents 5835 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
\setcounter 5836 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5837 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5838 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5839 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5840 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
5841 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5842 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5843 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5844 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5845 }}%
5846 {%
5847 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
5848 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
5849 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
5850 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
5851 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
5852 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5853 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5854 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
5855 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5856 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
5857 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5858 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5859 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5860 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}%

```

E0004

E0030

## 9.69 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

```

\ifundefined Depending on the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred
\mtc@glofix@level chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional
argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done
by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

W0001

E0001

W0006

```

5861 \ifundefined{chapter}{%
5862   \ifundefined{section}%
5863     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0001]{minitoc}%
5864      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5865       \MessageBreak
5866       Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
5867       \MessageBreak
5868       optional argument [part]}}%
5869   \@ifundefined{part}%
5870     {\mtcPackageError[E0001]{minitoc}%
5871      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5872      {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
5873   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0006]{minitoc}%
5874    {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
5875     \MessageBreak
5876     with the [part] optional argument,
5877     \MessageBreak
5878     which becomes the default}%
5879    \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}}%
5880   }%
5881   {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
5882 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

`\if@mtcfixglossary@` Then we define a flag (`\if@mtcfixglossary@`) and the command `\mtcfixglossary`, which  
`\mtcfixglossary` adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.  
`\addcontentsline`

E0026

```

5883 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \mtcfixglossary@false
5884 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
5885   \mtcfixglossary@false
5886   \expandafter%
5887   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5888   \expandafter%
5889   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5890   \expandafter%
5891   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5892   \if@mtcfixglossary@
5893     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5894     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5895     \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
5896   \else
5897     \mtcPackageError[E0026]{minitoc}%
5898     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
5899      \MessageBreak
5900      is wrong}%
5901     {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
5902   \fi
5903 }%

```



## 9.70 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@ixfix@level Depending on the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@ixfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0002  
W0007  
E0002

```
5904 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5905   \@ifundefined{section}%
5906     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0002]{minitoc}%
5907      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5908       \MessageBreak
5909       Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
5910       \MessageBreak
5911       optional argument [part]}}%
5912   \@ifundefined{part}%
5913     {\mtcPackageError[E0002]{minitoc}%
5914      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5915      {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
5916   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0007]{minitoc}%
5917    {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
5918     \MessageBreak
5919     the [part] optional argument,
5920     \MessageBreak
5921     which becomes the default}}%
5922   \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}}%
5923   }%
5924   {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
5925 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

\if@mtcfixindex@ \mtcfixindex \addcontentsline Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixindex, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

E0027

```
5926 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
5927 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
5928   \@mtcfixindex@false
5929   \expandafter%
5930   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
5931   \expandafter%
5932   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
5933   \expandafter%
5934   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
5935   \if@mtcfixindex@
5936     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
```

```

5937 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
5938 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
5939 \else
5940 \mtcPackageError[E0027]{minitoc}%
5941 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
5942 \MessageBreak
5943 is wrong}%
5944 {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
5945 \fi
5946 }%

```

## 9.71 Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@nomenclfix@level Depending on the document class, the “Nomenclature” entry<sup>15</sup> in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@nomenclfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0095

E0039

W0096

```

5947 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5948 \ifundefined{section}%
5949 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0095]{minitoc}%
5950 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5951 \MessageBreak
5952 Cannot use \string\mtcfixnomenclature \space without
5953 \MessageBreak
5954 optional argument [part]}%
5955 \@ifundefined{part}%
5956 {\mtcPackageError[E0039]{minitoc}%
5957 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5958 {\string\mtcfixnomclature\space not usable}}%
5959 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0096]{minitoc}%
5960 {\string\mtcfixnomenclature\space can only be used with
5961 \MessageBreak
5962 the [part] optional argument,
5963 \MessageBreak
5964 which becomes the default}%
5965 \def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{part}%
5966 }}%
5967 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{section}}}%
5968 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{chapter}}

```

<sup>15</sup> If you are using the nomencl package [416] or nomencl package [151] (nomencl calls nomenclbl).

```

\if@mtcfixnomclature@ Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixnomenclature, which adds the necessary
\mtcfixnomenclature lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
\addcontentsline

5969 \newif\if@mtcfixnomenclature@ \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
5970 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\mtc@nomenclfix@level]{%
5971   \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
5972   \expandafter%
5973   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
5974   \expandafter%
5975   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
5976   \expandafter%
5977   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
5978   \if@mtcfixnomenclature@
5979     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
5980     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
5981     \csname mtcadd\mtc@nomenclfix@level\endcsname\relax
5982   \else
5983     \mtcPackageError[E0040]{minitoc}%
5984       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixnomenclature
5985         \MessageBreak
5986         is wrong}%
5987       {It must be omitted (\mtc@nomenclfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
5988   \fi
5989 }%

```

E0040

## 9.72 The \mtcselectlanguage command

```

\mtcselectlanguage This command loads a minitoc language definition file language.mld to set the language-
\if@mtc@insellang@ dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag
\IfFileExists \if@mtc@insellang@ is true while we are in this macro.
\@input

5990 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
5991 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
5992   \@mtc@insellang@true
5993   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
5994     {\mtcPackageInfo[I0010]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
5995       \MessageBreak
5996     }}%
5997   {\mtcPackageError[E0006]{minitoc}%
5998     {#1 is not a known language,
5999     \MessageBreak
6000     #1.mld not found.
6001     \MessageBreak
6002     Command ignored}%
6003     {See the minitoc documentation.
6004     \MessageBreak
6005     Correct the source using a valid language name.
6006     \MessageBreak
6007     Press RETURN}}%

```

I0010

E0006

```
6008 \@mtc@insellang@false
6009 }
```

### 9.73 The `\mtcloadmlo` internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.

*This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag `\if@mtc@insellang@`.*

```
6010 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6011     \if@mtc@insellang@
6012     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6013     {\mtcPackageInfo[I0011]{minitoc}%
6014      {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6015       \MessageBreak}}%
6016     {\mtcPackageError[E0007]{minitoc}%
6017      {#1 is not a known minitoc
6018       \MessageBreak
6019       language object file (.mlo),
6020       \MessageBreak
6021       #1.mlo not found.
6022       \MessageBreak
6023       Command ignored}%
6024      {See the minitoc documentation.
6025       \MessageBreak
6026       Correct the source using a valid language name.
6027       \MessageBreak
6028       Press RETURN}}%
6029     \else
6030     \mtcPackageError[E0032]{minitoc}%
6031     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6032     \MessageBreak
6033     outside of a .mld file}%
6034     {It will be ignored}
6035     \@mtc@insellang@false
6036     \fi}
```



I0011
E0007
E0032

### 9.74 The “coffee breaks”

`\addcoffeeline` For the minutes package [279] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we

`\addtocontents`

`\coffeeline`

`\l@coffee`

`\@Undottedtocline`

define `\addcoffeeline`, `\coffeeline` and `\l@coffee`, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```
6037 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
6038   \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
6039 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
6040 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
```

## 9.75 Initialization of counters

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.  
`\ifundefined`  
`\setcounter`

```
6041 \AtBeginDocument{%
6042   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
6043   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
6044   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}}
```

## 9.76 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

### 9.76.1 Options `tight` and `loose`, `k-tight` and `k-loose`

`\DeclareOption` These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.  
`\iftightmtc`  
`\ifktightmtc` 6045 `\DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}`  
 6046 `\DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse}` % default  
 6047 `\DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}`  
 6048 `\DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse}` % default

### 9.76.2 Options `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles`

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.  
`\if@mtc@checkfiles`  
 6049 `\DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue}` % default  
 6050 `\DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}`

### 9.76.3 Options dotted and undotted

```
\DeclareOption These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
\ifundottedmtc
6051 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
6052 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

### 9.76.4 Option notoccite

```
\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [13].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
6053 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

### 9.76.5 Option shorttext

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@mtc@longext@
6054 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{%
6055   \@mtc@longext@false
6056   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0020]{minitoc}%
6057   {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

W0020

## 9.77 The insection option

```
\if@mtc@ss@insection@ This option is available only if \chapter is not defined and \section defined. It is to be
  \@ifundefined revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the
  \DeclareOption far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)16.
```

E0035

```
6058 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
6059 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6060   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
6061     \mtcPackageError[E0035]{minitoc}%
6062     {You have used the 'insection' option in
6063       \MessageBreak
6064       a document where chapters are defined.
6065       \MessageBreak
6066       This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
6067     {Remove this option.
6068       \MessageBreak
6069       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}
```

<sup>16</sup>Please, do not dream too much!

```

6070         }}%
6071     {%
6072     \DeclareOption{insection}%
6073     {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
6074     }%
6075 }{}

```

## 9.78 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document.maf*. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```

6076 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
6077 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
6078 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}

```

## 9.79 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```

\mtc@LML
\MessageBreak
6079 \def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
6080 \def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
6081 \def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
6082     \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
6083     \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}

```

`\if@mtc@misslang` Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding *.mld* file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding *.mlo* file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\mtc@setlangopt` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

```

\DeclareOption
\mtc@addmisslanguage
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
6084 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
6085 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
6086     \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6087     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6088     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6089     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6090     \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6091     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6092     \MessageBreak

```

I0050

I0051

```

6093         The "#1" language option
6094         \MessageBreak
6095         will not be available.
6096         \MessageBreak
6097         Please install it from a recent distribution
6098         \MessageBreak
6099         or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6100 }%
6101 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
6102   \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6103   {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
6104   {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6105     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
6106     \mtcPackageInfo[I0051]{minitoc}%
6107     {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
6108       \MessageBreak
6109       The "#1" language option
6110       \MessageBreak
6111       will not be available.
6112       \MessageBreak
6113       Please install it from a recent distribution
6114       \MessageBreak
6115       or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6116   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}}%
6117   {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6118     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6119     \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6120     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6121       \MessageBreak
6122       The "#1" language option will not be available.
6123       \MessageBreak
6124       Please install it from a recent distribution
6125       \MessageBreak
6126       or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6127   }%
6128 }%
6129 }%

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
  \IfFileExists
    \DeclareOption 6130 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 6131   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6132     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6133     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6134       \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6135       \mtcPackageError[E0038]{minitoc}%
6136       {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
6137         \MessageBreak
6138         A mandatory minitoc language object file,
6139         \MessageBreak
6140         #1.mld, is not found.

```





```

6141      \MessageBreak
6142      We will try to continue with
6143      \MessageBreak
6144      current/default values}%
6145      {See the minitoc documentation.
6146      \MessageBreak
6147      Please fix your minitoc installation.
6148      \MessageBreak
6149      Press <return> to continue}%

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):

```

\ptctitle
\plftitle 6150      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
\plttitle 6151      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
\mtctitle 6152      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
\mlftitle 6153      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
\mlttitle 6154      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
\stctitle 6155      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
\slftitle 6156      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
\slttitle 6157      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
6158      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
6159 }}%

```

```

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document, with also the full
\if@mtc@misslang list of the missing language files:
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
\MessageBreak 6160 \AtEndDocument{%
\mtc@listmisslanguages 6161 \if@mtc@misslang
\@gobblethree 6162 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0093]{minitoc}%
6163 {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
6164 \MessageBreak
6165 in your installation.
6166 \MessageBreak
6167 Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
6168 \MessageBreak
6169 in the \string\jobname.log file.
6170 \MessageBreak
6171 The full list of the missing language files
6172 \MessageBreak
6173 is given in the W0094 warning message.
6174 \MessageBreak
6175 Please install the missing files from
6176 \MessageBreak
6177 a recent distribution
6178 \MessageBreak
6179 or from the CTAN archives}%
6180 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0094]{minitoc}%
6181 {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
6182 \MessageBreak
6183 \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%

```

W0093

W0094

```
6184 \fi
6185 }%
```

\DeclareOption Each language option reads the corresponding *language.mld* file via the specialized macro \mtc@setlangopt \mtcselectlanguage, after verification by \mtc@setlangopt or \mtc@setlangopto (when a .mlo file is required), by \mtc@setlangoptm when the language is mandatory. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a *language.mld* file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as *american.mld* loads *english.mld*).

```
6186 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
6187 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
6188 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
6189 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%
6190 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
6191 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
6192 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
6193 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
6194 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
6195 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
6196 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
6197 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
6198 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
6199 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
6200 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
6201 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
6202 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
6203 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
6204 \mtc@setlangopt{bengali}%
6205 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
6206 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
6207 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
6208 \mtc@setlangopt{bi the}%
6209 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
6210 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
6211 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
6212 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
6213 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
6214 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
6215 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
6216 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
6217 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
6218 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
6219 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
6220 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
6221 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
6222 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%
6223 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%
6224 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
6225 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
6226 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%

```

```
6227 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
6228 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
6229 \mtc@setlangoptm{english}%
6230 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
6231 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
6232 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
6233 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
6234 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
6235 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
6236 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
6237 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
6238 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%
6239 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%
6240 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
6241 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
6242 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
6243 \mtc@setlangopt{francais}%
6244 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%
6245 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
6246 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
6247 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
6248 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
6249 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
6250 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
6251 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%
6252 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
6253 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
6254 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
6255 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
6256 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
6257 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
6258 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
6259 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul1}%
6260 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul2}%
6261 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul3}%
6262 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul4}%
6263 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul-u8}%
6264 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja1}%
6265 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja2}%
6266 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja-u8}%
6267 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%

```

```

6268 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
6269 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
6270 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
6271 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
6272 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
6273 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
6274 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
6275 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
6276 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
6277 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
6278 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
6279 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese}%
6280 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese2}%
6281 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese3}%
6282 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese4}%
6283 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese5}%
6284 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese6}%
6285 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
6286 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
6287 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
6288 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
6289 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc}%
6290 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc2}%
6291 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
6292 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian2}%
6293 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
6294 \mtc@setlangopt{letton2}%
6295 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
6296 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian2}%
6297 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
6298 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
6299 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
6300 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
6301 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
6302 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
6303 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-b}%
6304 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%
6305 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli2}%
6306 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-mr}%
6307 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-omega}%
6308 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
6309 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
6310 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana3}%
6311 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
6312 \mtc@setlangopt{mexican}%
6313 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
6314 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
6315 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
6316 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
6317 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
6318 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
6319 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
6320 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
6321 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
6322 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
6323 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
6324 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
6325 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
6326 \mtc@setlangopt{occitan}%
6327 \mtc@setlangopt{occitan2}%
6328 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
6329 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
6330 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
6331 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
6332 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
6333 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
6334 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
6335 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
6336 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
6337 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
6338 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
6339 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
6340 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
6341 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca}%
6342 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca1}%
6343 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lh}%
6344 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyralt}%
6345 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
6346 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrwin}%
6347 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
6348 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
6349 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
6350 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
6351 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
6352 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
6353 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
6354 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
6355 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
6356 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
6357 \mtc@setlangopt{swahili}%
6358 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
6359 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
6360 \mtc@setlangopt{thai}%
6361 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
6362 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
6363 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
6364 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
6365 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%
6366 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
6367 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%
6368 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
6369 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
6370 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
6371 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
6372 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
6373 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
6374 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
6375 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%

```

```
6376 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%
```

## 9.80 The hints option

```
\DeclareOption We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:
\if@mtc@hints@
```

```
6377 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
6378 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}
```

```
\mtc@hints@begindoc The hints option is made of three parts: the first, \mtc@hints@begindoc, is executed via
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings
about their compatibility with minitoc.
```

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

```
\mtc@hints@enddoc The third and last part, \mtc@hints@enddoc, is executed via \AtEndDocument and examines
\AtEndDocument the flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the
document.log file and/or warnings on the screen and in the document.log file. The hints
option does not signal errors, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the LATEX run.
```



### 9.80.1 First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc

```
\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for an \AtBeginDocument
\mtc@hints@begindoc block):
```

I0049

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6379 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6380 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
6381 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6382 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
6383 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
6384 \mtcPackageInfo[I0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
6385 {==> You requested the hints option
6386 \MessageBreak
6387 Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%
```

#### 9.80.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

```
\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [102]), and emit a
\if@mtc@hints@given@
```



warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6388 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
6389   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6390     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0025]{minitoc(hints)}%
6391     {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
6392       \MessageBreak
6393       It is incompatible
6394       \MessageBreak
6395       with the minitoc package}}}%

```

### 9.80.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the appendix package [431]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0042

```

6396 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
6397   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6398   \mtcPackageInfo[I0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
6399   {--- The appendix package is loaded.
6400     \MessageBreak
6401     See the minitoc package documentation
6402     \MessageBreak
6403     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.80.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocbibind package [432]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0046

```

6404 \@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
6405   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6406     \mtcPackageInfo[I0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
6407     {--- The tocbibind package is loaded.
6408       \MessageBreak
6409       See the minitoc package documentation
6410       \MessageBreak
6411       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.80.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

\@ifclassloaded We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [317, 318, 364]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0043

```

6412 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
6413   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6414     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

6415      {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
6416      \MessageBreak
6417      See the minitoc package documentation
6418      \MessageBreak
6419      for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6420 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
6421   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6422   \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6423   {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
6424   \MessageBreak
6425   See the minitoc package documentation
6426   \MessageBreak
6427   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6428 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
6429   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6430   \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6431   {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
6432   \MessageBreak
6433   See the minitoc package documentation
6434   \MessageBreak
6435   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.80.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [429]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0047

```

6436 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
6437   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6438   \mtcPackageInfo[I0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
6439   {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
6440   \MessageBreak
6441   See the minitoc package documentation
6442   \MessageBreak
6443   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.80.1.6 Hint about the titlesec package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titlesec package [46], and emit a warning, because this package is  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6444 \@ifpackageloaded{titlesec}%
6445   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6446   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0099]{minitoc(hints)}%
6447   {--- The titlesec package is loaded.
6448   \MessageBreak
6449   It is incompatible
6450   \MessageBreak
6451   with the minitoc package}}}%

```

## 9.80.1.7 Hint about the titletoc package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the titletoc package [46], and emit a warning, because this package is  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:



```
6452 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6453   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6454     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6455     {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6456       \MessageBreak
6457       It is incompatible
6458       \MessageBreak
6459       with the minitoc package}}}%
```

## 9.80.1.8 Hint about the placeins package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test if the placeins package [14] is loaded and, if yes, we check if the selected options are  
`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` correct (see section 1.3.3 on page 31):



```
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6460 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6461   {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6462     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
6463     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6464       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0031]{minitoc(hints)}%
6465       {--- The placeins package is loaded
6466         \MessageBreak
6467         without the section option,
6468         \MessageBreak
6469         but minitoc used the insection option
6470         \MessageBreak
6471         which implies it. Try to inverse the
6472         \MessageBreak
6473         loading order and use consistent options.
6474         \MessageBreak
6475         You may have got a message
6476         \MessageBreak
6477         ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6478       }%
6479     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6480     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6481       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0084]{minitoc(hints)}%
6482       {--- The placeins package is loaded
6483         \MessageBreak
6484         with the above option,
6485         \MessageBreak
6486         but minitoc used the insection option
6487         \MessageBreak
6488         which is incompatible with it.
6489         \MessageBreak
6490         Try to remove the above option
```

```

6491         \MessageBreak
6492         and use consistent options}%
6493     }{}%
6494     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
6495     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6496     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0085]{minitoc(hints)}%
6497     {--- The placeins package is loaded
6498     \MessageBreak
6499     with the below option,
6500     \MessageBreak
6501     but minitoc used the insection option
6502     \MessageBreak
6503     which is incompatible with it.
6504     \MessageBreak
6505     Try to remove the below option
6506     \MessageBreak
6507     and use consistent options}%
6508     }{}%
6509     \fi
6510     \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
6511     \@mtc@hints@given@true
6512     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0032]{minitoc(hints)}%
6513     {--- The placeins package loaded is
6514     \MessageBreak
6515     too old. You should use a version
6516     \MessageBreak
6517     dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
6518     }%
6519     }{}%

```

### 9.80.1.9 Hint about the memoir class

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [439, 441, 442] is loaded:  
\if@mtc@hints@given@

I0044

```

6520 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
6521     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6522     \mtcPackageInfo[I0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
6523     {--- The memoir class is loaded.
6524     \MessageBreak
6525     See the minitoc package documentation
6526     \MessageBreak
6527     for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
6528     }{}%

```



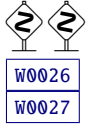
## 9.80.1.10 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6529 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
6530   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6531     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0026]{minitoc(hints)}%
6532     {--- The amsart class is loaded.
6533       \MessageBreak
6534       It is incompatible
6535       \MessageBreak
6536       with the minitoc package}}}%
6537 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
6538   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6539     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0027]{minitoc(hints)}%
6540     {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
6541       \MessageBreak
6542       It is incompatible
6543       \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```



## 9.80.1.11 Hint about the amsbook class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsbook class is loaded:  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6544 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
6545   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6546     \mtcPackageInfo[I0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
6547     {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
6548       \MessageBreak
6549       See the minitoc package documentation
6550       \MessageBreak
6551       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6552   }%

```

I0041

## 9.80.1.12 Hint about the abstract package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the abstract package [430], then its options:  
`\@ifpackagewith`  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6553 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
6554   {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
6555     \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
6556     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6557       \mtcPackageInfo[I0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6558       {The ‘abstract’ package has been
6559       \MessageBreak

```

I0040

```

6560         loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
6561         \MessageBreak
6562         You need to look at the
6563         \MessageBreak
6564         documentation to adjust.
6565         \MessageBreak}
6566     }}{}

```

#### 9.80.1.13 Hint about the jura class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is *incompatible* with  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` minitoc:

```

6567 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6568     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6569     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0029]{minitoc(hints)}%
6570     {--- The jura class is loaded.
6571     \MessageBreak
6572     It is incompatible
6573     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



#### 9.80.1.14 Hint about the flowfram package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the flowfram package [394, 395], and emit a warning, because this  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6574 \@ifpackageloaded{flowfram}%
6575     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6576     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0097]{minitoc(hints)}%
6577     {--- The flowfram package is loaded.
6578     \MessageBreak
6579     It is incompatible
6580     \MessageBreak
6581     with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



#### 9.80.1.15 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been  
`\chapter` altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing an  
`\section` `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when  
`\AtBeginDocument` it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For  
`\mtc@hints@part` each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its  
`\mtc@hints@chapter` unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [356] may interfere,  
`\mtc@hints@section` hence the formal precautions in the messages.

## 9.80.1.15.1 Alteration of \part

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart:
\ifundefined
  \part 6582 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@part 6583 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
  \@part 6584   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@part 6585 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax
  \@spart 6586   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@spart 6587 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax
  6588   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6589 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6590   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0030]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6591   {--- The \string\part\space command is altered
  6592   \MessageBreak
  6593   after minitoc}
  6594   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  6595   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6596   {--- It may be the consequence
  6597   \MessageBreak
  6598   of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
  6599   \fi
  6600 \fi

```

W0030
W0023

## 9.80.1.15.2 Alteration of \chapter

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\ifundefined
  \chapter 6601 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 6602 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 6603   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 6604 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 6605   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 6606 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
  6607   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6608 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6609   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0028]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6610   {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
  6611   \MessageBreak
  6612   after minitoc}
  6613   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  6614   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6615   {--- It may be the consequence
  6616   \MessageBreak
  6617   of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
  6618   \fi
  6619 \fi

```

W0028
W0023

9.80.1.15.3 Alteration of `\section`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\@ifundefined
  \section 6620 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 6621 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 6622   {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@sect 6623   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 6624   \@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@ssect 6625   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6626   \@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6627   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  6628 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  6629   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0039]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6630   {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
  6631     \MessageBreak
  6632     after minitoc}
  6633   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  6634     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6635     {--- It may be the consequence
  6636       \MessageBreak
  6637       of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
  6638   \fi
  6639   \relax\else\fi}}%

```

W0039

W0023

## 9.80.1.16 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]tableofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]tableofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6640 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6641 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
  6642 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
  6643 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 6644 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 6645 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6646   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 6647 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 6648 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@

```

```

6649   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
6650 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
6651 \def\listoftables%
6652   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

```

`\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents` Then, their “fake” siblings:

```

\fakeableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6653 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\fakeableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 6654 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6655   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6656 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fakeableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 6657 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6658   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6659 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableofcontents 6660 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6661   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
6662 \fi

```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` And the `\mtc@hints@begindoc` definition is finished (it begins in section 9.80.1 on page 408):

```

6663 }

```

## 9.80.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```

6664 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%

```

### 9.80.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

`\if@mtc@sect@floats@` We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

```

\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6665 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 6666 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 6667 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 6668 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
6669 \if@mtc@section@def@

```

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ If yes, we verify that the placeins package [14] has been loaded with the correct options or that
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ the insetion option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6670 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
6671 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
6672 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0056]{minitoc(hints)}%
6673 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
6674 \MessageBreak
6675 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
6676 \MessageBreak
6677 hence the ‘insection’ package
6678 \MessageBreak
6679 option is recommended}%
6680 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
6681 \fi
6682 \fi

```

W0056

### 9.80.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 6683 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6684 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6685 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6686 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0062]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6687 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6688 \MessageBreak
6689 but not \string\doparttoc}
6690 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6691 \fi
6692 \fi
6693 \if@partlof@used@
6694 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
6695 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0060]{minitoc(hints)}%
6696 {You have used \string\partlof,
6697 \MessageBreak
6698 but not \string\dopartlof}
6699 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6700 \fi
6701 \fi
6702 \if@partlot@used@
6703 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
6704 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0061]{minitoc(hints)}%
6705 {You have used \string\partlot,
6706 \MessageBreak
6707 but not \string\dopartlot}

```

W0062

W0060

W0061

```

6708 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6709 \fi
6710 \fi
6711 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 6712 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6713 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6714 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 6715 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0059]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6716 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 6717 \MessageBreak
6718 but not \string\dominitoc}
6719 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6720 \fi
6721 \fi
6722 \if@minilof@used@
6723 \if@dominilof@used@\else
6724 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0057]{minitoc(hints)}%
6725 {You have used \string\minilof,
6726 \MessageBreak
6727 but not \string\dominilof}
6728 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6729 \fi
6730 \fi
6731 \if@minilot@used@
6732 \if@dominilot@used@\else
6733 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0058]{minitoc(hints)}%
6734 {You have used \string\minilot,
6735 \MessageBreak
6736 but not \string\dominilot}
6737 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6738 \fi
6739 \fi
6740 \fi

```

W0059

W0057

W0058

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
\if@secttoc@used@
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 6741 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6742 \if@secttoc@used@
\if@sectlof@used@ 6743 \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6744 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0065]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@sectlot@used@ 6745 {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6746 \MessageBreak
6747 but not \string\dosecttoc}
6748 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6749 \fi
6750 \fi
6751 \if@sectlof@used@

```

W0065

W0063

W0064

```

6752 \if@dosectlof@used@\else
6753 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0063]{minitoc(hints)}%
6754 {You have used \string\sectlof,
6755 \MessageBreak
6756 but not \string\dosectlof}
6757 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6758 \fi
6759 \fi
6760 \if@sectlot@used@
6761 \if@dosectlot@used@\else
6762 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0064]{minitoc(hints)}%
6763 {You have used \string\sectlot,
6764 \MessageBreak
6765 but not \string\dosectlot}
6766 \fi
6767 \fi
6768 \fi

```

### 9.80.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6769 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6770 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6771 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 6772 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0075]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6773 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 6774 \MessageBreak
6775 but not \string\parttoc}
6776 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6777 \fi
6778 \fi
6779 \if@dopartlof@used@
6780 \if@partlof@used@\else
6781 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0076]{minitoc(hints)}%
6782 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
6783 \MessageBreak
6784 but not \string\partlof}
6785 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6786 \fi
6787 \fi
6788 \if@dopartlot@used@
6789 \if@partlot@used@\else
6790 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0077]{minitoc(hints)}%
6791 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
6792 \MessageBreak
6793 but not \string\partlot}

```

W0075

W0076

W0077



```

6794 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6795 \fi
6796 \fi
6797 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 6798 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6799 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 6800 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 6801 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0078]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 6802 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
\if@minilot@used@ 6803 \MessageBreak
6804 but not \string\minitoc}
6805 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6806 \fi
6807 \fi
6808 \if@dominilof@used@
6809 \if@minilof@used@\else
6810 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0079]{minitoc(hints)}%
6811 {You have used \string\dominilof,
6812 \MessageBreak
6813 but not \string\minilof}
6814 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6815 \fi
6816 \fi
6817 \if@dominilot@used@
6818 \if@minilot@used@\else
6819 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0080]{minitoc(hints)}%
6820 {You have used \string\dominilot,
6821 \MessageBreak
6822 but not \string\minilot}
6823 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6824 \fi
6825 \fi
6826 \fi

```

W0078
W0079
W0080

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@ 6827 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6828 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6829 \if@secttoc@used@\else
\if@sectlof@used@ 6830 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0081]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6831 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
\if@sectlot@used@ 6832 \MessageBreak
6833 but not \string\secttoc}
6834 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6835 \fi
6836 \fi
6837 \if@dosectlof@used@

```

W0081
W0082
W0083

```

6838 \if@sectlof@used@\else
6839 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0082]{minitoc(hints)}%
6840 {You have used \string\dosectlof,
6841 \MessageBreak
6842 but not \string\sectlof}
6843 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6844 \fi
6845 \fi
6846 \if@dosectlot@used@
6847 \if@sectlot@used@\else
6848 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0083]{minitoc(hints)}%
6849 {You have used \string\dosectlot,
6850 \MessageBreak
6851 but not \string\sectlot}
6852 \fi
6853 \fi
6854 \fi
6855 \fi

```

#### 9.80.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6856 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6857 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6858 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6859 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0071]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6860 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6861 \MessageBreak
6862 \string\tableofcontents
6863 \MessageBreak
6864 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
6865 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6866 \fi
6867 \fi
6868 \if@partlof@used@
6869 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6870 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0069]{minitoc(hints)}%
6871 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
6872 \MessageBreak
6873 \string\listoffigures
6874 \MessageBreak
6875 nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
6876 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6877 \fi
6878 \fi

```

W0071

W0069

W0070

```

6879 \if@partlot@used@
6880   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6881     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0070]{minitoc(hints)}%
6882     {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
6883       \MessageBreak
6884       \string\listoftables
6885       \MessageBreak
6886       nor \string\fakelistoftables}
6887   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6888 \fi
6889 \fi
6890 \fi

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@minitoc@used@ 6891 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6892 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6893   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6894     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0068]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6895     {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6896       \MessageBreak
6897       \string\tableofcontents
6898       \MessageBreak
6899       nor \string\aketableofcontents}
6900   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6901 \fi
6902 \fi
6903 \if@minilof@used@
6904   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6905     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0066]{minitoc(hints)}%
6906     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
6907       \MessageBreak
6908       \string\listoffigures
6909       \MessageBreak
6910       nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
6911   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6912 \fi
6913 \fi
6914 \if@minilot@used@
6915   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6916     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0067]{minitoc(hints)}%
6917     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
6918       \MessageBreak
6919       \string\listoftables
6920       \MessageBreak
6921       nor \string\fakelistoftables}
6922   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6923 \fi
6924 \fi
6925 \fi

```

W0068

W0066

W0067

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 6926 \if@mtc@section@def@
    \ifmtc@toc@used@ 6927 \if@secttoc@used@
      \if@sectlof@used@ 6928 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
        \ifmtc@lof@used@ 6929 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0074]{minitoc(hints)}%
          \if@sectlot@used@ 6930 {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
            \ifmtc@lot@used@ 6931 \MessageBreak
              6932 \string\tableofcontents
              6933 \MessageBreak
              6934 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
            6935 \@mtc@hints@given@true
            6936 \fi
          6937 \fi
        6938 \if@sectlof@used@
          6939 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
            6940 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0072]{minitoc(hints)}%
              6941 {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
                6942 \MessageBreak
                6943 \string\listoffigures
                6944 \MessageBreak
                6945 nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
              6946 \@mtc@hints@given@true
              6947 \fi
            6948 \fi
          6949 \if@sectlot@used@
            6950 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
              6951 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0073]{minitoc(hints)}%
                6952 {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
                  6953 \MessageBreak
                  6954 \string\listoftables
                  6955 \MessageBreak
                  6956 nor \string\fake\listoftables}
                6957 \@mtc@hints@given@true
                6958 \fi
              6959 \fi
            6960 \fi

```

W0074

W0072

W0073

### 9.80.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
  \if@mtc@longext@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
    \if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
      \value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 17, either redesign the document.
  \if@mtc@chapter@def@
  \if@mtc@section@def@ 6961 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
    6962 \if@mtc@longext@

```

W0054

W0053

W0055

<sup>17</sup>On the long term, a good investment.

```

6963 \else
6964   \if@mtc@part@def@
6965     \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
6966       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0054]{minitoc(hints)}%
6967       {You have used short extensions
6968       \MessageBreak
6969       and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
6970   \fi
6971 \fi
6972 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
6973   \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
6974     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
6975     {You have used short extensions
6976     \MessageBreak
6977     and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
6978   \fi
6979 \else
6980   \if@mtc@section@def@
6981     \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
6982       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0055]{minitoc(hints)}%
6983       {You have used short extensions
6984       \MessageBreak
6985       and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
6986     \fi
6987   \fi
6988 \fi
6989 \fi}
6990 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

#### 9.80.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0037  
 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ section 9.9.1 on page 272.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

6991 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \else
6992   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
6993     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0037]{minitoc(hints)}%
6994     {The sectsty package should be
6995     \MessageBreak
6996     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
6997     \@mtc@hints@given@true
6998   \fi
6999 \fi

```

#### 9.80.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0038  
 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

section 9.9.2 on page 272.

```

7000 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \else
7001   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
7002     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0038]{minitoc(hints)}%
7003     {The varsects package should be
7004       \MessageBreak
7005       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7006     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7007   \fi
7008 \fi

```

### 9.80.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0086  
 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.3 on page 273.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7009 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \else
7010   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
7011     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0086]{minitoc(hints)}%
7012     {The fncychap package should be
7013       \MessageBreak
7014       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7015     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7016   \fi
7017 \fi

```

### 9.80.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0092  
 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ section 9.9.4 on page 273.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7018 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \else
7019   \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
7020     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0092]{minitoc(hints)}%
7021     {The hangcaption package should be
7022       \MessageBreak
7023       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7024     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7025   \fi
7026 \fi

```

**9.80.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package**

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@` We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.5](#) on page 273. W0087

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7027 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@\else
7028   \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
7029     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0087]{minitoc(hints)}%
7030     {The quotchap package should be
7031       \MessageBreak
7032       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7033     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7034   \fi
7035 \fi

```

**9.80.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package**

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@` We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.6](#) on page 273. W0088

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7036 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@\else
7037   \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
7038     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0088]{minitoc(hints)}%
7039     {The romannum package should be
7040       \MessageBreak
7041       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7042     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7043   \fi
7044 \fi

```

**9.80.2.12 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package**

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.7](#) on page 274. W0089

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7045 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
7046   \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
7047     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0089]{minitoc(hints)}%
7048     {The sfheaders package should be
7049       \MessageBreak
7050       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7051     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7052   \fi
7053 \fi

```

**9.80.2.13 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package**

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.8](#) on page 274. W0090

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7054 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
7055   \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
7056     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0090]{minitoc(hints)}%
7057     {The alnumsec package should be
7058       \MessageBreak
7059       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7060     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7061   \fi
7062 \fi

```

**9.80.2.14 Final part of the hint about the captcont package**

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.9](#) on page 274. W0091

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7063 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
7064   \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
7065     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0091]{minitoc(hints)}%
7066     {The captcont package should be
7067       \MessageBreak
7068       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7069     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7070   \fi
7071 \fi

```

**9.80.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package**

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.10](#) on page 274. W0033

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7072 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
7073   \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
7074     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0033]{minitoc(hints)}%
7075     {The caption package should be
7076       \MessageBreak
7077       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7078     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7079   \fi
7080 \fi

```



**9.80.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package**

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.11](#) on page 275. W0034

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7081 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@\else
7082   \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
7083     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0034]{minitoc(hints)}%
7084     {The caption2 package should be
7085       \MessageBreak
7086       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7087     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7088   \fi
7089 \fi

```

**9.80.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package**

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.12](#) on page 275. W0035

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7090 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@\else
7091   \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
7092     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0035]{minitoc(hints)}%
7093     {The ccaption package should be
7094       \MessageBreak
7095       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7096     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7097   \fi
7098 \fi

```

**9.80.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package**

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@` We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.13](#) on page 275. W0036

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7099 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@\else
7100   \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
7101     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0036]{minitoc(hints)}%
7102     {The mcaption package should be
7103       \MessageBreak
7104       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7105     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7106   \fi
7107 \fi

```

**9.80.2.19 Final part of the hint about the float package**

`\if@mtc@floatLoaded@` We test if float has been loaded. See section 9.9.14 on page 275.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7108 \if@mtc@floatLoaded@
7109   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7110   {You have loaded the float package;
7111   \MessageBreak
7112   please be aware that the minitoc package
7113   \MessageBreak
7114   facilities can not be used for new types
7115   \MessageBreak
7116   of floats defined by the float package\@gobble}
7117   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7118 \fi

```

**9.80.2.20 Final part of the hint about the floatrow package**

`\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@` We test if floatrow has been loaded. See section 9.9.15 on page 275.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7119 \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@
7120   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7121   {You have loaded the floatrow package;
7122   \MessageBreak
7123   please be aware that the minitoc package
7124   \MessageBreak
7125   facilities can not be used for new types
7126   \MessageBreak
7127   of floats defined by the floatrow package\@gobble}
7128   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7129 \fi

```

**9.80.2.21 Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package**

`\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@` We test if trivfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.16 on page 276.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7130 \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
7131   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7132   {You have loaded the trivfloat package;
7133   \MessageBreak
7134   please be aware that the minitoc package
7135   \MessageBreak
7136   facilities can not be used for new types
7137   \MessageBreak
7138   of floats defined by the trivfloat package\@gobble}
7139   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7140 \fi

```

**9.80.2.22 Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package**

`\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@` We test if rotfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.17 on page 276.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7141 \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
7142   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7143   {You have loaded the rotfloat package;
7144   \MessageBreak
7145   please be aware that the minitoc package
7146   \MessageBreak
7147   facilities can not be used for new types
7148   \MessageBreak
7149   of floats defined by the rotfloat package\@gobble}
7150   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7151 \fi

```

**9.80.2.23 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected**

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` For parttocs:

W0046

```

7152 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
7153   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
7154   {You have attempted to insert
7155   \MessageBreak
7156   empty parttocs}
7157   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7158 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` For partlofs:

W0044

```

7159 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
7160   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
7161   {You have attempted to insert
7162   \MessageBreak
7163   empty partlofs}
7164   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7165 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

W0045

```

7166 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
7167   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
7168   {You have attempted to insert

```

```

7169 \MessageBreak
7170 empty partlots}
7171 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7172 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ For minitocs:

W0043

```

7173 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
7174 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
7175 {You have attempted to insert
7176 \MessageBreak
7177 empty minitocs}
7178 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7179 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilofs@ For minilofs:

W0041

```

7180 \if@mtc@empty@minilofs@
7181 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
7182 {You have attempted to insert
7183 \MessageBreak
7184 empty minilofs}
7185 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7186 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilots@ For minilots:

W0042

```

7187 \if@mtc@empty@minilots@
7188 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
7189 {You have attempted to insert
7190 \MessageBreak
7191 empty minilots}
7192 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7193 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ For secttocs:

W0049

```

7194 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
7195 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
7196 {You have attempted to insert
7197 \MessageBreak
7198 empty secttocs}
7199 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7200 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@` For sectlofs:

W0047

```

7201 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
7202   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
7203   {You have attempted to insert
7204   \MessageBreak
7205   empty sectlofs}
7206   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7207 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@` For sectlots:

W0048

```

7208 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
7209   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
7210   {You have attempted to insert
7211   \MessageBreak
7212   empty sectlots}
7213   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7214 \fi

```

#### 9.80.2.24 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

`\if@firstpartis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstpartis`:

W0051

```

7215 \if@firstpartis@used@
7216   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0051]{minitoc(hints)}%
7217   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7218   \MessageBreak
7219   command: \string\firstpartis}
7220   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7221 \fi

```

`\if@firstchapteris@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstchapteris`:

W0050

```

7222 \if@firstchapteris@used@
7223   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0050]{minitoc(hints)}%
7224   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7225   \MessageBreak
7226   command: \string\firstchapteris}
7227   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7228 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

W0052

```

7229 \if@firstsectionis@used@
7230   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0052]{minitoc(hints)}%
7231   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7232   \MessageBreak
7233   command: \string\firstsectionis}
7234   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7235 \fi

```

### 9.80.2.25 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the `hints` option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the `document.log` file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

W0024

I0019

```

7236 \if@mtc@hints@given@
7237   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0024]{minitoc(hints)}%
7238   {Some hints have been written
7239   \MessageBreak
7240   in the \jobname.log file}
7241 \else
7242   \mtcPackageInfo[I0019]{minitoc(hints)}%
7243   {No hints have been written
7244   \MessageBreak
7245   in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
7246 \fi
7247 }

```

## 9.81 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, `english`:  
`\ExecuteOptions`

```

7248   \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
7249   {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```



```

\mtcPackageError Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
\providecommand
  \ptctitle 7250      {\mtcPackageError[E0036]{minitoc}%
  \plftitle 7251      {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
  \plttitle 7252      \MessageBreak
  \mtctitle 7253      The minitoc language object file (.mld),
  \mlftitle 7254      \MessageBreak
  \mlttitle 7255      english.mld is not found.
  \stctitle 7256      \MessageBreak
  \slftitle 7257      We will try to continue with default values}%
  \slttitle 7258      {See the minitoc documentation.
  7259      \MessageBreak
  7260      Please fix your minitoc installation.
  7261      \MessageBreak
  7262      Press <return> to continue}%
  7263      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  7264      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  7265      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  7266      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  7267      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  7268      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  7269      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  7270      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  7271      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  7272      }%

```

\ProcessOptions\* Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7273 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

### 9.81.1 Processing the insection option

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@ For the insection option, we load the placeins package [14] with its options verbose and
  \RequirePackage section, after the flafter package (described in [268] and [306, page 286]); the correct loading
  \@ifpackageloaded is verified:
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
  7274 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
  7275   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
  7276   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
  7277   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
  7278   {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
  7279 \fi

```

### 9.81.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [13]:  
`\RequirePackage`

```
7280 \if@mtc@notoccite@
7281   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
7282 \fi
```

### 9.81.3 Processing the listfiles option

I0009

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file `document.maf`. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions),  
`\tf@mtc` then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the exist-  
`\if@mtc@longext@` ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes `docu-`  
`\mtc@maf@long` `ment.mtc` in the list (but *not* the `document.maf`<sup>18</sup> file). We must also check the existence of  
`\mtc@maf@short` `\jobname.mtc` if long extensions are used.  
`\mtc@addtomaf` `\IfFileExists`  
`\jobname`

```
7283 \def\mtc@maf{%
7284   \mtcPackageInfo[I0009]{minitoc}%
7285   {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
7286    \MessageBreak
7287    Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
7288   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
7289   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
7290   \if@mtc@longext@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
7291   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
7292 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
7293   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
7294 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
7295   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7296   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc0}
7297   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7298     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
7299     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
7300     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
7301     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7302   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7303     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
7304     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
7305     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
7306     \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7307   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7308     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
7309     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
7310     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
7311     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
```

<sup>18</sup> Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it must not be in the list.



```

7313 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
7314     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7315 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@{\relax
7316     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
7317     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
7318     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
7319     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7320 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@{\relax
7321     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
7322     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
7323     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
7324     \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7325 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@{\relax
7326     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
7327     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
7328     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
7329     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

```

\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in an \AtEndDocument block.
\AtEndDocument
\mtc@maf 7330 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi

```

### 9.81.4 Processing the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in an \AtBeginDocument block and its third (last)
\AtBeginDocument part in an \AtEndDocument block:
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtEndDocument 7331 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 7332 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
7333 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
7334 \fi

```

### 9.81.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the hints option executed in the preamble):

```

\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
\part 7335 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 7336 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 7337 \let\mtc@hints@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@spart
\@spart

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter 7338 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@chapter 7339 \let\mtc@hints@chapter\@chapter
\@chapter 7340 \let\mtc@hints@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
\@schapter

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
\section 7341 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@sect 7342 \let\mtc@hints@sect\@sect
\@sect 7343 \let\mtc@hints@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@ssect
\@ssect

```

## 9.82 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

\mtc@classck It may happen that you use a preparation command (like \dominitoc) or an insertion command (like \dominitoc) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like article). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in an \AtBeginDocument block.

E0037

```

7344 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
7345 \mtcPackageError[E0037]{minitoc}%
7346 {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
7347 \MessageBreak
7348 with the document class}%
7349 {Correct the source code.
7350 \MessageBreak
7351 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
7352 }%

```

\AtBeginDocument An \AtBeginDocument bloc:

```
7353 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

\providecommand Part-level preparation commands:

```

\doarttoc
\doartlof 7354 \providecommand{\doarttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doarttoc}}%
\doartlot 7355 \providecommand{\doartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doartlof}}%
7356 \providecommand{\doartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doartlot}}%

```

```

\dominitoc Chapter-level preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 7357 \providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominitoc}}%
              7358 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
              7359 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%

\dosecttoc Section-level preparation commands:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 7360 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
              7361 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
              7362 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%

\parttoc Part-level insertion commands:
\partlof
\partlot 7363 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
              7364 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
              7365 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%

\minitoc Chapter-level insertion commands:
\minilof
\minilot 7366 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
              7367 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
              7368 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%

\secttoc Section-level insertion commands:
\sectlof
\sectlot 7369 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
              7370 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
              7371 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
              7372 }

And the package is terminated.

7373 </minitoc>

```

## 9.83 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

```

\jobname This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set \jobname
\input   to fminitoc in place of minitoc. As minitoc.ins generates the minitoc.lan and
          fminitoc.lan files which set a language number \LANG, and minitoc.dtx reads then the
          \jobname.lan file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)
          in minitoc.dtx, the language being selected by \ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...
          \fi constructs. The \relax primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```

```
7374 \begin{document}
7375 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}%
7376           [2008/04/03 minitoc v57 french documentation start file]
7377 \input{minitoc.dtx}
7378 \end{document}
```

## Chapter 10

# Commented code of the mtcoff package

### Contents

---

10.1	Why mtcoff? . . . . .	442
10.2	Identification of the package . . . . .	442
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions . . . . .	443
10.4	Faking simple commands . . . . .	446
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument . . . . .	447
10.6	Disabling the internal commands . . . . .	448
10.7	Disabling the font commands . . . . .	448
10.8	Disabling the \mtcset... commands . . . . .	450
10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands . . . . .	450
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands . . . . .	450
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands . . . . .	450
10.12	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules . . . . .	451
10.13	Disabling the commands for the page numbers . . . . .	451
10.14	Disabling the mini-table features commands . . . . .	452
10.15	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands . . . . .	453
10.16	Caution for some commands . . . . .	453
10.17	Disabling commands for “coffee” . . . . .	455
10.18	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments . . . . .	455
10.19	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands . . . . .	455
10.20	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command . . . . .	455
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command . . . . .	456
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command . . . . .	456
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands . . . . .	456

---

## 10.1 Why `mtcoff`?

The `minitoc` package [146, 147] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, `mtcoff` (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the `minitoc` package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the `minitoc` package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of `minitoc`. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

## 10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ <sup>1</sup>; we need the `mtcmess` package  
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7379 <{*mtcoff}
7380 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7381 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2008/04/03 v57 The mtcoff package]
7382 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

---

<sup>1</sup> This checking is not really useful for the `mtcoff` package itself, but it is good to check that your version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is not too old to support `minitoc`.

### 10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

```

\count@ As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using \count@
\dimen@ or \dimen@. For \mtcskipamount, we must use its default definition, \bigskipamount.
\c@minitocdepth
\mtcindent 7383 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@
\mtcskipamount 7384 \let\mtcindent\dimen@
\bigskipamount 7385 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
\c@parttocdepth 7386 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@
\mtcindent 7387 \let\ptcindent\dimen@
\c@secttocdepth 7388 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
\stcindent 7389 \let\stcindent\dimen@

```

```

\c@mtc The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:
\c@ptc
\c@stc 7390 \let\c@mtc\count@ \let\c@ptc\count@ \let\c@stc\count@

```

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:
\mtcgapafterheads
7391 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@} \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before
\kernafterparttoc the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros
\kernafterpartlof is used.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 7392 \@ifundefined{part}{%
\kernaftersectlof 7393 \def\kernafterparttoc{%
\kernaftersectlot 7394 \mtcoffwarn@true
\kernafterminitoc 7395 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
\kernafterminilof 7396 {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc
\kernafterminilot 7397 \MessageBreak
7398 should not be used out of context
7399 \MessageBreak}%
7400 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7401 \def\kernafterpartlof{%
7402 \mtcoffwarn@true
7403 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7404 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof
7405 \MessageBreak
7406 should not be used out of context
7407 \MessageBreak}%
7408 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7409 \def\kernafterpartlot{%
7410 \mtcoffwarn@true
7411 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7412 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot

```

F0008

```

7413         \MessageBreak
7414         should not be used out of context
7415         \MessageBreak}%
7416     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7417     }%
7418 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7419     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7420     {%
7421     \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7422         \mtcoffwarn@true
7423         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7424         {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7425         \MessageBreak
7426         should not be used out of context
7427         \MessageBreak}%
7428         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7429     \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7430         \mtcoffwarn@true
7431         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7432         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7433         \MessageBreak
7434         should not be used out of context
7435         \MessageBreak}%
7436         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7437     \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7438         \mtcoffwarn@true
7439         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7440         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7441         \MessageBreak
7442         should not be used out of context
7443         \MessageBreak}%
7444         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7445         }%
7446         }%
7447         {%
7448     \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7449         \mtcoffwarn@true
7450         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7451         {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7452         \MessageBreak
7453         should not be used out of context
7454         \MessageBreak}%
7455         \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7456     \def\kernafterminilof{%
7457         \mtcoffwarn@true
7458         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7459         {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7460         \MessageBreak
7461         should not be used out of context
7462         \MessageBreak}%
7463         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7464     \def\kernafterminilot{%
7465         \mtcoffwarn@true
7466         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%

```



```

7467             {The macro \string\kernafterminilot
7468             \MessageBreak
7469             should not be used out of context
7470             \MessageBreak}%
7471         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7472     }%

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the horizontal offsets of the mini-tables. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used.

F0009

```

\ptcoffset
\plfoffset
\pltoffset 7473 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\stcoffset 7474     \def\ptcoffset{%
\slfoffset 7475         \mtcoffwarn@true
\sltoffset 7476         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
\mtcoffset 7477         {The macro \string\ptcoffset
7478         \MessageBreak
7479         should not be used out of context
\mltoffset 7480         \MessageBreak}%
7481         Opt}%
7482     \def\plfoffset{%
7483     \mtcoffwarn@true
7484     \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7485     {The macro \string\plfoffset
7486     \MessageBreak
7487     should not be used out of context
7488     \MessageBreak}%
7489     Opt}%
7490     \def\pltoffset{%
7491     \mtcoffwarn@true
7492     \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7493     {The macro \string\pltoffset
7494     \MessageBreak
7495     should not be used out of context
7496     \MessageBreak}%
7497     Opt}%
7498     }%
7499 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
7500 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
7501     {%
7502     \def\stcoffset{%
7503         \mtcoffwarn@true
7504         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7505         {The macro \string\stcoffset
7506         \MessageBreak
7507         should not be used out of context
7508         \MessageBreak}%
7509         Opt}%
7510     \def\slfoffset{%
7511         \mtcoffwarn@true
7512         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7513         {The macro \string\slfoffset
7514         \MessageBreak

```

```

7515             should not be used out of context
7516             \MessageBreak}%
7517         Opt}%
7518     \def\sltoffset{%
7519         \mtcoffwarn@true
7520         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7521         {The macro \string\sltoffset
7522         \MessageBreak
7523         should not be used out of context
7524         \MessageBreak}%
7525     Opt}%
7526         }%
7527     }%
7528     {%
7529     \def\mtcoffset{%
7530         \mtcoffwarn@true
7531         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7532         {The macro \string\mtcoffset
7533         \MessageBreak
7534         should not be used out of context
7535         \MessageBreak}%
7536     Opt}%
7537     \def\slfoffset{%
7538         \mtcoffwarn@true
7539         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7540         {The macro \string\slfoffset
7541         \MessageBreak
7542         should not be used out of context
7543         \MessageBreak}%
7544     Opt}%
7545     \def\mltoffset{%
7546         \mtcoffwarn@true
7547         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7548         {The macro \string\mltoffset
7549         \MessageBreak
7550         should not be used out of context
7551         \MessageBreak}%
7552     Opt}%
7553         }%

```

## 10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\fakeableofcontents Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeinfofigures
\fakeinfoftables 7554 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\mtcskip 7555 \let\fakeinfofigures\relax
7556 \let\fakeinfoftables\relax
7557 \let\mtcskip\relax

```

```

\adjustptc Basic adjustment commands are also easy:
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc 7558 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 7559 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 7560 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 7561 \let\decrementptc\relax \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementptc 7562 \let\decrementmtc\relax \let\incrementmtc\relax
\incrementmtc 7563 \let\decrementstc\relax \let\incrementstc\relax
\incrementstc

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 7564 \let\partend\relax \let\partbegin\relax
\sectend 7565 \let\chapterend\relax \let\chapterbegin\relax
\sectbegin 7566 \let\sectend\relax \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal  $\LaTeX$  macro `\ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
7567 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doparttoc
\dopartlof 7568 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\dopartlot 7569 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\parttoc 7570 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\partlof 7571 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\partlot 7572 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
7573 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}

```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 7574 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\dominilot 7575 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\minitoc 7576 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\minilof 7577 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\minilot 7578 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
7579 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}

```

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 7580 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 7581 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 7582 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 7583 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 7584 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7585 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
7586 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

## 10.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
\tf@mtc      \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 7587 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 7588 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter      7589 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter     7590 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect        7591 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart      7592 \let\pchapter\relax
\part         7593 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect      7594 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect         7595 \let\part\relax
\l@xsect      7596 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
\sect         7597 \let\sect\relax

```

## 10.7 Disabling the font commands

\empty We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here.

```

\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 7598 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 7599 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 7600 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 7601 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 7602 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 7603 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 7604 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 7605 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 7606 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 7607 \let\pltfont\empty
          7608 \let\pltSfont\empty
          7609 \let\ptifont\empty

```

```

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 7610 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 7611 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 7612 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 7613 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 7614 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 7615 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 7616 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 7617 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 7618 \let\mltfont\empty
          7619 \let\mltSfont\empty
          7620 \let\mtifont\empty

```

```

\stcfont  Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 7621 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 7622 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 7623 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 7624 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 7625 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 7626 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont 7627 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont 7628 \let\sltfont\empty
          7629 \let\sltSfont\empty
          7630 \let\stifont\empty

```

```

\coffeefont  Font for “coffee” ☕ lines:

          7631 \let\coffeefont\empty

```

## 10.8 Disabling the `\mtcset...` commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetoffset 7632 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfont 7633 \let\mtcsetoffset\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 7634 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 7635 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 7636 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 7637 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 7638 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 7639 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
7640 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

## 10.9 Disabling the new `\l@...` commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectionning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 7641 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 7642 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 7643 \@ifundefined{section}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 7644 \@ifundefined{subsection}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
7645 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
7646 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
7647 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 7648 \let\firstpartis\@gobble \let\firstchapteris\@gobble \let\firstsectionis\@gobble
\firstsectionis

```

## 10.11 Disabling the `\mtcselectlanguage` and `\mtcloadmlo` commands

```

\@gobble These command have one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
\mtcloadmlo 7649 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

## 10.12 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule   These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule   7650 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 7651 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule   7652 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 7653 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule   7654 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 7655 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule   7656 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 7657 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule   7658 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 7659 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule   7660 \let\slfrule\relax
\nopltrule 7661 \let\noslfrule\relax
\mltrule   7662 \let\pltrule\relax
\nomltrule 7663 \let\nopltrule\relax
\sltrule   7664 \let\mltrule\relax
\nosltrule 7665 \let\nomltrule\relax
           7666 \let\sltrule\relax
           7667 \let\nosltrule\relax

```

## 10.13 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```

\ptcpagenumbers These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 7668 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 7669 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers 7670 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 7671 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers 7672 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 7673 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers 7674 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 7675 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers 7676 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 7677 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7678 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7679 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers 7680 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 7681 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers 7682 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 7683 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7684 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7685 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax

```

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

	\beforeminitoc	Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
	\beforeminilof	
	\beforeminilot	7701 \let\beforeminitoc\empty
	\afterminitoc	7702 \let\beforeminilof\empty
	\afterminilof	7703 \let\beforeminilot\empty
	\afterminilot	7704 \let\afterminitoc\empty
	\openminitoc	7705 \let\afterminilof\empty
	\openminilof	7706 \let\afterminilot\empty
	\openminilot	7707 \let\openminitoc\empty
	\closeminitoc	7708 \let\openminilof\empty
	\closeminilof	7709 \let\openminilot\empty
	\closeminilot	7710 \let\closeminitoc\empty
		7711 \let\closeminilof\empty
	\thispageminitletstyle	7712 \let\closeminilot\empty
	\thispageminilofstyle	7713 \let\thispageminitletstyle\empty
	\thispageminilotstyle	7714 \let\thispageminilofstyle\empty
		7715 \let\thispageminilotstyle\empty



```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 7716 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc  7717 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof  7718 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot  7719 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\opensecttoc   7720 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\opensectlof   7721 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\opensectlot   7722 \let\opensecttoc\empty
\closesecttoc  7723 \let\opensectlof\empty
\closesectlof  7724 \let\opensectlot\empty
\closesectlot  7725 \let\closesecttoc\empty
\closesectlof  7726 \let\closesectlof\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 7727 \let\closesectlot\empty
\thispagesectlofstyle 7728 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7729 \let\thispagesectlofstyle\empty
                  7730 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

## 10.15 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@mtc@longext@ There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
  \iftightmtc
  \ifktightmtc 7731 \newif\if@mtc@longext@ \@mtc@longext@true
\ifundottedmtc 7732 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
  \l@listof 7733 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 7734 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
  \chapter 7735 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
            7736 \let\l@listof\chapter

```

## 10.16 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and an `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

7737 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
7738 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
7739   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[F0007]{mtcoff}%
7740   {You should scan (backwards) your .log
7741   \MessageBreak
7742   file to find some commands needing
7743   \MessageBreak
7744   to be replaced if you decide to
7745   \MessageBreak
7746   DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this

```



F0007

```

7747      \MessageBreak
7748      document. It is more wise to keep the
7749      \MessageBreak
7750      \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
7751      \MessageBreak
7752      and to comment out only one of them}
7753 \fi}

```

```

\mtcaddchapter Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the
\mtcaddsection line number):
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 7754 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 7755 \mtcPackageWarning[F0004]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 7756 {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
7757 \MessageBreak
7758 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7759 \MessageBreak}
7760 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7761 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7762 \else
7763 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
7764 \fi}
7765 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7766 \mtcPackageWarning[F0006]{mtcoff}%
7767 {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
7768 \MessageBreak
7769 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7770 \MessageBreak}
7771 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7772 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7773 \else
7774 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7775 \fi}
7776 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7777 \mtcPackageWarning[F0005]{mtcoff}%
7778 {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
7779 \MessageBreak
7780 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7781 \MessageBreak}
7782 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7783 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7784 \else
7785 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7786 \fi}

```

F0004

F0006

F0005

## 10.17 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 7787 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 7788 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
7789 \let\l@coffee\relax
7790 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
7791 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

## 10.18 Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 7792 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
7793 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
7794 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}

```

## 10.19 Inhibition of the \mtc@[save|restore]XXXdepth internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcff package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 7795 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 7796 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
7797 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
7798 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
7799 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
7800 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

## 10.20 Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command

```

\mtcfixglossary This command accepts one optional argument:

7801 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax}

```

## 10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7802 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

## 10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixnomenclature` command

`\mtcfixnomenclature` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7803 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\relax]
```

## 10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but mtcoff simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

```
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection
\addcontentsline
7804 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7805   \mtcPackageWarning[F0002]{mtcoff}%
7806   {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
7807     \MessageBreak
7808     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7809     \MessageBreak}
7810   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
7811 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7812   \mtcPackageWarning[F0001]{mtcoff}%
7813   {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
7814     \MessageBreak
7815     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7816     \MessageBreak}
7817   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
7818 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7819   \mtcPackageWarning[F0003]{mtcoff}%
7820   {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
7821     \MessageBreak
7822     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7823     \MessageBreak}
7824   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

F0002

F0001

F0003

And the mtcoff package is terminated.

```
7825 </mtcoff>
```

## Chapter 11

# Commented code of the mtcmess package

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 7826 <(*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 7827 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 7828 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 7829 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][[]%
7830     {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7831 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][[]%
7832     {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7833 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][[]%
7834     {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7835 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][[]%
7836     {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
7837 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

---

<sup>1</sup> For instance, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

## Chapter 12

# Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.



```
7838 (*mtcpatchmem)
7839 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7840 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
7841   [2008/04/03 v57 Package mtcpatchmem]
7842 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
7843 \mtcPackageInfo[M0001]{mtcpatchmem}%
7844   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
7845 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][ ]{%
7846   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
7847   \ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
7848 }
7849 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
7850 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
7851 % entry for all fields.
7852   \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
7853     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
7854     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
7855   \else
7856 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If|#1| is empty then only
7857 % one was found.
7858     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
7859     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
7860       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
7861     \else
7862       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
7863     \fi
7864   \fi
7865   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth > \m@ne \relax
7866     \if@mainmatter
7867       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

7868     \fi
7869   \fi
7870   \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
7871   \ifartopt
7872     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7873     \@afterheading
7874   \else
7875     \insertchapterspace
7876     \if@twocolumn
7877       \topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
7878     \else
7879       \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7880     \fi
7881     \@afterheading
7882   \fi
7883   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth > \m@ne \relax
7884     \if@mainmatter
7885       \ifanappendix
7886         \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
7887           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7888       \else
7889         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
7890           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7891       \fi
7892     \else
7893       \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7894     \fi
7895   \else
7896     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7897   \fi
7898   \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
7899 }
7900 </mtcpatchmem>

```

## Chapter 13

# Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

### Contents

---

13.1	Overview . . . . .	465
13.2	“Acadian” language: acadian.mld . . . . .	471
13.3	“Acadien” language: acadien.mld . . . . .	471
13.4	“Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld . . . . .	472
13.5	“Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld . . . . .	473
13.6	“Albanian” language: albanian.mld . . . . .	473
13.7	“American” language: american.mld . . . . .	475
13.8	“Arab” language: arab.mld . . . . .	475
13.9	“Arab2” language: arab2.mld . . . . .	477
13.10	“Arabi” language: arabi.mld . . . . .	477
13.11	“Arabic” language: arabic.mld . . . . .	478
13.12	“Armenian” language: armenian.mld . . . . .	478
13.13	“Australian” language: australian.mld . . . . .	478
13.14	“Austrian” language: austrian.mld . . . . .	479
13.15	“Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld . . . . .	480
13.16	“Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld . . . . .	480
13.17	“Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld . . . . .	481
13.18	“Bangla” language: bangla.mld . . . . .	482
13.19	“Basque” language: basque.mld . . . . .	483
13.20	“Bengali” language: bengali.mld . . . . .	484
13.21	“Bicig” language: bicig.mld . . . . .	485
13.22	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld . . . . .	485
13.23	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld . . . . .	486
13.24	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld . . . . .	486
13.25	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld . . . . .	488
13.26	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld . . . . .	490
13.27	“Breton” language: breton.mld . . . . .	490
13.28	“British” language: british.mld . . . . .	491
13.29	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld . . . . .	491
13.30	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld . . . . .	492



13.31	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld . . . . .	493
13.32	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld . . . . .	494
13.33	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld . . . . .	494
13.34	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld . . . . .	494
13.35	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld . . . . .	497
13.36	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld . . . . .	497
13.37	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld . . . . .	497
13.38	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.ml[d o] . . . . .	498
13.39	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d o] . . . . .	501
13.40	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld . . . . .	502
13.41	“Czech” language: czech.mld . . . . .	503
13.42	“Danish” language: danish.mld . . . . .	504
13.43	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld . . . . .	506
13.44	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld . . . . .	507
13.45	“English” language: english.mld . . . . .	508
13.46	“English1” language: english1.mld . . . . .	509
13.47	“English2” language: english2.mld . . . . .	509
13.48	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld . . . . .	510
13.49	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld . . . . .	510
13.50	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld . . . . .	511
13.51	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld . . . . .	512
13.52	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld . . . . .	512
13.53	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld . . . . .	512
13.54	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.ml[d o] . . . . .	514
13.55	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d o] . . . . .	514
13.56	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld . . . . .	516
13.57	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld . . . . .	517
13.58	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld . . . . .	518
13.59	“Francais” language: francais.mld . . . . .	519
13.60	“French” language: french.mld . . . . .	520
13.61	“French1” language: french1.mld . . . . .	521
13.62	“French2” language: french2.mld . . . . .	522
13.63	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld . . . . .	523
13.64	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld . . . . .	523
13.65	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld . . . . .	523
13.66	“Galician” language: galician.mld . . . . .	524
13.67	“German” language: german.mld . . . . .	525
13.68	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld . . . . .	528
13.69	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld . . . . .	529
13.70	“Greek” language: greek.mld . . . . .	530
13.71	“Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld . . . . .	530
13.72	“Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld . . . . .	532
13.73	“Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld . . . . .	533
13.74	“Guarani” language: guarani.mld . . . . .	534
13.75	“Hangul1” language: hangul1.ml[d o] . . . . .	535
13.76	“Hangul2” language: hangul2.ml[d o] . . . . .	537
13.77	“Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d o] . . . . .	537
13.78	“Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d o] . . . . .	538
13.79	“Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.ml[d o] . . . . .	538
13.80	“Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld.ml[d o] . . . . .	539
13.81	“Hanja2” language: hanja2.ml[d o] . . . . .	539
13.82	“Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.ml[d o] . . . . .	540
13.83	“Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld . . . . .	540

13.84	“Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	541
13.85	“Hindi” language: hindi.mld	542
13.86	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	542
13.87	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	544
13.88	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	544
13.89	“Indon” language: indon.mld	545
13.90	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	545
13.91	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	545
13.92	“Irish” language: irish.mld	546
13.93	“Italian” language: italian.mld	547
13.94	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	549
13.95	“Japanese” language: japanese.ml[d o]	549
13.96	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.ml[d o]	550
13.97	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.ml[d o]	550
13.98	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.ml[d o]	551
13.99	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.ml[d o]	551
13.100	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.ml[d o]	552
13.101	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	552
13.102	“Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld	553
13.103	“Latin” language: latin.mld	554
13.104	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	554
13.105	“Latinc” language: latinc.mld	555
13.106	“Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld	555
13.107	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	556
13.108	“Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld	557
13.109	“Letton” language: letton.mld	557
13.110	“Letton2” language: letton2.mld	558
13.111	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	558
13.112	“Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld	559
13.113	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	559
13.114	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	562
13.115	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	563
13.116	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	564
13.117	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	564
13.118	“Malay” language: malay.mld	565
13.119	“Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld	565
13.120	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	566
13.121	“Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld	567
13.122	“Malayalam-mr” language: malayalam-mr.mld	567
13.123	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.ml[d o]	568
13.124	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	568
13.125	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	569
13.126	“Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld	569
13.127	“Manju” language: manju.mld	570
13.128	“Mexican” language: mexican.mld	570
13.129	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	570
13.130	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	571
13.131	“Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	574
13.132	“Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	575
13.133	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	575
13.134	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	575
13.135	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	575
13.136	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	576

13.137 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	576
13.138 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld	577
13.139 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	578
13.140 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	578
13.141 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	579
13.142 “Occitan” language: occitan.mld	579
13.143 “Occitan2” language: occitan2.mld	580
13.144 “Polish” language: polish.mld	581
13.145 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld	582
13.146 “Polski” language: polski.mld	582
13.147 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld	583
13.148 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	583
13.149 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld	585
13.150 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	586
13.151 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	586
13.152 “Russian” language: russian.mld	587
13.153 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	587
13.154 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	590
13.155 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	591
13.156 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	592
13.157 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.ml[d o]	593
13.158 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.ml[d o]	593
13.159 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.ml[d o]	593
13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o]	594
13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o]	594
13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o]	595
13.163 “Samin” language: samin.mld	595
13.164 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	596
13.165 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	597
13.166 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	598
13.167 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	598
13.168 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	599
13.169 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	600
13.170 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	603
13.171 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	604
13.172 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	604
13.173 “Swahili” language: swahili.mld	605
13.174 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	606
13.175 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	606
13.176 “Thai” language: thai.ml[d o]	608
13.177 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	609
13.178 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	609
13.179 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	609
13.180 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	612
13.181 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	612
13.182 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	612
13.183 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	612
13.184 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	614
13.185 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	615
13.186 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	615
13.187 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	615
13.188 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	616
13.189 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	616

13.190 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld . . . . .	617
13.191 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld . . . . .	618
13.192 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld . . . . .	619

## Figures

13.1 Language families in the world . . . . .	466	13.44 Denmark and Faeroe Islands . . . . .	504
13.2 The political world . . . . .	466	13.45 Danish dialects . . . . .	505
13.3 Writing systems by country . . . . .	467	13.46 Languages in the Netherlands and in Belgium . . . . .	507
13.4 Areas of writing systems . . . . .	467	13.47 The dutch language in the world . . . . .	507
13.5 Language families and official languages in Africa . . . . .	468	13.48 Anglophone areas . . . . .	508
13.6 Languages in Europe . . . . .	468	13.49 Estonia . . . . .	511
13.7 Languages families in Europe . . . . .	469	13.50 Ethiopian languages areas . . . . .	513
13.8 Languages in Europe . . . . .	470	13.51 Farsi language areas . . . . .	515
13.9 Acadia today . . . . .	472	13.52 Iranian tongues . . . . .	516
13.10 Afrikaans language areas . . . . .	472	13.53 Finland . . . . .	517
13.11 Albanian language areas . . . . .	474	13.54 Areas of the Finnish language . . . . .	518
13.12 Language areas in Kosovo . . . . .	474	13.55 Finnish dialects . . . . .	519
13.13 Countries where the arabic language is official . . . . .	475	13.56 Francophone areas . . . . .	520
13.14 Percentage of muslims by country . . . . .	476	13.57 Regional dialects in France . . . . .	521
13.15 The status of Islam by country . . . . .	476	13.58 Galician language areas . . . . .	524
13.16 Armenia and languages of Caucasus . . . . .	479	13.59 Linguistic map of the galician language . . . . .	525
13.17 The Armenian diaspora . . . . .	479	13.60 Germanophone areas in Europa . . . . .	526
13.18 Indonesia . . . . .	480	13.61 Germanophone areas . . . . .	526
13.19 Malaysia . . . . .	481	13.62 German dialects . . . . .	527
13.20 Bangla (bengali) language areas . . . . .	482	13.63 The spread of the German language until ca. 1945 in Central Europe . . . . .	528
13.21 The bengali diaspora . . . . .	483	13.64 Distribution of the major West-Germanic dialectal varieties . . . . .	529
13.22 The Basque country . . . . .	483	13.65 Greece . . . . .	531
13.23 The Basque dialects . . . . .	484	13.66 Dialects of modern Greek . . . . .	531
13.24 Manchuria . . . . .	487	13.67 Paraguay . . . . .	535
13.25 Brazil . . . . .	488	13.68 Korean language areas . . . . .	536
13.26 Dialects of Portuguese in Brazil . . . . .	489	13.69 Hangûl and hanja characters . . . . .	536
13.27 Brittany . . . . .	490	13.70 Israël . . . . .	541
13.28 Bulgaria . . . . .	492	13.71 Languages in India . . . . .	543
13.29 Republic of Buryatia . . . . .	493	13.72 Hindi proper and the hindi belt . . . . .	543
13.30 Official languages in Canada . . . . .	495	13.73 Iceland . . . . .	544
13.31 Canada . . . . .	495	13.74 Ireland . . . . .	547
13.32 Political map of Canada . . . . .	496	13.75 Italy . . . . .	548
13.33 Linguistic map of Canada . . . . .	496	13.76 Italophone areas in Europa . . . . .	548
13.34 Catalan language areas . . . . .	498	13.77 Japan . . . . .	549
13.35 Traditional and simplified Chinese versions of the Chinese word hànzi . . . . .	499	13.78 Kannada language areas . . . . .	553
13.36 Areas using Chinese characters . . . . .	499	13.79 Baltic languages and Latvia . . . . .	556
13.37 Languages in China . . . . .	500	13.80 Dialects and administrative regions in Latvia . . . . .	556
13.38 People’s Republic of China (PRC) . . . . .	500	13.81 Baltic languages and Lithuania . . . . .	558
13.39 Dialects in China . . . . .	501	13.82 Lusace and the Sorbians . . . . .	560
13.40 Minorities in Croatia . . . . .	502	13.83 Sorbian dialects areas . . . . .	561
13.41 Main nationalities in ex-Yugoslavia in 1998 . . . . .	503	13.84 Sorbs . . . . .	562
13.42 Czech Republic . . . . .	503	13.85 Hungaria and magyar speaking areas . . . . .	563
13.43 Czech dialects . . . . .	504		

13.86	Malayalam language areas . . . . .	565	13.107	Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina . . .	597
13.87	México . . . . .	571	13.108	Slovakia and its districts . . . . .	599
13.88	Indigenous languages of México . .	571	13.109	Slovenia . . . . .	600
13.89	Mongol language areas . . . . .	572	13.110	The 17 autonomous communities in Spain . . . . .	601
13.90	Linguistic map of the mongol language	572	13.111	Languages in Spain . . . . .	602
13.91	Mongolia and Mongol autonomous regions in the People's Republic of China (PRC) . . . . .	573	13.112	Hispanophone areas . . . . .	602
13.92	Languages in Norway . . . . .	577	13.113	States where spanish (castillan) is an official language . . . . .	603
13.93	Occitan in France . . . . .	580	13.114	Swahili language areas . . . . .	605
13.94	Occitan dialects . . . . .	580	13.115	Swedish language areas . . . . .	607
13.95	Poland and minorities in Poland . .	581	13.116	Thai language areas . . . . .	608
13.96	Portugal . . . . .	583	13.117	The turkish alphabet . . . . .	609
13.97	Lusophone areas . . . . .	584	13.118	Turkey . . . . .	610
13.98	Dialects of Portuguese in Portugal .	584	13.119	Turkish language in the world . . .	610
13.99	Portuguese dialects of Angola . . .	585	13.120	Uighur language areas . . . . .	611
13.100	Romanian language areas . . . . .	585	13.121	Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region	611
13.101	Russian language areas . . . . .	588	13.122	Languages in Ukraine . . . . .	613
13.102	Areas where the russian language is official or spoken . . . . .	588	13.123	Ukraine . . . . .	613
13.103	Regions of Russia . . . . .	589	13.124	Vietnam . . . . .	616
13.104	Russian subjects . . . . .	590	13.125	The vietnamese language in the world	617
13.105	Sámi dialects areas . . . . .	595	13.126	Wales . . . . .	618
13.106	Scotland and the scottish gaelic language . . . . .	596	13.127	Khalkha language areas . . . . .	619

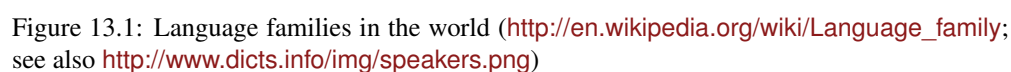
## 13.1 Overview

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details.

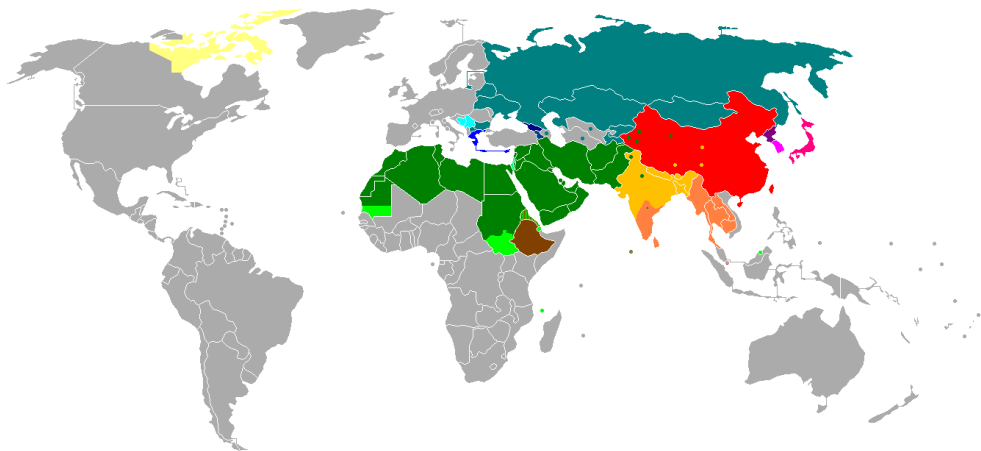
For some languages, I have added a map of the country or area where the language is spoken, if it is not trivial. The origin of each map is given by an URL to the graphic file or to the WEB page where I found it. Note that the [274] and [214] Web sites are useful sources. Maps from [214] are under the Creative Commons License, see [http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en\\_GB](http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en_GB). The site <http://www.expatries.senat.fr/pays.html> allows to look at the maps of many countries (but not of France!). The Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection [360] (The University of Texas at Austin, <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps>) contains countless maps.



Many free maps were also found by a search in the vast Wikipedia (i.e. <http://en.wikipedia.org>, <http://fr.wikipedia.org>, <http://de.wikipedia.org>, <http://simple.wikipedia.org>, etc.). If you are curious and brave, you can also find many maps and documents about Eastern Europa and about Asia at <http://www.hunmagyar.org>; that site give many historical informations.







**Alphabets:** latin (grey), cyrillic (blue-green), greek (blue), georgian (dark blue), armenian (darker blue);  
**Abjads<sup>a</sup>:** arabic (green), arabic and latin (light green), hebrew and arabic (lighter green);  
**Abugidas<sup>b</sup>:** north indic (light orange), south indic (orange), ethiopic (maroon), thaana or tāna (Dhivehi language in Maldives) (olive), canadian syllabic (yellow);  
**Logographic<sup>c</sup>+syllabic:** pure logographic (red), mixed logographic and syllabaries<sup>d</sup> (dark red), featural-alphabetic: hangŭl (dark mauve)+limited logographic: hanja (light mauve);

<sup>a</sup> An abjad is a segmental script containing symbols for consonants only, or where vowels are optionally written with diacritics (“pointing”) or only written word-initially.  
<sup>b</sup> An abugida, or *alphasyllabary*, is a segmental script in which vowels are denoted by diacritical marks or other systematic modification of the consonants.  
<sup>c</sup> In logographic systems, glyphs represent words or morphemes (meaningfull components of words, as in *mean-ing-ful*, rather than phonetic elements).  
<sup>d</sup> In syllabaries, graphemes represent syllables.

Figure 13.3: Writing systems by country ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_alphabets](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_alphabets))

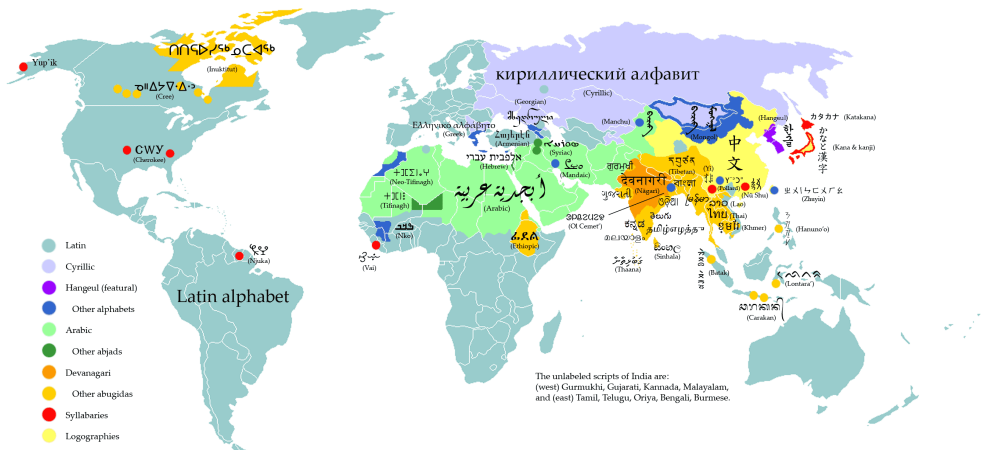


Figure 13.4: Areas of writing systems ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_alphabets](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_alphabets))

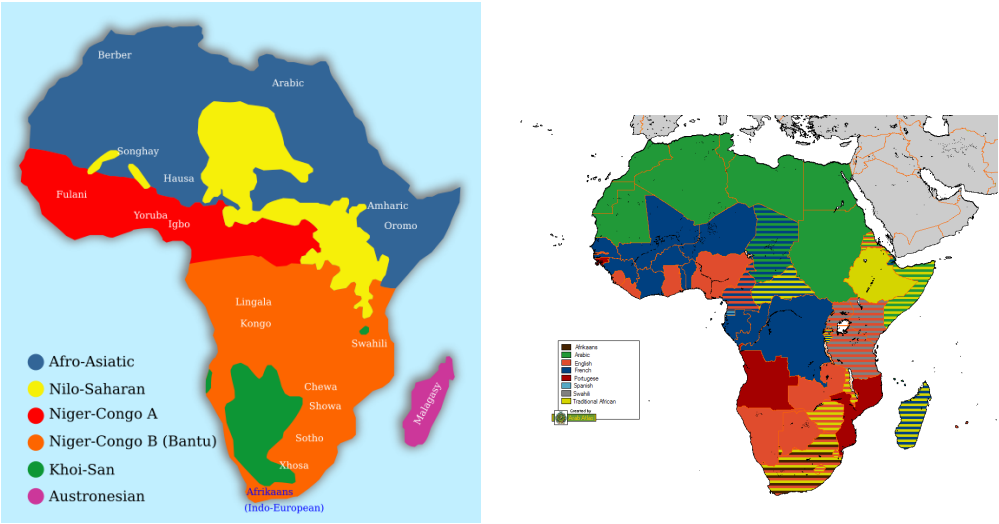


Figure 13.5: Language families and official languages in Africa ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages\\_of\\_Africa](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages_of_Africa))



Figure 13.6: Languages in Europe (by Andrei NACU, [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages\\_of\\_the\\_European\\_Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages_of_the_European_Union))



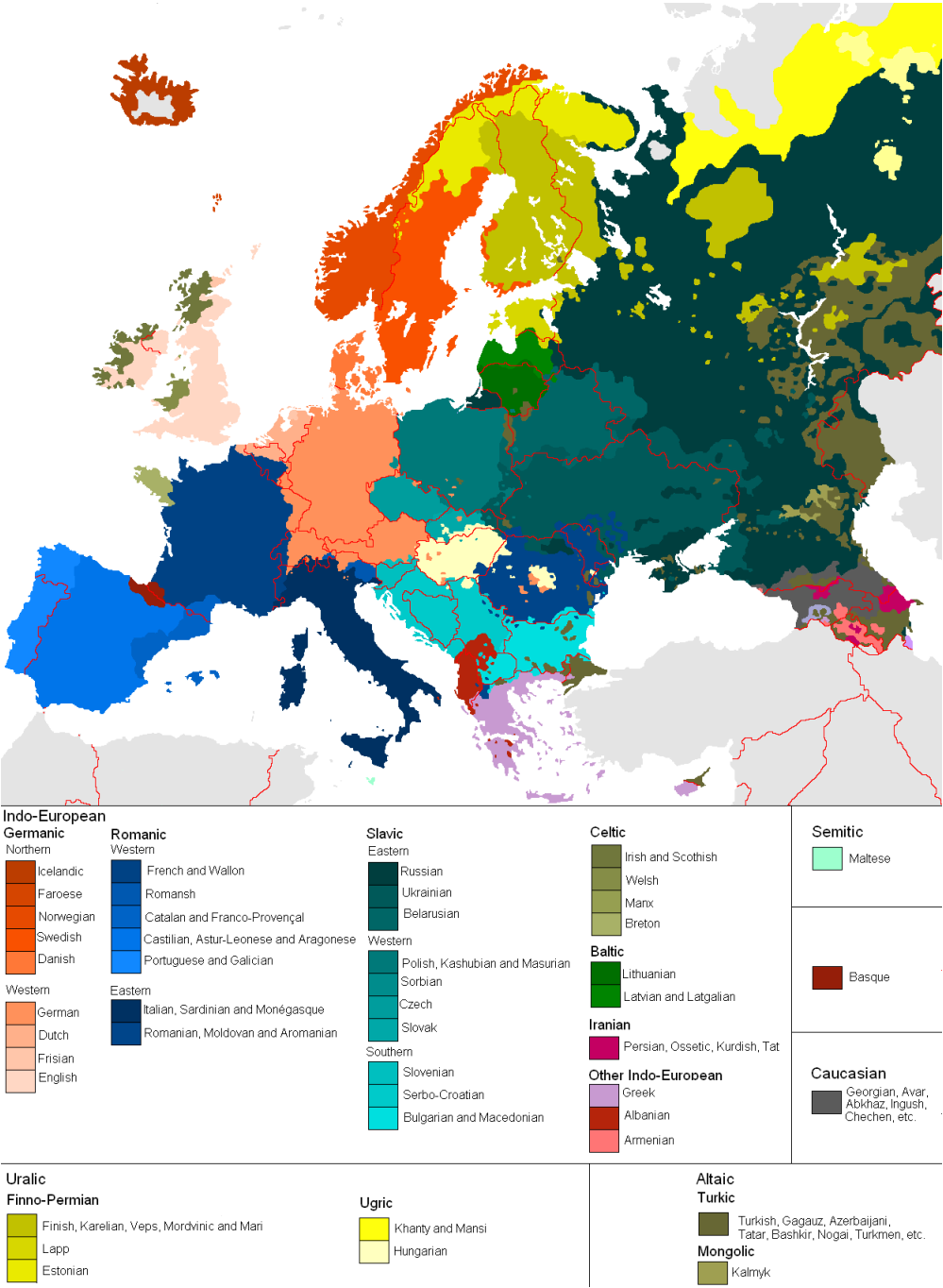


Figure 13.7: Languages families in Europe ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_languages\\_in\\_Europe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_languages_in_Europe))



Figure 13.8: Languages in Europe ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_languages\\_in\\_Europe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_languages_in_Europe))

A .mld file is loaded either via a package option in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package (or a global option for the document), either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage \mtcselectlanguage{<language>}
```

\ptctitle Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

\ptctitle	• \ptctitle	• \mtctitle	• \stctitle
\plftitle	• \plftitle	• \mlftitle	• \slftitle
\pltttitle	• \pltttitle	• \mltttitle	• \sltttitle

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the babel package [53, 59, 60, 73], the CJK system [123, 276, 277],

the H<sup>A</sup>TeX system [249, in korean], the Antomega system [252], the ArabTeX [256, 257], BangTeX [335], Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X [337], ethiop [44], FarsiTeX [152]<sup>1</sup>, guarani [45], malayalam [4] et omal [5], MonTeX [130, 133], or ArmTeX [134] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.

`filecontents` But for some oriental languages<sup>2</sup>, the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult  
`\mtcselectlanguage` to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file<sup>3</sup>, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses filecontents environments to generate the .mlo files. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via the `\mtcselectlanguage` command.

Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language*.mld file (and of the *language*.mlo file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document.log* file. But the presence of the *english.mld* file is mandatory, because english is the default language. If some .mld or .mlo files are missing, the list of this files is given in the .log file. You should find these files on CTAN.



I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0094

## 13.2 “Acadian” language: `acadian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The acadian language<sup>4</sup> is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.60 on page 520):

```
7901 <*acadian>
7902 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7903 </acadian>
```

## 13.3 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “acadien” language<sup>4</sup> is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.60 on page 520):

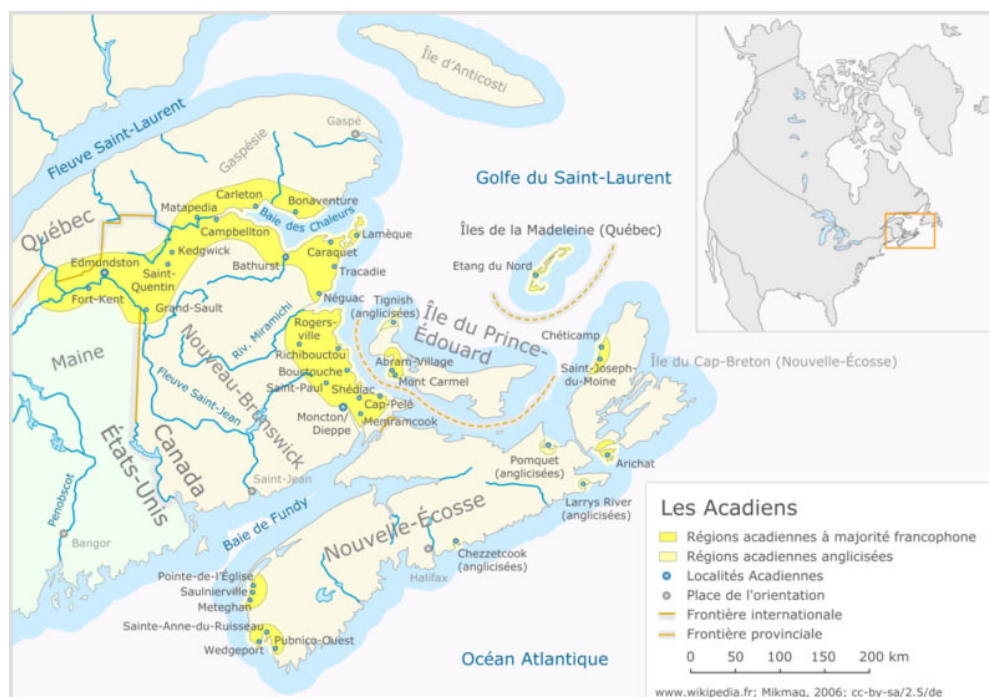
```
7904 <*acadien>
7905 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7906 </acadien>
```

<sup>1</sup> By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

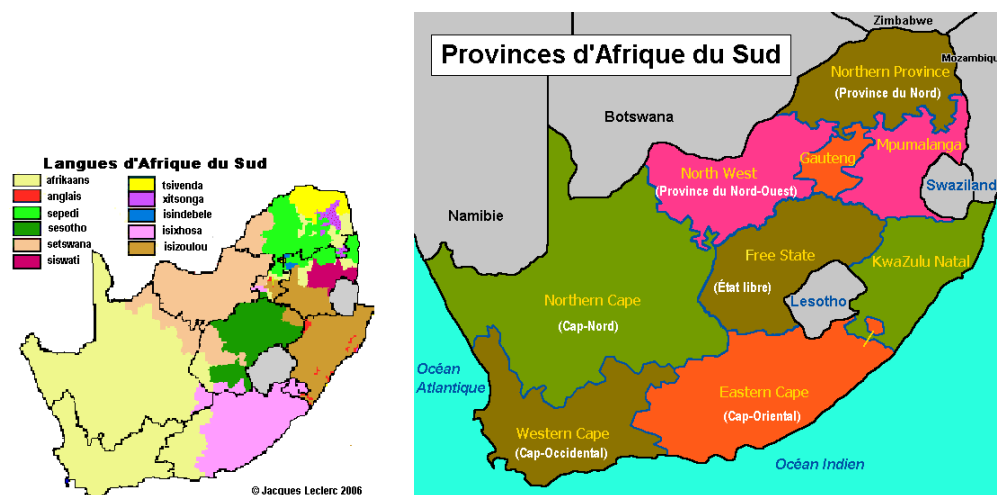
<sup>2</sup> Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

<sup>3</sup> The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

<sup>4</sup> Spoken in Acadia (see figure 13.9 on the following page) and some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

Figure 13.9: Acadia today ([http://www.cyberacadie.com/acadie\\_pays.htm](http://www.cyberacadie.com/acadie_pays.htm))

### 13.4 “Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld

Figure 13.10: Afrikaans language areas (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/afriquesud.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “afrikaan” language<sup>5</sup> come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Stoffel LOMBARD) in the `babel` package [54, 59, 60]:

```

7907 <*afrikaan>
7908 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]%
7909 %% Afrikaan(s) titles from dutch.dtx (babel) by Braams, Johannes~L.
7910 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7911 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
7912 \def\plttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7913 %%
7914 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7915 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
7916 \def\mlttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7917 %%
7918 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7919 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
7920 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7921 </afrikaan>

```

### 13.5 “Afrikaans” language: `afrikaans.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load `afrikaan.mld` (see section 13.4 on the page before):

```

7922 <*afrikaans>
7923 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
7924 </afrikaans>

```

### 13.6 “Albanian” language: `albanian.mld`

The albanian language (*shqip*) is spoken in Albania and some regions of Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia and Kosovo; see figures 13.11 and 13.12 on the following page. The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the `albanian.dtx` file (with a contribution of Adi ZAIMI) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 100]:

```

7925 <*albanian>
7926 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
7927 %% Albanian titles from albabian.dtx (babel).
7928 %% Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com / adizaimi at yahoo.com).
7929 \def\ptctitle{P"ermbajta}%
7930 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
7931 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%

```

<sup>5</sup> Spoken in South Africa and Namibia, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.44 on page 507. See also <http://www.tifq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/afrikaans.htm> in [274]. See figure 13.10 on the preceding page.

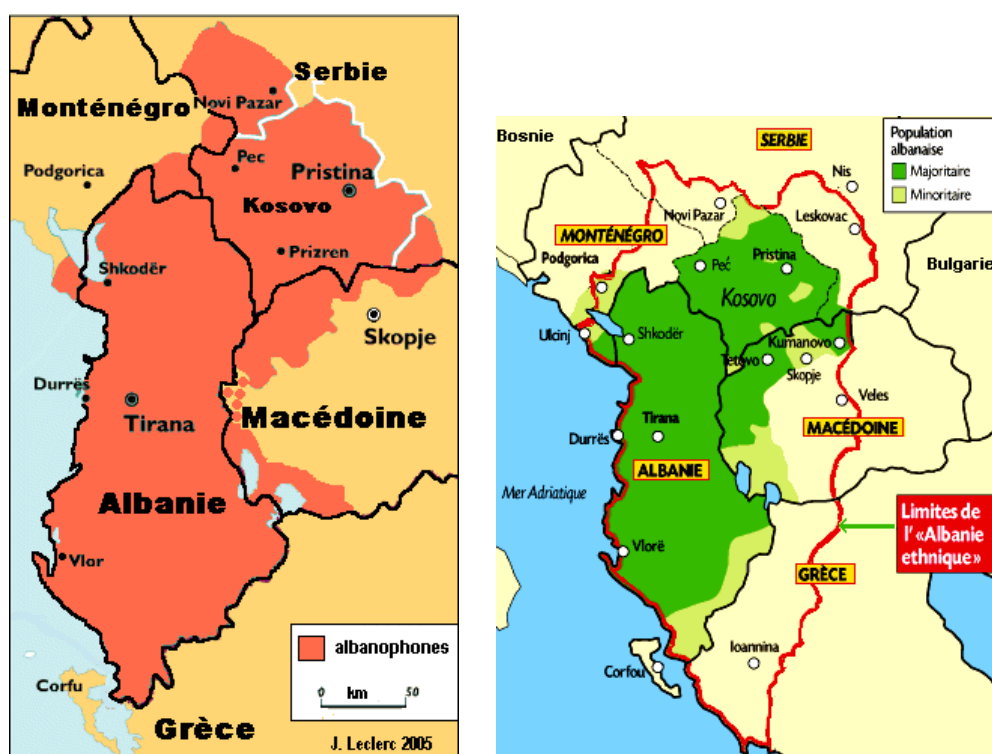


Figure 13.11: Albanian language areas ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/carte\\_albanophone.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/carte_albanophone.htm) and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/albaniecarte.htm> in [274])



Figure 13.12: Language areas in Kosovo (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/Kosovo.htm> in [274])

```

7932 %%
7933 \def\mtctitle{P\"ermbajta}%
7934 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
7935 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
7936 %%
7937 \def\stctitle{P\"ermbajta}%
7938 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
7939 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
7940 </albanian>

```

### 13.7 “American” language: american.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “american” language is just like “english” (the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules, some spellings and phonetics), so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 508):

`american`  
`language`

```

7941 <american>
7942 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7943 </american>

```

### 13.8 “Arab” language: arab.mld

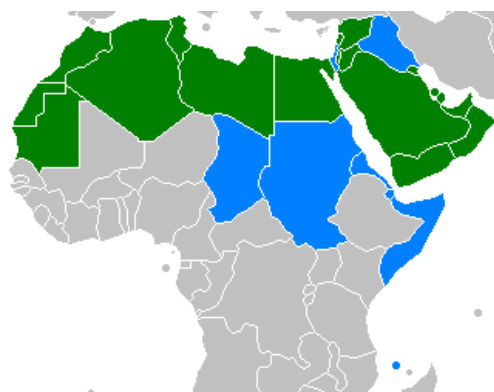
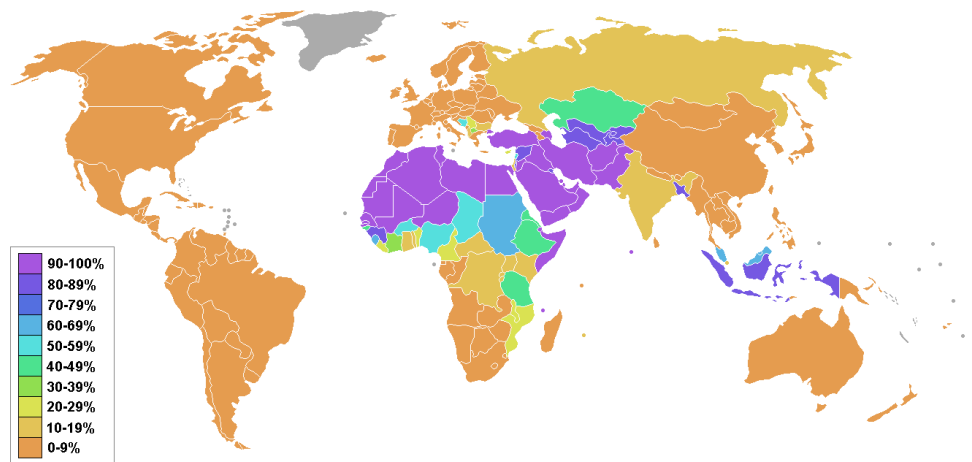
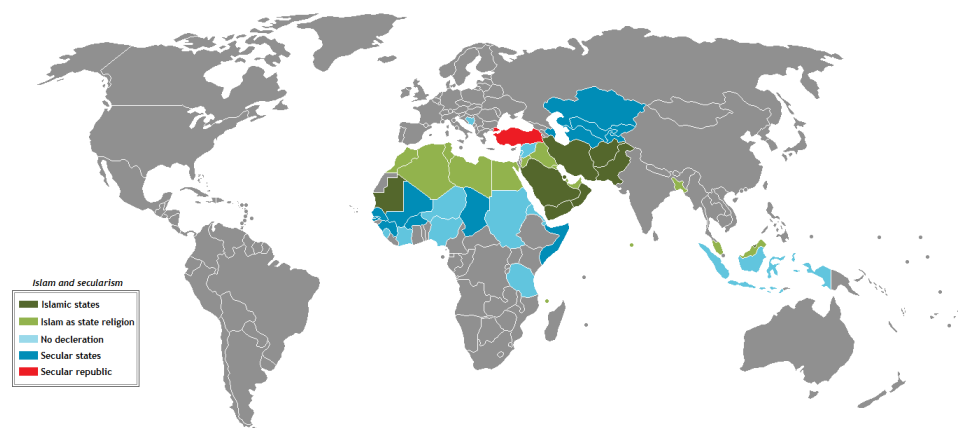


Figure 13.13: Countries where the arabic language is official (green: sole official language, blue: one of several official languages) ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arabic\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arabic_language))

العربية

The titles for the “arab” language (al-’Arabiyyah) are taken from the ArabT<sub>E</sub>X package [256, 257] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The arabic language is spoken in: Algeria, Bahrain, Egypt, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Mauritania, Morocco, Oman, Palestinian territories, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Sudan, Syria, Tunisia, United Arab Emirates, Western Sahara, Yemen by a majority; it is also the liturgical language of Islam (see figures 13.14 and 13.15 on the following page).



Figure 13.14: Percentage of muslims by country ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Muslim\\_world](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Muslim_world))Figure 13.15: The status of Islam by country ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Muslim\\_world](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Muslim_world))

```

7944 <{*arab>
7945 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]%
7946 %% Arabic titles. Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
7947 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7948 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7949 \def\pltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7950 %%
7951 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7952 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7953 \def\mltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7954 %%
7955 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7956 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7957 \def\sltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7958 </arab>

```



### 13.9 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

`\mtcArabTok` The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [256, 257] (by  
`\tcArabTok` Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab”  
`\a@tok` language.

```

7959 <*arab2>
7960 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]%
7961 %% Arabic titles. Variant. Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
7962 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\a@tok}%
7963 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7964 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7965 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7966 %%
7967 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7968 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7969 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7970 %%
7971 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7972 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7973 \def\sltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7974 </arab2>

```

### 13.10 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

`\R` The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the Arabi package [226] (by Youssef JABRI),  
which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7975 <*arabi>
7976 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]%
7977 %% Arabic titles (strings taken from arabi.ldr; to be used with arabi)
7978 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package, by Youssef Jabri)
7979 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7980 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7981 \def\pltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7982 %%
7983 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7984 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7985 \def\mltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7986 %%
7987 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7988 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7989 \def\sltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7990 </arabi>

```

### 13.11 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.8 on page 475):

```
7991 <*arabic>
7992 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]\mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
7993 </arabic>
```

### 13.12 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

հայերէն

The titles for the “armenian” language (*hayeren*) are taken from the ArmTeX package [134] (by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The armenian language is spoken in Armenia, in a part of Azerbaidjan and in the armenian diaspora; see figures 13.16 and 13.17 on the following page.

```
7994 <*armenian>
7995 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]%
7996 %% Armenian titles from ArmTeX. Sergueï Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr),
7997 %% Arnak Dalalyan & Vartan Akopian
7998 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7999 \def\plftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
8000 \def\pltttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
8001 %%
8002 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8003 \def\mlftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
8004 \def\mltttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
8005 %%
8006 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8007 \def\slftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
8008 \def\slttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
8009 </armenian>
```

### 13.13 “Australian” language: australian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 508):

```
8010 <*australian>
8011 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8012 </australian>
```

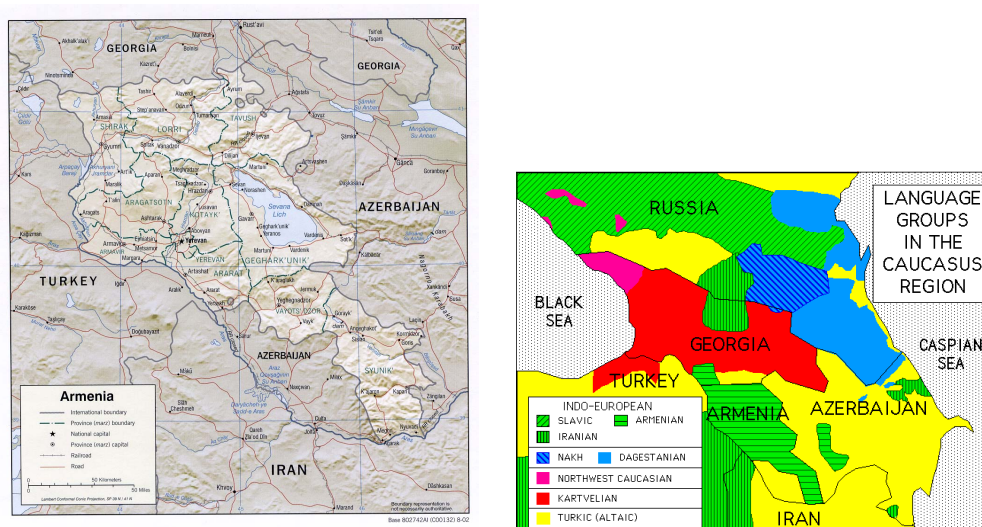


Figure 13.16: Armenia and languages of Caucasus (<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/armenia.html> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360] – and <http://linguistics.buffalo.edu/people/faculty/dryer/dryer/dryer.htm> by Matthew S. DRYER, link found from [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caucasian\\_languages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caucasian_languages))

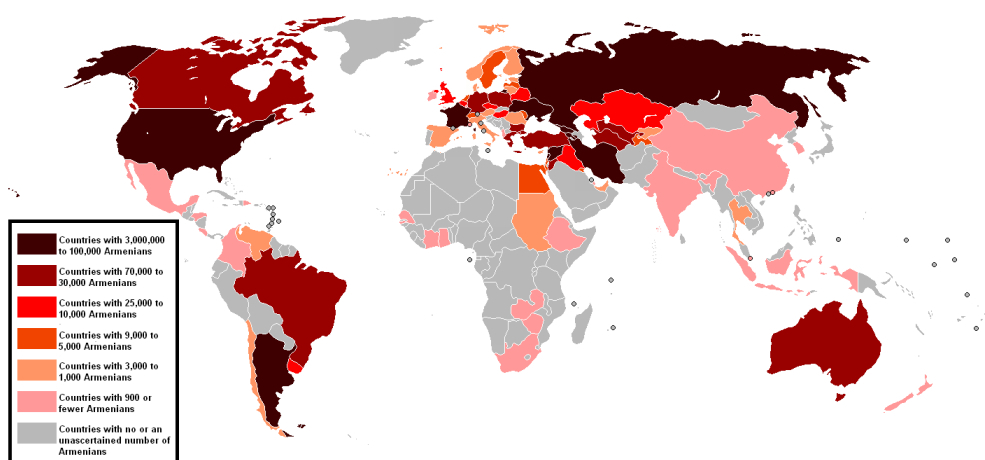


Figure 13.17: The Armenian diaspora ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Armenian\\_diaspora](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Armenian_diaspora))

### 13.14 “Austrian” language: austrian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load german.mld (see section 13.67 on page 525):

```

8013 < *austrian >
8014 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{german}%
8015 < /austrian >

```

### 13.15 “Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.16):

```

8016 < *bahasa >
8017 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8018 < /bahasa >

```

### 13.16 “Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld

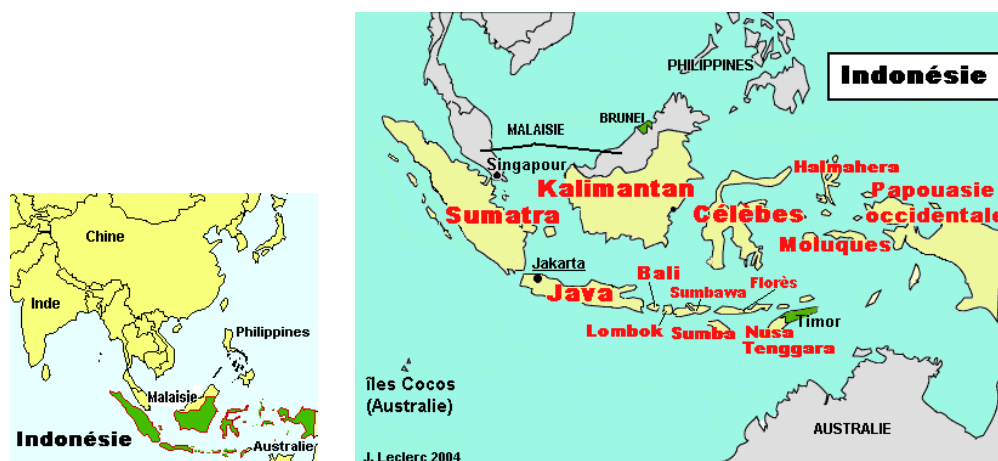


Figure 13.18: Indonesia ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1\\_langues.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1_langues.htm) and [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-3\\_Pol\\_ling.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-3_Pol_ling.htm) in [274])

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language<sup>6</sup> (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file bahasa.dtx (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the babel package [59, 60, 81]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.17 on the following page. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.15, 13.89 on page 545, and 13.90 on page 545.

<sup>6</sup> Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant. See [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1\\_langues.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1_langues.htm) in [274].

```

8019 (*bahasai)
8020 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8021 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles from bahasa.dtx in the babel package.
8022 %% Knappen, Jörg & Mart, Terry
8023 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8024 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8025 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8026 %%
8027 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8028 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8029 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8030 %%
8031 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8032 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8033 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8034 /(*bahasai)

```

### 13.17 “Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld



Figure 13.19: Malaysia (<http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/malaysia.htm> in [274])

بهاس ملايو

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)<sup>7</sup> are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 82]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.15 on the preceding page. For other names for this language, see sections 13.118 on page 565 and 13.129 on page 570.

```

8035 (*bahasam)
8036 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]%
8037 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles from bahasam.dtx in the babel package
8038 %% Knappen, Jörg & Mart, Terry & Margolis, Bob
8039 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
8040 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8041 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%

```

<sup>7</sup> Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the Malaysian variant.

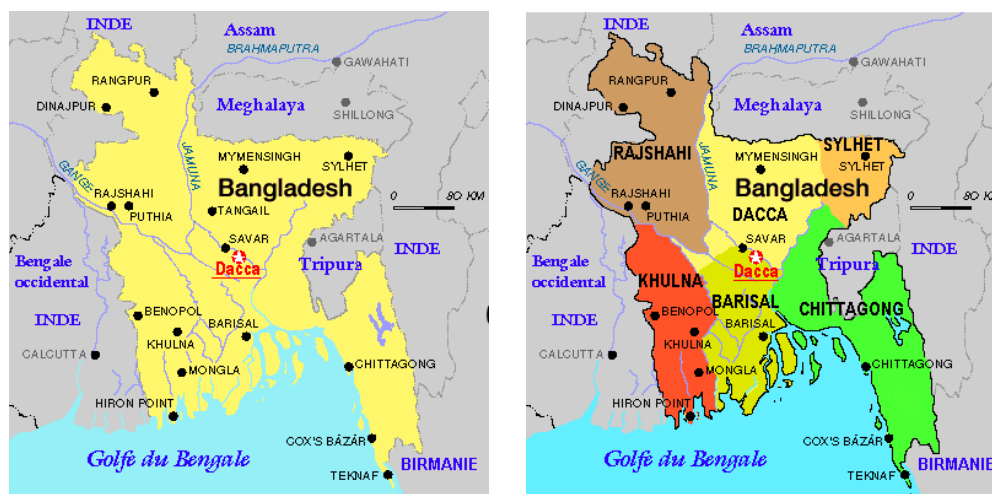


Figure 13.20: Bangla (bengali) language areas (<http://www.tfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asia/Bangladesh.htm> dans [274])

```

8042 %%
8043 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
8044 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8045 \def\mltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8046 %%
8047 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
8048 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8049 \def\sltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8050 \</bahasam>

```

### 13.18 “Bangla” language: bangla.mld

বাংলা

The titles for the “bangla” (bengali) language<sup>8</sup> are taken from the BangTeX package [335] (by Palash Baran Pal); they need specific fonts (the bengali alphabet is derived from sanskrit).

```

8051 (*bangla)
8052 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8053 %% Bangla titles from BangTeX. Needs specific fonts.
8054 \def\ptctitle{সুচীকৃত}%
8055 \def\plftitle{চোব*ির তা*লিকা}%
8056 \def\pltttitle{চো*ক*ের তা*লিকা}%
8057 %%
8058 \def\mtctitle{সুচীকৃত}%
8059 \def\mlftitle{চোব*ির তা*লিকা}%

```

<sup>8</sup> Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India, like Occidental Bengal (19), Orissa (21), Assam (18), Bihar (10) and Tripura (16); see figures 13.20 and 13.21 on the following page.

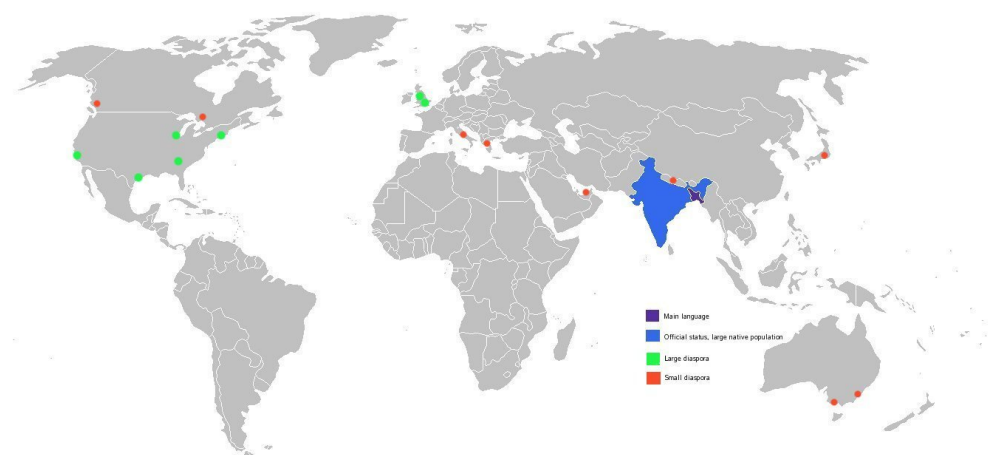


Figure 13.21: The bengali diaspora ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bengali\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bengali_language))

```

8060 \def\mltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8061 %%
8062 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8063 \def\slfttitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8064 \def\sltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8065 \end{banga}

```

### 13.19 “Basque” language: basque.mld

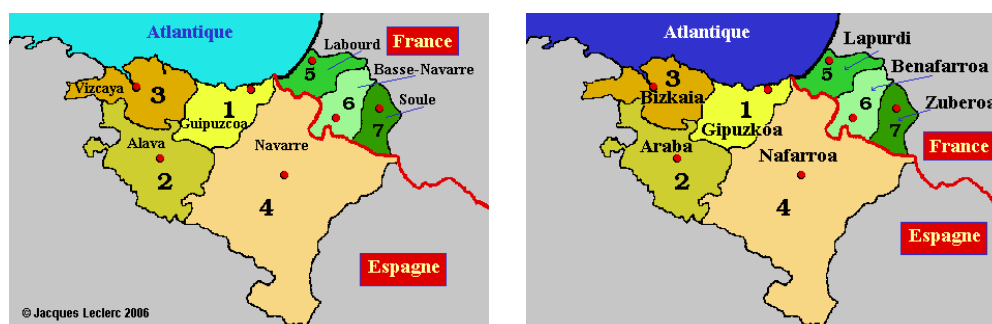


Figure 13.22: The Basque country (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnebasque.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnenavarre.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “basque” language<sup>9</sup> (*euskara*) are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [59–61], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA AZKONA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

<sup>9</sup> Spoken in the basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France; see figure 13.22.

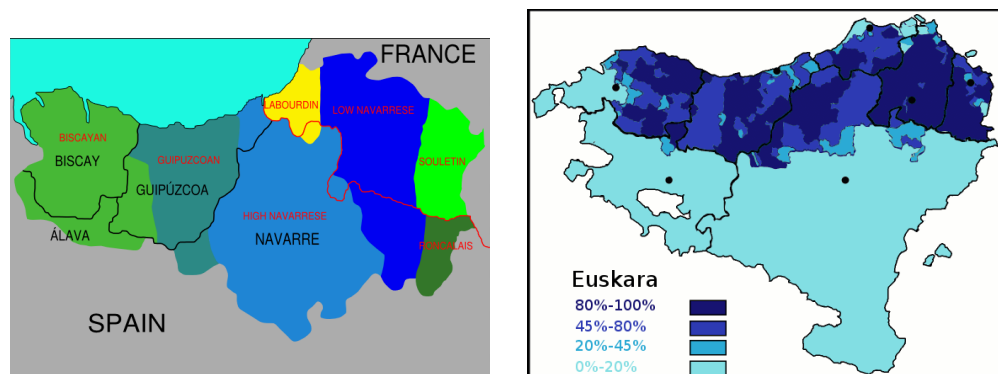


Figure 13.23: The Basque dialects ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basque\\_language29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basque_language29))

```

8066 <#basque>
8067 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8068 %% Basque titles from basque.dtx (babel).
8069 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. <wtpagagj at lg.ehu.es> WWW: http://tp.lc.ehu.es/jma.html
8070 %% & Sanchez, Julio <jsanchez at gmv.es>,
8071 %% and help from Izaola Azkona, Zunbeltz <wmbizazz at lg dot ehu>
8072 %% Needs special fonts.
8073 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8074 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8075 \def\pltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8076 %%
8077 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8078 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8079 \def\mltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8080 %%
8081 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8082 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8083 \def\sltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8084 </basque>

```

## 13.20 “Bengali” language: bengali.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “bengali” language is a synonym for the “bangla” language, so we load the file bangla.mld (see section 13.18 on page 482):

```

8085 <#bengali>
8086 \ProvidesFile{bengali.mld}[2007/07/23]\mtcselectlanguage{bangla}%
8087 </bengali>

```



## 13.21 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

`\bcg` The titles for the “bicig” language<sup>10</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [130, 133]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.130 on page 571, 13.22, and 13.23 on the following page.

```
8088 <*bicig>
8089 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8090 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles needs mongol fonts
8091 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8092 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8093 \def\pltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8094 %%
8095 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8096 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8097 \def\mltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8098 %%
8099 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8100 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8101 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8102 </bicig>
```

## 13.22 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language<sup>11</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [130, 133]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.130 on page 571, 13.21, and 13.23 on the following page.

```
8103 <*bicig2>
8104 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]%
8105 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8106 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8107 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8108 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8109 %%
8110 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8111 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8112 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8113 %%
8114 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8115 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8116 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8117 </bicig2>
```

<sup>10</sup>The `bicig` is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur or Bichig. See also section 13.178 on page 609.

<sup>11</sup>The `bicig`, or `uighur`, is a written form of the mongolian language, `bicig2` is a variant. See also section 13.179 on page 609.

## 13.23 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language<sup>12</sup> are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [130, 133]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.130 on page 571, 13.21 on the page before and 13.22 on the preceding page.

```

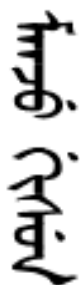
8118 <*bicig3>
8119 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8120 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8121 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8122 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8123 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8124 %%
8125 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8126 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8127 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8128 %%
8129 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8130 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8131 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8132 </bicig3>

```

## 13.24 “Bithe” language: bithe.mld

The titles for the “bithe” language<sup>13</sup> are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [130, 133]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.127 on page 570 and 13.130 on page 571. The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to eliminate all the ambiguities of Mongolian.

Figure 13.24 on the next page shows the extent of Manchuria according to definition 1 (dark red) below, definition 3 (dark plus medium red) and definition 4 (dark plus medium plus light red):



1. Northeast China: generally defined as the three provinces of Heilongjiang, Jilin and Liaoning.
2. The above, plus part of northeastern Inner Mongolia.
3. The above, plus the Jehol region of Hebei province. The part of Manchuria in China is called Inner Manchuria to contrast it with Outer Manchuria (see below).
4. The above, plus Outer Manchuria or Russian Manchuria, a region in Russia that stretches from the Amur and Ussuri rivers to the Stanovoy Mountains and the Sea of Japan.

<sup>12</sup>The *bicig*, or *uighur*, is a written form of the mongolian language, *bicig3* is a variant. See also section 13.180 on page 612.

<sup>13</sup>The *bithe* is a written form of the *manju* variant of the mongolian language.



Figure 13.24: Manchuria (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manchuria> and <http://www.hunmagyar.org/turan/manchu/manchuria.html>)

Russian Far East comprises Primorsky Krai, southern Khabarovsk Krai, the Jewish Autonomous Oblast and Amur Oblast. These were part of Manchu China according to the Treaty of Nerchinsk of 1689, but were ceded to Russia by the Treaty of Aigun (1858).

5. The above, plus Sakhalin Oblast, which is generally included on Chinese maps as part of Outer Manchuria, even though it is not explicitly mentioned in the Treaty of Nerchinsk.

Outer Manchuria is in light red on this map. Some also consider the island of Sakhalin to be part of Outer Manchuria.

```

8133 (*bithe)
8134 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]%
8135 %% Manju (bithe) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8136 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8137 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8138 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8139 %%
8140 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8141 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8142 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8143 %%
8144 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8145 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8146 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8147 \end{bithe}

```

## 13.25 “Brazil” language: brazil.mld



Figure 13.25: Brazil (<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/americas/brazil.jpg> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360] – and <http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/amsudant/bresimapa-lingua.htm> in [274])<sup>i</sup>

The titles for the “brazil” language (*português brasileiro* or *português do Brasil*)<sup>14</sup> are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (for portuguese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 91]:

<sup>14</sup>It is the main portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. Note that these titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brazilian translations. See section 13.148 on page 583.



1. Caipira – States of São Paulo (countryside ; the city of São Paulo and the eastern areas of the state have their own dialect, called paulista) ; southern Minas Gerais, northern Paraná, Goiás and Mato Grosso do Sul.
2. Cearense – Ceará.
3. Baiano – Bahia.
4. Fluminense – Variants spoken in the states of Rio de Janeiro and Espírito Santo (excluding the city of Rio de Janeiro and its adjacent metropolitan areas, which have their own dialect, called carioca).
5. Gaúcho – Rio Grande do Sul. (There are many distinct accents in Rio Grande do Sul, mainly due to the heavy influx of European immigrants of diverse origins, those which have settled several colonies throughout the state.)
6. Mineiro – Minas Gerais (not prevalent in the Triângulo Mineiro, southern and southeastern Minas Gerais).
7. Nordestino – northeastern states of Brazil (Pernambuco and Rio Grande do Norte have a particular way of speaking).
8. Nortista – Amazon Basin states.
9. Paulistano – Variants spoken around São Paulo city and the eastern areas of São Paulo state.
10. Sertanejo – States of Goiás and Mato Grosso (the city of Cuiabá has a particular way of speaking).
11. Sulista – Variants spoken in the areas between the northern regions of Rio Grande do Sul and southern regions of São Paulo state. (The cities of Curitiba, Florianópolis, and Itapetininga have fairly distinct accents as well.)

Figure 13.26: Dialects of Portuguese in Brazil ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_language))

```

8148 < *brazil >
8149 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8150 %% Portugues (brazil) titles, from portuges.dtx (babel)
8151 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro & "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8152 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8153 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8154 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8155 %%
8156 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8157 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8158 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8159 %%
8160 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8161 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8162 \def\sltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8163 < /brazil >

```

## 13.26 “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.25 on page 488):

```
8164 (*brazilian)
8165 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8166 \end{brazilian}
```

## 13.27 “Breton” language: breton.mld

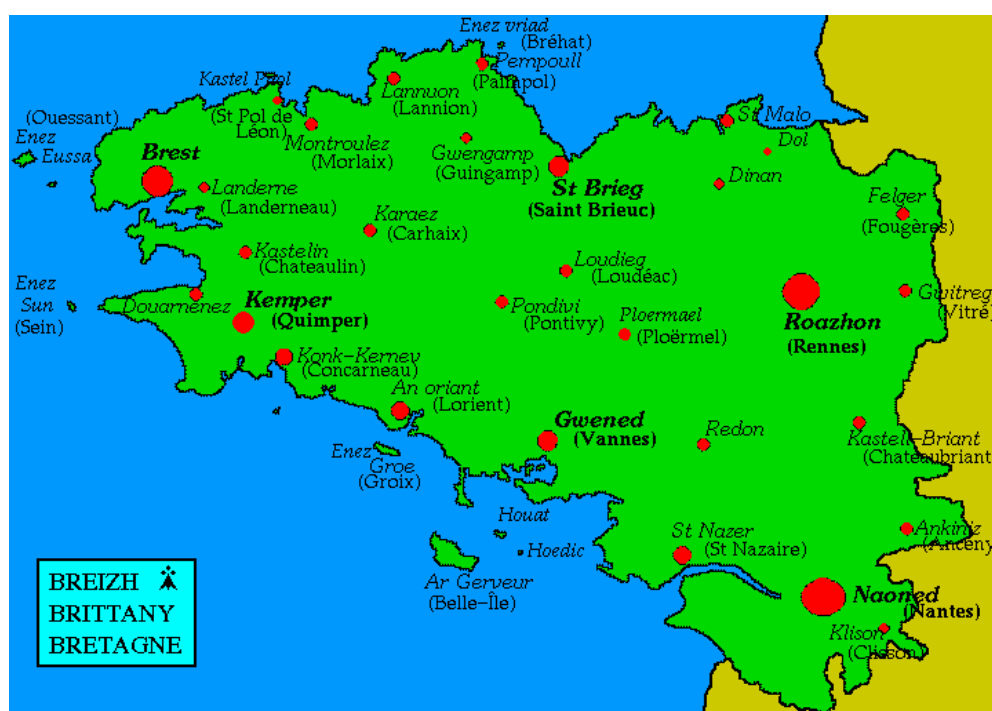


Figure 13.27: Brittany (<http://www.bretagnenet.com/scb/fgeo.html>)

The titles for the “breton” language (*brezhoneg*)<sup>15</sup> are taken from the `breton.dtx` file (by Christian ROLLAND) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 92]:

```
8167 (*breton)
8168 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8169 %% Breton titles from breton.dtx (babel) by Rolland, Christian
```

<sup>15</sup>Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany; see figure 13.27. See also <http://www.geobreizh.com/breizh/images/cartes/carte-bretagne-langue-fr.jpg> and <http://www.geobreizh.com/breizh/images/cartes/carte-bretagne-langue-br.jpg>.



```

8170 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8171 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8172 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8173 %%
8174 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8175 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8176 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8177 %%
8178 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8179 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8180 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8181 </breton>

```

## 13.28 “British” language: british.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 508):

```

8182 <{*british}>
8183 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8184 </british>

```

## 13.29 “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld

БЪЛГАРСКИ

`\cyr` The titles for the “bulgarian” language (*bǎlgarski*) are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi N. BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [59, 60, 66]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.30 on the following page.

```

8185 <{*bulgarian}>
8186 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2007/03/08]%
8187 %% Bulgarian titles from bulgarian.dtx (babel) (needs special cyrillic fonts)
8188 %% by Boshnakov, Georgi N. <georgi.boshnakov at umist.ac.uk>
8189 \def\ptctitle{%
8190   {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8191 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8192   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8193 \def\plttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8194   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8195 %%
8196 \def\mtctitle{%
8197   {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8198 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8199   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8200 \def\mlttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8201   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%

```



Figure 13.28: Bulgaria ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography\\_of\\_Bulgaria](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_Bulgaria) and <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/bulgaria.html> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360] –)

```

8202 %%
8203 \def\stctitle{%
8204   {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8205 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8206   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8207 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8208   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8209 \</bulgarian>

```

### 13.30 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

\cyr The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) of the babel package [59, 60, 83, 266]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.29 on the page before.

```

8210 (*bulgarianb)
8211 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]%
8212 %% Upper bulgarian titles from russianb.dtx. Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian.
8213 \def\ptctitle{%
8214   {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8215 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
8216   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8217 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
8218   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8219 %%

```



```

8220 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8221 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8222 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
8223 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8224 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
8225 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8226 %%
8227 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8228 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8229 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
8230 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8231 \def\slttitle{% Tablici
8232 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8233 </bulgarianb>

```

### 13.31 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld



Figure 13.29: Republic of Buryatia ([http://russiatrek.org/rp\\_buryatia.shtml](http://russiatrek.org/rp_buryatia.shtml))

\mnr The titles for the “buryat” language<sup>16</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [130, 133]. This  
\sh language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.130 on page 571.

```

8234 (*buryat)
8235 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8236 %% Buryat titles. Needs special fonts.
8237 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8238 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8239 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8240 %%
8241 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8242 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8243 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8244 %%

```

<sup>16</sup>Spoken in some regions of Mongolia and in the Buryatia republic, near Lake Baikal. See figure 13.29.

```

8245 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8246 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8247 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8248 \buryat}

```

### 13.32 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.31 on the preceding page) are taken from the MonTeX package [130, 133]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.130 on page 571.

```

8249 (*buryat2)
8250 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8251 %% Buryat2 titles. Needs special fonts.
8252 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8253 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8254 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8255 %%
8256 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8257 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8258 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8259 %%
8260 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8261 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8262 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8263 \buryat2}

```

### 13.33 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 508):



```

8264 (*canadian)
8265 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8266 \canadian}

```

### 13.34 “Canadien” language: canadien.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file french.mld (see section 13.60 on page 520):



Province	Official language(s)
Alberta	english
British-Columbia	english
Island-of-Prince-Edward	english
Manitoba	english
New-Brunswick	english-french
New-Scotland	english
Ontario	english
Québec	french
Satkatchewan	english
Newfoundland	english
Federal territories	english-french
Federal government	english-french



Figure 13.30: Official languages in Canada (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/amnord/canada.htm> in [274])



Figure 13.31: Canada ([http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/cia07/canada\\_sm\\_2007.gif](http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/cia07/canada_sm_2007.gif) – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360])



Figure 13.32: Political map of Canada ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Provinces\\_and\\_territories\\_of\\_Canada](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Provinces_and_territories_of_Canada))

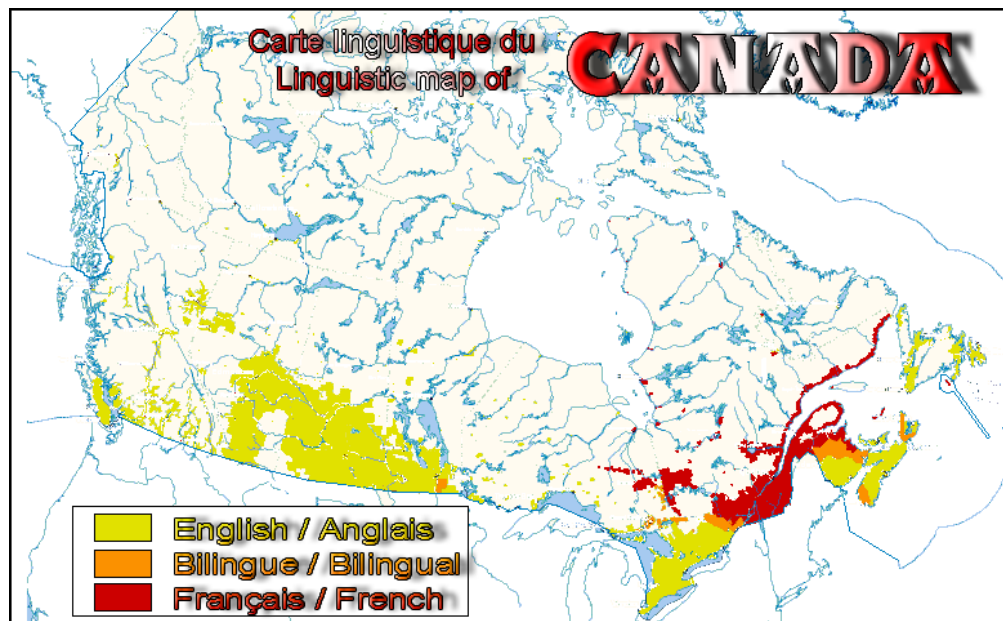


Figure 13.33: Linguistic map of Canada ([http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bilinguisme\\_au\\_Canada](http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bilinguisme_au_Canada))

```

8267 <*canadien>
8268 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8269 </canadien>

```

### 13.35 “Castillan” language: castillan.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “castillan” language is better known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.169 on page 600):

```

8270 <*castillan>
8271 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8272 </castillan>

```

### 13.36 “Castillian” language: castillian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` “Castillian” is just the english name for “castillan”, so we just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.169 on page 600):

```

8273 <*castillian>
8274 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8275 </castillian>

```

### 13.37 “Catalan” language: catalan.mld

The titles for the “catalan” language (*català*, *valencià*)<sup>17</sup> are taken from the `catalan.dtx` file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 63]:

```

8276 <*catalan>
8277 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8278 %% Catalan titles from catalan.dtx (babel) (Badenes, Gonçal)
8279 \def\ptctitle{\'Index}%
8280 \def\plftitle{\'Index de figures}%
8281 \def\pltttitle{\'Index de taules}%
8282 %%
8283 \def\mtctitle{\'Index}%
8284 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8285 \def\mltttitle{Taules}%

```

<sup>17</sup> Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona, and in Roussillon, in France. See figure 13.34 on the following page.

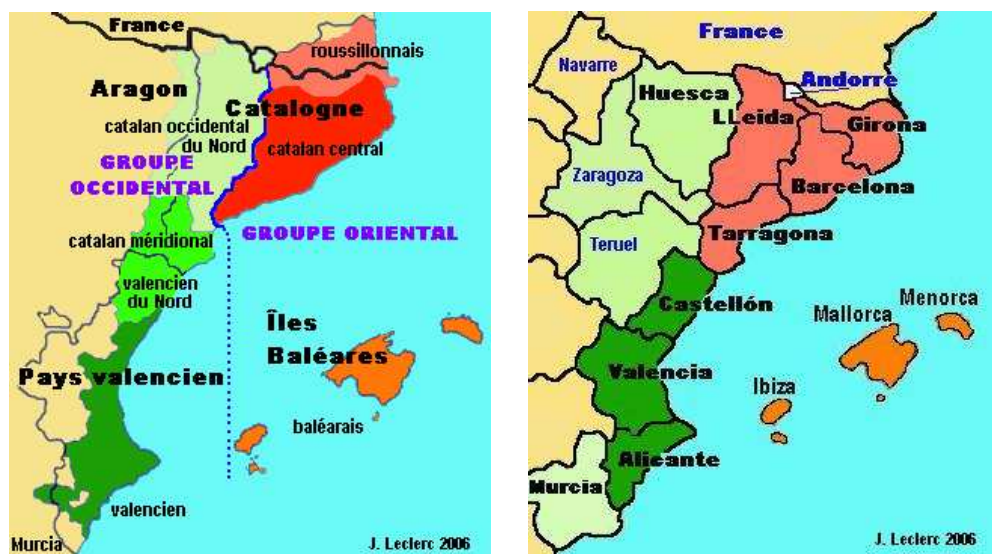


Figure 13.34: Catalan language areas (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnecatalogne.htm> in [274]; see also [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catalan\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catalan_language))

```

8286 %%
8287 \def\stctitle{\`Index}%
8288 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8289 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
8290 </catalan>

```

### 13.38 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo  
中文

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.39 on page 501. See [380] about the history of China and the chinese language. The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```

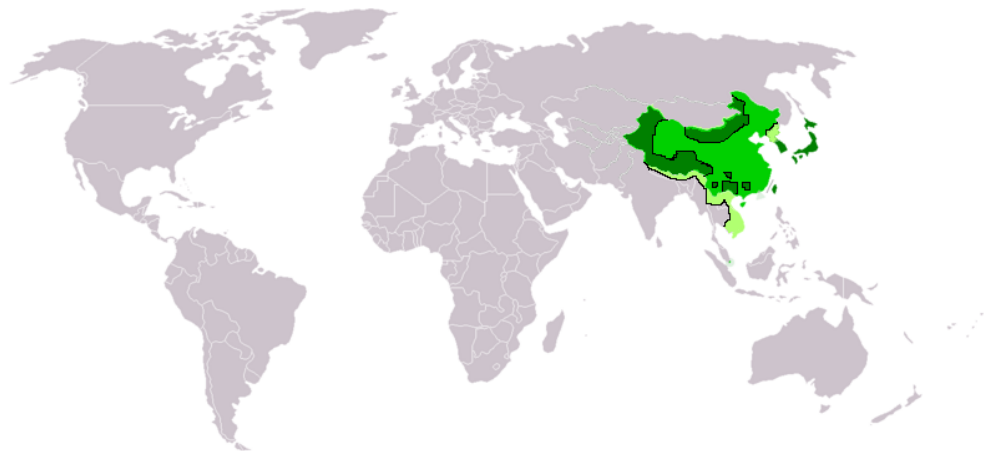
8291 (*chinese1)
8292 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
8293 %% From file Bg5.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs with LaTeX2e
8294 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8295 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
8296 </chinese1>

```

漢 汉  
字 字

Left: "Chinese character" in hànzì (Traditional Chinese);  
Right: "Chinese character" in Simplified Chinese.

Figure 13.35: Traditional and simplified Chinese versions of the Chinese word hànzì ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese\\_written\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_written_language))



Areas using only Chinese characters in green; in conjunction with other scripts, dark green; maximum extent of historic usage, light green (does not include other territories annexed by Japan in World War II).

Figure 13.36: Areas using Chinese characters ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese\\_character](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_character))



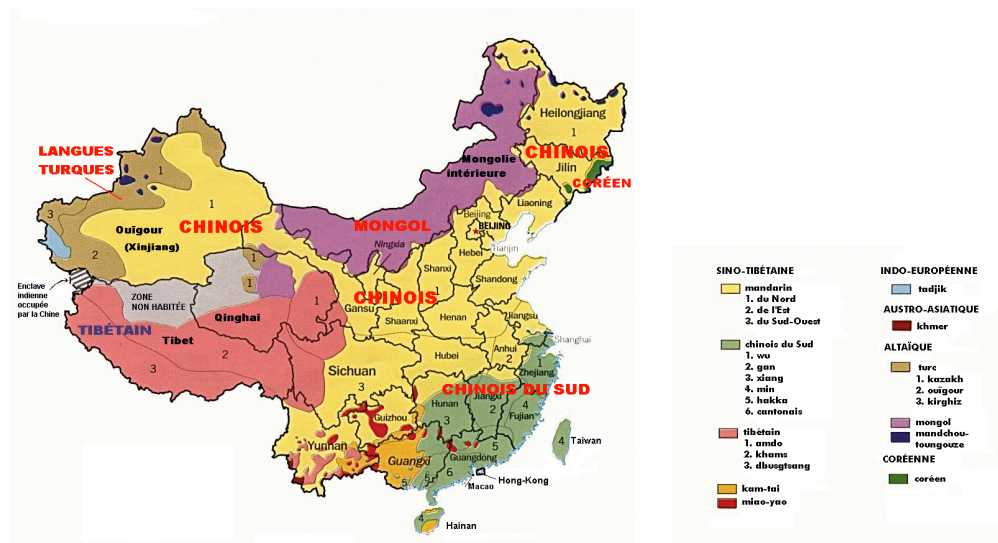


Figure 13.37: Languages in China (<http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/chine-map-langues.htm> in [274])

#### People's Republic of China (PRC): Administrative Divisions & Territorial Disputes



Figure 13.38: People's Republic of China (PRC) (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PRC>)



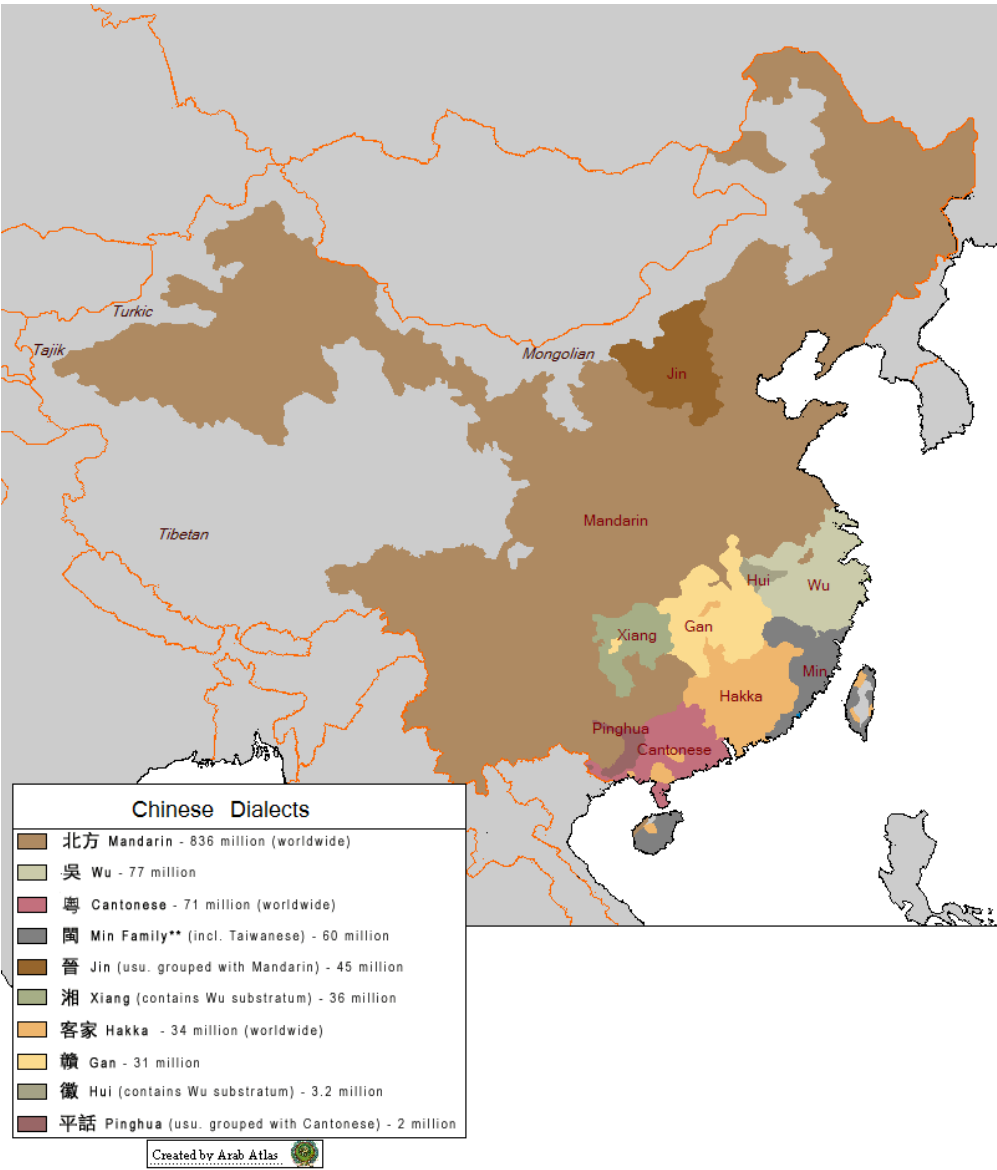


Figure 13.39: Dialects in China ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language))

13.39 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.38 on page 498. The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese2.mlo.

```

8297 (*chinese2)
8298 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
8299 %% From file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs with LaTeX2e
8300 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8301 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
8302 \</chinese2>

```

### 13.40 “Croatian” language: croatian.mld

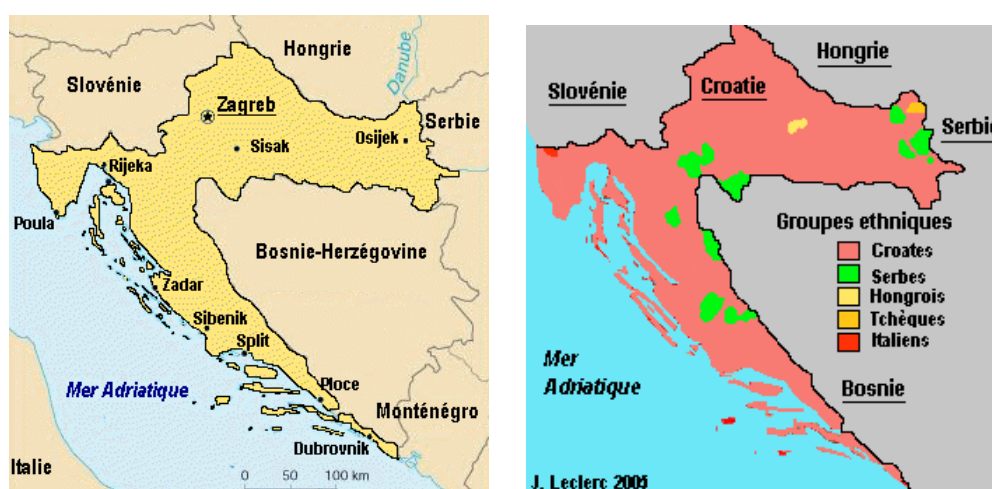


Figure 13.40: Minorities in Croatia (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/croatieinfos.htm> in [274])

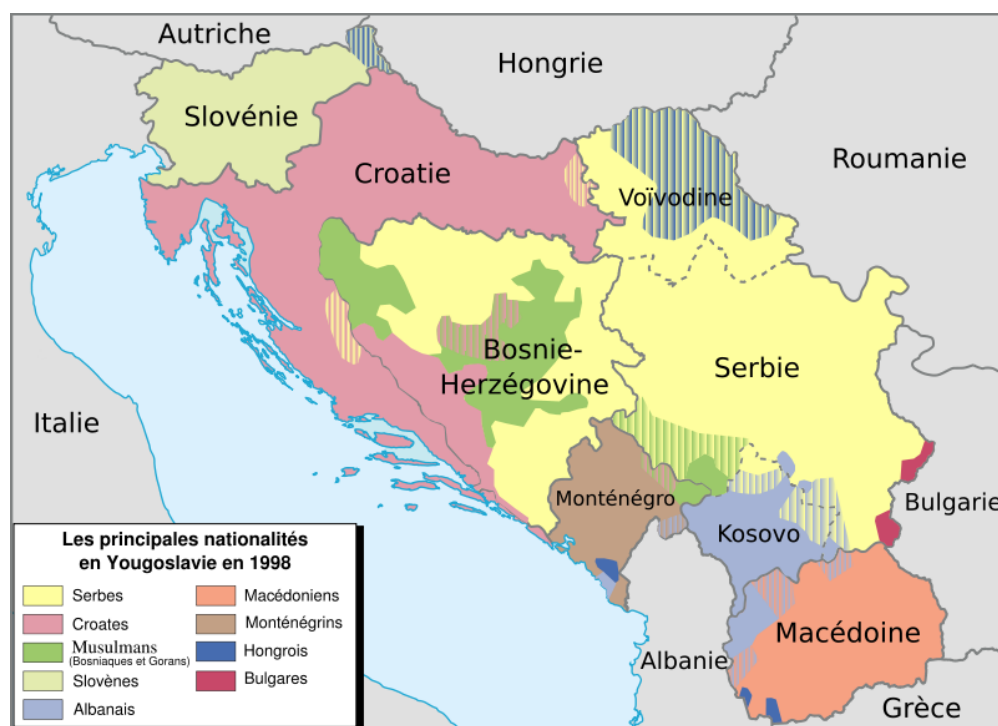
The titles for the “croatian” language (*hrvatski*) are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file (by Alan Paić) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 88]:

**Hrvatski**

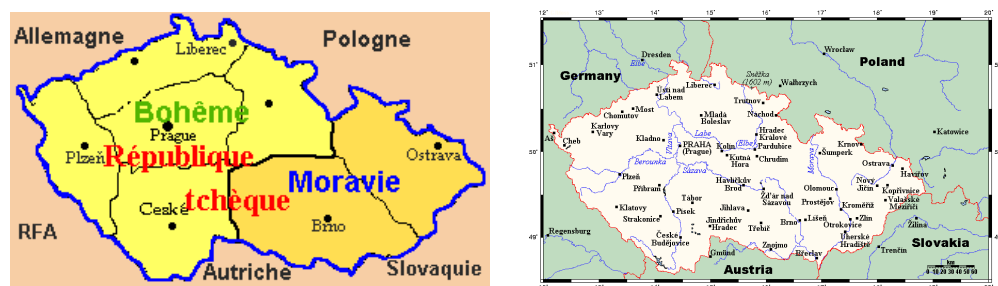
```

8303 (*croatian)
8304 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8305 %% Croatian titles from croatian.dtx (babel). Pai\'{c}, Alan.
8306 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8307 \def\plftitle{Popis slika}%
8308 \def\pltttitle{Popis tablica}%
8309 %%
8310 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8311 \def\mlftitle{Popis slika}%
8312 \def\mltttitle{Popis tablica}%
8313 %%
8314 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8315 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
8316 \def\sltttitle{Tablice}%
8317 \</croatian>

```

Figure 13.41: Main nationalities in ex-Yugoslavia in 1998 (<http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Croate>)

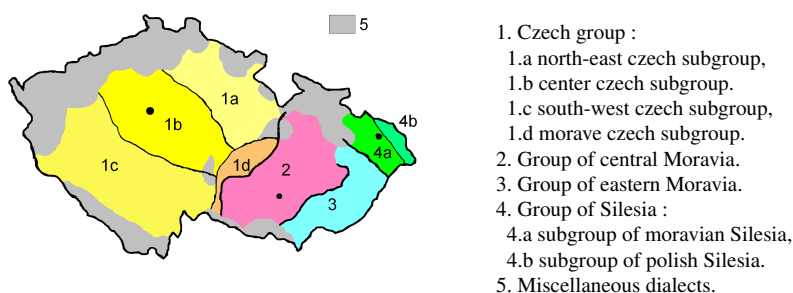
### 13.41 “Czech” language: czech.mld

Figure 13.42: Czech Republic (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/reptcheque.htm> in [274] and [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography\\_of\\_the\\_Czech\\_Republic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_the_Czech_Republic))

The titles for the “czech” language (*čeština*, *český jazyk*) are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Miloš V. LOKAJČEK) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 86]:

```

8318 (*czech)
8319 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2007/12/04]%
8320 % Czech titles from czech.dtx (babel). Lokaj{\'\{i\}}\v{c}ek, Milo\v{s} V.
8321 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
8322 \def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
```

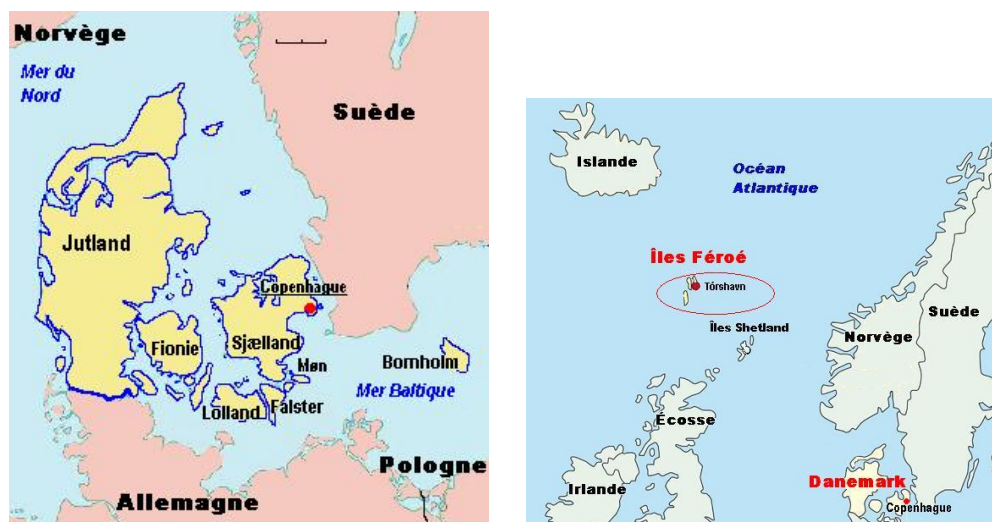
Figure 13.43: Czech dialects (<http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tchèque>)

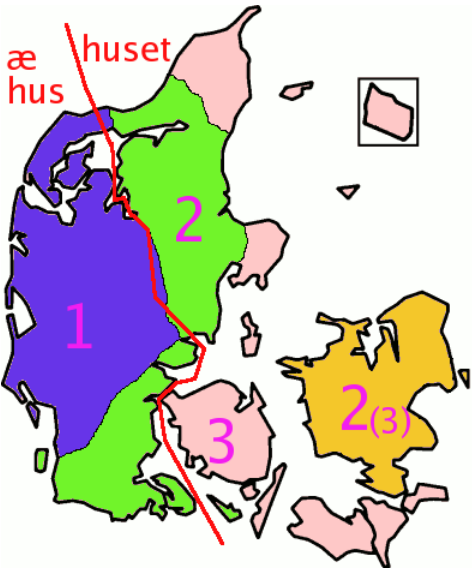
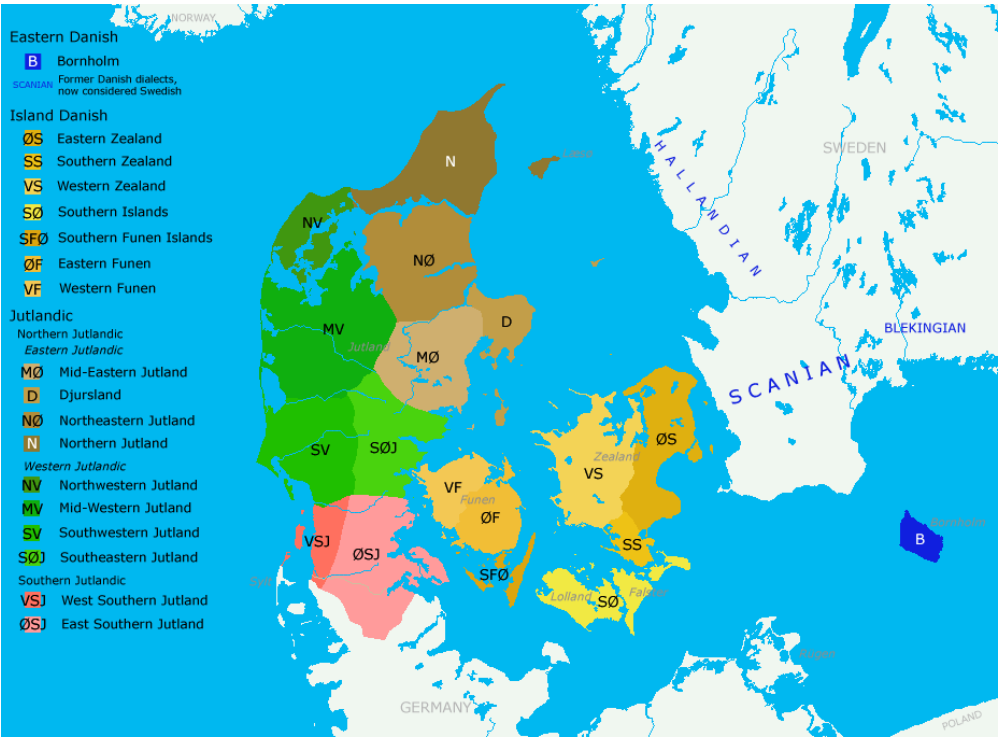
```

8323 \def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8324 %%
8325 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
8326 \def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\{r\{u\}}%
8327 \def\mltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8328 %%
8329 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
8330 \def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\{r\{u\}}%
8331 \def\sltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8332 </czech>

```

## 13.42 “Danish” language: danish.mld

Figure 13.44: Denmark and Faeroe Islands (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/danemarkcarte.htm> and [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/feroe\\_carte1.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/feroe_carte1.htm) in [274])



The distribution of one, two, and three grammatical genders in Danish dialects. In Zealand (*Sjælland*) the transition from three to two genders has happened fairly recently. West of the red line the definite article goes before the word as in English or German; east of the line it takes the form of a suffix.

Figure 13.45: Danish dialects ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Danish\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Danish_language))

The titles for the “danish” language<sup>18</sup> are taken from the `danish.dtx` file (by Henning LARSEN) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 84]:

```

8333 <*danish>
8334 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8335 %% Danish titles from danish.dtx (babel). Larsen, Henning (larsen@cernvm.cern.ch)
8336 \def\ptctitle{Indhold}%
8337 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
8338 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
8339 %%
8340 \def\mtctitle{Indhold}%
8341 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
8342 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
8343 %%
8344 \def\stctitle{Indhold}%
8345 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
8346 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
8347 </danish>

```

### 13.43 “Devanagari” language: `devanagari.mld`

देवनागरी

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the `devanagari.sty` file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the `Devanāgarī` package [337] (Devanāgarī). See also section 13.85 on page 542.

\dn Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.  
 \qva See also [139] about the hindi language.

\re

\rs 8348 <\*devanagari>

```

\8 8349 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]%
8350 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles from devanagari.sty by
8351 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. & Wagner, Zden\v{e}k &
8352 %% Smith, John & Carmody, Kevin & Mahoney, Richard & Wujastyk, Dominik
8353 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8354 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8355 \def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8356 %%
8357 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8358 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8359 \def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8360 %%
8361 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8362 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8363 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8364 </devanagari>

```

<sup>18</sup>The danish (*dansk*) language is spoken in Denmark, in the Faeroe Islands and in Greenland.

## 13.44 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

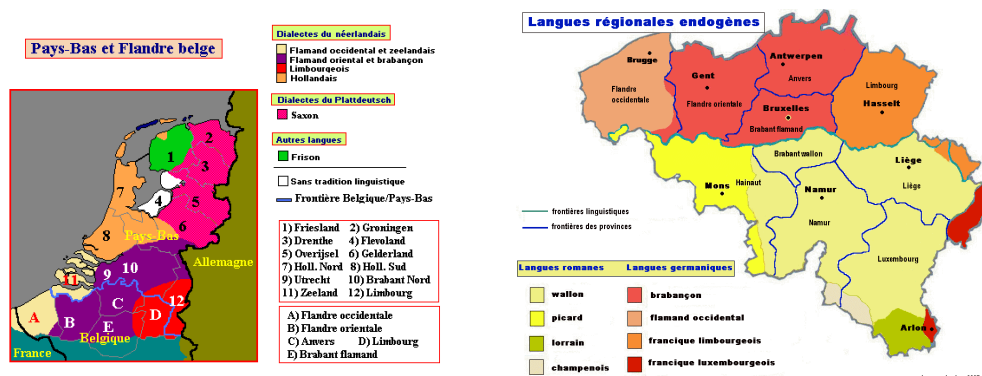


Figure 13.46: Languages in the Netherlands and in Belgium ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/paysbas\\_Ing\\_Map.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/paysbas_Ing_Map.htm) and [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/belgique\\_Ing-regionales.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/belgique_Ing-regionales.htm) in [274])

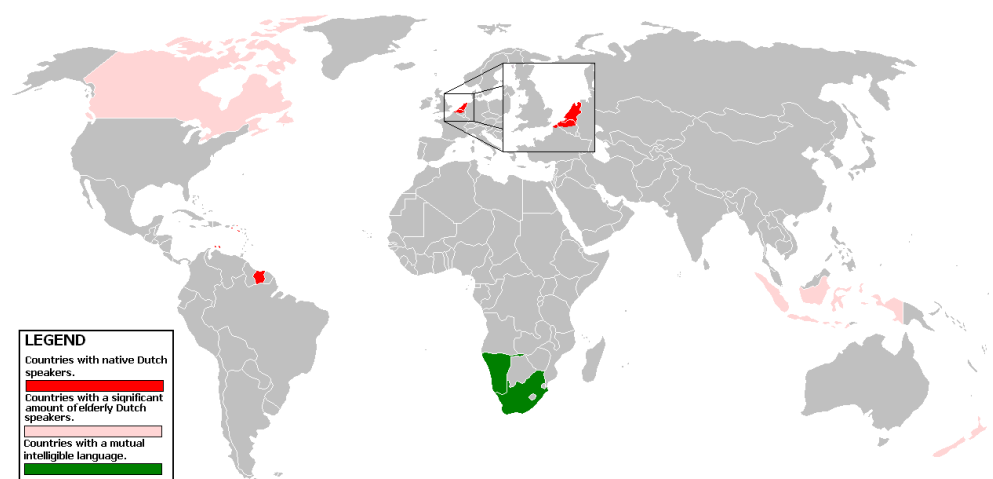


Figure 13.47: The dutch language in the world (<http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Néerlandais>)

The titles for the “dutch” language<sup>19</sup> are taken from the dutch.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [54, 59, 60]:

```
8365 <{*dutch}>
8366 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8367 %% Dutch titles from dutch.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8368 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8369 \def\plftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
8370 \def\pltttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
8371 %%
8372 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
```

<sup>19</sup>The dutch language (*nederlands*) is spoken in the Netherlands and a part of Belgium; see figure 13.46.



```

8373 \def\mlftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
8374 \def\mltttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
8375 %%
8376 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8377 \def\slftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
8378 \def\sltttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
8379 </dutch>

```

### 13.45 “English” language: english.mld

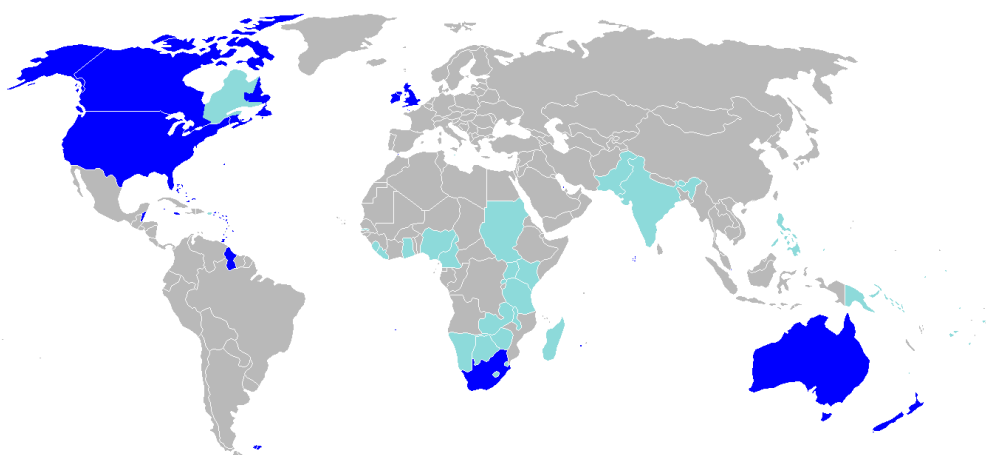


Figure 13.48: Anglophone areas ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_language))

The titles for the “english” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [55, 59, 60]. *The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory, because english is the default language.* See also sections 13.7 on page 475, 13.13 on page 478, 13.28 on page 491, 13.33 on page 494, 13.134 on page 575, 13.181 on page 612, and 13.185 on page 615.



```

8380 <(*english)
8381 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8382 %% English titles from english.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8383 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
8384 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
8385 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables}%
8386 %%
8387 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8388 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8389 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8390 %%
8391 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8392 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8393 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
8394 </english>

```



## 13.46 “English1” language: english1.mld

`\ifnum` The titles for the “english1” language come from the `english.dtx` file (written by  
`\value` Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [55, 59, 60], with some adaptations for the  
`\Roman` part-level titles.

```

8395 <*english1>
8396 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]%
8397 %% English titles from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8398 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8399 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8400   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
8401   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8402 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8403   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
8404   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8405 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8406   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
8407   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8408 %%
8409 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8410 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8411 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8412 %%
8413 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8414 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8415 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
8416 </english1>

```

## 13.47 “English2” language: english2.mld

`\mtcEnglishIIpart` The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the `english.dtx` file (written  
`\ifcase` by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [55, 59, 60], with some adaptations for the titles  
`\value` at the part level.  
`\Roman`

```

8417 <*english2>
8418 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]%
8419 %% English titles from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8420 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8421 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8422 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or the Third Part
8423 \or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or the Sixth Part
8424 \or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or the Ninth Part
8425 \or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or the Twelfth Part
8426 \or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part
8427 \or the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part
8428 \or the Seventeenth Part\or the Eighteenth Part
8429 \or the Nineteenth Part\or the Twentieth Part

```

```

8430 \else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
8431 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8432 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8433 \def\plttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8434 %%
8435 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8436 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8437 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
8438 %%
8439 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8440 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8441 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8442 \end{english2}

```

### 13.48 “Esperant” language: `esperant.mld`

The titles for the “esperant” (esperanto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 93]. The esperanto artificial language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Ludwig Lejzer ZAMENHOF<sup>20</sup> (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```

8443 \begin{esperant}
8444 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]%
8445 %% Esperanto titles from esperanto.dtx (babel) Ruiz-Altaba, Marti & Knappen, Jörg
8446 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8447 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8448 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8449 %%
8450 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
8451 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8452 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8453 %%
8454 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
8455 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8456 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8457 \end{esperant}

```

### 13.49 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.48):

<sup>20</sup>See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L.L.\\_Zamenhof](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L.L._Zamenhof), <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information; his first names are sometimes spelled “Ludvic Lazarus” or “Louis-Lazare”, with small variations.

```

8458 ⟨*esperanto⟩
8459 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8460 ⟨/esperanto⟩

```

## 13.50 “Estonian” language: estonian.mld



Figure 13.49: Estonia (<http://www.estonica.org/eng/maps/index-eng.html>, under the Creative Commons License, see [http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en\\_GB](http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en_GB))

The titles for the “estonian” language<sup>21</sup> are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 94]:

```

8461 ⟨*estonian⟩
8462 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8463 %% Estonian titles from estonian.dtx (babel) Saar, Enn
8464 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8465 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
8466 \def\pltttitle{Tabelid}%
8467 %%
8468 \def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
8469 \def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
8470 \def\mltttitle{Tabelid}%
8471 %%
8472 \def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
8473 \def\slftitle{Joonised}%
8474 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
8475 ⟨/estonian⟩

```

<sup>21</sup> Estonian (*eesti keel*) is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.

### 13.51 “Ethiopia” language: `ethiopia.mld`

\eth@doaltchar  
የኢትዮጵያ

The titles for the “ethiopia” language (amharic, *āmariīña*) are taken from the `ethiop` package [44] (written by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.53. See figure 13.50 on the following page for the repartition of the various ethiopian dialects.

```
8476 <*ethiopia>
8477 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8478 %% Ethiopian titles. Needs special fonts.
8479 \def\ptctitle{yezate}%
8480 \def\plftitle{%
8481     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8482 \def\plttitle{%
8483     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8484 %%
8485 \def\mtctitle{yezate}%
8486 \def\mlftitle{%
8487     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8488 \def\mlttitle{%
8489     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8490 %%
8491 \def\stctitle{yezate}%
8492 \def\slftitle{%
8493     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8494 \def\slttitle{%
8495     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8496 </ethiopia>
```

### 13.52 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

\mtcselectlanguage The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.51).

```
8497 <*ethiopian>
8498 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
8499 </ethiopian>
```

### 13.53 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [44] (by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51.



Figure 13.50: Ethiopian languages areas (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/ethiopie-prov.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/ethiopie.htm> in [274]; see also [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography\\_of\\_Ethiopia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_Ethiopia))

```

8500 <*ethiopian2>
8501 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]%
8502 %% Ethiopian titles with Omega. Needs special fonts
8503 \def\ptctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
8504 \def\plftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8505 \def\pltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
8506  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8507 %%
8508 \def\mtctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
8509 \def\mlftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8510 \def\mltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
8511  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8512 %%
8513 \def\stctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
8514 \def\slftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8515 \def\sltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
8516  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8517 </ethiopian2>

```

### 13.54 “Farsi1” language: farsi1.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan (see figure 13.51 on the next page). The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX [152] system<sup>22</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.55. The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

فارسی تک

```

8518 <*farsi1>
8519 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]\mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
8520 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8521 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu), Hassan Abolhassani, & others.
8522 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8523 </farsi1>

```

### 13.55 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d|o]

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan (see figure 13.51 on the next page). The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system [152]<sup>22</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.54.

<sup>22</sup>By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>





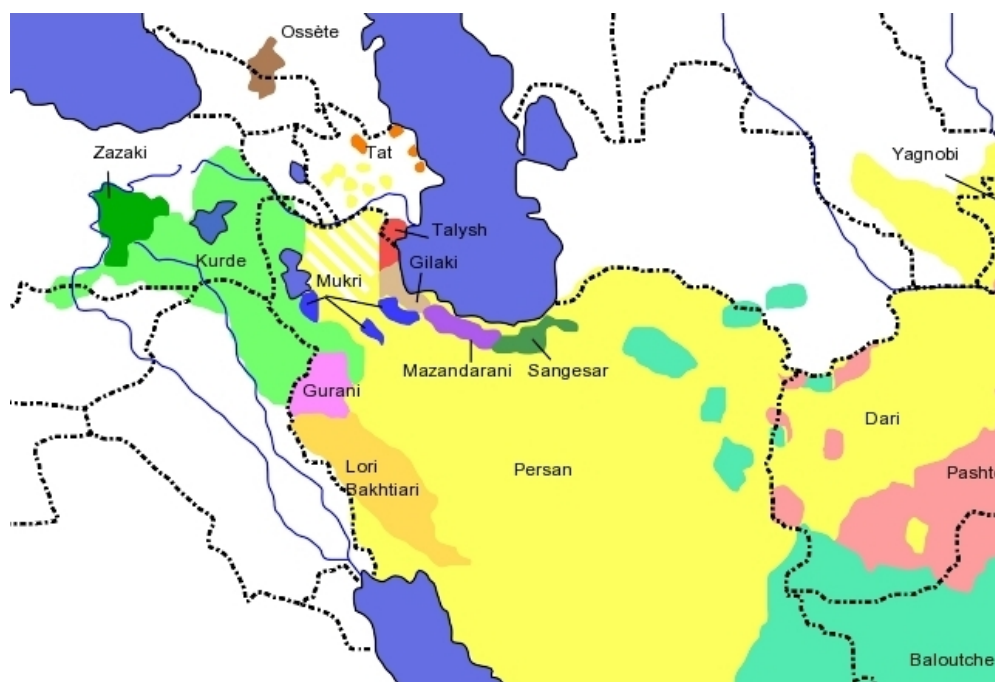
Figure 13.51: Farsi language areas (<http://www.farsinet.com/farsi>; see also [http://www.farsinet.com/farsi/linguistic\\_composition\\_of\\_iran.html](http://www.farsinet.com/farsi/linguistic_composition_of_iran.html))

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load farsi2.mlo.

```

8524 <farsi2>
8525 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]\mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8526 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8527 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi, Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8528 %% Hassan Abolhassani, & others. Site: http://www.farsitex.org
8529 </farsi2>

```

Figure 13.52: Iranian tongues (<http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Persan>)

### 13.56 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

\FR There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan (see figure 13.51 on the page before). The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.ldf` file in the *Arabi* system[226], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

8530 <{*farsi3}
8531 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]%
8532 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system by Youssef Jabri.
8533 \def\ptctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8534 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8535 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8536 %%
8537 \def\mtctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8538 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8539 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8540 %%
8541 \def\stctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8542 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8543 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8544 </farsi3>

```



## 13.57 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

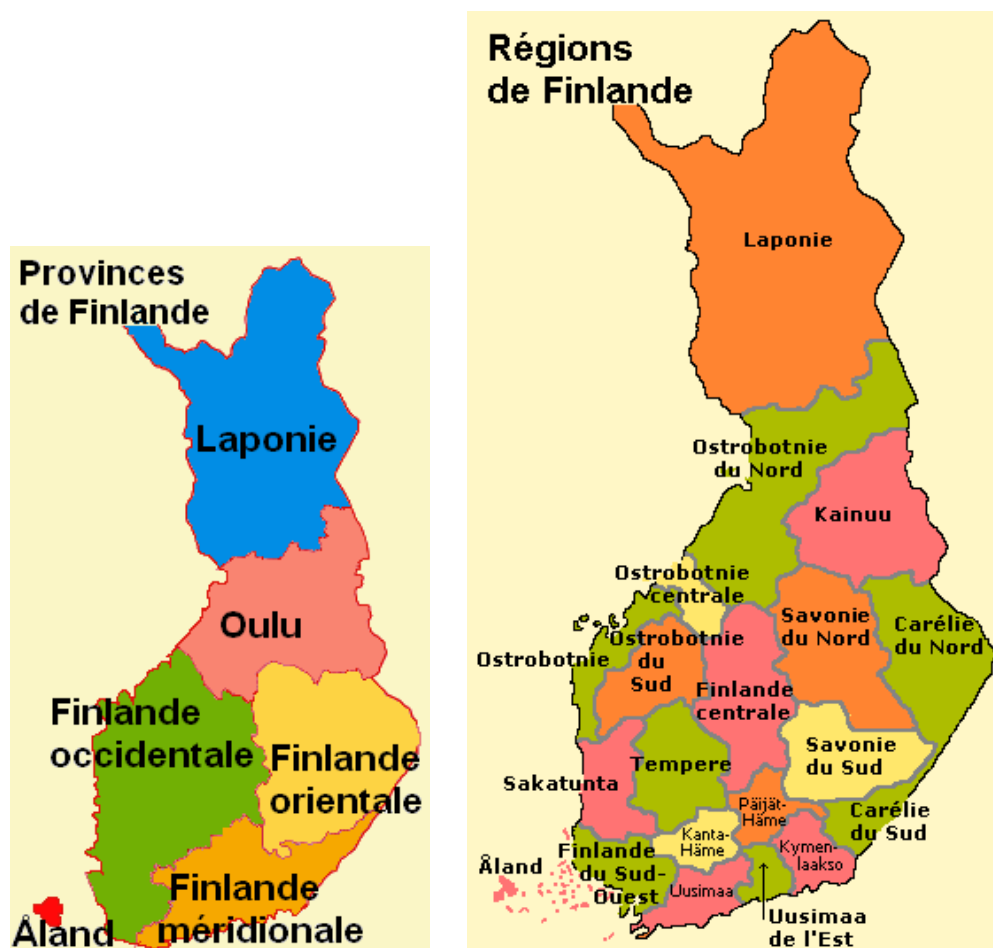


Figure 13.53: Finland ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/finlande\\_regions.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/finlande_regions.htm) in [274]; see also [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltic-Finnic\\_languages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltic-Finnic_languages))

The titles for the “finnish” language (*suomi*) are taken from the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 79]. See also section 13.58 on the following page.

```

8545 (*finnish)
8546 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]%
8547 %% Finnish titles from finnish.dtx (babel). Kanerva, Mikko & Reino, Keranen
8548 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8549 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8550 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8551 %%
8552 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8553 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8554 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%

```

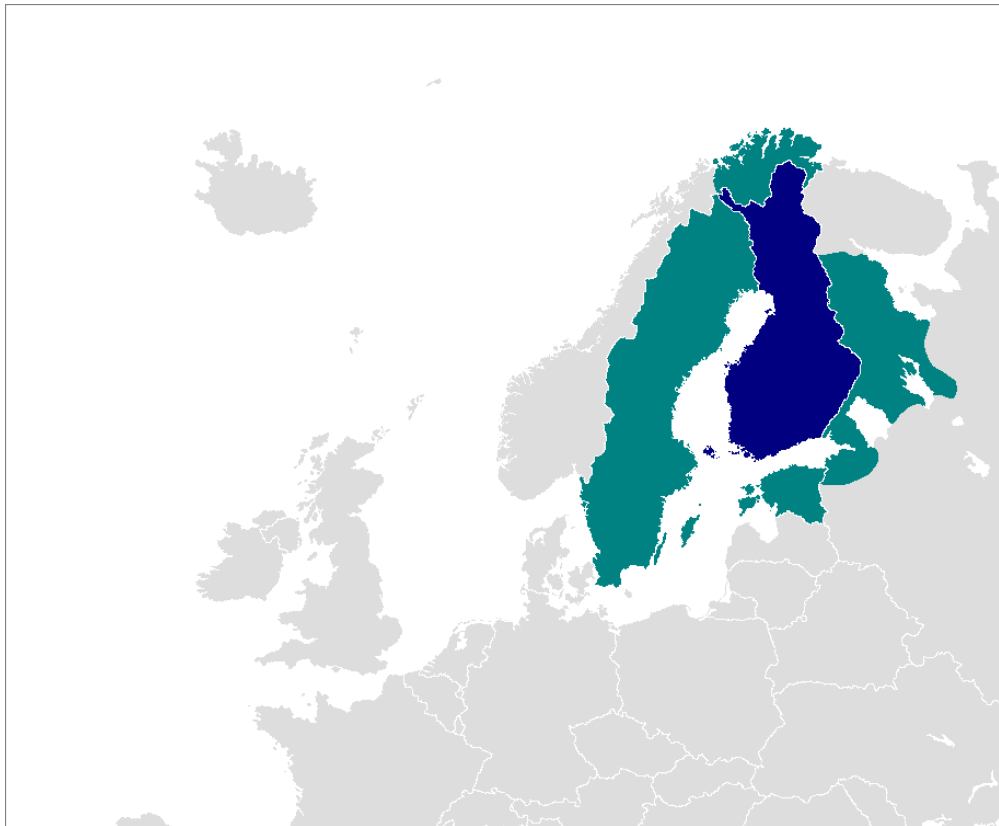


Figure 13.54: Areas of the Finnish language – blue: official language; dark green: spoken by a minority ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finnish\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finnish_language))

```
8555 %%
8556 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt\o}%
8557 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8558 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
8559 </finnish>
```

## 13.58 “Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 79]. See also section 13.57 on the page before.

```
8560 <(*finnish2)
8561 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8562 %% Finnish titles (variant) from finnish.dtx (babel). Kanerva, Mikko & Reino, Keranen
8563 \def\ptctitle{Sis\allys}%
8564 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
```

Figure 13.55: Finnish dialects ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finnish\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finnish_language))

```

8565 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8566 %%
8567 \def\mtctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8568 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
8569 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8570 %%
8571 \def\stctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8572 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
8573 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
8574 </finnish2>

```

## 13.59 “Francais” language: francais.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “français”<sup>23</sup> language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file french.mld (see section 13.60 on the following page):

<sup>23</sup>The right spelling is “français”, but I did not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

```

8575 (*français)
8576 \ProvidesFile{français.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8577 </français>

```

### 13.60 “French” language: french.mld

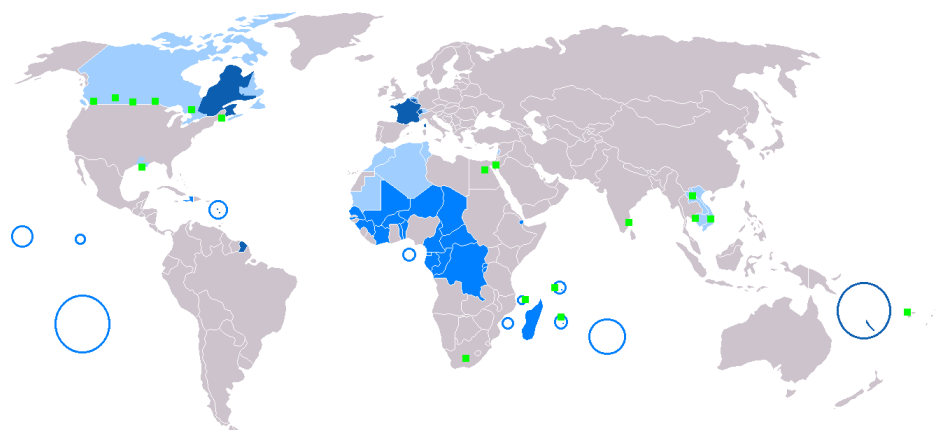


Figure 13.56: Francophone areas ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_language))

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the babel package [59, 60, 74]. See also sections 13.2 on page 471, 13.3 on page 471, 13.34 on page 494, 13.59 on the preceding page, 13.63 on page 523, 13.64 on page 523, and 13.65 on page 523.

```

8578 (*french)
8579 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]%
8580 %% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
8581 \def\ptctitle{Table des mati`eres}%
8582 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
8583 \def\plttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
8584 %%
8585 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8586 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8587 \def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
8588 %%
8589 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8590 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8591 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8592 </french>

```

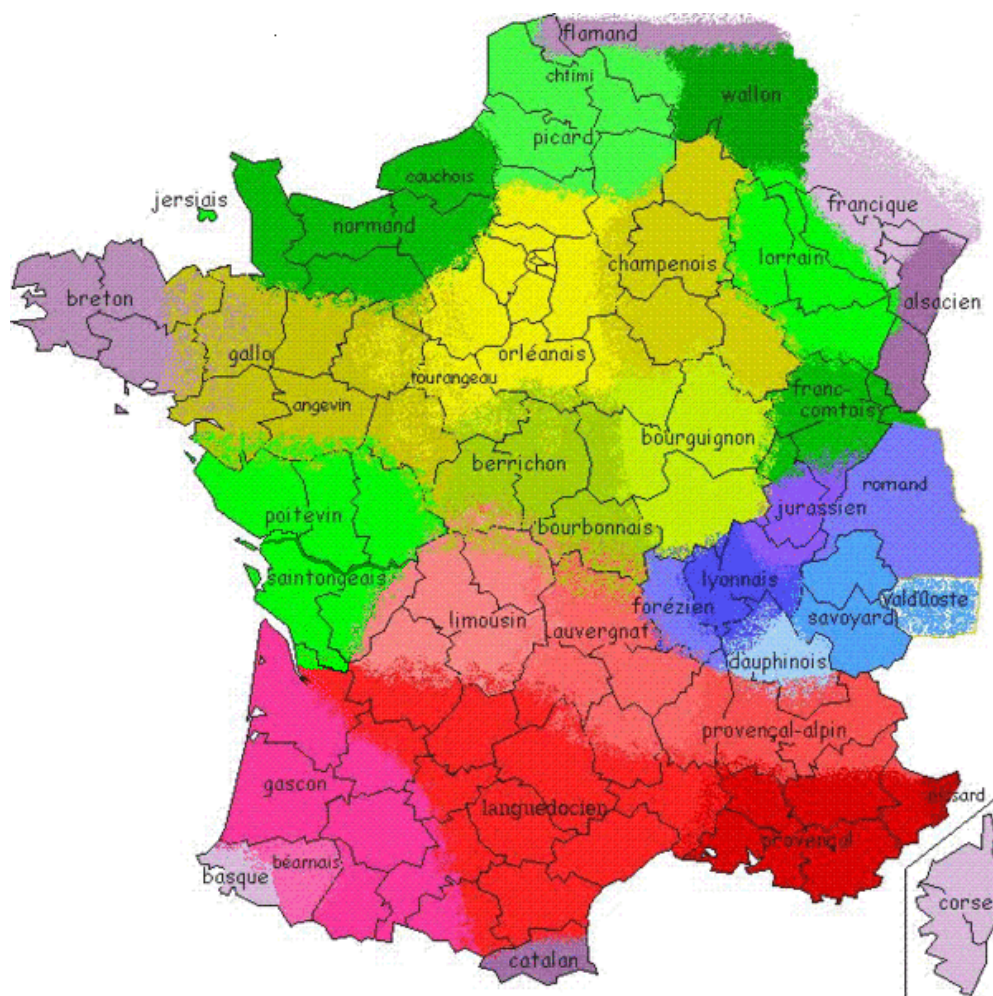


Figure 13.57: Regional dialects in France ([http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Langues\\_régionales\\_de\\_France](http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Langues_régionales_de_France))

### 13.61 “French1” language: french1.mld

\ifnum The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx (by Daniel FLIPO) file  
 \value in the babel package [59, 60, 74], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.  
 \Roman

```

8593 (*french1)
8594 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]%
8595 %% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
8596 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8597 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8598   Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8599   \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8600 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax

```

```

8601 Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8602 \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8603 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8604 Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8605 \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8606 %%
8607 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8608 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8609 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8610 %%
8611 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8612 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8613 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8614 </french1>

```

## 13.62 “French2” language: french2.mld

`\mtcFrenchIIpart` The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 74], with some adaptations for the part-level titles<sup>24</sup>. See also section 9.5.8 on page 270, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 93.

`\ifmtcsecondpart`

`\ifnum`

`\value`

`\Roman`

```

8615 <*\french2>
8616 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]%
8617 %% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
8618 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPDF)
8619 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8620 \or premi\`ere partie\or
8621 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\`eme\fi} partie\or
8622 troisi\`eme partie\or quatri\`eme partie\or cinq\`eme partie\or
8623 sixi\`eme partie\or septi\`eme partie\or huiti\`eme partie\or
8624 neuvi\`eme partie\or dixi\`eme partie\or onzi\`eme partie\or
8625 douzi\`eme partie\or treizi\`eme partie\or quatorzi\`eme partie\or
8626 quinze\`eme partie\or seizi\`eme partie\or dix-septi\`eme partie\or
8627 dix-huiti\`eme partie\or dix-neuvi\`eme partie\or
8628 vingti\`eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8629 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8630 Sommaire \else Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8631 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8632 Liste des figures\else
8633 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8634 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8635 Liste des tableaux\else
8636 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8637 %%
8638 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8639 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8640 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%

```

<sup>24</sup>This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

```
8641 %%  
8642 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%  
8643 \def\slftitle{Figures}%  
8644 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%  
8645 \</french2>
```

### 13.63 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 520.

```
8646 \<frenchb>  
8647 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%  
8648 \</frenchb>
```

### 13.64 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 520. See also [168].

```
8649 \<frenchle>  
8650 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%  
8651 \</frenchle>
```

### 13.65 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 520. See also [169, 170].

```
8652 \<frenchpro>  
8653 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%  
8654 \</frenchpro>
```

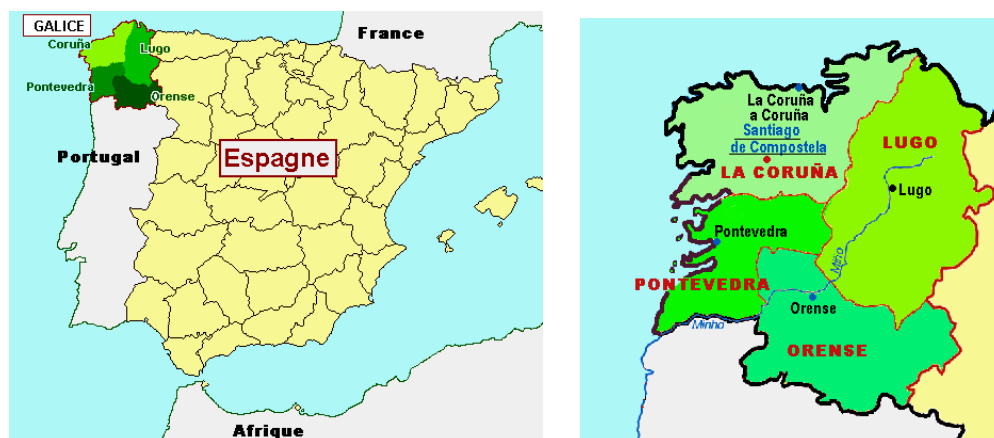


Figure 13.58: Galician language areas ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnegalice\\_carte.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnegalice_carte.htm) in [274])

### 13.66 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language (*galego*)<sup>25</sup> are taken from the galician.dtx file, (by Manuel CARRIBA and JAVIER A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA) derived from the spanish.dtx file (by JAVIER BEZOS) in the babel package [59, 60, 69, 70]:

```

8655 <*galician>
8656 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8657 %% Galician titles from galician.dtx (babel).
8658 %% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
8659 %% Javier A. Música de Rivera (jmugica@digi21.net)
8660 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8661 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8662 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8663 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8664 %%
8665 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8666 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\mtctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8667 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8668 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8669 %%
8670 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8671 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\stctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8672 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8673 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8674 </galician>

```

<sup>25</sup> Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela; see figure 13.58.



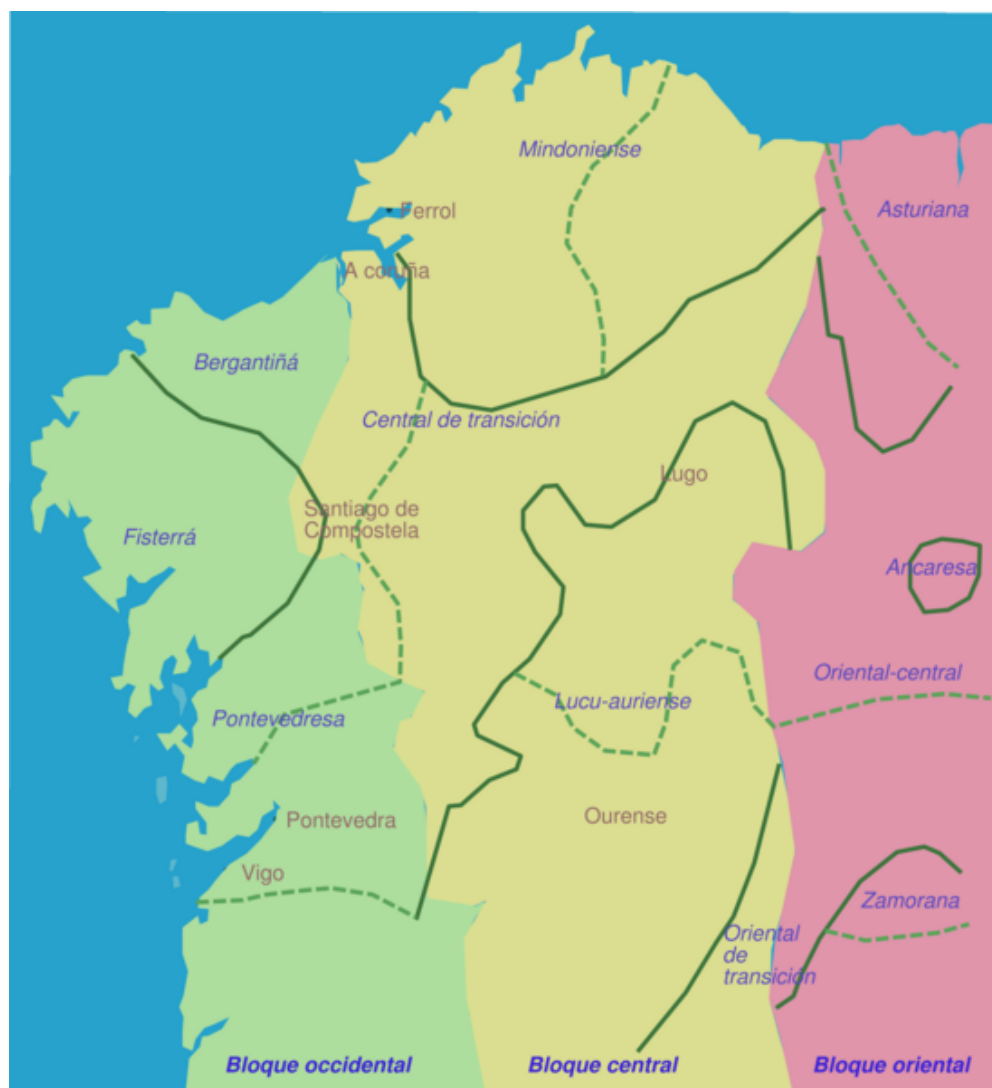


Figure 13.59: Linguistic map of the galician language ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Galicia\\_\(Spain\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Galicia_(Spain)))

### 13.67 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language (*deutsch*) are taken from the babel package [59, 60]. See also the section 13.14 on page 479.

```

8675 (*german)
8676 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8677 %% German titles
8678 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8679 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%

```



Figure 13.60: Germanophone areas in Europa (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/allemand-aire-Ing.htm> in [274]; see also [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/Allemagne\\_dialectes.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/Allemagne_dialectes.htm) in [274])

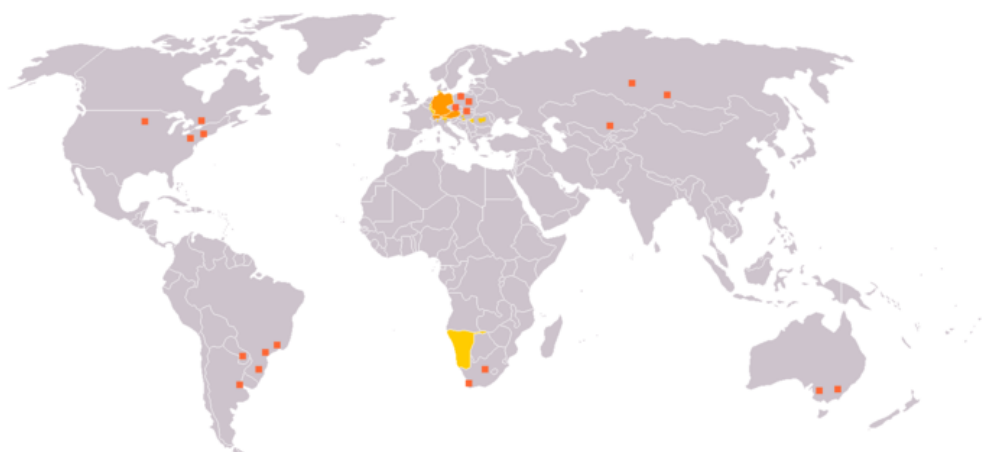


Figure 13.61: Germanophone areas ([http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deutsche\\_Sprache](http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deutsche_Sprache))

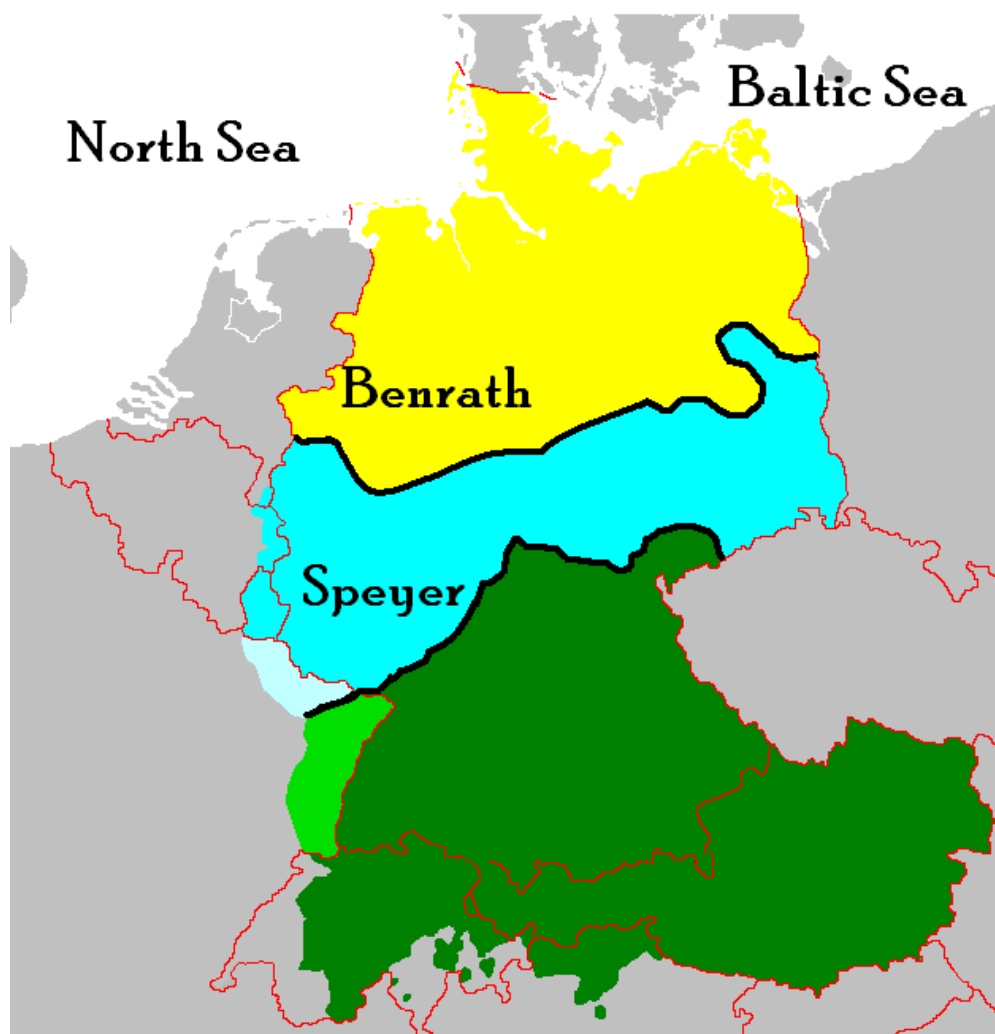


Figure 13.62: German dialects ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German_language))

By the High German consonant shift, the map of German dialects is divided into Upper German (green), Central German (blue), and Low German (yellow). The main isoglosses and the Benrath and Speyer lines are black.

```

8680 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
8681 %%
8682 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8683 \def\mlfttitle{Figuren}%
8684 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
8685 %%
8686 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8687 \def\slfttitle{Figuren}%
8688 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
8689 </german>

```

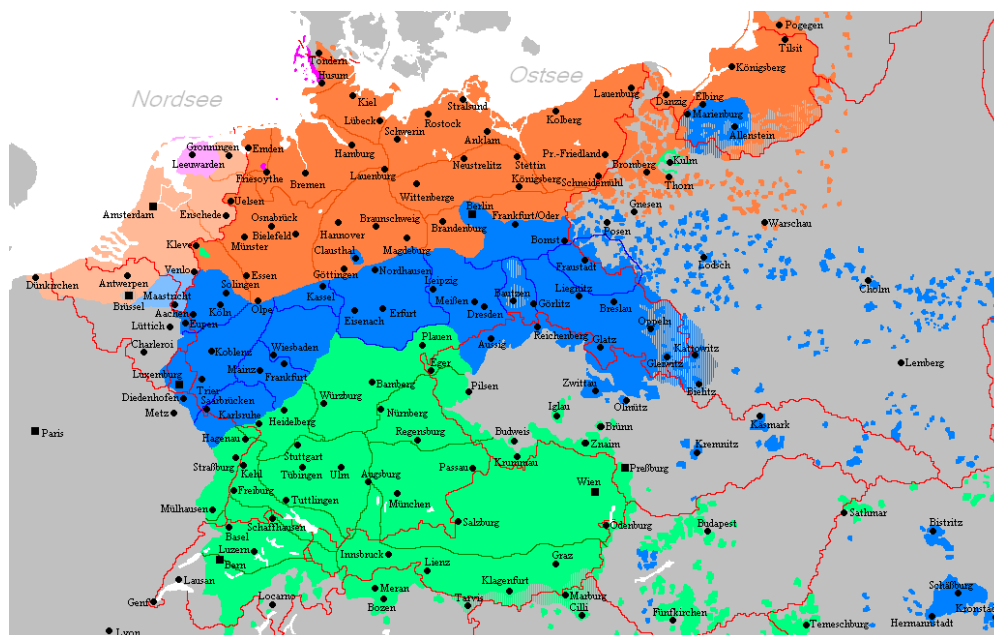


Figure 13.63: The spread of the German language until ca. 1945 in Central Europe ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German_language))

Orange marks Lower German, blue Middle German and green Upper German dialects.

## 13.68 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “`germanb`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLÉ) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 89]:

```

8690 <{*germanb}
8691 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8692 %% German titles (variant) from germanb.dtx (babel)
8693 %% Braams, Johannes~L. & Raichle, Bernd
8694 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8695 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8696 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8697 %%
8698 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8699 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8700 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8701 %%
8702 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8703 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8704 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
8705 </germanb>

```

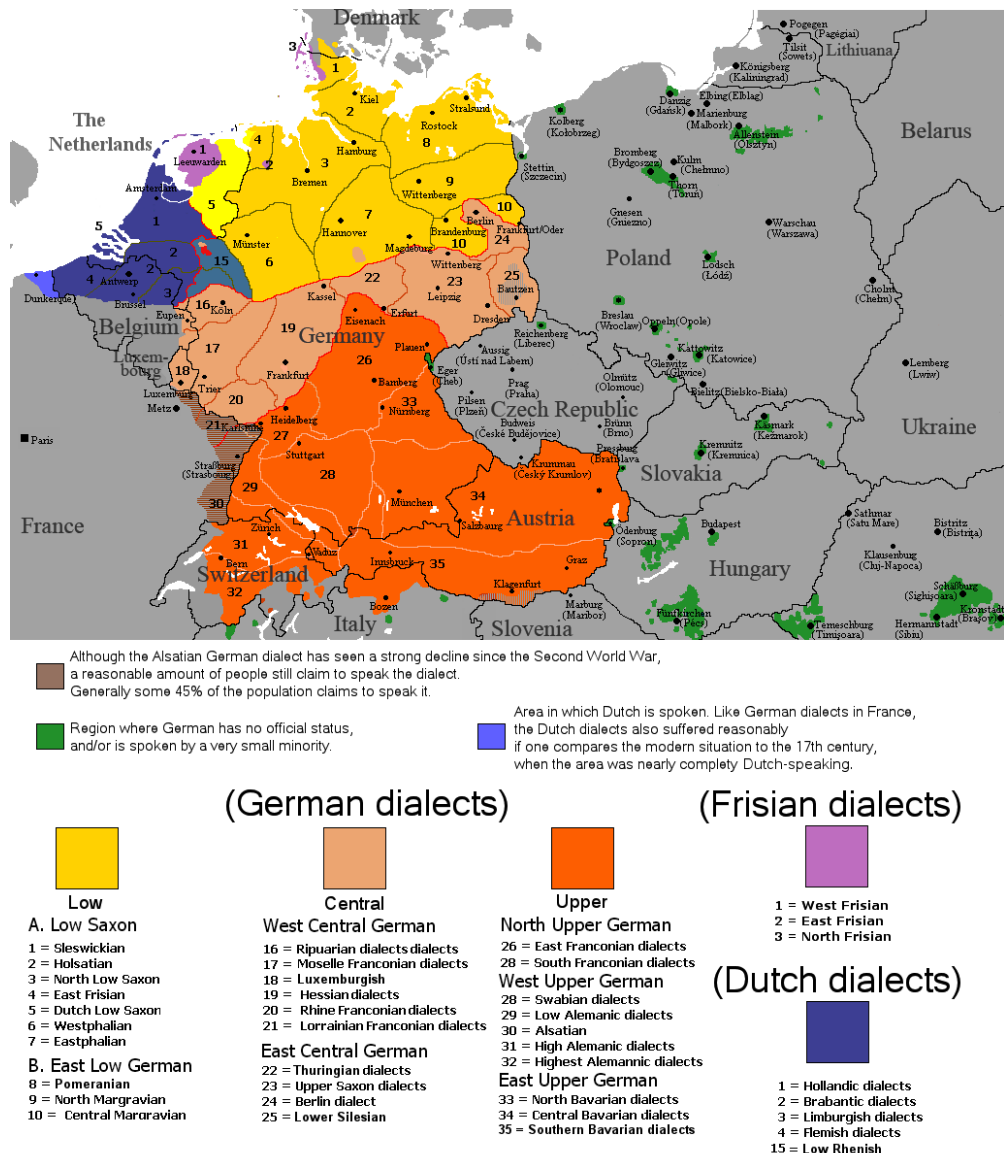


Figure 13.64: Distribution of the major West-Germanic dialectal varieties ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German_language))

### 13.69 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “`germanb2`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language, with short titles. See also section 13.68 on the page before. The titles are taken from the file `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [59, 60]:

```
8706 (*germanb2)
8707 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2007/12/18]%
```

```

8708 %% German titles (variant)
8709 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
8710 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
8711 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8712 %%
8713 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
8714 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
8715 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
8716 %%
8717 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8718 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8719 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8720 </germanb2>

```

## 13.70 “Greek” language: greek.mld

Ελληνικό αλφάβητο

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek, *νέα ελληνικά*) are taken from the greek.dtx file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the babel package [59, 60, 97, 388]. Greek fonts are required.

```

8721 <*greek>
8722 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8723 %% Greek titles from greek.dtx (babel) by Syropoulos, Apostolos. Needs greek fonts.
8724 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8725 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
8726 \def\plttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
8727 %%
8728 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8729 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
8730 \def\mlttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
8731 %%
8732 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8733 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
8734 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
8735 </greek>

```

## 13.71 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-mono” language<sup>26</sup> are taken from the omega-greek.1df file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [252]:

```

8736 <*greek – mono>
8737 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8738 %% from omega-greek.1df (Antomega project). Needs Omega.

```

<sup>26</sup>Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

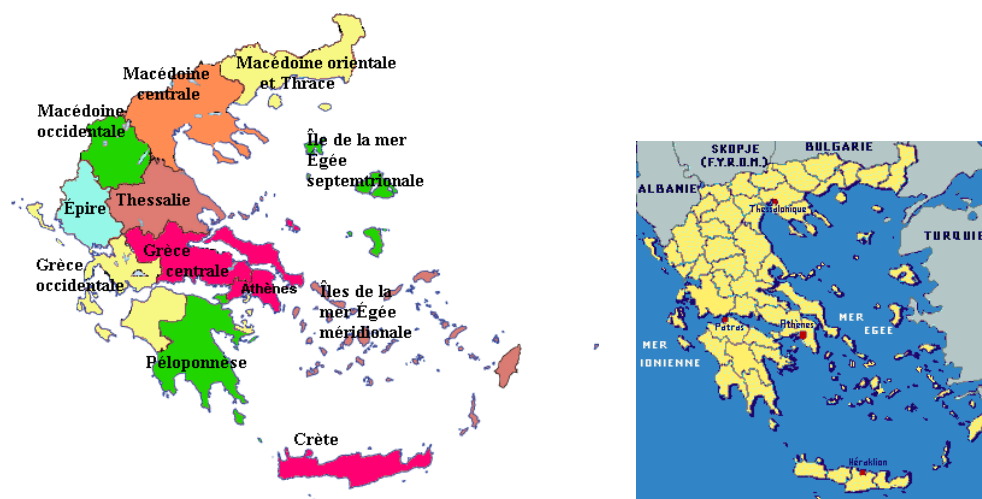


Figure 13.65: Greece (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/grece-admin-map.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/grece.htm> in [274])

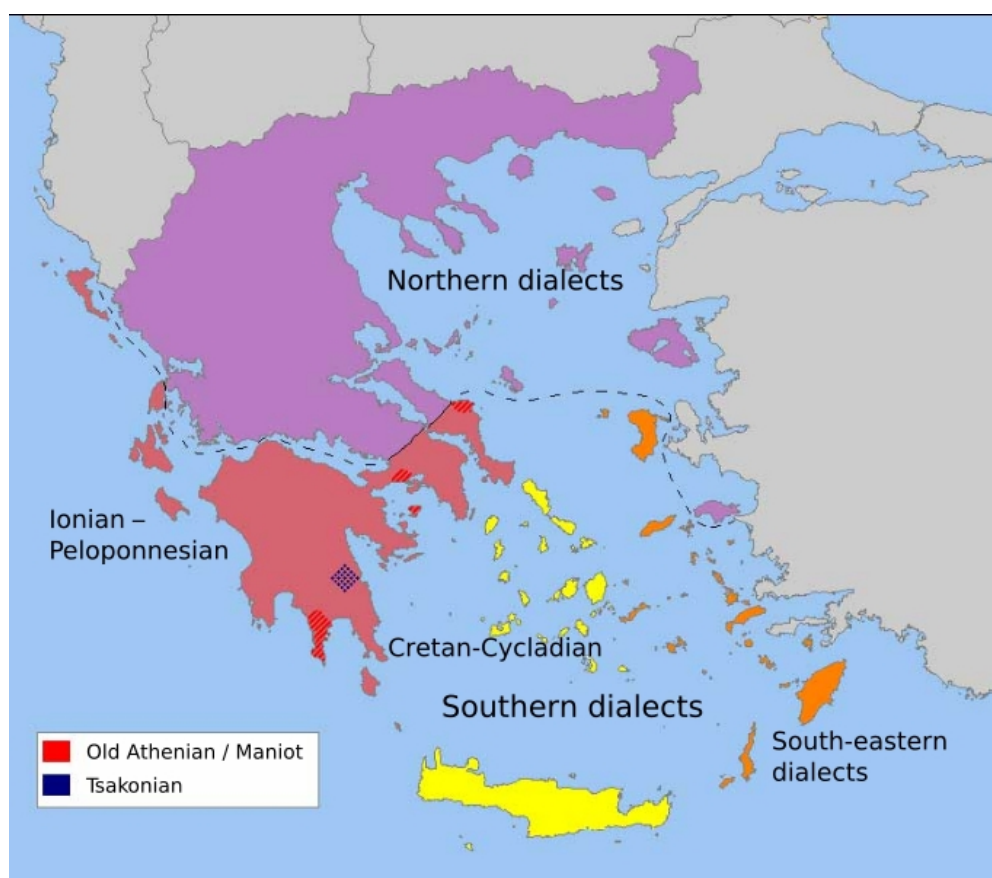


Figure 13.66: Dialects of modern Greek ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Modern\\_Greek](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Modern_Greek))



```

8739%% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8740\def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8741 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8742 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8743\def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8744 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8745 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8746 ^03bd}}%
8747\def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8748 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8749 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8750%%
8751\def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8752 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8753 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8754\def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8755 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8756 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8757 ^03bd}}%
8758\def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8759 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8760 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8761%%
8762\def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8763 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8764 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8765\def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8766 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8767 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8768 ^03bd}}%
8769\def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8770 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8771 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8772</greek – mono>

```

## 13.72 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language<sup>27</sup> are taken from the file omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [252]:

```

8773(*greek – polydemo)
8774\ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8775%% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
8776%% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8777\def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8778 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8779 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8780\def\plftitle{\localgreek%

```

<sup>27</sup>Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.



```

8781 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8782 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8783 ^03bd}}%
8784 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
8785 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8786 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8787 %%
8788 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8789 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8790 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8791 \def\mlfttitle{\localgreek%
8792 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8793 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8794 ^03bd}}%
8795 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8796 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8797 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8798 %%
8799 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8800 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8801 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8802 \def\slfttitle{\localgreek%
8803 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8804 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8805 ^03bd}}%
8806 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8807 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8808 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8809 </greek – polydemo>

```

### 13.73 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language<sup>28</sup> are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [252]:

```

8810 <*greek – polykatha>
8811 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8812 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
8813 %% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8814 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8815 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8816 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8817 \def\plfttitle{\localgreek%
8818 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8819 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9^03bd}}%

```

<sup>28</sup>Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAI, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

8820 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
8821 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8822 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8823 %%
8824 \def\mtcttitle{\localgreek%
8825 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8826 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8827 \def\mlfttitle{\localgreek%
8828 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8829 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9^03bd}}%
8830 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8831 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8832 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8833 %%
8834 \def\stcttitle{\localgreek%
8835 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8836 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8837 \def\slfttitle{\localgreek%
8838 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8839 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9^03bd}}%
8840 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8841 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8842 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8843 </greek – polykatha>

```

### 13.74 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” (guaraní) language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guaraní and Spanish, known as Jopará or Yopará, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [45]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

8844 <*guarani>
8845 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]%
8846 %% Guaraní titles from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos. Input encoding win-gn.def needed.
8847 \def\ptcttitle{\'Indice general}%
8848 \def\plfttitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8849 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8850 %%
8851 \def\mtcttitle{\'Indice general}%
8852 \def\mlfttitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8853 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8854 %%
8855 \def\stcttitle{\'Indice general}%
8856 \def\slfttitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8857 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8858 </guarani>

```



Figure 13.67: Paraguay ([http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/americas/paraguay\\_pol98.pdf](http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/americas/paraguay_pol98.pdf) – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360] – and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/amsudant/paraguay.htm> in [274])

## 13.75 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld[o]

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [413]. See [199, page 150], [201] and [338]. See figure 13.69 on the following page.

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.76 on page 537, 13.77 on page 537, 13.78 on page 538, 13.79 on page 538, 13.80 on page 539, 13.81 on page 539, and 13.82 on page 540.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```
8859 (*hangul1)
8860 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
8861 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8862 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8863 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
8864 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8865 (/hangul1)
```

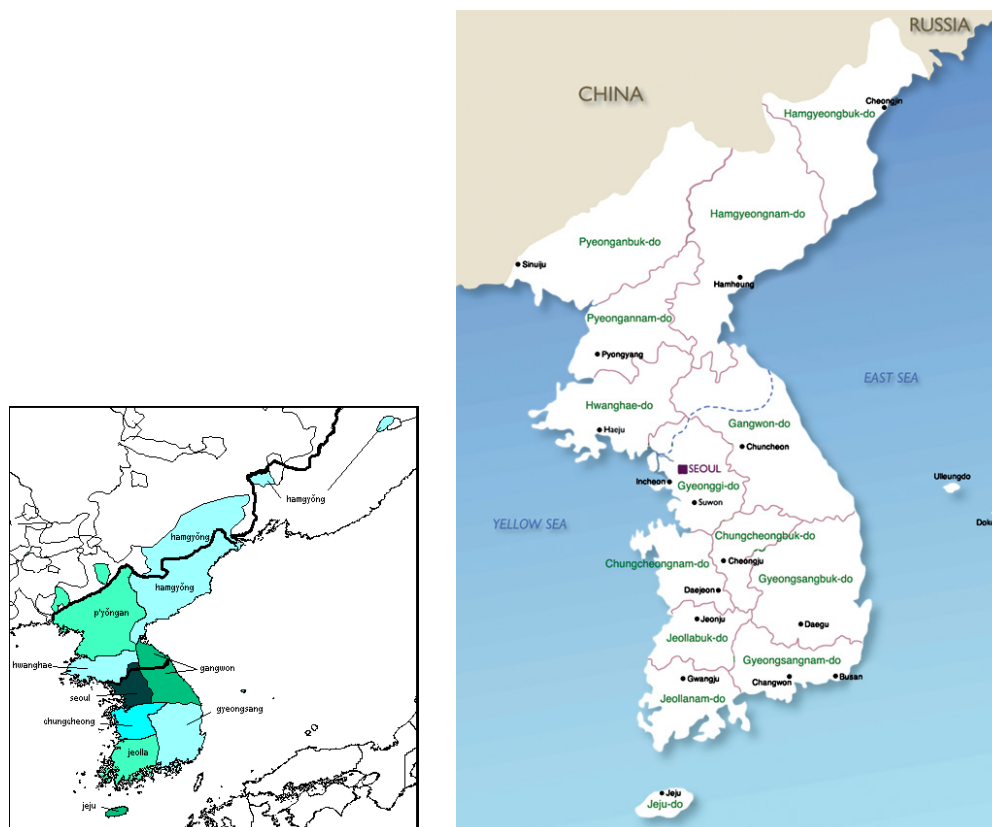


Figure 13.68: Korean language areas ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Korean\\_Language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Korean_Language) and [http://www.korea.net/korea/kor\\_loca.asp?code=A0102](http://www.korea.net/korea/kor_loca.asp?code=A0102))

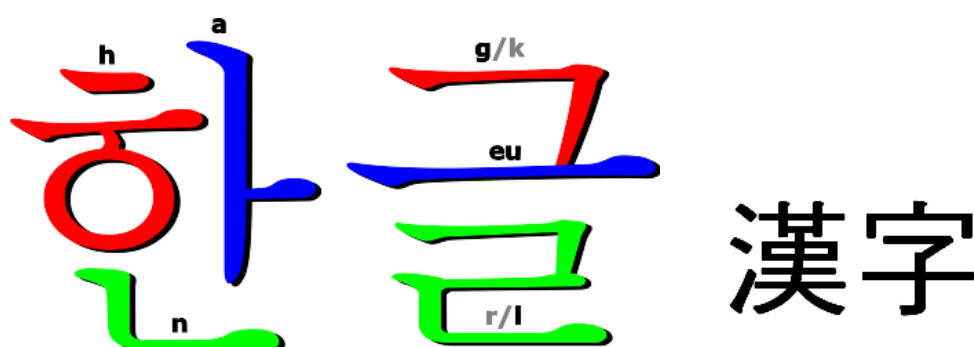


Figure 13.69: Hangul and hanja characters (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hangul> and <http://wiki.galbijim.com/Hanja>; see also <http://wiki.galbijim.com/Korean>)

## 13.76 “Hangul2” language: `hangul2.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file `hangul.cpx` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.75 on page 535, 13.77, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on the next page, 13.80 on page 539, 13.81 on page 539, and 13.82 on page 540.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul2.mlo`.

```
8866 \(*hangul2)
8867 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
8868 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8869 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8870 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003), Hangul captions
8871 %% char. set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8872 \(/hangul2)
```

## 13.77 “Hangul3” language: `hangul3.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file `hangul2.cap` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 on page 535, 13.76, 13.78 on the next page, 13.79 on the following page, 13.80 on page 539, 13.81 on page 539, and 13.82 on page 540.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul3.mlo`.

```
8873 \(*hangul3)
8874 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
8875 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8876 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8877 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2
8878 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8879 \(/hangul3)
```

## 13.78 “Hangul4” language: `hangul4.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file `hangul2.cpx` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 on page 535, 13.76 on the page before, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.79, 13.80 on the following page, 13.81 on the next page, and 13.82 on page 540.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul4.mlo`.

```
8880 \*hangul4
8881 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
8882 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8883 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8884 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2,
8885 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8886 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8887 \end{hangul4}
```

## 13.79 “Hangul-u8” language: `hangul-u8.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda*  $\Lambda$ ) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the H<sub>L</sub>A<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> system [249, in korean] by Un KOAUNghi. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.75 on page 535, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.77 on the page before, 13.78, 13.80 on the next page, 13.81 on the following page, and 13.82 on page 540. See [199, page 150], [201] and [338].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```
8888 \*hangul-u8
8889 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]\mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
8890 %% Hangul captions for Lambda. From the file u8hangul.tex
8891 %% of the HLaTeX package by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8892 \end{hangul-u8}
```

### 13.80 “Hanja1” language: `hanja1.mld.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See figure 13.69 on page 536. See also sections 13.75 on page 535, 13.76 on page 537, 13.77 on page 537, 13.78 on the preceding page, 13.79 on the page before, 13.81, and 13.82 on the next page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```
8893 (*hanja1)
8894 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
8895 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8896 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Hanja captions.
8897 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>, Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8898 %% Character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8899 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8900 </hanja1>
```

### 13.81 “Hanja2” language: `hanja2.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 on page 535, 13.76 on page 537, 13.77 on page 537, 13.78 on the page before, 13.79 on the preceding page, 13.80, and 13.82 on the following page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.

```
8901 (*hanja2)
8902 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
8903 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8904 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Hanja captions.
8905 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>.
8906 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8907 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung). Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
8908 </hanja2>
```

## 13.82 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld[o]

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda*  $\Lambda$ ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the H<sub>A</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X system [249, in korean] by Un KOAUNghi. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.75 on page 535, 13.76 on page 537, 13.77 on page 537, 13.78 on page 538, 13.79 on page 538, 13.80 on the preceding page, and 13.81 on the page before. See [199, page 150], [201] and [338].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja-u8.mlo`.

```
8909 <*hanja - u8>
8910 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]\mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
8911 %% Hanja captions for Lambda. From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
8912 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8913 </hanja - u8>
```

## 13.83 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

עברית

The titles for the “hebrew” language (*ivrit*) are taken from the ArabT<sub>E</sub>X package [256, 257] (by Klaus LAGALLY), with the associated fonts. See also section 13.84 on the following page. See the hebrew alphabet (*alefbet*): <http://www.jewfaq.org/graphics/hebrew.gif>.

```
8914 <*hebrew>
8915 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]%
8916 %% Hebrew titles. Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
8917 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8918 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8919 \def\pltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
8920 %%
8921 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8922 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8923 \def\mltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
8924 %%
8925 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8926 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8927 \def\sltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
8928 </hebrew>
```





Figure 13.70: Israël ([http://www.tifq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/israel\\_carte1.htm](http://www.tifq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/israel_carte1.htm) in [274])

### 13.84 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

\@ensure@R The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris LAVVA and Rama PORRAT) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 85], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.83 on the page before.

```

8929 (*hebrew2)
8930 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]%
8931 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package. Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
8932 %% Need hebrew fonts.
8933 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebta\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %

```

```

8934 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
8935 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmemb\hebtav\ %
8936 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8937 \def\pltttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmemb\hebtav\
8938 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}}%
8939 %%
8940 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
8941 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8942 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmemb\hebtav\ %
8943 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8944 \def\mltttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmemb\hebtav\
8945 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}}%
8946 %%
8947 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
8948 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8949 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmemb\hebtav\ %
8950 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8951 \def\sltttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmemb\hebtav\
8952 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}}%
8953 \end{hebrew2}

```

### 13.85 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load devanagari.mld (see section 13.43 on page 506):

```

8954 \*hindi
8955 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]\mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
8956 \end{hindi}

```

हिंदी

### 13.86 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

\dn The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by  
\qva Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY,  
\re Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [337] (Devanāgarī  
\rs after conversion. See also section 13.43 on page 506. Specific fonts are required. The  
\2 home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.  
\8

```

8957 \*hindi – modern
8958 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]%
8959 %% Hindi modern titles from captions.dn in ‘Devanagari for TeX’
8960 %% by Pandey, Anshuman & Radhakrishnan, C.~V. & Wagner, Zden\v{e}k &
8961 %% Smith, John & Carmody, Kevin & Mahoney, Richard & Wujastyk, Dominik
8962 \def\ptctitle{\@dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8963 \def\plftitle{\@dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%

```

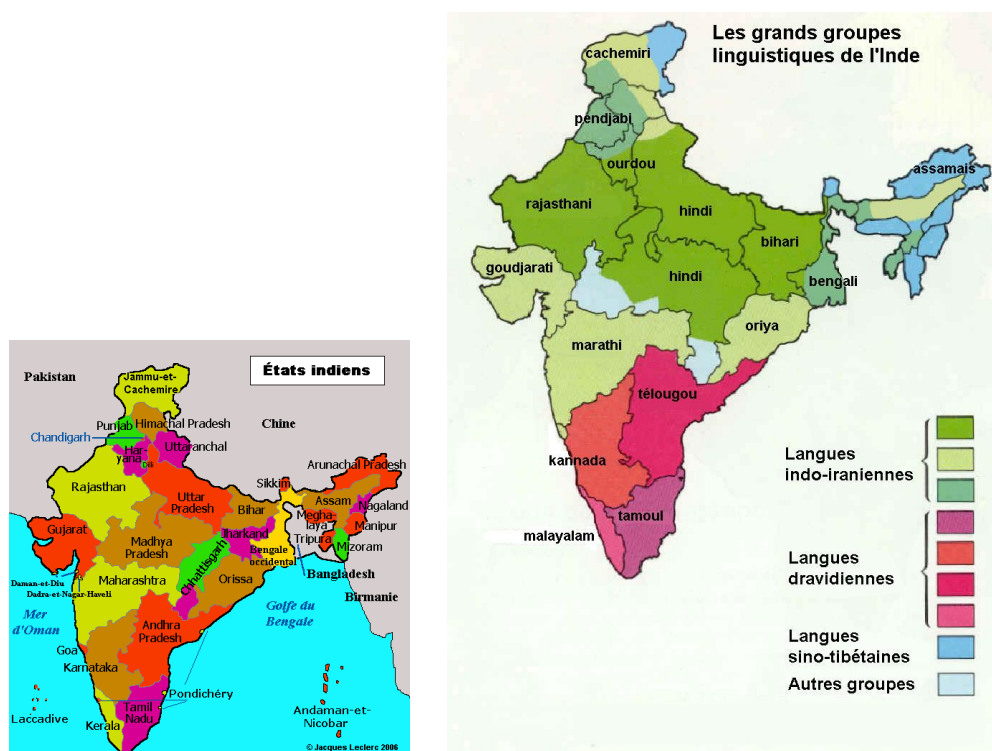


Figure 13.71: Languages in India (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde-carte-etats2.htm> and [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde\\_linguistique.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde_linguistique.htm) in [274]; see also [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde\\_cartepol.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde_cartepol.htm) in [274])

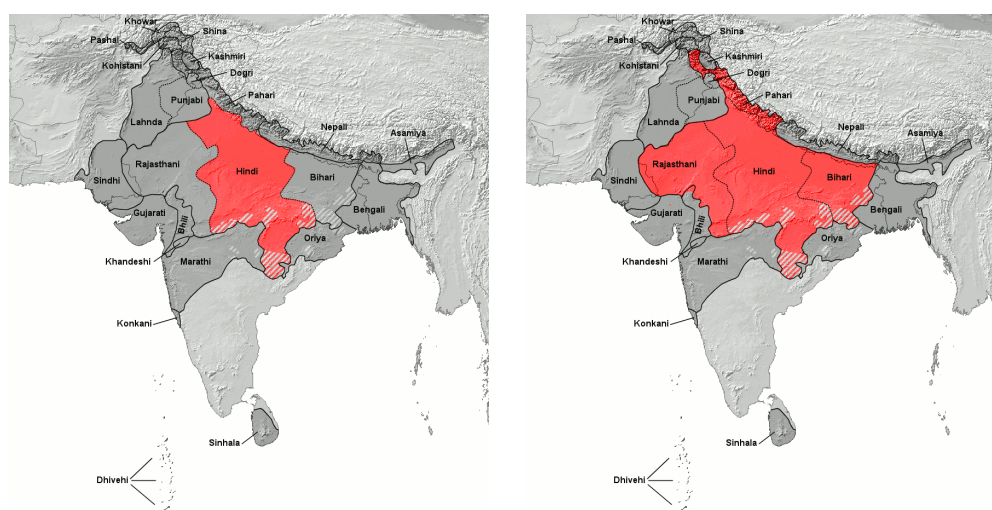


Figure 13.72: Hindi proper (east and west Hindi dialects) and the hindi belt (1991 census) (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hindi>)

```

8964 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8965 %%
8966 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8967 \def\mlfttitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8968 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8969 %%
8970 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8971 \def\slfttitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8972 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8973 \/\hindi – modern)

```

### 13.87 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.115 on page 563.

```

8974 (*hungarian)
8975 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
8976 \/\hungarian)

```

### 13.88 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld



Figure 13.73: Iceland (<http://www.tlq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/islandecarte.htm> in [274] and [http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/europe/iceland\\_pol81.jpg](http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/europe/iceland_pol81.jpg) – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360]); see also <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iceland>)

The titles for the “icelandic” language (*íslenska*) are taken from the `icelandic.dtx` file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 62]. See also [221].

```

8977 <*icelandic>
8978 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8979 %% Icelandic titles from icelandic.dtx (babel)
8980 %% Needs inputenc with 8-bits encoding. Arnason, Einar
8981 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8982 \def\plftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8983 \def\plttitle{T\'{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8984 %%
8985 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8986 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8987 \def\mlttitle{T\'{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8988 %%
8989 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8990 \def\slftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8991 \def\slttitle{T\'{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8992 </icelandic>

```

### 13.89 “Indon” language: `indon.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 480):

```

8993 <*indon>
8994 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8995 </indon>

```

### 13.90 “Indonesian” language: `indonesian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 480):

```

8996 <*indonesian>
8997 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8998 </indonesian>

```

### 13.91 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 80]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built

from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English's than to neolatin languages<sup>29</sup>. See also:

- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua>, <http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua>,
- Union Interlinguiste de France: <http://www.interlingua.com.fr/>
- interlingua-english dictionary: <http://www.interlingua.com/ied/>
- interlingua grammar (in french): <http://filip.ouvaton.org/ia/gram/entra1.html>
- some sites in interlingua: <http://www.dmoz.org/World/Interlingua>
- other sites about interlingua: <http://www.cle.unicamp.br/wcp3/interlingua.htm>

```

8999 <(*interlingua)
9000 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9001 %% Interlingua titles from interlingua.dtx (babel). Kleiweg, Peter
9002 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
9003 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuras}%
9004 \def\pltttitle{Lista de tabellas}%
9005 %%
9006 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
9007 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
9008 \def\mltttitle{Tabellas}%
9009 %%
9010 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
9011 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
9012 \def\sltttitle{Tabellas}%
9013 </interlingua>

```

## 13.92 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`



The titles for the “irish” language (*gaeilge*) come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [56, 59, 60]:

```

9014 <(*irish)
9015 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]%
9016 %% From irish.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Gunn, Marion & Grant, Fraser
9017 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9018 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9019 \def\pltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9020 %%
9021 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9022 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%

```

<sup>29</sup>The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it.

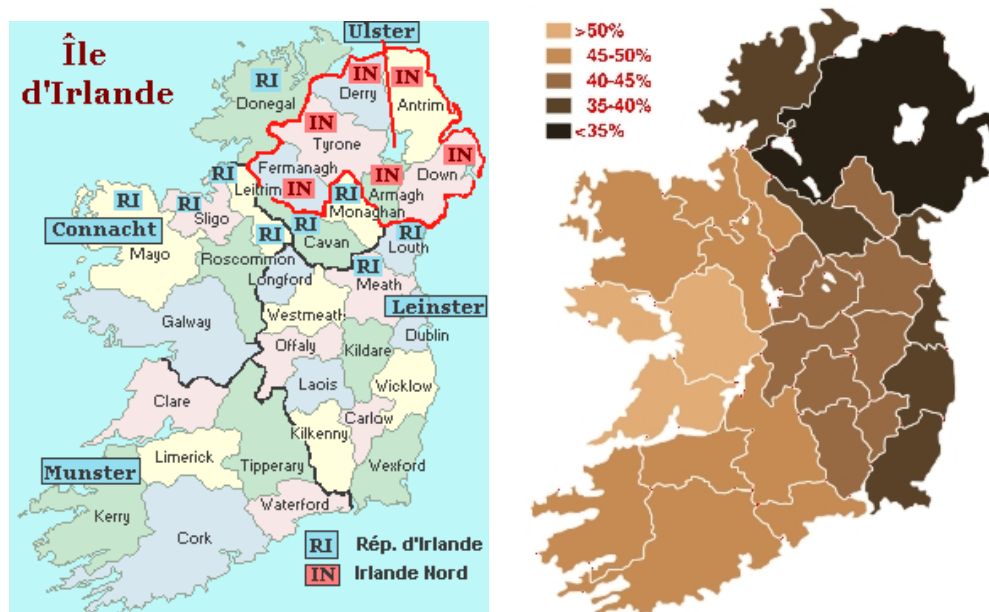


Figure 13.74: Ireland (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/irlande-comtes.htm> in [274] and [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish_language))

```

9023 \def\mltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9024 %%
9025 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9026 \def\slfttitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9027 \def\sltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9028 </irish>

```

### 13.93 “Italian” language: italian.mld

The titles for the “italian” language (*italiano*) come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 72]. See also section 13.94 on page 549.

```

9029 (*italian)
9030 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9031 %% Italian titles from italian.dtx (babel).
9032 %% Maurizio Codogno (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it) & Claudio Beccari (beccari@polito.it)
9033 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
9034 \def\plfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9035 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9036 %%
9037 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
9038 \def\mlfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9039 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%

```



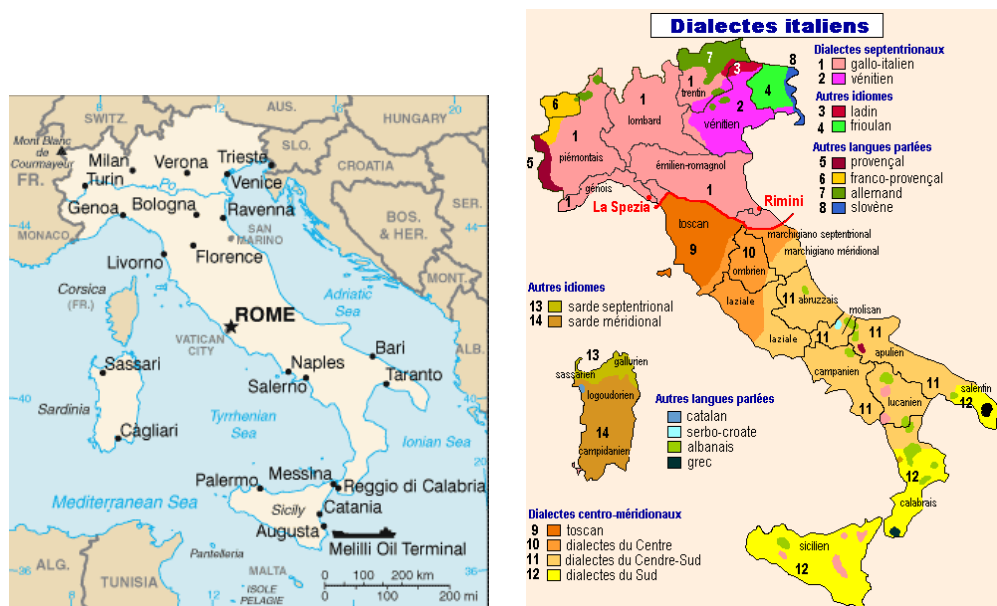


Figure 13.75: Italy (<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/italy.html> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin – and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/italieetat.htm> in [274])

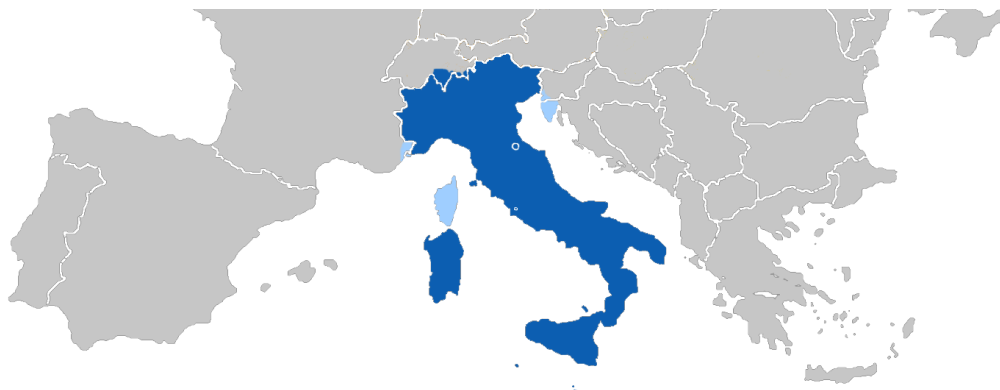


Figure 13.76: Italophone areas in Europa ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Italian\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Italian_language))

```

9040 %%
9041 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
9042 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9043 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9044 <</italian>

```



## 13.94 “Italian2” language: italian2.mld

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.93 on page 547.

```

9045 <*italian2>
9046 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9047 %% Italian titles. Variant, from italian.dtx (babel)
9048 %% Maurizio Codogno (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it) & Claudio Beccari (beccari@polito.it)
9049 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
9050 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9051 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9052 %%
9053 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
9054 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9055 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9056 %%
9057 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
9058 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9059 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9060 </italian2>

```

## 13.95 “Japanese” language: japanese.ml[d|o]



Figure 13.77: Japan (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/japoncarte.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/famjapan.htm> in [274])

They are several variants for the Japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the “Japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA<sup>30</sup>.

But see also other variants in sections 13.96, 13.97, 13.98 on the next page, 13.99 on the following page, and 13.100 on page 552.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “Japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load Japanese.mlo.

```
9061 <*japanese>
9062 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
9063 %% Japanese titles. Needs Japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9064 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki <kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp>
9065 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9066 </japanese>
```

## 13.96 “Japanese2” language: Japanese2.mld[o]

The titles for the “Japanese2” language (Japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 on the preceding page, 13.97, 13.98 on the following page, 13.99 on the next page, and 13.100 on page 552.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “Japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load Japanese2.mlo.

```
9067 <*japanese2>
9068 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
9069 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
9070 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9071 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9072 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: EUC
9073 </japanese2>
```

## 13.97 “Japanese3” language: Japanese3.mld[o]

The titles for the “Japanese3” language (Japanese, third variant) are taken from file JIS.cpx of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG).

<sup>30</sup> <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 on page 549, 13.96 on the preceding page, 13.98, 13.99, and 13.100 on the next page. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```
9074 <{*japanese3}
9075 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9076 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9077 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9078 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9079 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9080 </japanese3>
```

### 13.98 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 on page 549, 13.96 on the page before, 13.97 on the preceding page, 13.99, and 13.99.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```
9081 <{*japanese4}
9082 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9083 %% From SJIS.cap in CJK package for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean)
9084 %% with LaTeX2e. Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28/03/2003).
9085 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
9086 </japanese4>
```

### 13.99 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [123, 276, 277] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 on page 549, 13.96 on the preceding page, 13.97 on the page before, 13.98, and 13.100 on the next page. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```

9087 <*japanese5>
9088 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9089 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9090 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9091 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9092 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9093 </japanese5>

```

### 13.100 “Japanese6” language: `japanese6.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA<sup>31</sup>. See also sections 13.95 on page 549, 13.96 on page 550, 13.97 on page 550, 13.98 on the page before, and 13.99 on the preceding page.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese6.mlo`.

```

9094 <*japanese6>
9095 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]\mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9096 %% Japanese6 titles. Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9097 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki <kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp>
9098 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9099 </japanese6>

```

### 13.101 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

ಕನ್ನಡ

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state (main town: Bangalore) of India. Titles are taken in the `kanlel.sty` package file from the KannadaT<sub>E</sub>X project [445]<sup>32</sup> by C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. Specific fonts are required. See the alphabet here: <http://www.omniglot.com/writing/kannada.htm>.

```

9100 <*kannada>
9101 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2007/02/22]%
9102 %% From kanlel.sty of Kannadatex
9103 %% (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in yogacs@users.sarovar.org)
9104 %% (K. K. Subramaniam subbuk@users.sarovar.org)
9105 \def\ptctitle{parividi}%
9106 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9107 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9108 %%

```

<sup>31</sup> <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

<sup>32</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

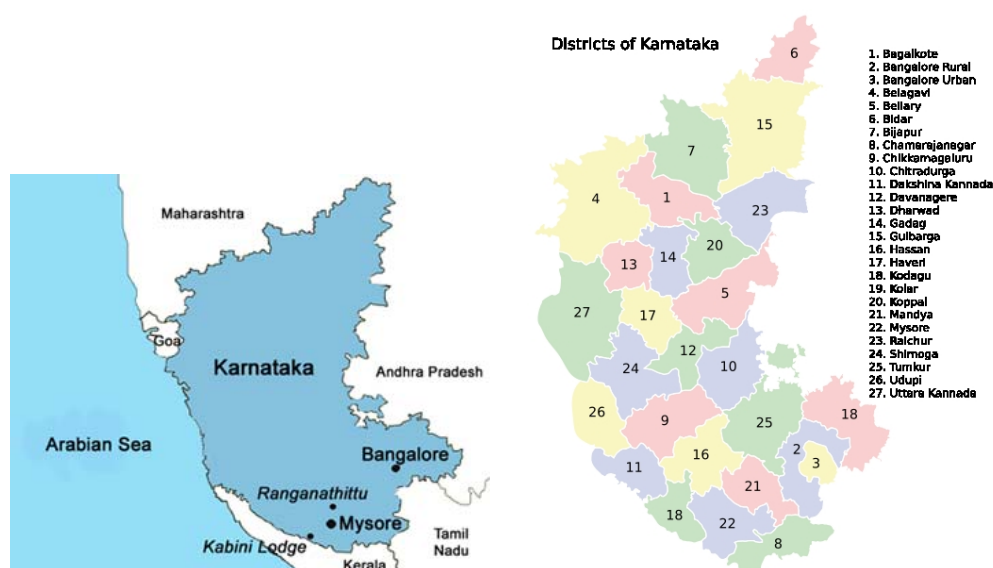


Figure 13.78: Kannada language areas (<http://www.pinkmoose.ic24.net/india/kabini.htm> and <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Karnataka>; see also <http://kstdc.nic.in/pix/krnatmap.jpg> and figure 13.71 on page 543)

```

9109 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}%
9110 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9111 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9112 %%
9113 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}%
9114 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9115 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9116 \end{kannada}

```

### 13.102 “Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld

\mtcselectlanguage “khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load xalx.mld (see sections 13.190 on page 617, 13.191 on page 618, and 13.192 on page 619):

```

9117 \load{*khalkha}
9118 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]\mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9119 \end{khalkha}

```

### 13.103 “Latin” language: `latin.mld`

The titles for the “latin” language (medieval) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 64]. See also section 13.104.

```

9120 <*latin>
9121 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9122 %% Latin (medieval) titles from latin.dtx (babel)
9123 %% Beccari, Claudio & Tabacco, Raffalla & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9124 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9125 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9126 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9127 %%
9128 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9129 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9130 \def\mlttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9131 %%
9132 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9133 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9134 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9135 </latin>

```

### 13.104 “Latin2” language: `latin2.mld`

\ae The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, medieval, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [59, 60, 64], but abbreviated. See also section 13.103.

```

9136 <*latin2>
9137 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2007/04/06]%
9138 %% Latin (medieval) titles (abbreviated) from latin.dtx (babel)
9139 %% Beccari, Claudio & Tabacco, Raffalla & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9140 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9141 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9142 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9143 %%
9144 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9145 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9146 \def\mlttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9147 %%
9148 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9149 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9150 \def\slttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9151 </latin2>

```

### 13.105 “Latinc” language: `latinc.mld`

The titles for the “latinc” language (classical latin) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 64]. See also section 13.106.

```

9152 <*latinc>
9153 \ProvidesFile{latinc.mld}[2007/04/13]%
9154 %% Latin (classical) titles from latin.dtx (babel)
9155 %% Beccari, Claudio & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9156 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9157 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9158 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9159 %%
9160 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9161 \def\mlftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9162 \def\mlttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9163 %%
9164 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9165 \def\slftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9166 \def\slttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9167 </latinc>

```

### 13.106 “Latinc2” language: `latinc2.mld`

The titles for the “latinc2” language (classical latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [59, 60, 64], but abbreviated. See also section 13.105.

```

9168 <*latinc2>
9169 \ProvidesFile{latinc2.mld}[2007/04/06]%
9170 %% Latin (classical) titles (abbreviated) from latin.dtx (babel)
9171 %% Beccari, Claudio & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9172 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9173 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9174 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9175 %%
9176 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9177 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9178 \def\mlttitle{Tabvlae}%
9179 %%
9180 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9181 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9182 \def\slttitle{Tabvlae}%
9183 </latinc2>

```

## 13.107 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld

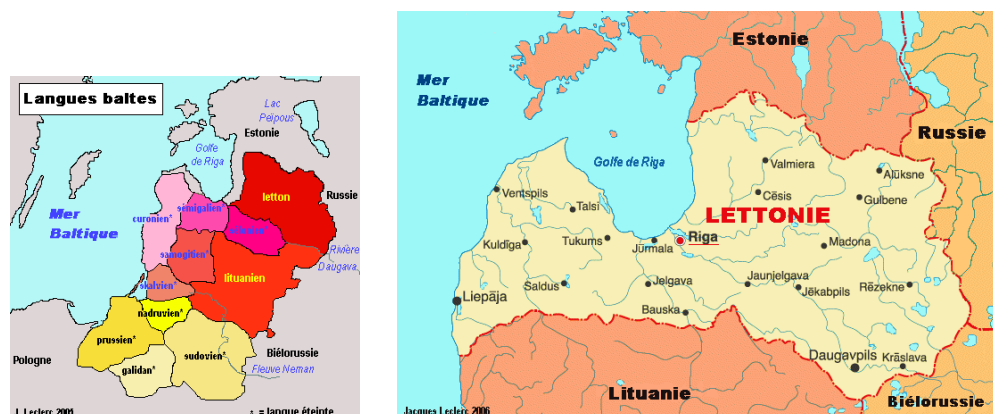
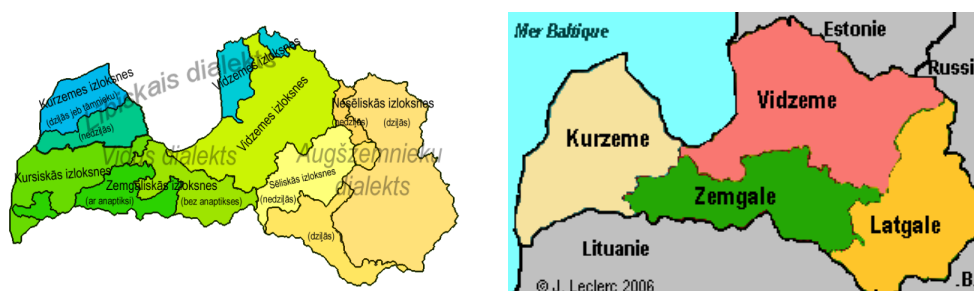


Figure 13.79: Baltic languages and Latvia ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues\\_baltes.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues_baltes.htm) and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/lettoniecarte.htm> in [274]; note that the estonian language is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.)



Dialects of the Latvian language. Main dialects are titled grey, subdialects are titled black, subdivisions of subdialects are given in brackets. Līvīskais or Livonian dialect is in bluish shades, Vidus (Vidzemes) or Middle dialect is in green shades, Augšzemesnieku or Highlander/Latgalian dialect is yellow-orange.

Figure 13.80: Dialects and administrative regions in Latvia ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latvian\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latvian_language) and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/AXL/Europe/lettonie-1gnrl.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “latvian” language<sup>33</sup> (*latviešu valoda*) come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [252]. See also section 13.109 on the following page.

```

9184 (*latvian)
9185 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9186 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
9187 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Satars}}%
9188 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
9189 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9190 %%
9191 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Satars}}%
9192 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%

```

<sup>33</sup>Note that “latvian” is the original name for “letton”.



```

9193 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9194 %%
9195 \def\stcttitle{\locallatvian{Satars}}%
9196 \def\slfttitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
9197 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9198 \end{latvian}

```

### 13.108 “Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld

The titles for the “latvian2” language come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Andris LASIS and Ivars DRIKIS) at <http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf>. See also section 13.107 on the page before.

```

9199 \begin{latvian2}
9200 \ProvidesFile{latvian2.mld}[2007/06/05]%
9201 % Andris Lasis (andris_lasis@simms.lv) Ivars Drikis (drikis@lanet.lv)
9202 % http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf
9203 \def\ptcttitle{Satars}%
9204 \def\plfttitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9205 \def\pltttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9206 %%
9207 \def\mtcttitle{Satars}%
9208 \def\mlfttitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9209 \def\mltttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9210 %%
9211 \def\stcttitle{Satars}%
9212 \def\slfttitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9213 \def\sltttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9214 \end{latvian2}

```

### 13.109 “Letton” language: letton.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.107 on the preceding page.

```

9215 \begin{letton}
9216 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]\mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
9217 \end{letton}

```

### 13.110 “Letton2” language: `letton2.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “letton2” language is a synonym for the “latvian2” language, so we just load `latvian2.mld`. See section 13.108 on the page before.

```
9218 <{*letton2}
9219 \ProvidesFile{letton2.mld}[2007/06/05]\mtcselectlanguage{latvian2}%
9220 </letton2>
```

### 13.111 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

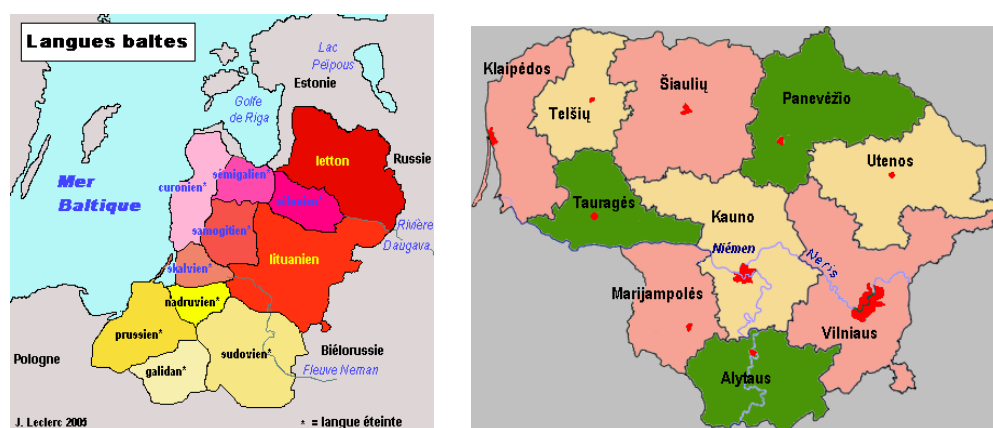


Figure 13.81: Baltic languages and Lithuania ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues\\_baltes.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues_baltes.htm) and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/liuaniecarte.htm> in [274]; see also <http://samogitia.mch.mii.lt/KALBA/girdstr.en.htm> by Aleksas Stanislovas GIRDENIS; note that estonian is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.)

The titles for the “lithuanian” language (*lietuvių kalba*) are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file<sup>34</sup> (by Sigitas TOLUŠIS) for the `babel` package [59, 60]. See also section 13.112 on the following page.

```
9221 <{*lithuanian}
9222 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9223 %% Lithuanian titles from lithuanian.ldf
9224 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip
9225 %% by Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9226 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9227 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9228 \def\pltttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9229 %%
9230 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
```

<sup>34</sup>Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip>.

```

9231 \def\mlfttitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9232 \def\mltttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9233 %%
9234 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9235 \def\slfttitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9236 \def\sltttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9237 </lithuanian>

```

### 13.112 “Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian2” language (variant) are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file, found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/litex/litex-20070713.tar.gz>, (by Sigitas TOLUŠIS) for the `babel` package [59, 60]. See also section 13.111 on the page before. The L7x encoding and the Latin Modern fonts are needed.

```

9238 <{*lithuanian2}
9239 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian2.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9240 %% Lithuanian titles (variant) from lithuanian.ldf
9241 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/litex/litex-20060928.tar.gz
9242 %% by Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9243 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9244 \def\plfttitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9245 \def\pltttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9246 %%
9247 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9248 \def\mlfttitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9249 \def\mltttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9250 %%
9251 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9252 \def\slfttitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9253 \def\sltttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9254 </lithuanian2>

```

### 13.113 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowersorbian” language<sup>35</sup> (*dolnoserbski*, *dolnoservščina*) are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 98]. See also section 13.184 on page 614. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.114 on page 562).

<sup>35</sup> Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century). See figures 13.82 on the following page, 13.83 on page 561 and 13.84 on page 562.

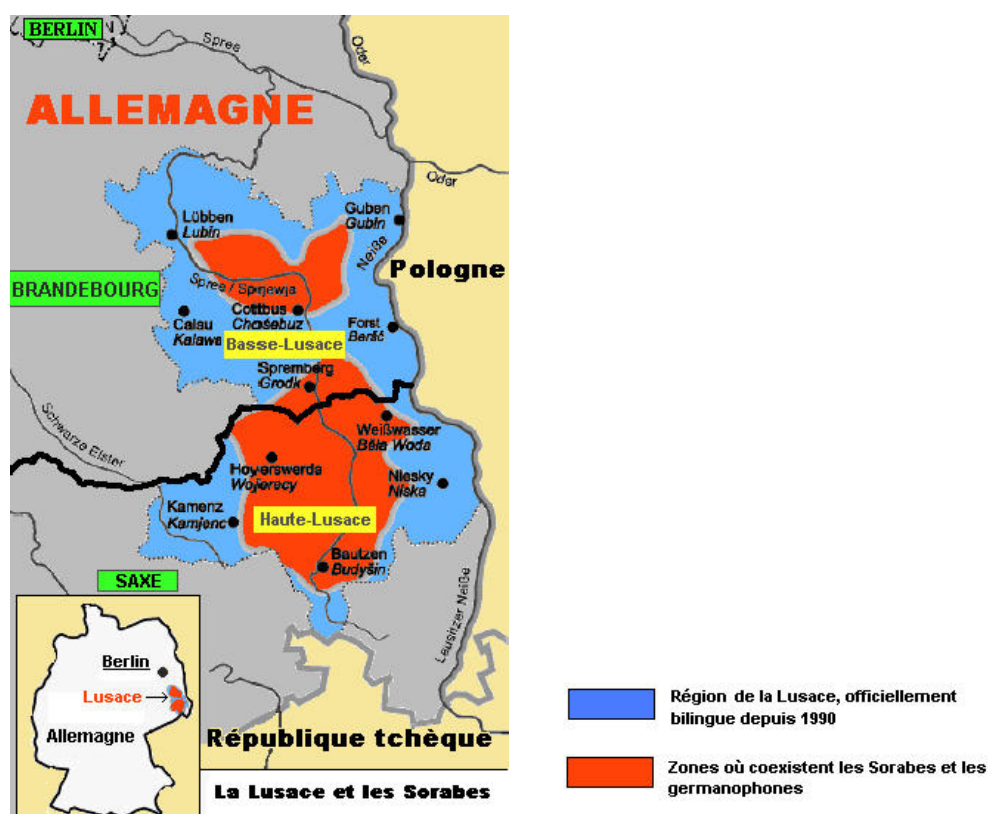


Figure 13.82: Lusace and the Sorbians ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/allemande\\_sorabe.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/allemande_sorabe.htm) in [274])

```

9255 (*lowersorbian)
9256 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]%
9257 %% Lower sorbian titles from lsorbian.dtx (babel) by Werner, Eduard
9258 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9259 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9260 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9261 %%
9262 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9263 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9264 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9265 %%
9266 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9267 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9268 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9269 \end{lowersorbian}

```

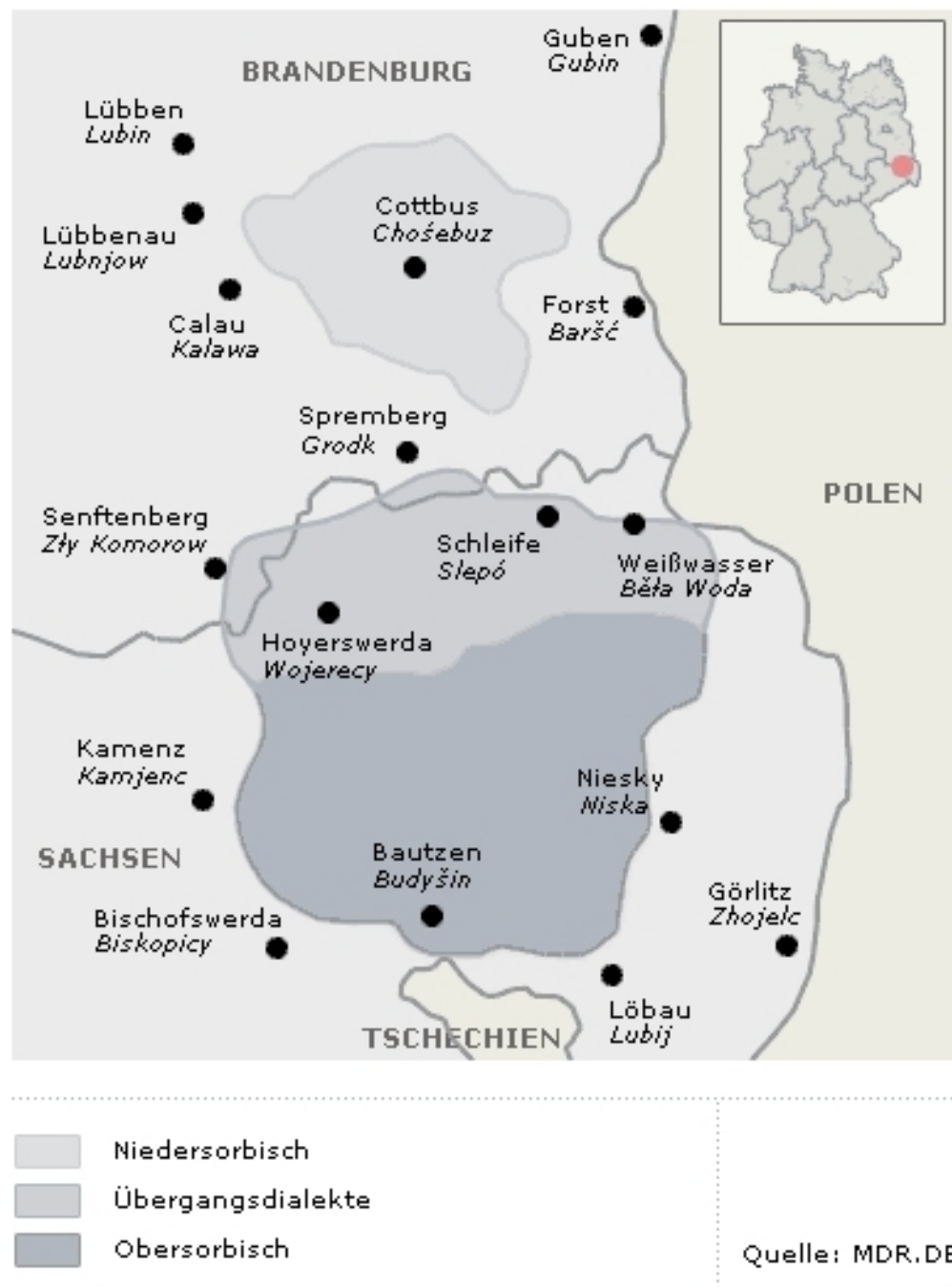
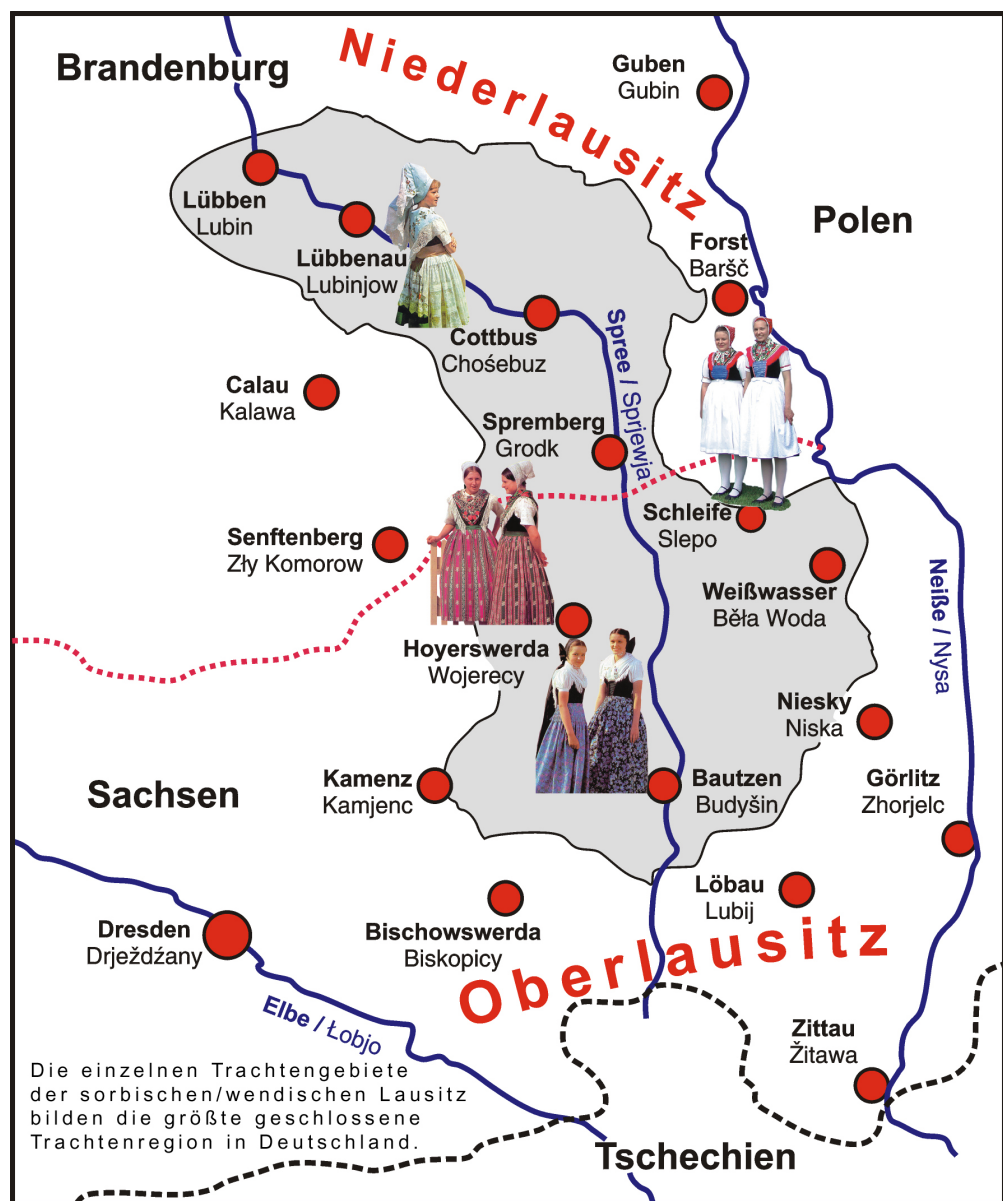


Figure 13.83: Sorbian dialects areas (<http://www.people.ex.ac.uk/pjoyce/dialects/sorbisch.html> (University of Exeter), <http://www.mdr.de/sorbisches-programm/rundfunk/1913590.html>, <http://www.mdr.de/l/1940181.gif>; Niedersorbisch: lower sorbian, Übergangsdialekte: transitional dialects, Obersorbisch: upper sorbian.)

Figure 13.84: Sorbs (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sorbs>)

### 13.114 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowersorbian”, so we just need to load lowersorbian.mld. See section 13.113 on page 559.

```

9270 <{*lsorbian}
9271 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
9272 </lsorbian>

```

### 13.115 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld



Figure 13.85: Hungaria and magyar speaking areas (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hungaria> and [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hungary\\_Language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hungary_Language); the magyar language is also spoken in some regions in Romania, Slovakia, Serbia-Voivodina and Ukraine)

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the babel package [59, 60, 65]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.87 on page 544). See also sections 13.116 on the next page and 13.117 on the following page for variants.

```

9273 <{*magyar}
9274 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]%
9275 %% Magyar titles from magyar.dtx (babel). Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
9276 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9277 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
9278 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
9279 %%
9280 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9281 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
9282 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
9283 %%
9284 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9285 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
9286 \def\sltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
9287 </magyar>

```

### 13.116 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the `magyar.dtx` file of the `babel` package [59, 60] (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI). See also sections 13.115 on the page before and 13.117.

```

9288 <*magyar2>
9289 \ProvidesFile{magyar2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9290 %% Magyar2 titles (variant) from magyar.dtx (babel). Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
9291 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9292 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9293 \def\plttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9294 %%
9295 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9296 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9297 \def\mlttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9298 %%
9299 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9300 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9301 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9302 </magyar2>

```

### 13.117 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the `magyar.dtx` file (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 65]<sup>36</sup>. See also sections 13.115 on the page before and 13.116.

```

9303 <*magyar3>
9304 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]%
9305 %% Magyar3 titles (variant) from magyar.dtx (babel). Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
9306 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9307 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9308 \def\plttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9309 %%
9310 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9311 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9312 \def\mlttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9313 %%
9314 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9315 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9316 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9317 </magyar3>

```

---

<sup>36</sup>The situation of the magyar language in the `babel` package is not clear; some experimental versions exist.



### 13.118 “Malay” language: malay.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.17 on page 481):

```
9318 <*malay>
9319 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9320 </malay>
```

### 13.119 “Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld

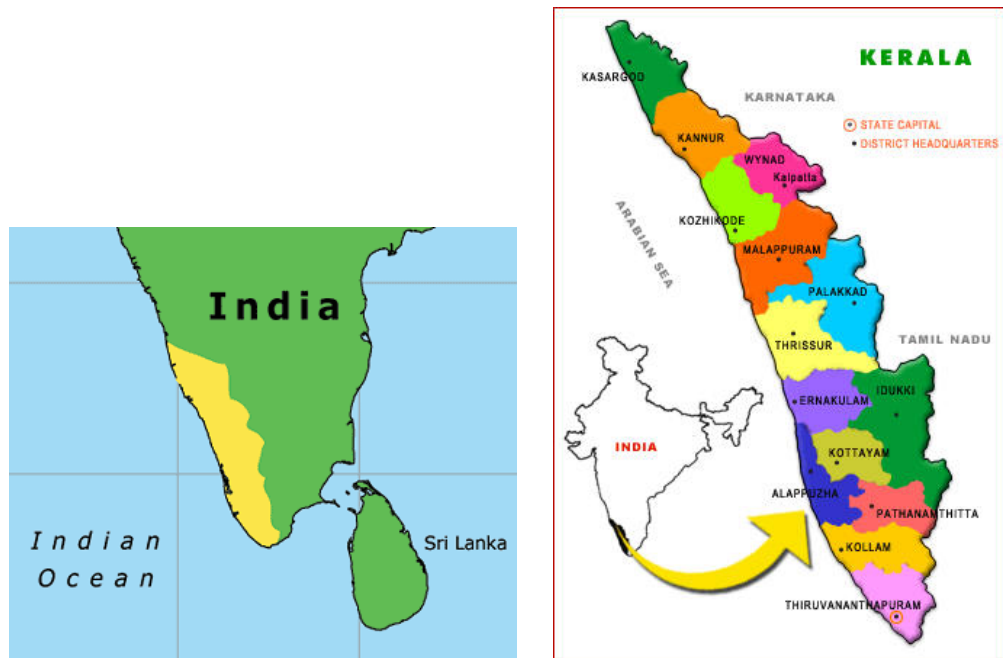


Figure 13.86: Malayalam language areas (<http://www.lmp.ucla.edu/Profile.aspx?LangID=92&menu=004> in [214] and <http://keralalife.com/>)

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-b” language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by  
 \X A.J. ALEX. The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the  
 \< extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly  
 bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.  
 This language option requires specific fonts (depending on the option of the malayalam package).  
 It should be used with the following options of the malayalam package<sup>37</sup>:  
 aathira, ambili, anahka, ashtamudi, aswathi, ayilyambold, bhanu, bhavana, chippi,  
 gauri, gopika, indulekha, ISMashtamudi, ISMkarthika, ISMkaumudi, ISMrevathi,

<sup>37</sup>There is a great variety of fonts for malayalam; hence I have attempted to limit the number of .mld files.

jaya, karthika, kaumudi, kottakkal, makam, malavikaption demalayalam, mridula, payippad, periyar, ravivarma, revathi, sabari, sarada, sruthy, and triruvathira. See also sections 13.120 to 13.126 on page 569.

```

9321 (*malayalam – b)
9322 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-b.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9323 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9324 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9325 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9326 %%
9327 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9328 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9329 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9330 %%
9331 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9332 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9333 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9334 (/malayalam – b)

```

### 13.120 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the  
\X malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also  
\< sections 13.119 on the preceding page to 13.126 on page 569.

```

9335 (*malayalam – keli)
9336 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9337 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
9338 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9339 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9340 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9341 %%
9342 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9343 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9344 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9345 %%
9346 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9347 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9348 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9349 (/malayalam – keli)

```

### 13.121 “Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-keli2” language are taken from the malayalam pack-  
\X age [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (keli second variant). See also  
\< sections 13.119 on page 565 to 13.126 on page 569.

```

9350 (*malayalam – keli2)
9351 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli2.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9352 % Keli fonts (mkl)
9353 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9354 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9355 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9356 %%
9357 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9358 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9359 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9360 %%
9361 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9362 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9363 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9364 \</malayalam – keli2>

```

### 13.122 “Malayalam-mr” language: malayalam-mr.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-mr” language are taken from the malayalam package [4]  
\X by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (traditional rachana). See also sec-  
\< tions 13.119 on page 565 to 13.126 on page 569.

```

9365 (*malayalam – mr)
9366 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-mr.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9367 % mr fonts (rachana: mr1,...,mr6)
9368 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}}
9369 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9370 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9371 %%
9372 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}}
9373 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9374 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9375 %%
9376 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}}
9377 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9378 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9379 \</malayalam – mr>

```

### 13.123 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.ml[d|o]

`\mtcloadmlo` This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ) (the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for Omega) via the `omal` package [5] (by A.J. ALEX) of the Malayalam-Omega project<sup>38</sup>. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the `omal` package. See also sections 13.119 on page 565 to 13.126 on the next page.

```
9380 (*malayalam – omega)
9381 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}%
9382 %% from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
9383 \malayalam – omega
```

### 13.124 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

`\mm` The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old  
`\X` lipi), are taken from the `malayalam` package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific  
`\C` fonts. See also sections 13.119 on page 565 to 13.126 on the next page.

```
\F
\< 9384 (*malayalam – rachana)
9385 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]%
9386 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
9387 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9388 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9389 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9390 %%
9391 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9392 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9393 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9394 %%
9395 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9396 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9397 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9398 \malayalam – rachana
```

<sup>38</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

### 13.125 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new  
 \X lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific  
 \< fonts. See also sections 13.119 on page 565 to 13.126.

```
9399 (*malayalam – rachana2)
9400 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9401 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
9402 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9403 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9404 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9405 %%
9406 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9407 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9408 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9409 %%
9410 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9411 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9412 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9413 (/malayalam – rachana2)
```

### 13.126 “Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-rachana3” language are taken from the malayalam pack-  
 \X age [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (rachana). See also sec-  
 \< tions 13.119 on page 565 to 13.125.

\C

\F

```
9414 (*malayalam – rachana3)
9415 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana3.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9416 % Rachana fonts (mr2,...,mr6)
9417 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9418 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9419 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9420 %%
9421 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9422 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9423 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9424 %%
9425 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9426 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9427 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9428 (/malayalam – rachana3)
```

### 13.127 “Manju” language: manju.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load `bithe.mld` (see section 13.24 on page 486):

```
9429 <*manju>
9430 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]\mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
9431 </manju>
```

### 13.128 “Mexican” language: mexican.mld

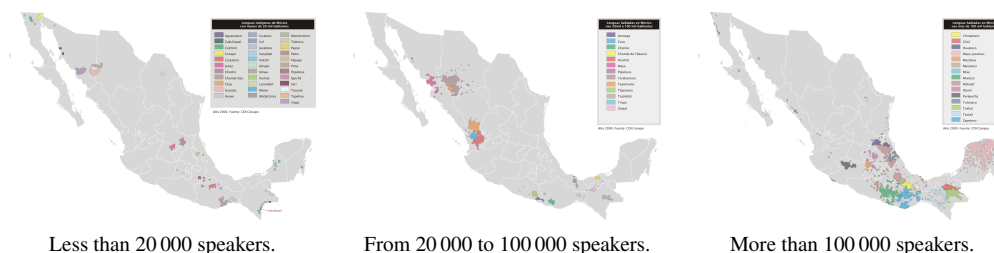
The titles for the “mexican” language (*español mexicano*) are taken from the `mexican.ldf` file (by Luis RIVERA) in <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/spanish/nonstandard/mx/>. Mexican is a spanish (castillan) dialect. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.172 on page 604. See figures 13.87 and 13.88 on the following page.

```
9432 <*mexican>
9433 \ProvidesFile{mexican.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9434 %% Spanish titles (from mexican.ldf) Rivera, Luis (jlrn77@gmail.com)
9435 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9436 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi
9437 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9438 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9439 %%
9440 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
9441 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9442 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9443 %%
9444 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
9445 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9446 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9447 </mexican>
```

### 13.129 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.17 on page 481):

```
9448 <*meyalu>
9449 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9450 </meyalu>
```

Figure 13.87: México (<http://es.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mexico>)Figure 13.88: Indigenous languages of México ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages\\_of\\_Mexico](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages_of_Mexico))

### 13.130 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

\mnr

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [130, 133] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 on page 485, 13.22 on page 485, 13.23 on page 486, 13.24 on page 486, 13.31 on page 493, 13.32 on page 494, 13.190 on page 617, 13.191 on page 618, and 13.192 on page 619.



Figure 13.89: Mongol language areas (<http://www.lmp.ucla.edu/Profile.aspx?LangID=79&menu=004> in [214])



Figure 13.90: Linguistic map of the mongol language ([http://www.lexilogos.com/mongol\\_dictionnaire.htm](http://www.lexilogos.com/mongol_dictionnaire.htm))



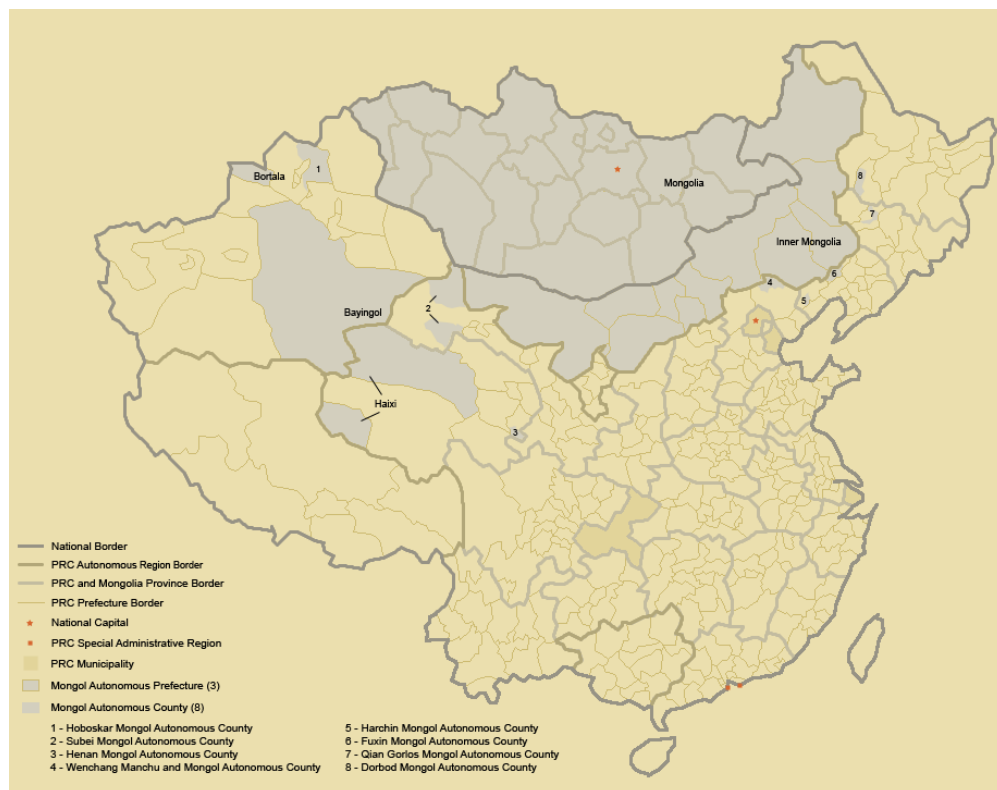


Figure 13.91: Mongolia and Mongol autonomous regions in the People's Republic of China (PRC) (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongol>, see also <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asia/chine-region-auto-Mongolie.htm> in [274])

```

9451 <{*mongol>
9452 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9453 %% Mongol (xalx) titles. Needs mongol fonts
9454 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9455 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9456 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9457 %%
9458 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9459 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9460 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9461 %%
9462 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9463 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9464 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9465 </mongol>

```

## 13.131 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the mongolian.dtx file [25] (by Dorjgotov BATMUNKH) for the babel package [59, 60] (hence the final “b” in “mongolb”).

**Монгол** \cyr The titles for the “mongolb” language use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG).

```

9466 <*mongolb>
9467 \ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]%
9468 %% Mongolian titles from mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9469 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9470 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9471 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vzv.vsu.ru) & Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9472 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9473   \def\ptctitle{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9474 \else\relax
9475   \def\ptctitle{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9476 \fi
9477 \def\plftitle{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9478   \ \cyrrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9479 \def\pltttitle{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9480   \ \cyrrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9481 %%
9482 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9483   \def\mtctitle{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9484 \else\relax
9485   \def\mtctitle{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9486 \fi
9487 \def\mlftitle{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9488   \ \cyrrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9489 \def\mltttitle{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9490   \ \cyrrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9491 %%
9492 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9493   \def\stctitle{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9494 \else\relax
9495   \def\stctitle{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9496 \fi
9497 \def\slftitle{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9498   \ \cyrrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9499 \def\sltttitle{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9500   \ \cyrrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9501 </mongolb>

```

### 13.132 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the `babel` package [59, 60] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load `mongolb.mld`. See section 13.131 on the page before.

```
9502 <*mongolian>
9503 \ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]\mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}%
9504 </mongolian>
```

### 13.133 “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the `german` language), so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.136 on the following page.

```
9505 <*naustrian>
9506 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9507 </naustrian>
```

### 13.134 “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (section 13.45 on page 508):

```
9508 <*newzealand>
9509 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
9510 </newzealand>
```

### 13.135 “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language<sup>39</sup>, so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.136 on the following page.

```
9511 <*ngerman>
9512 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9513 </ngerman>
```

---

<sup>39</sup> A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the `german` language.

### 13.136 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb” language<sup>40</sup> are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 90]. See also sections 13.133 on the page before, and 13.135 on the preceding page.

```

9514 \*ngermanb
9515 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9516 %% New german (B) titles from ngermanb.dtx (babel). Raichle, Bernd & Schmidt, Walter
9517 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%      % oder nur: Inhalt
9518 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9519 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9520 %%
9521 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9522 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9523 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9524 %%
9525 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9526 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9527 \def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9528 \end{ngermanb}

```

### 13.137 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language (revised spelling and short titles) are taken from taken from the `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 90], and abbreviated. See also section 13.136.

```

9529 \*ngermanb2
9530 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]%
9531 %% New german (B) short (2) titles
9532 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
9533 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
9534 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
9535 %%
9536 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9537 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
9538 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
9539 %%
9540 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9541 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
9542 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9543 \end{ngermanb2}

```

---

<sup>40</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

## 13.138 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

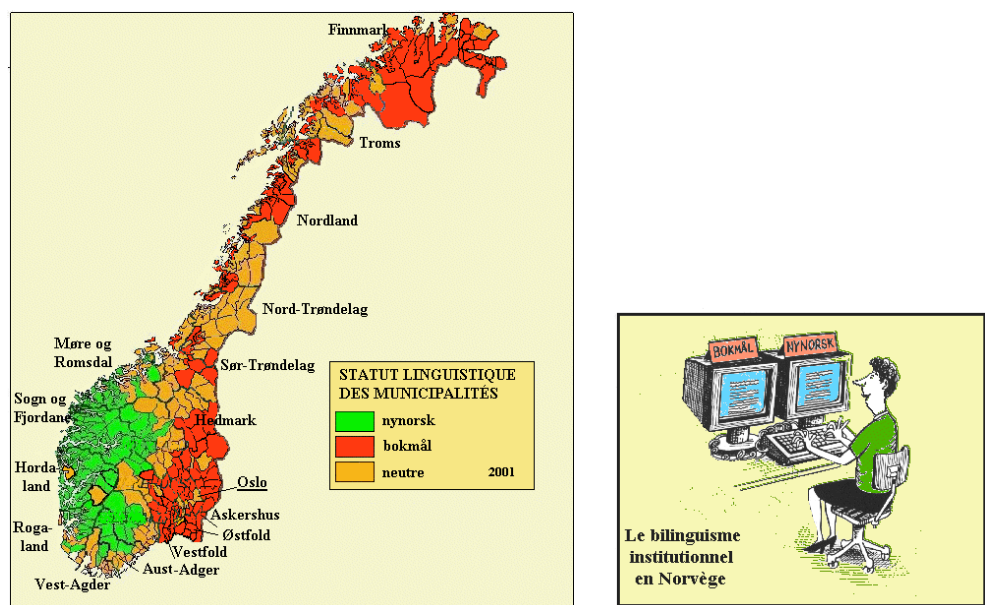


Figure 13.92: Bokmål and nynorsk languages in Norway (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/norvege-communes-Ing.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/norvege.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [57, 59, 60], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.140 on the following page.

```

9544 <{*norsk}
9545 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9546 %% Norsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Helstrup, Haavard
9547 %% & Holme, Alv Kjetil & Iversen, Per Steinar & Petterst, Terje Engeset
9548 %% & Kleveland, Rune. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9549 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9550 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
9551 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
9552 %%
9553 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9554 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
9555 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
9556 %%
9557 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9558 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
9559 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
9560 </norsk>

```

### 13.139 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `babel` package [57, 59, 60], with help from Dag LANGMYHR, and abbreviated.

```

9561 (*norsk2)
9562 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]%
9563 %% Short norsk titles. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9564 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9565 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9566 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
9567 %%
9568 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9569 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9570 \def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
9571 %%
9572 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9573 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9574 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9575 (/norsk2)

```

### 13.140 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language<sup>41</sup> are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [57, 59, 60], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.138 on the page before.

```

9576 (*nynorsk)
9577 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9578 %% Nynorsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Helstrup, Haavard
9579 %% & Holme, Alv Kjetil & Iversen, Per Steinar & Petterst, Terje Engeset
9580 %% & Kleveland, Rune. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9581 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9582 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
9583 \def\mlttitle{Tabellar}%
9584 %%
9585 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9586 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
9587 \def\plttitle{Tabellar}%
9588 %%
9589 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9590 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
9591 \def\slttitle{Tabellar}%
9592 (/nynorsk)

```

---

<sup>41</sup> Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialects spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.

### 13.141 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.140 on the preceding page.

```

9593 ⟨*nynorsk2⟩
9594 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9595 %% Nynorsk titles. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9596 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9597 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9598 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9599 %%
9600 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9601 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9602 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
9603 %%
9604 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9605 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9606 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9607 ⟨/nynorsk2⟩

```

### 13.142 “Occitan” language: occitan.mld

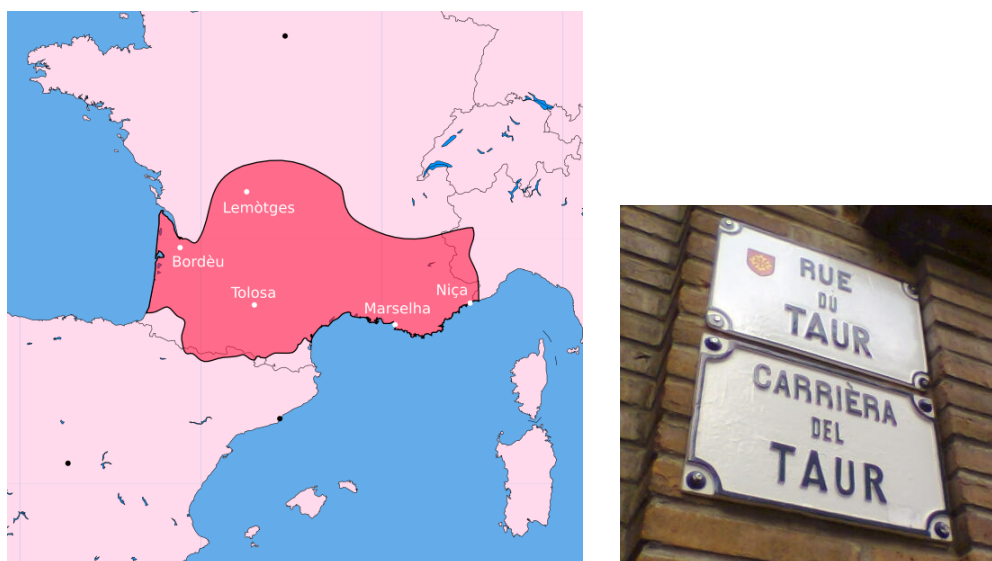
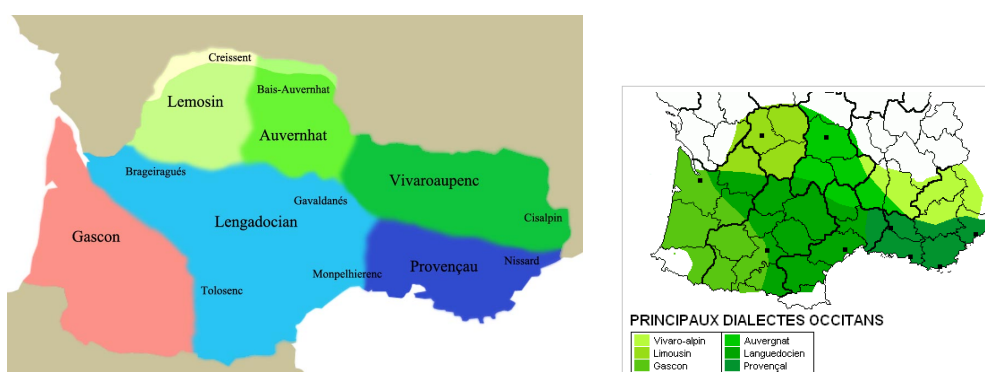
The occitan language<sup>42</sup> is still spoken in the south of France, from Limoges (Letmòges), Bordeaux (Bordèu) and Toulouse (Tolosa) to Marseille (Marselha) and Nice (Niça), with many local variants. This bilingual street sign in Toulouse (Tolosa), like many such signs found in historical parts of the city, is maintained primarily for its antique charm; it is typical of what little remains of the “lenga d’oc” in southern French cities (see figures 13.93 and 13.94 on the next page). See also <http://www.orbilat.com/Maps/Occitan/Occitan.gif>. See also [118].

```

9608 ⟨*occitan⟩
9609 \ProvidesFile{occitan.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9610 %% Occitan titles (translations using http://www.panoccitan.org/diccionari.aspx)
9611 \def\ptctitle{Ensenhador}%
9612 \def\plftitle{Ti\‘era de las figurats}%
9613 \def\plttitle{Ti\‘era de las taulas}%
9614 %%
9615 \def\mtctitle{Ensenhador}%
9616 \def\mlftitle{Ti\‘era de las figurats}%
9617 \def\mltttitle{Ti\‘era de las taulas}%
9618 %%
9619 \def\stctitle{Ensenhador}%
9620 \def\slftitle{Ti\‘era de las figurats}%
9621 \def\slttitle{Ti\‘era de las taulas}%
9622 ⟨/occitan⟩

```

<sup>42</sup>I used the site <http://www.panoccitan.org/diccionari.aspx> for the translations.

Figure 13.93: Occitan in France (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Occitan>)Figure 13.94: Occitan dialects (<http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Occitan>)

### 13.143 “Occitan2” language: occitan2.mld

The occitan2 language provides an example of variants for the occitan titles.

```

9623 (*occitan2)
9624 \ProvidesFile{occitan2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9625 % Occitan titles (variants)
9626 \def\ptctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
9627 \def\plftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
9628 \def\pltttitle{Lista dels tabl\'eus}%
9629 %%
9630 \def\mtctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
9631 \def\mlftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
9632 \def\mltttitle{Lista dels tabl\'eus}%

```



```

9633 %%
9634 \def\stctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
9635 \def\slfttitle{Lista de las figuras}%
9636 \def\sltttitle{Lista dels tabl\`eus}%
9637 \</occtan2>

```

**13.144** “Polish” language: `polish.mld`



Figure 13.95: Poland and minorities in Poland (<http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/pologne-1demo.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “polish” language (*język polski*) are taken from the `polish.dtx` file (by Elmar SCHLÜCK and Michael JANICH) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 95]. See also sections 13.145 to 13.146 on the following page.

```

9638 <*/polish>
9639 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9640 %% Polish titles from polish.dtx (babel). Schalück, Elmar & Janich, Michael
9641 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9642 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9643 \def\plttitle{Spis tablic}%
9644 %%
9645 \def\mtctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9646 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9647 \def\mlttitle{Spis tablic}%
9648 %%
9649 \def\stctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9650 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9651 \def\slttitle{Spis tablic}%
9652 </polish>

```

### 13.145 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

`\localpolish` The titles for the “polish2” language<sup>43</sup> are taken from the `omega-polish.ldf` (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [252]. See also sections 13.144 on the page before and 13.146.

```

9653 <*polish2>
9654 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9655 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega). Needs Omega. Alexej M. Kryukov, Dmitry Ivanov
9656 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9657 \def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9658 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9659 %%
9660 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9661 \def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9662 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9663 %%
9664 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9665 \def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9666 \def\slttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9667 </polish2>

```

### 13.146 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the `polski.dtx` file (by Mariusz Olko and Marcin Woliński) in the `polski` package [330, 423]. See also sections 13.144 to 13.145 on pages 581–582.

```

9668 <*polski>
9669 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2008/01/15]%
9670 %% Polski titles from polski.dtx. Olko, Mariusz & Woli\'nski, Marcin.
9671 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9672 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9673 \def\pltttitle{Spis tabel}%
9674 %%
9675 \def\mtctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9676 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9677 \def\mltttitle{Spis tabel}%
9678 %%
9679 \def\stctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9680 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9681 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
9682 </polski>

```

---

<sup>43</sup> “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

### 13.147 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.148), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```
9683 <{*portuges}
9684 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]\mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
9685 </portuges>
```

### 13.148 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld



Figure 13.96: Portugal (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/portugal.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “portuguese” language (*português*) are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 91].

The portuguese language is spoken in Portugal (with the islands of Azores and Madeira), in Brazil, and in former portuguese colonies like Angola, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, Cape Verde Islands, São Tomé and Príncipe Islands, East Timor, and some old trading posts like Macao and Goa; see figure 13.97 on the following page. See also section 13.25 on page 488, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```
9686 <{*portuguese}
9687 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9688 %% Portuguese titles from portuges.dtx (babel). Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
```

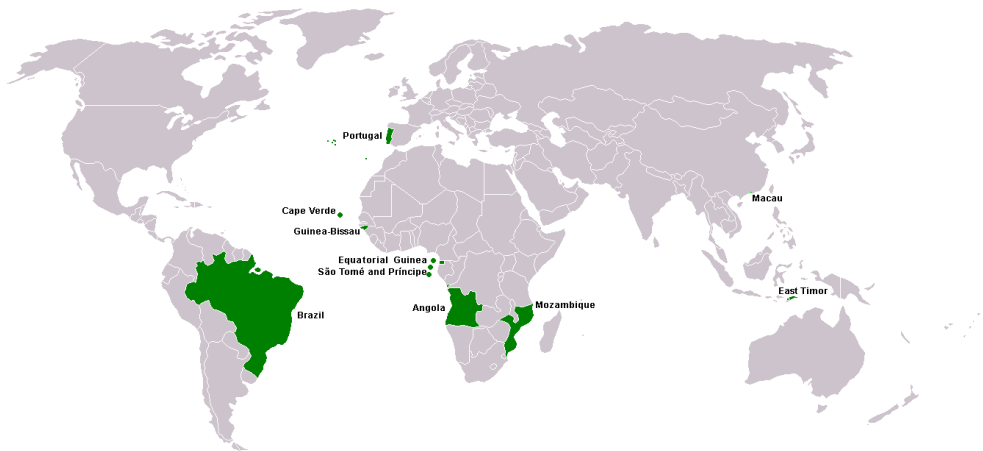


Figure 13.97: Lusophone areas ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_language))

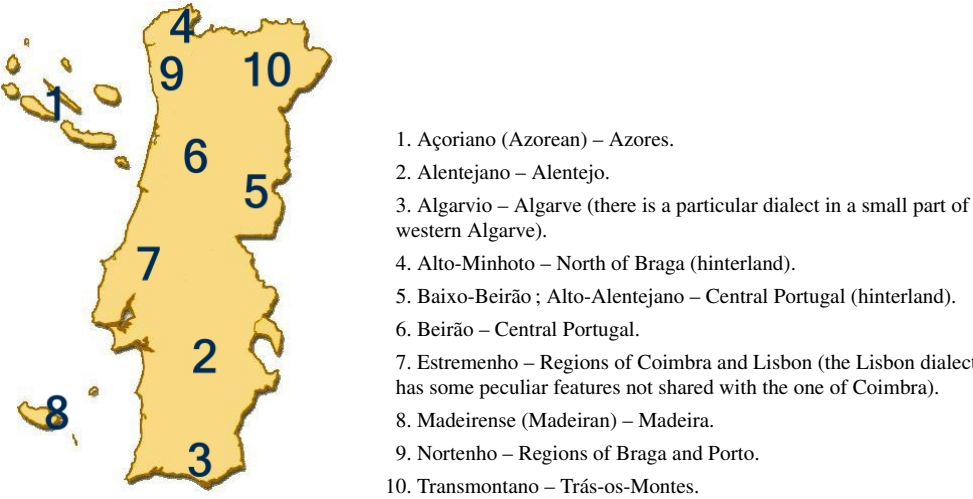


Figure 13.98: Dialects of Portuguese in Portugal ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_language))

```
9689 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9690 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9691 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9692 %%
9693 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9694 \def\mlfttitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9695 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9696 %%
9697 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9698 \def\slfttitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9699 \def\sltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9700 </portuguese>
```

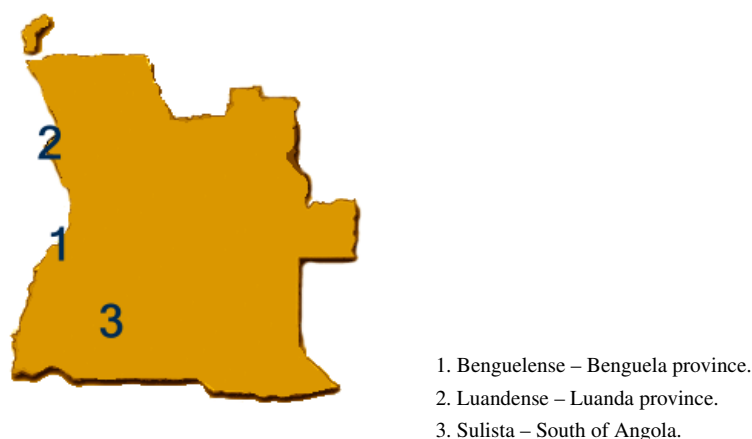


Figure 13.99: Portuguese dialects of Angola ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_language))

### 13.149 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

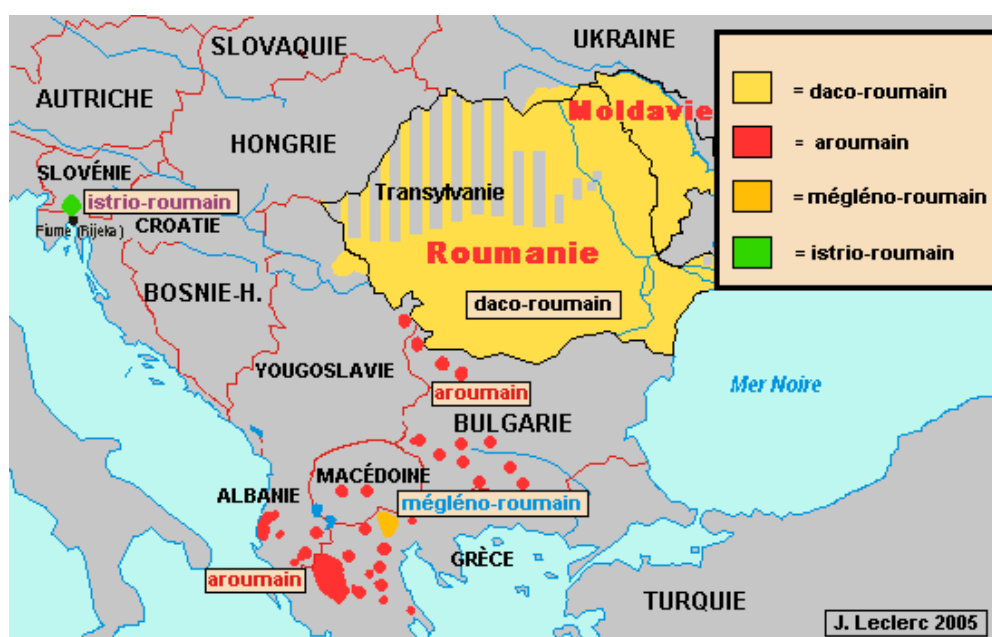


Figure 13.100: Romanian language areas ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/roumain\\_aires-Ing.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/roumain_aires-Ing.htm) in [274])

The titles for the “romanian” language (*română*) come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Umstatter HORST and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 77].

```

9701 <*romanian>
9702 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9703 %% Romanian titles from romanian.dtx (babel). Horst, Umstatter & Juhasz, Robert
9704 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9705 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9706 \def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9707 %%
9708 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9709 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9710 \def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9711 %%
9712 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9713 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9714 \def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9715 </romanian>

```

### 13.150 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X package [362]. See also sections 13.149 on the preceding page and 13.151. Alas, RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X is not compatible with the babel package [59, 60].

```

9716 <*romanian2>
9717 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]%
9718 %% Romanian titles from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx). Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
9719 %% & Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9720 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9721 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9722 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9723 %%
9724 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9725 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9726 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9727 %%
9728 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9729 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9730 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9731 </romanian2>

```

### 13.151 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X package [362]. See also sections 13.149 on the preceding page and 13.150. Alas, RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X *is not compatible* with the babel package [59, 60].



```

9732 <*romanian3>
9733 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]%
9734 %% Romanian titles from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant. Adrian Rezus
9735 %% (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) & Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9736 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9737 \def\plttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9738 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
9739 %%
9740 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9741 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9742 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
9743 %%
9744 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9745 \def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9746 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
9747 </romanian3>

```

### 13.152 “Russian” language: `russian.mld`

`\cz` The titles for the “russian” language (*russkiy yazyk*) are taken from the babel package [59,  
`\mz` 60]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

#### Русский язык

```

9748 <*russian>
9749 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9750 %% Russian titles
9751 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9752 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9753 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9754 %%
9755 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9756 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9757 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9758 %%
9759 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9760 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9761 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9762 </russian>

```

### 13.153 “Russian2m” language: `russian2m.mld`

`\localrussian` The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russian2m.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [252]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152.

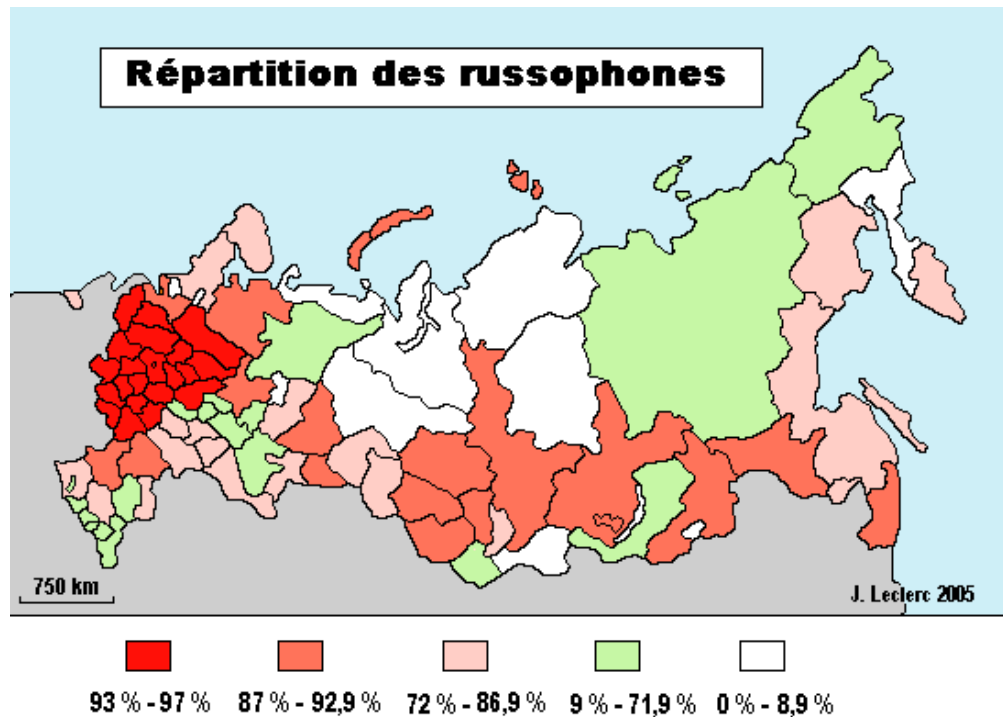


Figure 13.101: Russian language areas (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/russie-2demo.htm> in [274])

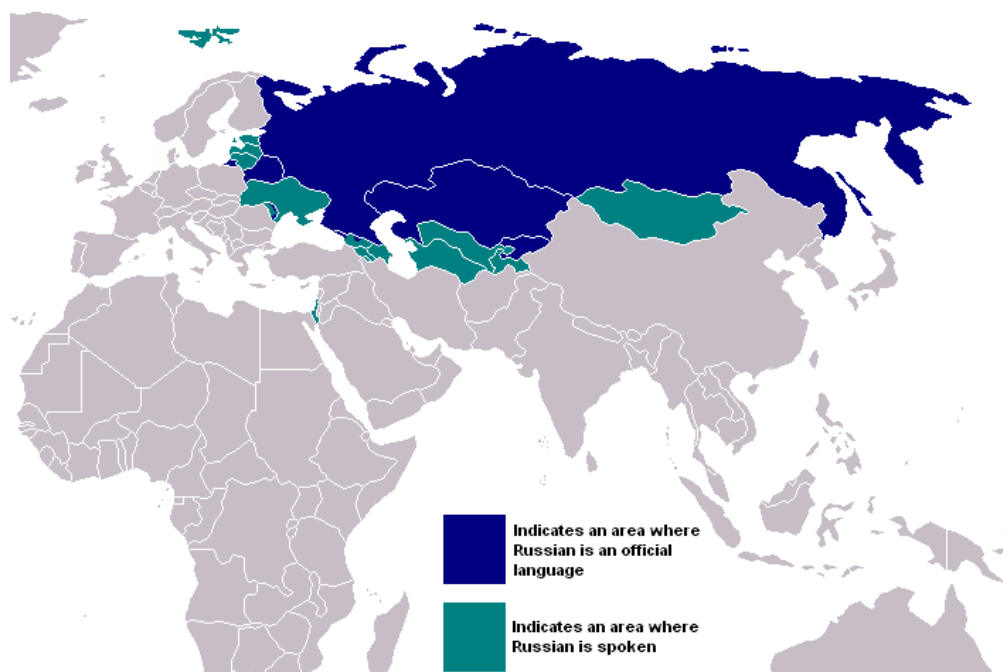


Figure 13.102: Areas where the russian language is official or spoken ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Russian\\_Language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Russian_Language))



Figure 13.103: Regions of Russia (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Russia>)

```

9763 (*russian2m)
9764 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9765 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
9766 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
9767 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9768 {^{}^{}^{}041e^{}^{}^{}0433^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0432^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0435^{}^{}^{}043d^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0435}}%
9769 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9770 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}043b%
9771 ^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}044e^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0440^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0446^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0439}}%
9772 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
9773 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0430%
9774 ^{}^{}^{}0431^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0446}}%
9775 %%
9776 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9777 {^{}^{}^{}041e^{}^{}^{}0433^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0432^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0435^{}^{}^{}043d^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0435}}%
9778 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9779 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}043b%
9780 ^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}044e^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0440^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0446^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0439}}%
9781 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9782 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0430%
9783 ^{}^{}^{}0431^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0446}}%
9784 %%
9785 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9786 {^{}^{}^{}041e^{}^{}^{}0433^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0432^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0435^{}^{}^{}043d^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0435}}%
9787 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9788 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}043b%

```



Figure 13.104: Russian subjects (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Russia>; see also <http://www.monde-diplomatique.fr/IMG/artoff619.jpg>)

```

9789  ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438^^^^0439}}%
9790  \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
9791  {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a  ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
9792  ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}%
9793  </russian2m>

```

### 13.154 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

\localrussian The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the omega-russian.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [252]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 587.

```

9794  (*russian2o)
9795  \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9796  %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
9797  %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov

```

```

9798 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9799 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d^0456^0435}}%
9800 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9801 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9802 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0456^0439}}%
9803 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
9804 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9805 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9806 %%
9807 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9808 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d^0456^0435}}%
9809 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9810 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9811 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0456^0439}}%
9812 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9813 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9814 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9815 %%
9816 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9817 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d^0456^0435}}%
9818 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9819 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9820 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0456^0439}}%
9821 \def\slttitle{\localrussian%
9822 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9823 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9824 </russian2o>

```

### 13.155 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. МАКХОВАЯ) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 83, 266]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 587. The `parttoc` title varies depending on the presence of chapters defined or not by the document class.

```

9825 <*russianb>
9826 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]%
9827 %% Russian (russianb) titles from russianb.dtx (babel)
9828 %% Lapko, Olga & Volovitch, Vladimir & Lemberg, Werner
9829 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9830 \def\ptctitle{%
9831   {\cyr\CYRS\CYRO\CYRD\CYRE\CYRR\CYRZH\CYRA\CYRN\CYRI\CYRE}}%
9832 \else\def\ptctitle{%
9833   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRG\CYRL\CYRA\CYRV\CYRL\CYRE\CYRN\CYRI\CYRE}}%
9834 \fi
9835 \def\plftitle{%
9836   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRP\CYRI\CYRS\CYRO\CYRK\space
9837     \CYRI\CYRL\CYRL\CYRYU\CYRS\CYRT\CYRR\CYRA\CYRC\CYRI\CYRISHRT}}%

```

```

9838 \def\plttitle{%
9839   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9840    \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9841 %%
9842 \def\mtctitle{%
9843   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9844 \def\mlftitle{%
9845   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9846    \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9847 \def\mltttitle{%
9848   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9849    \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9850 %%
9851 \def\stctitle{%
9852   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9853 \def\slftitle{%
9854   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9855    \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9856 \def\slttitle{%
9857   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9858    \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9859 </russianb>

```

### 13.156 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

\xalx The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [130, 133]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 587.

```

9860 <*russianc>
9861 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9862 %% Russian titles (Mongolia). Needs cyrillic fonts.
9863 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
9864 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9865 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9866 %%
9867 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9868 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9869 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9870 %%
9871 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9872 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9873 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9874 </russianc>

```

**13.157 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld[o]**

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the russian.sty (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the cmcyralt package [52].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca.mlo.

```
9875 \< *russian – cca>
9876 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
9877 %% Russian-cca titles. From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
9878 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) & Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
9879 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
9880 \</russian – cca>
```

**13.158 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld[o]**

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the cmcyralt.sty file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package [207].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca1.mlo.

```
9881 \< *russian – cca1>
9882 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
9883 %% Russian-cca1 titles. From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
9884 %% with cmcy fonts in alt encoding.
9885 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) & Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
9886 %% & Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
9887 \</russian – cca1>
```

**13.159 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld[o]**

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the russian.sty file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [316].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lh.mlo.

```

9888 <*russian – lh>
9889 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
9890 %% Russian-lh titles from russian.sty in the LH package
9891 %% LH fonts in special encoding. By Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
9892 </russian – lh>

```

### 13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld[o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the lhcyralt.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [447].

```

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily
generated, hence we load russian-lhcyralt.mlo. The input encoding is ALT (code page
CP866).

```

```

9893 <*russian – lhcyralt>
9894 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
9895 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles from lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
9896 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866).
9897 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9898 </russian – lhcyralt>

```

### 13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld[o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the lhcyrkoi.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [447].

```

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily
generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```

```

9899 <*russian – lhcyrkoi>
9900 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
9901 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles from lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
9902 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8. Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9903 </russian – lhcyrkoi>

```

### 13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d|o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrwin.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [447].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrwin.mlo. The input encoding is CP1251.

```
9904 <{*russian – lhcyrwin}>
9905 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
9906 %% Russian titles from lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
9907 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in encoding CP1251. Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9908 </russian – lhcyrwin>
```

### 13.163 “Samin” language: samin.mld

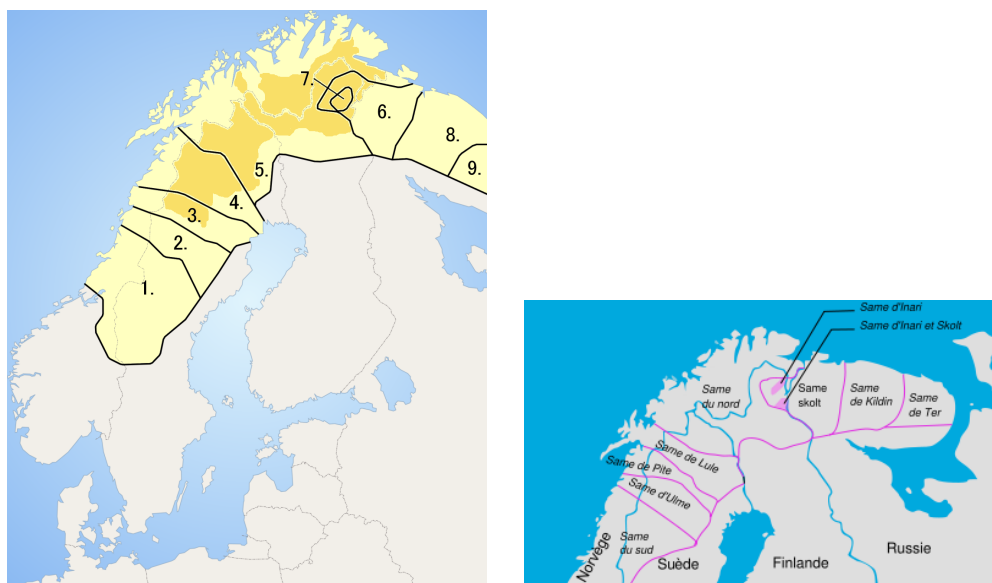


Figure 13.105: Sámi dialects areas <sup>b</sup> ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sami\\_languages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sami_languages) and [http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Langue\\_same](http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Langue_same))

<sup>b</sup> Sámi: 1. Southern; 2. Ume; 3. Pite; 4. Lule; 5. Northern; 6. Skolt; 7. Inari; 8. Teri. Darkened area represents municipalities that recognize Sámi as an official language.

The titles for the “samin” language come from the samin.dtx file (by Regnor JERNSLETTEN) in the babel package [59, 60, 78]. Specific fonts are required.

Note that several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more .dtx files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sámi case<sup>44</sup>. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group. See also [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/S%C3%A1pmi\\_%28area%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/S%C3%A1pmi_%28area%29).

```

9909 <*samin>
9910 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9911 %% North Sámi (samin) titles from samin.dtx (babel). Jernsletten, Regnor
9912 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9913 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
9914 \def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
9915 %%
9916 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9917 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
9918 \def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
9919 %%
9920 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9921 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
9922 \def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
9923 </samin>

```

### 13.164 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

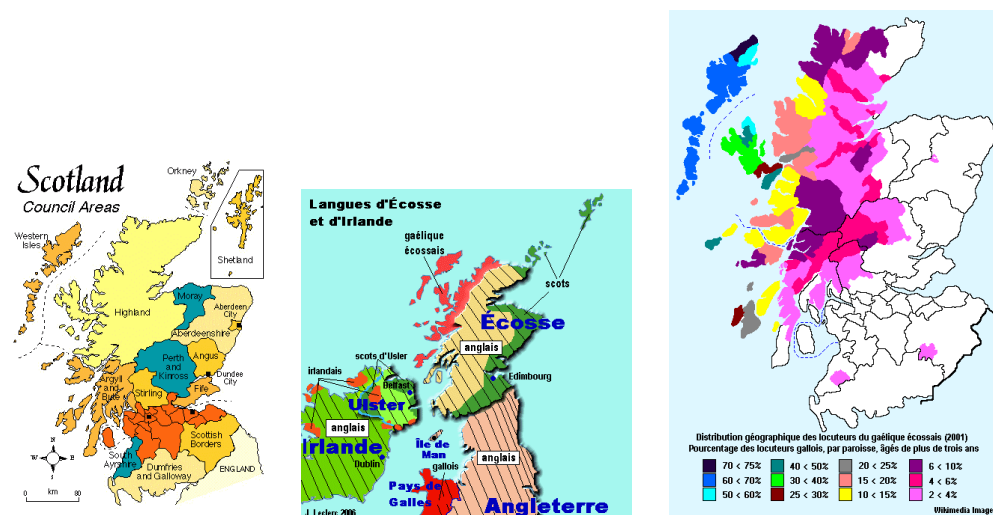


Figure 13.106: Scotland and the scottish gaelic language (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ecossecarte.htm>, <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ecosse.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ecosse-Ing-carte.htm> in [274])

The titles for the “scottish” language (gaelic scottish, *gàidhlig*) come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the babel language [59, 60, 75]:

<sup>44</sup> Adapted from the `samin.dtx` file.



```

9924 (*scottish)
9925 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9926 %% Scottish titles from scottish.dtx (babel). Grant, Fraser
9927 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar-obraich}%
9928 \def\plftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
9929 \def\pltttitle{Liosta Chl\'ar}%
9930 %%
9931 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar-obraich}%
9932 \def\mlftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
9933 \def\mltttitle{Liosta Chl\'ar}%
9934 %%
9935 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar-obraich}%
9936 \def\slftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
9937 \def\slttitle{Liosta Chl\'ar}%
9938 </scottish>

```

### 13.165 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld

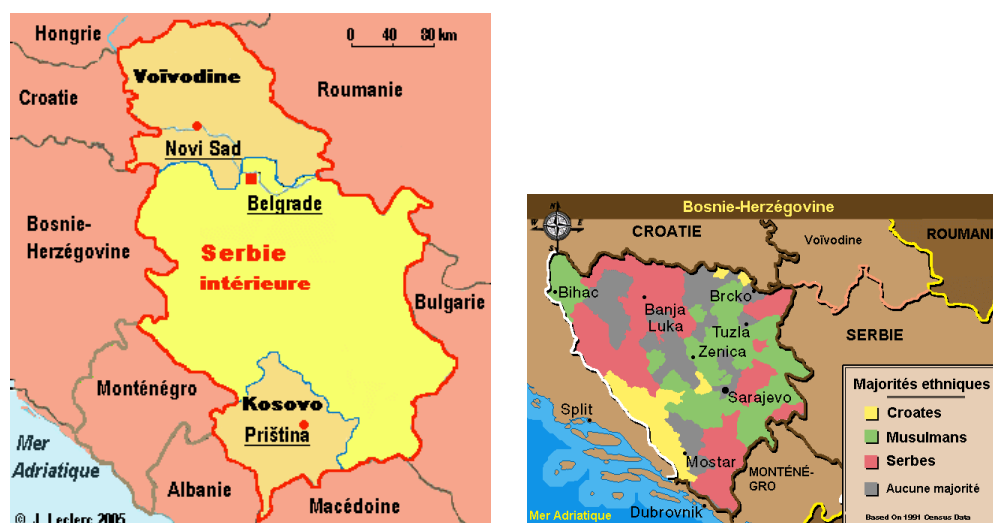


Figure 13.107: Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/serbie.htm> and [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/bosnieherzcarte\\_1.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/bosnieherzcarte_1.htm) in [274])

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) (*srpski jezik*, *srpskohrvatski jezik*) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 87]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.166 on the following page. See also figure 13.12 on page 474.

```

9939 (*serbian)
9940 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9941 %% Serbian titles in serbian.dtx (babel). Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan & Slobodan, Jankovic
9942 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%

```

```

9943 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
9944 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
9945 %%
9946 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
9947 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
9948 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
9949 %%
9950 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
9951 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
9952 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
9953 </serbian>

```

### 13.166 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “serbianc” language<sup>45</sup> have been gently provided by Marko ĆEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.165 on the preceding page.

```

9954 <*serbianc>
9955 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9956 %% Serbian cyrillic titles. Marko Ćehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
9957 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
9958 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
9959 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
9960 \def\pltttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
9961 %%
9962 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
9963 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
9964 \def\mltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
9965 %%
9966 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
9967 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
9968 \def\slttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
9969 </serbianc>

```

### 13.167 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language (*slovenčina*, *slovenký jazyk*) are taken from the `slovak.dtx` file (by Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 71]. Uses the T1 font encoding.

---

<sup>45</sup>The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

9970 (*slovak)
9971 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9972 %% Slovak titles from slovak.dtx (babel). Chlebíková, Jana & Schlemmer, Tobias
9973 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
9974 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
9975 \def\pltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
9976 %%
9977 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
9978 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
9979 \def\mltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
9980 %%
9981 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
9982 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
9983 \def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
9984 \slovak

```

### 13.168 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The slovene language (*slovenščina*, *slovenski jezik*) is spoken in Slovenia, but somewhat also in Italy (Frioul), in Austria (Carinthia and Styria), in Hungary (Szlovénviék and Porabje), in West Germany and Sweden. The titles for the “slovene” language come from the `slovene.dtx` file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 101]:

```

9985 (*slovene)
9986 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9987 %% Slovene titles from slovene.dtx (babel). Zavrtanik, Danilo & \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
9988 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
9989 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
9990 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
9991 %%
9992 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
9993 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%

```



Figure 13.108: Slovakia and its districts (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/slovaquiecarte.htm> in [274] and [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Districts\\_of\\_Slovakia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Districts_of_Slovakia); see also [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_traditional\\_regions\\_of\\_Slovakia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_traditional_regions_of_Slovakia) by Kristian SLIMAK)



Figure 13.109: Slovenia (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/sloveniecarte.htm> in [274] and [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Slovene\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Slovene_language))

```

9994 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
9995 %%
9996 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
9997 \def\slfttitle{Slike}%
9998 \def\sltttitle{Tabele}%
9999 \slovene

```

### 13.169 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” (*español*, *castellano*) language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the `babel` package [48, 59, 60]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.35 on page 497). But note also that other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.19 on page 483), “catalan” (section 13.37 on page 497), and “galician” (section 13.66 on page 524); see figure 13.111 on page 602. Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.170 on page 603). And “spanish3” (see section 13.171 on page 604) is a version for the Antomega [252] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 13.172 on page 604).

```

10000 \<spanish>
10001 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2008/04/03]%
10002 %% Spanish titles from spanish.dtx (babel) by Bezos, Javier & CervanTeX
10003 \expandafter\ifx\curname chapter\endcsname\relax
10004 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else\def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}\fi
10005 \def\plfttitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10006 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
10007 %%

```



Spain comprises 17 autonomous communities (see figure 13.110 above) in the whole country, including the Canary Islands, near Morocco<sup>a</sup>:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| – Andalusia ( <i>Andalucía</i> ): castilian;                             | – Catalonia ( <i>Cataluña / Catalunya</i> ): castilian and catalan;                       |
| – Aragon ( <i>Aragón</i> ): castilian ;                                  | – Extremadura ( <i>Extremadura</i> ): castilian;  |
| – Principality of Asturias ( <i>Principado de Asturias</i> ): castilian; | – Galicia ( <i>Galicia</i> ): castilian and galician;                                     |
| – Balearic Islands ( <i>Islas Baleares</i> ): castilian and catalan;     | – La Rioja: castilian;  |
| – Basque Country ( <i>Pais Vasco, Euskadi</i> ): castilian and basque;   | – Madrid ( <i>Madrid</i> ): castilian;  |
| – Canary Islands ( <i>Canarias</i> ): castilian;                         | – Region of Murcia ( <i>Region de Murcia</i> ): castilian.                                |
| – Cantabria ( <i>Cantabria</i> ): castilian;                             | – Foral Community of Navarre ( <i>Comunidad Foral de Navarra</i> ): castilian and basque; |
| – Castile-La Mancha ( <i>Castilla y La Mancha</i> ): castilian;          | – Valencian Community ( <i>Comunidad Valenciana</i> ): castilian and catalan (valencian); |
| – Castile and León ( <i>Castilla y León</i> ): castilian;                |   |

<sup>a</sup> Ceuta and Melilla are spanish enclaves on the northern coast of Morocco.

Figure 13.110: The 17 autonomous communities in Spain ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Autonomous\\_communities\\_of\\_Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Autonomous_communities_of_Spain) and [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagne\\_carte.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagne_carte.htm) in [274])

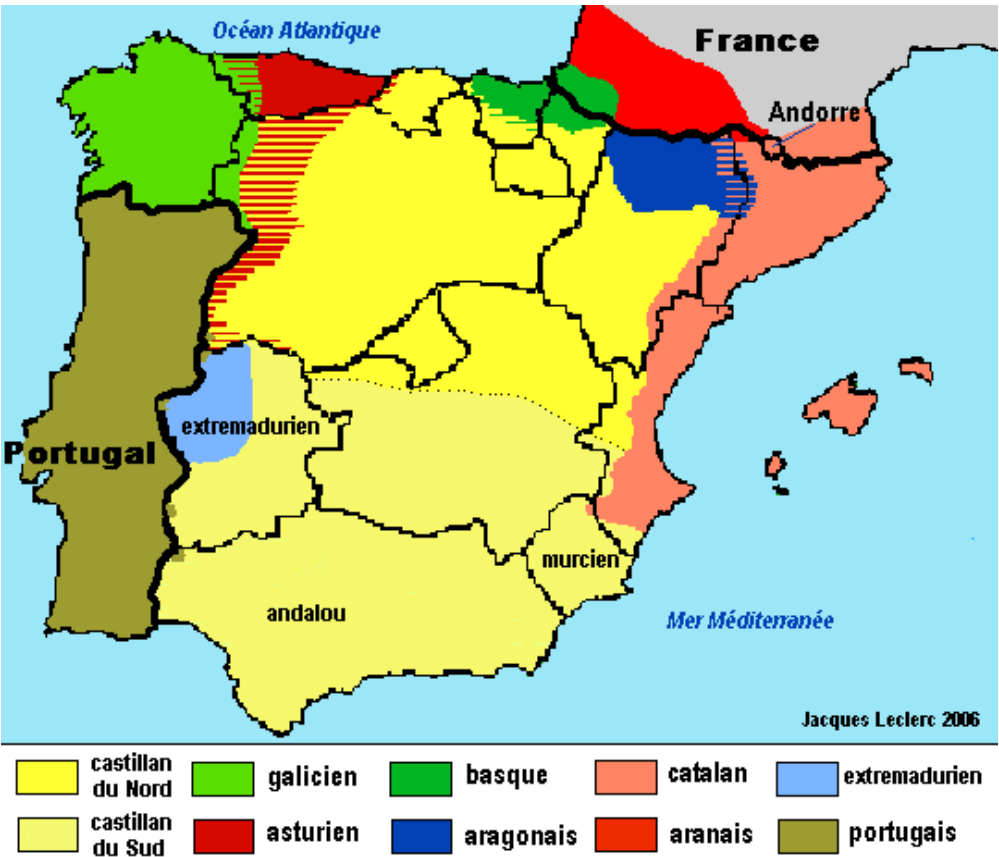


Figure 13.111: Languages in Spain ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagne\\_carte-Ing.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagne_carte-Ing.htm) in [274])

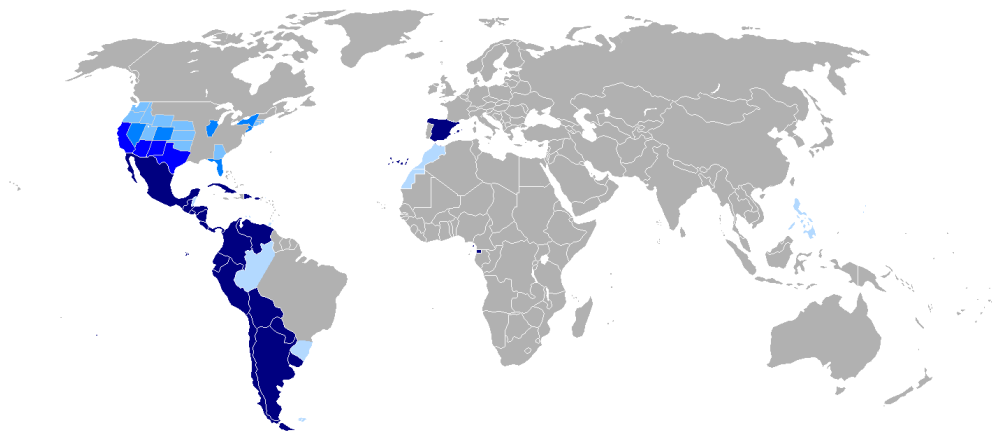


Figure 13.112: Hispanophone areas ([http://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish\\_language](http://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_language) by Onofre BONVILA)

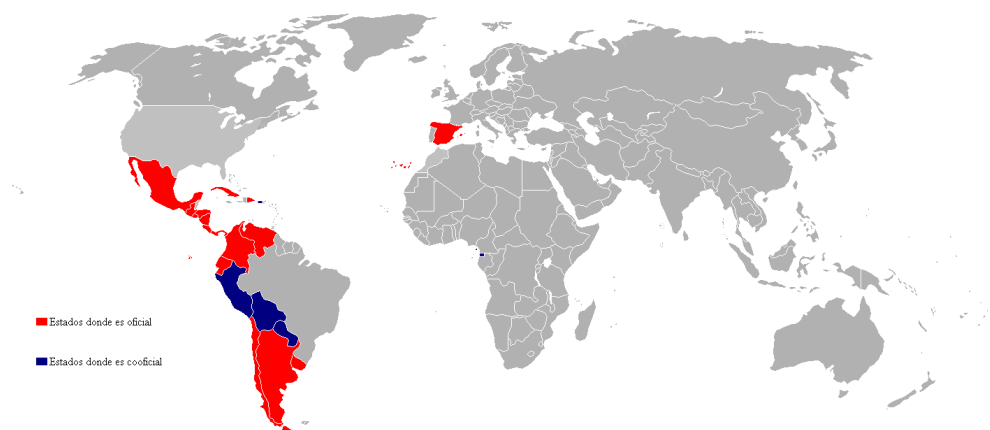


Figure 13.113: States where spanish (castilian) is an official language (red: the only one, blue: co-official) ([http://es.wikipedia.org/wiki/Idioma\\_espa~nol](http://es.wikipedia.org/wiki/Idioma_espa~nol))

```
10008 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10009 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10010 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
10011 %%
10012 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10013 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10014 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
10015 </spanish>
```

### 13.170 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [48, 59, 60], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.169 on page 600.

```
10016 <*spanish2>
10017 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
10018 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
10019 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10020 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
10021 %%
10022 \def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
10023 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
10024 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
10025 %%
10026 \def\stctitle{Contenido}%
10027 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
10028 \def\sltttitle{Tablas}%
10029 </spanish2>
```

**13.171 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld**

`\localspanish` The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the `omega-spanish.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV) of the Antomega project [252]. See section 13.169 on page 600.

```

10030 <*spanish3>
10031 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]%
10032 %% Spanish titles from omega-spanish.ldf of the Antomega project.
10033 \def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10034 \def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10035 \def\plttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10036 %%
10037 \def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10038 \def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10039 \def\mlttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10040 %%
10041 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10042 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10043 \def\slttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10044 </spanish3>

```

**13.172 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld**

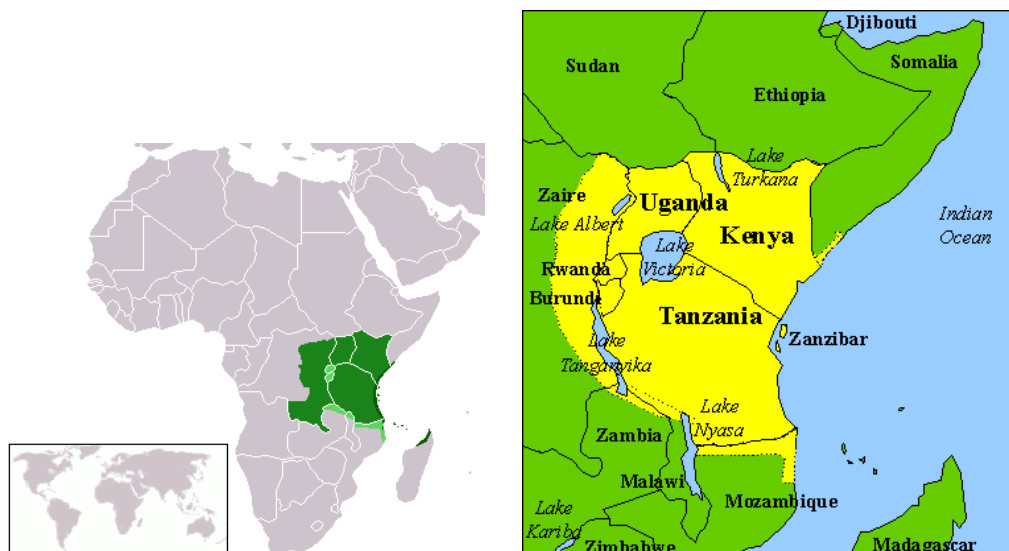
The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS) from the `CervanTeX` package [47]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.169 on page 600.

```

10045 <*spanish4>
10046 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]%
10047 %% Spanish titles (from spanish.dtx in CervanTeX) Bezos, Javier
10048 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10049 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi
10050 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10051 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10052 %%
10053 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10054 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10055 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10056 %%
10057 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10058 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10059 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10060 </spanish4>

```



13.173 “Swahili” language: `swahili.mld`

The areas where Swahili is spoken as a native language (dark green), official or national language (medium green), and trade language (light green). As a trade language, it extends some distance further to the northwest.

Figure 13.114: Swahili language areas ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Swahili\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Swahili_language) and <http://si.unm.edu/linguistics/swahili/swahili>)

The titles for the “swahili” language (*kiswahili*) are taken from the *obsolete swahili.tex* file<sup>46</sup>, with adaptations and corrections given on the `comp.text.tex` news group (messages 57662, 57713, and 57717) by Giancarlo BASSI and Enrico GREGORIO. Swahili is the main Bantu language and is spoken in East Africa: Tanzania, Kenya, Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi, Zanzibar and in the area of the Great Lakes in the Democratic Republic of Congo (Congo-Kinshasa, formerly Zaire) and in the Republic of Congo (Congo-Brazzaville), in the north of Mozambique and the south of Somalia<sup>47</sup>. See figure 13.114.

```

10061 (*swahili)
10062 \ProvidesFile{swahili.mld}[2007/07/02]%
10063 %% Swahili titles from swahili.tex in articles: 57662,57713,57717
10064 %% in comp.text.tex by Giancarlo Bassi <g.bassi@iperbole.bologna.it>
10065 %% & Enrico Gregorio <gregorio@math.unipd.it>
10066 \def\ptctitle{Yaliyomo}%
10067 \def\plftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
10068 \def\pltttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
10069 %%
10070 \def\mtctitle{Yaliyomo}%
10071 \def\mlftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
10072 \def\mltttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
10073 %%
10074 \def\stctitle{Yaliyomo}%

```

<sup>46</sup> <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex209/contrib/ml/swahili.tex>

<sup>47</sup> See <http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/AXL/monde/swahili.htm>, <http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/czaire.htm> in [274], [http://www.glc.com/hassan/swahili\\_history.html](http://www.glc.com/hassan/swahili_history.html), and <http://www.omniglot.com/writing/swahili.htm>.

```

10075 \def\slfttitle{Picha zilizomo}%
10076 \def\sltttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
10077 </swahili>

```

### 13.174 “Swedish” language: `swedish.mld`

The titles for the “swedish” (*svenska*) language come from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michael RYNNING) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 76].

The swedish language is spoken in Sweden and in some regions of Finland like the Åland Islands (see figure 13.115 on the next page). See also section 13.175.

```

10078 <*swedish>
10079 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]%
10080 %% Swedish titles from swedish.dtx (babel). Hellman, Sten & Östhols, Erik
10081 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10082 \def\plfttitle{Figurer}%
10083 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
10084 %%
10085 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10086 \def\mlfttitle{Figurer}%
10087 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
10088 %%
10089 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10090 \def\slfttitle{Figurer}%
10091 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
10092 </swedish>

```

### 13.175 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for swedish) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSEN) in the `SLATEX` package [294]. See also section 13.174.

```

10093 <*swedish2>
10094 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]%
10095 %% Swedish2 titles from rapport.doc (slatex). Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
10096 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10097 \def\plfttitle{Figurf"orteckning}%
10098 \def\plttitle{Tabellf"orteckning}%
10099 %%
10100 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10101 \def\mlfttitle{Figurf"orteckning}%
10102 \def\mlttitle{Tabellf"orteckning}%
10103 %%

```

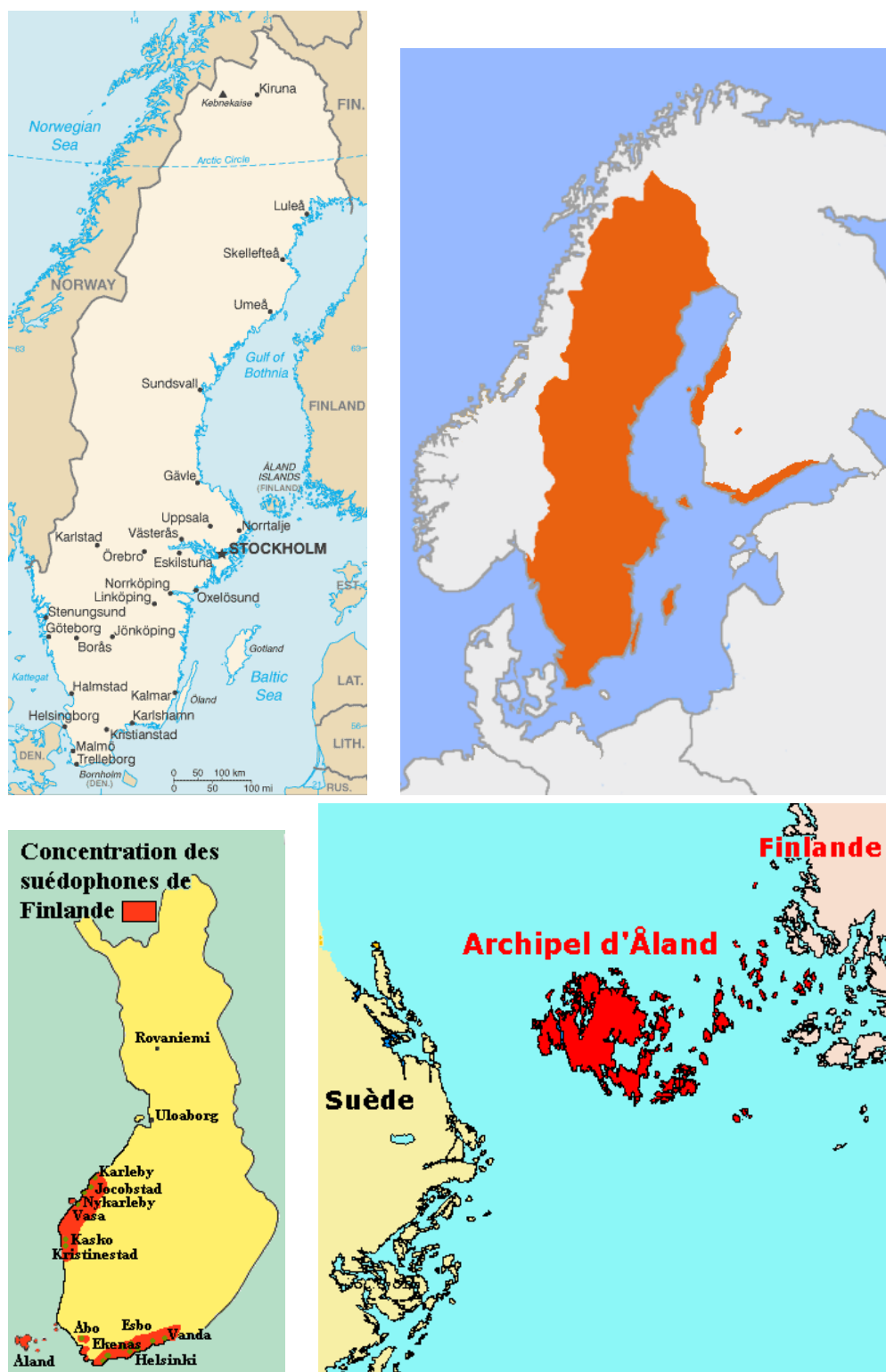


Figure 13.115: Swedish language areas (<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/sweden.html> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [360], [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Swedish\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Swedish_language), [http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/finlande-2demo\\_lng.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/finlande-2demo_lng.htm) and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/EtatsNsouverains/aland.htm> in [274])

```

10104 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10105 \def\slftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10106 \def\slttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10107 </swedish2>

```

### 13.176 “Thai” language: thai.ml[d|o]



Figure 13.116: Thai language areas ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/fam\\_tai-kadai.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/fam_tai-kadai.htm) and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/thaïlande.htm> in [274])

ไทย

The titles for the “thai” language come from the thaicjk.ldf file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [123, 276, 277]. The thailatex package [296] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its thai.ldf file.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load thai.mlo. See also [238].

```

10108 <{*thai}
10109 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{thai}%
10110 %% From thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
10111 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
10112 </thai>

```

**13.177 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`**


---

a	b	c	ç	d	e	f	g	ğ	h	ı	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	ö	p	r	s	ş	t	u	ü	v	y	z
A	B	C	Ç	D	E	F	G	Ğ	H	İ	İ	J	K	L	M	N	O	Ö	P	R	S	Ş	T	U	Ü	V	Y	Z

---

Figure 13.117: The turkish alphabet

The turkish language (*türkçe*) is spoken mainly in Turkey and in Cyprus. The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 67].

```

10113 <*turkish>
10114 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
10115 % Turkish titles from turkish.dtx (babel). Burc, Mustafa
10116 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10117 \def\plftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
10118 \def\pltttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
10119 %%
10120 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10121 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
10122 \def\mltttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
10123 %%
10124 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10125 \def\slftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
10126 \def\sltttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
10127 </turkish>

```

**13.178 “Uighur” language: `uighur.mld`**

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section 13.21 on page 485):

```

10128 <*uighur>
10129 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10130 </uighur>

```

**13.179 “Uighur2” language: `uighur2.mld`**

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig2.mld` file (see section 13.22 on page 485):



Figure 13.118: Turkey ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/turquie\\_1general.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/turquie_1general.htm) in [274])

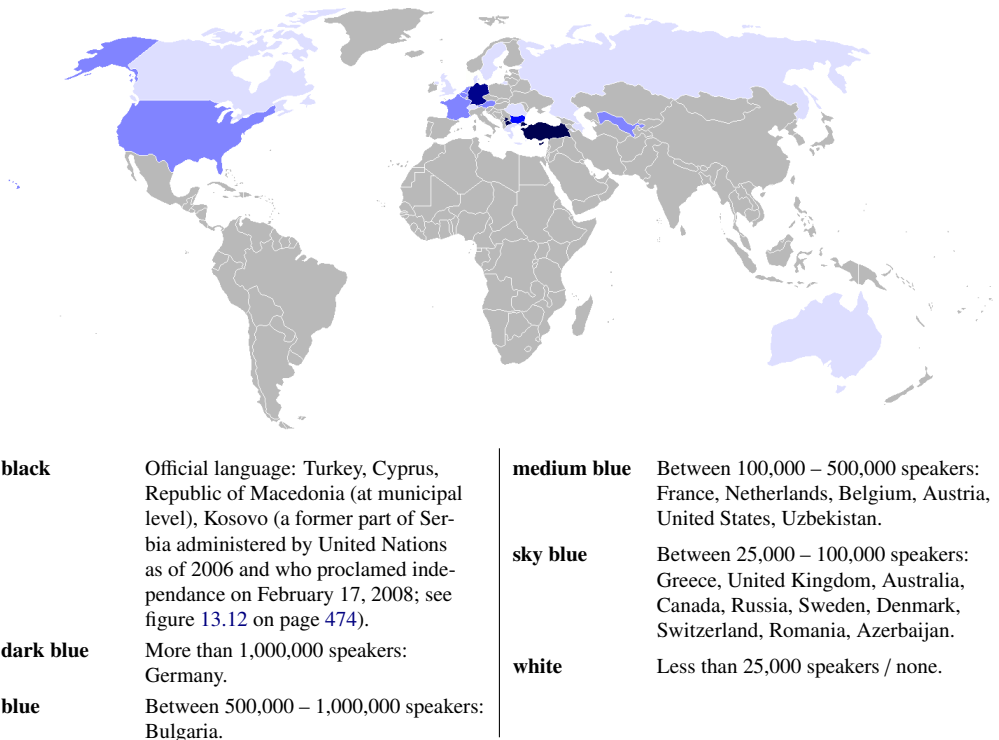


Figure 13.119: Turkish language in the world ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Turkish\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Turkish_language))



Figure 13.120: Uighur language areas (<http://www.lmp.ucla.edu/Profile.aspx?LangID=69&menu=004> in [214])



Figure 13.121: Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region (<http://en.wikipedia.org/?title=Xinjiang> and <http://www.tourroundchina.com/map/xinjiang.htm>; see also <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/chine-region-auto-ouigoure-Xinjiang.htm> in [274])

```

10131 (*uighur2)
10132 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10133 </uighur2>

```

**13.180 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld**

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig3.mld` file (see section 13.21 on page 485):

```
10134 < *uighur3 >
10135 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10136 < /uighur3 >
```

**13.181 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld**

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 508):

```
10137 < *UKenglish >
10138 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10139 < /UKenglish >
```

**13.182 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld**

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load `ukrainian.mld`. See section 13.183.

```
10140 < *ukraineb >
10141 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{ukrainian}%
10142 < /ukraineb >
```

**13.183 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld**

`\cyr` **Український** The titles for the “ukrainian” language (*ukrayins’ka mova*) come from the `ukraineb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 96]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is `ukraineb` (see section 13.182).

```
10143 < *ukrainian >
10144 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]%
10145 %% Ukrainian titles from ukraineb.dtx (babel). Shvaika, Andrij & Lapko, Olga
10146 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10147 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyr\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
```



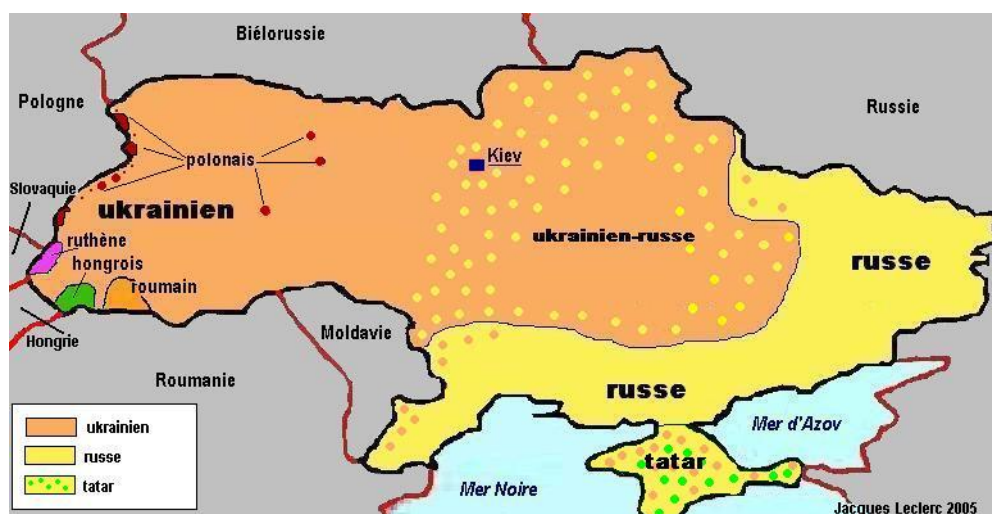


Figure 13.122: Languages in Ukraine (<http://www.tfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ukraine-1demo.htm> in [274])



Figure 13.123: Ukraine ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:WikiProject\\_Ukraine/Subdivisions](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:WikiProject_Ukraine/Subdivisions))

```

10148 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrii\cyrk
10149         \ \cyrii\cyr\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}}%
10150 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrii\cyrk
10151         \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyr\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}}%
10152 %%
10153 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}}%
10154 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrii\cyrk
10155         \ \cyrii\cyr\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}}%
10156 \def\plttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrii\cyrk
10157         \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyr\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}}%
10158 %%
10159 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}}%
10160 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrii\cyrk
10161         \ \cyrii\cyr\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}}%
10162 \def\slttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrii\cyrk
10163         \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyr\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}}%
10164 </ukrainian>

```

### 13.184 “Uppersorbian” language: `uppersorbian.mld`

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language<sup>48</sup> (*hornjoserbsce*, *hornjoserbšćiba*) are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [59, 60, 99]. See also section 13.113 on page 559. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.186 on the following page).

```

10165 <*uppersorbian>
10166 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]%
10167 %% Upper sorbian titles from usorbian.dtx (babel). Needs cyrillic fonts. Werner, Eduard
10168 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
10169 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10170 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10171 %%
10172 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10173 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10174 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10175 %%
10176 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
10177 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10178 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10179 </uppersorbian>

```

<sup>48</sup>Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

### 13.185 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”<sup>49</sup>, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 508):

```
10180 <*USenglish>
10181 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10182 </USenglish>
```

### 13.186 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just have to load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.184 on the preceding page.

```
10183 <*usorbian>
10184 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
10185 </usorbian>
```

### 13.187 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language (*tiếng việt*) are taken from the `vietnam` package [278] (by Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN). Vietnamese fonts are required; see [191, 193]. The vietnamese language is spoken in Vietnam (figure 13.124 on the next page) and in the vietnamese diaspora. See also section 13.188 on the following page.

```
10186 <*vietnam>
10187 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]%
10188 %% Vietnamese titles
10189 \def\ptctitle{M\{d\{u\}c l\{d\{u\}c}%
10190 \def\plftitle{Danh s\{ach h\{inh v\{~e}%
10191 \def\pltttitle{Danh s\{ach b\{h\{a\}ng}%
10192 %%
10193 \def\mtctitle{M\{d\{u\}c l\{d\{u\}c}%
10194 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\{ach h\{inh v\{~e}%
10195 \def\mltttitle{Danh s\{ach b\{h\{a\}ng}%
10196 %%
10197 \def\stctitle{M\{d\{u\}c l\{d\{u\}c}%
10198 \def\slftitle{Danh s\{ach h\{inh v\{~e}%
10199 \def\sltttitle{Danh s\{ach b\{h\{a\}ng}%
10200 </vietnam>
```

---

<sup>49</sup>It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

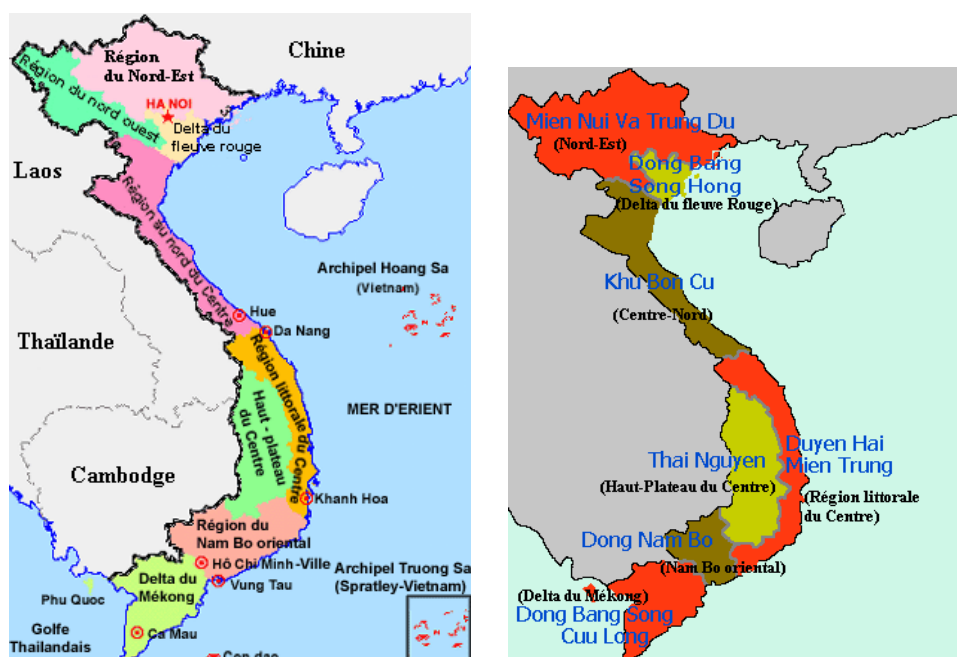


Figure 13.124: Vietnam ([http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/vietnam\\_carte2-prov.htm](http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/vietnam_carte2-prov.htm) in [274])

### 13.188 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

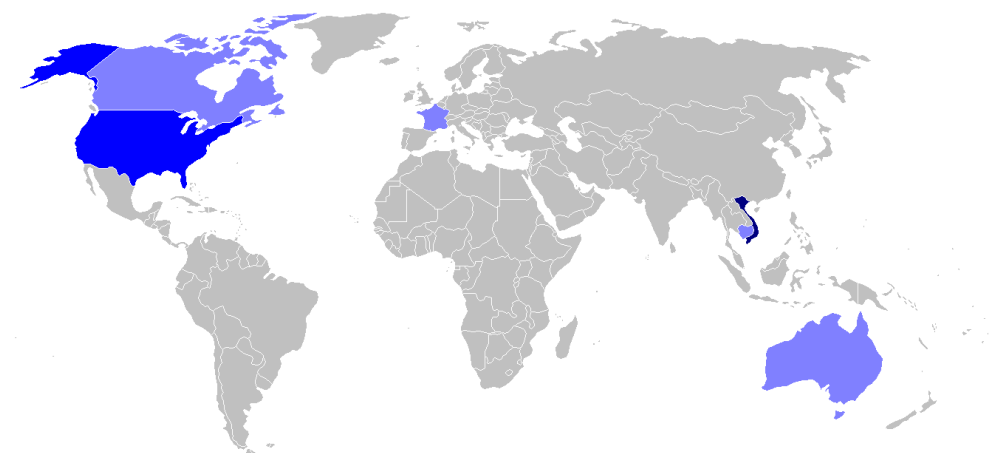
`\mtcselectlanguage` The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.187 on the page before.

```
10201 <{*vietnamese}
10202 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
10203 </vietnamese>
```

### 13.189 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language (*cymraeg*) come from the welsh.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [58–60]:

```
10204 <{*welsh}
10205 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]%
10206 %% Welsh titles from welsh.dtx (babel), by Braams, Johannes~L.
10207 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
10208 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10209 \def\plttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10210 %%
```



The creation of the vietnamese alphabet is officially attributed to the Jesuit Alexandre DE RHODES<sup>†</sup> in 1623. Born at Avignon on March 15th, 1591, died on November 5th, 1660, at Ispahan, he was a Jesuit priest who spent six years in Vietnam (1624 – 1630) for his catholic missions and systematized the “(Chữ) Quốc Ngữ”, or “script for the national language”, the romanized script of the vietnamese language (see [http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexandre\\_de\\_Rhodes](http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexandre_de_Rhodes)). It is a latin alphabet with the addition of many diacritic marks to note the phonetic value of some letters and the tunes of the language (see [http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qu%E1%BB%91c\\_ng%E1%BB%AF](http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qu%E1%BB%91c_ng%E1%BB%AF)).

See also [http://rarfaxp.riken.go.jp/~dang/rhodes\\_motive.html](http://rarfaxp.riken.go.jp/~dang/rhodes_motive.html) for a resume of the modern story and <http://www.cjvlang.com/Writing/writviet.html> for an introduction to this writing system. See also [228] about the portuguese predecessors of Alexandre DE RHODES.

Figure 13.125: The vietnamese language in the world ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vietnamese\\_language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vietnamese_language))

```

10211 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
10212 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10213 \def\mltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10214 %%
10215 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
10216 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10217 \def\sltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10218 </wels>

```

### 13.190 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [130, 133] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). Xalx (Khalkha) is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. See figure 13.127 on page 619. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.102 on page 553, 13.191 on the following page, and 13.192 on page 619.

```

10219 <*xalx>
10220 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]%
10221 %% Mongol (xalx) titles

```

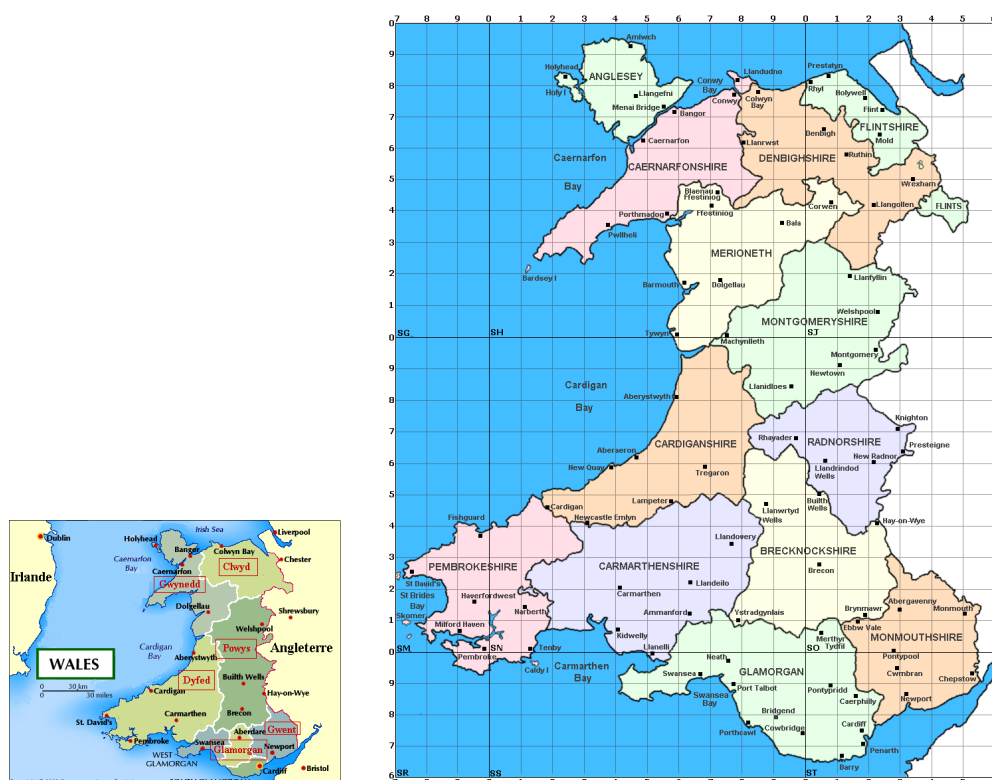


Figure 13.126: Wales (<http://www.tlq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/paysgallescarte.htm> in [274] and <http://homepage.ntlworld.com/geogdata/ngw/map.htm> in the *National Gazetteer of Wales*)

```

10222 \def\ptctitle{\mnr Garqig}}%
10223 \def\plftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10224 \def\pltttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10225 %
10226 \def\mtctitle{\mnr Garqig}}%
10227 \def\mlftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10228 \def\mltttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10229 %
10230 \def\stctitle{\mnr Garqig}}%
10231 \def\slftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10232 \def\sltttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10233 </xalx>

```

### 13.191 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [130, 133] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.190 on the preceding page).



Figure 13.127: Khalkha language areas (<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/AXL/asie/Mongolie.htm>)

```

10234 <*xalx2>
10235 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]%
10236 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles
10237 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10238 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10239 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10240 %%
10241 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10242 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10243 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10244 %%
10245 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10246 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10247 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10248 </xalx2>

```

### 13.192 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

\xalx The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [130, 133] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.190 on page 617).

```
10249 <*xalx3>
10250 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]%
10251 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles
10252 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10253 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10254 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10255 %%
10256 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10257 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10258 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10259 %%
10260 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10261 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10262 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10263 </xalx3>
```



## **Part III**

# **Complements**

**Contents of the Third Part**

<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>623</b>	<b>Acknowledgments</b>	<b>698</b>
<b>Changes history</b>	<b>662</b>	<b>Index</b>	<b>701</b>

# Bibliography

This bibliography contains many URLs; you must be aware that some of them might be inaccessible because they are obsolete, or because their site is down or encounters some unexpected problem. Note also that the response of some sites may be slow (several seconds). For instance, the entries [240–242], from the <http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/> site, are very difficult to contact.

The URLs beginning with “https:” to the TUGboat site may have a restricted access to the TUG members during one year after publication. Being a member of TUG is useful and cheap!

Some URLs may contain an extension not supported by your Web browser; in such cases, you should try to access to the document manually. An example is [28], whose extension is `ps.gz`.

Some URLs are too long for some tools; when possible, I shortened the URL to display only the contents the directory, as for [194], or by using an URL to the catalogue entry (as for [226] and [252]); when not possible, you should try to access to the document manually.

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T<sub>E</sub>X for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 623, 706, 709, 733, 762, 764
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T<sub>E</sub>X pour l’Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUDEMANCHE, <mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>. 706, 709, 733, 762, 764
- [3] Stéphane AICARDI. *Codages de caractères ASCII, latin-1, UTF-8, etc*, March 2006. Journées Mathrice, Nantes. Available from: <http://www.mathrice.org/rencontres/mars.2006/codages.pdf>. 707, 762
- [4] A.J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, November 2007. [malayalamtex@gmail.com](mailto:malayalamtex@gmail.com) and <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 45, 204, 471, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 707, 744, 760, 762

- [5] A.J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using  $\Omega/\aleph$* , November 2007. <mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/malayalam-omega.html>. 45, 204, 471, 568, 707, 758, 760, 762
- [6] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using  $\text{\LaTeX}$*  [online], January 2007. Available from: [http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese\\_latex.html](http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html). <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>, Department of Physics at Washington University in St. Louis. 707, 762
- [7] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs:  $\mathcal{A}_M\mathcal{S}$ - $\text{\LaTeX}$* . Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. See `instr-1.pdf`. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/>. 89, 207, 707, 711
- [8] Jacques ANDRÉ and Jean-Côme CARPENTIER. *Lexique anglo-fraçais du Companion. Cahiers GUTenberg*, 49:19–45, October 2007. 707, 711, 762, 763
- [9] Jacques ANDRÉ and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes numériques. Document numérique*, 9(3-4), 2006. Éditions Lavoisier, Paris. 707, 733, 762, 764
- [10] Patrick ANDRIES. *Unicode 5.0 en pratique*. In *InfoPro*. Dunod, April 2008. <http://hapax.qc.ca>. 707, 762
- [11] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICHAREAU.  *$\text{\LaTeX}$  pour l' impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see [http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex\\_pour\\_l\\_impatient.html](http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html). 707, 711, 719, 729, 762, 763, 766, 767
- [12] Jouko ARPONEN. *Practical  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Guide* [online], August 2004. Available from: [http://www.helsinki.fi/~tfo\\_www/instr/latex-guide.html](http://www.helsinki.fi/~tfo_www/instr/latex-guide.html). 707, 762
- [13] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 53, 89, 232, 250, 271, 298, 301, 304, 402, 436, 707, 757, 760, 762
- [14] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 31, 89, 217, 219, 234, 250, 411, 418, 435, 707, 760, 762, 767
- [15] Donald ARSENEAU. *The cite package*, November 2003. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty>. 692, 707, 711, 759, 762
- [16] Donald ARSENEAU. *The overcite package*, May 2003. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cite/overcite.sty>. 209, 707, 759, 760, 762
- [17] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 135, 227, 240, 707, 761, 762, 781

- [18] Donald ARSENEAU. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004.  
<mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 61, 211, 228,  
 707, 711, 759, 762
- [19] Donald ARSENEAU. *The url package*, June 2005. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available  
 from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/url.sty>. 707, 761, 762,  
 778
- [20] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T<sub>E</sub>X Using the CJK L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts  
 and pdfT<sub>E</sub>X under Windows* [online], February 2007. Available from:  
<http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>.  
<mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 707, 711, 760, 762
- [21] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web  
 Using Unicode* [online], February 2007. Available from:  
<http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>.  
<mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 707, 711, 760, 762
- [22] Jason BALDRIDGE. *Reconciling Linguistic Diversity: The History and the Future of  
 Language Policy in India* [online], August 1996. Available from:  
<http://www.ling.upenn.edu/~jason2/papers/natlang.htm>. University of Toledo  
 Honors Thesis. 708, 762
- [23] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 101
- [24] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002.  
<mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>.  
 Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 61, 209, 708,  
 709, 759, 762, 767, 778
- [25] Dorjgotov BATMUNKH. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, March 2007.  
 Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf>. 574, 708, 762
- [26] David BAUSUM. *T<sub>E</sub>X: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers,  
<mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [27]. 625, 708, 762
- [27] David BAUSUM. *T<sub>E</sub>X: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [26],  
 Kluwer Academic Publishers. 625, 708, 762
- [28] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December  
 1995. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/JoliManuelPourLaTeX.ps.gz>. 50, 623, 708, 762
- [29] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F.  
 DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe  
 JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien  
 MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT  
 GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex  
 (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>.  
<mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. 708, 719, 721, 730, 733, 738, 742, 744, 745, 757, 762,  
 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 775, 779, 781

- [30] Claudio BECCARI. *Graphics in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, Politecnico di Torino, Turin, Italia. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/beccari/beccari.pdf>. 708, 762
- [31] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>. 708, 762, 766, 776
- [32] Nelson H. F. BEEBE. *Notes on fonts* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.math.utah.edu/~beebe/fonts/>. 756, 765
- [33] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online], July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. <mailto:emmanuel.beffara@pps.jussieu.fr>. 62, 235, 708, 762, 771, 778
- [34] Rachid BELMOUHOU. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 708, 719, 762, 763
- [35] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T<sub>E</sub>X: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>. 709, 733, 762, 764
- [36] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>. 709, 742, 762, 763, 765
- [37] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encodings for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>. 709, 742, 762, 763, 765
- [38] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>. 709, 742, 762, 763, 765
- [39] Jens BERGER. *The hypernat package*, July 2001. <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/hypernat.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/hypernat.sty>. 709, 734, 760, 762
- [40] Tobias BERNDT. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Addison-Wesley, München, first edition, December 2007. In german. 709, 762
- [41] Tobias BERNDT. *Typographie in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Springer, Berlin, first edition, March 2008. In german. 709, 762

- [42] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 648, 709, 762
- [43] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>. 709, 762
- [44] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 45, 216, 471, 512, 709, 722, 739, 747, 760, 762, 764, 765
- [45] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T<sub>E</sub>X*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 45, 218, 471, 534, 709, 733, 760, 762
- [46] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 89, 238, 256, 410, 411, 695, 709, 761, 762, 777
- [47] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, February 2007. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://www.texytipografia.com/archive/spanish.pdf>. 45, 604, 709, 710, 759, 762
- [48] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2007. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 600, 603, 709, 762
- [49] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The  $\aleph$  (Aleph) Project*. *TUGboat*, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 232, 707, 709, 759, 762
- [50] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006. 709, 711, 762, 763
- [51] Patrick BOMAN and Christian LAUCOU. *La typographie: cent règles*. Le Polygraphe, May 2005. 709, 742, 762, 765
- [52] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 593, 709, 712, 744, 760, 762, 765
- [53] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document styles*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 470, 708, 709, 759, 762
- [54] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 473, 507, 709, 762

- [55] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 508, 509, 709, 762
- [56] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT, <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 546, 709, 730, 733, 762, 763, 764
- [57] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, Håvard HELSTRUP (<mailto:haavard@cernvm>) and Alv Kjetil HOLME (<mailto:holmea@cernvm>); the “nynorsk” variant has been supplied by Per Steinar IVERSEN (<mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch>) and Terje Engeset PETTERST (<mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no>); Rune KLEVELAND (<mailto:runekl@math.uio.no>) added the shorthand definitions. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 577, 578, 709, 733, 734, 738, 739, 762, 764, 766, 767
- [58] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 616, 709, 762
- [59] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 40, 45, 76, 208, 216, 248, 470, 473, 480, 481, 483, 488, 490, 491, 492, 497, 502, 503, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 517, 518, 520, 521, 522, 524, 525, 528, 529, 530, 541, 545, 546, 547, 554, 555, 558, 559, 563, 564, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 581, 583, 585, 586, 587, 591, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 603, 606, 609, 612, 614, 616, 709, 762
- [60] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes (user)*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 40, 45, 76, 208, 216, 248, 470, 473, 480, 481, 483, 488, 490, 491, 492, 497, 502, 503, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 517, 518, 520, 521, 522, 524, 525, 528, 529, 530, 541, 545, 546, 547, 554, 555, 558, 559, 563, 564, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 581, 583, 585, 586, 587, 591, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 603, 606, 609, 612, 614, 616, 708, 709, 759, 762
- [61] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Julio SANCHEZ, and Zunbeltz IZAOLA AZKONA. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 483, 707, 709, 738, 762, 764, 766, 772
- [62] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 545, 707, 709, 762
- [63] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Gonçal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>.



Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>.  
497, 708, 709, 762

- [64] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, with help from Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, (<mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 554, 555, 708, 709, 762, 767, 781
- [65] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, with help from Attila KOPPANYI (<mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 563, 564, 709, 739, 762, 764
- [66] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Georgi N. BOSHPANOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 491, 709, 762
- [67] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rz.uni-hamburg.de>, with help from Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR (<mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 609, 709, 744, 762, 765, 767, 779
- [68] Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBAUGH, Chris A. ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/source2e.tex>. 709, 710, 738, 740, 748, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 771, 772
- [69] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>, <mailto:jmugica@digi21.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/galician/galician.pdf>. 524, 709, 710, 756, 762, 763, 765
- [70] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Galician support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 524, 709, 710, 756, 762, 763, 765
- [71] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.sk>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 598, 709, 711, 762, 763, 766, 772
- [72] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>,

- <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 547, 708, 709, 712, 762, 763
- [73] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 470, 708, 709, 721, 759, 762, 763, 766, 769
- [74] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *A Babel language definition file for French*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 520, 521, 522, 709, 729, 762, 763
- [75] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 596, 709, 730, 762, 763
- [76] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik ÖSTHOLS ([mailto:erik\\_osthols@yahoo.com](mailto:erik_osthols@yahoo.com)). Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 606, 709, 733, 759, 762, 764, 765
- [77] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 585, 709, 734, 738, 762, 764
- [78] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Regnor JERNsLETTEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 595, 709, 738, 762, 764
- [79] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 517, 518, 709, 739, 762, 764, 766, 770
- [80] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 545, 709, 739, 762, 764
- [81] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>,

- <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 480, 709, 739, 744, 762, 764, 765
- [82] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 481, 709, 739, 744, 762, 764, 765
- [83] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 492, 591, 709, 742, 762, 765, 767, 779
- [84] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 506, 709, 742, 762, 765
- [85] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 541, 709, 742, 762, 765
- [86] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Miloš V. LOKAJČEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 503, 709, 743, 762, 765
- [87] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 597, 709, 756, 762, 765, 766, 774
- [88] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 502, 709, 761, 762, 765
- [89] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 528, 709, 762, 766, 770

- [90] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 576, 709, 762, 766, 770, 772
- [91] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2008. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations and suggestions for enhancements. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm>, [mailto:Jose-Pedro\\_Ramalhete@macmail](mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail), <mailto:arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 488, 583, 709, 719, 762, 763, 766, 770
- [92] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 490, 709, 762, 766, 771
- [93] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 510, 709, 739, 762, 764, 766, 771
- [94] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 511, 709, 762, 766, 772
- [95] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 581, 709, 738, 762, 764, 766, 772
- [96] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Andrij SHVAIKA, Olga LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 612, 709, 742, 762, 765, 766, 767, 773, 779
- [97] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 530, 709, 762, 766, 776
- [98] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from:

- <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/lisorian.dtx>. 559, 709, 762, 767, 780
- [99] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 614, 709, 762, 767, 780
- [100] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/albanian.dtx>. 473, 709, 762, 767, 781
- [101] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 599, 709, 762, 767, 781
- [102] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/jura/jura.pdf>. 89, 207, 220, 408, 707, 709, 711, 738, 759, 762
- [103] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>. 709, 762
- [104] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The  $\epsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X manual (version 2)*. The  $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{T}$ S Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/CTAN/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex\\_man.pdf](http://www.dante.de/CTAN/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf). 213, 216, 232, 266, 709, 722, 760, 762
- [105] Gyöngyi BUIDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *On the localization of T<sub>E</sub>X in Hungary*. *TUGboat*, 23(1):21–26, March 2002. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/buidosowettl.pdf>. 633, 709, 762, 767, 780
- [106] Gyöngyi BUIDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *Adapter T<sub>E</sub>X à la langue hongroise*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:3–15, November 2004. French translation of [105] by Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. Available from: <ftp://gutemberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/42-hufflen.pdf>. 709, 762, 767, 780
- [107] Patrick BURGEL. *Le petit livre des pluriels*. First Editions, August 2006. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>. 709, 763
- [108] Samuele CARCAGNO. *My L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Notes, The Messy Notes of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X User*. Available from: [http://xoomer.alice.it/sam\\_psy/soft/my\\_latex\\_notes.pdf](http://xoomer.alice.it/sam_psy/soft/my_latex_notes.pdf). 710, 763
- [109] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006. 710, 763
- [110] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/xr.pdf>. 29, 240, 310, 710, 761, 763, 781

- [111] David P. CARLISLE. *The afterpage package*, October 1995.  
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/afterpage.pdf>. 29, 207, 680,  
 706, 710, 759, 763
- [112] David P. CARLISLE. *The file ltxdoc.dtx for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, August 1999. Available  
 from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.dtx>. 27, 212, 222, 710,  
 711, 743, 763
- [113] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 240, 710,  
 761, 763, 781
- [114] David P. CARLISLE. *The ifthen package*, May 2001. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>.  
 Available from: <http://www.ifi.uio.no/it/latex-links/ifthen.pdf>. 219, 710, 763
- [115] David P. CARLISLE. *The textcase package*, October 2004.  
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/textcase/textcase.pdf>. 710, 761,  
 763, 776
- [116] David P. CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005.  
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 116, 710, 712,  
 760, 763
- [117] David P. CARLISLE and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Back referencing from bibliographical  
 citations*, October 2006. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/backref.pdf>. 708, 710,  
 759, 763, 766, 770
- [118] Raymond CHABBERT<sup>†</sup>. *Lire et écrire l'occitan*. In LENGA. Vent Terral, Pôle d'activité  
 Val 81, 81340 Valence d'Albigeois, January 2005. <mailto:info@ventterral.com>.  
 Available from: <http://www.ventterral.com>. 579, 711, 763
- [119] Winston CHANG. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Cheat Sheet*, October 2006. Available from:  
<http://www.stdout.org/~winston/latex/latexsheet.pdf>. 711, 763
- [120] Jean-Pascal CHAUVET. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from:  
<http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>. 711, 763
- [121] Pehong CHEN and Michael A. HARRISON. *Index preparation and processing. Software  
 – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988. 711, 733, 763, 764
- [122] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts and Unicode in PdfL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], April 2007.  
 Available from: <http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/ipe/pdftex.html>.  
<mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr> and <http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/~otfried/>. 711, 763
- [123] Jin-Hwam CHO and Haruhiko OKUMURA. *Typesetting CJK Languages with Omega.  
 Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, 3130:139–148, 2004. T<sub>E</sub>X XML, and Digital  
 Typography. 40, 45, 211, 237, 238, 470, 498, 501, 535, 537, 538, 539, 550, 551, 608,  
 711, 757, 763, 765



- [124] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (teL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>. <mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 215, 711, 760, 763
- [125] André CHUVIN, René LÉTOILE, and Sébastien PEYROUSE. *Histoire de l'Asie centrale contemporaine*. Fayard, Paris, January 2008. 711, 742, 763, 765, 766, 767
- [126] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/>. 35, 89, 141, 227, 237, 712, 761, 763, 776
- [127] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 55, 77, 89, 209, 253, 274, 710, 712, 759, 763
- [128] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 35, 89, 147, 209, 228, 237, 390, 712, 761, 763, 776
- [129] COLLECTIVE. *Lexique des règles typographiques en usage à l'Imprimerie Nationale*. Imprimerie Nationale, August 2002.
- [130] Oliver CORFF. *MonT<sub>E</sub>X – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 45, 204, 224, 471, 485, 486, 493, 494, 571, 592, 617, 618, 619, 719, 749, 760, 763
- [131] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch/Pentaglot.html>. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 225, 719, 763
- [132] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 224, 719, 763
- [133] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *MonT<sub>E</sub>X – Mongolian for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 45, 204, 224, 471, 485, 486, 493, 494, 571, 592, 617, 618, 619, 719, 720, 749, 760, 763
- [134] Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vartan AKOPIAN. *ArmT<sub>E</sub>X: a System for Writing in Armenian with T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (written in armenian)*, June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>, <http://www-scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 45, 208, 471, 478, 667, 707, 719, 759, 762, 763
- [135] Patrick W. DALY. *Graphics and Colour with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Max Plank Institut für Aeronomie; D-37191 Katlenburg-Lindnau, Federal Republic of Germany, June 1998. Available from: <http://tex.loria.fr/graph-pack/grf/grf.pdf>. 719, 763

- [136] Patrick W. DALY. *A package to Set Margins to Full Page*, February 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/preprint/fullpage.pdf>. 138, 139, 147, 719, 730, 760, 763
- [137] Patrick W. DALY. *Natural Sciences Citations and References (Author-Year and Numerical Schemes)*, February 2007. This paper describes the natbib package (version 8.0), <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natbib.pdf>. 209, 228, 693, 719, 756, 760, 763
- [138] Patrick W. DALY. *Reference sheet for natbib package*, February 2007. <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natnotes.pdf>. 209, 228, 693, 719, 756, 760, 763
- [139] Alice DAVISON. *Syntax and Morphology in Hindi and Urdu: A Lexical Resource* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.uiowa.edu/~linguist/faculty/davison/HINDIVERBPROJECT>. <mailto:alice-davison@uiowa.edu>, Department of Linguistics, University of Iowa, 570 English-Philosophy Building, Iowa City, Iowa 52242 USA. 218, 506, 719, 763
- [140] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 213, 719, 763
- [141] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *TEX, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003. 719, 763
- [142] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 215, 719, 763
- [143] Christine DETIG and Joachim SCHROD. *Donald E. Knuth, Literate Programming*. TUGboat, 15(1):25–27, March 1994. 719, 763, 766, 772
- [144] Antoni R. DILLER. *TEX, Line by Line (Tips and Techniques for Document Processing)*. John Wiley & Sons, Chicester, second edition, January 1993. <mailto:A.R.Diller@cs.bham.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~ard/latex/latex.html>. 720, 763
- [145] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf>. 22, 100, 236, 663, 721, 760, 763, 773
- [146] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, April 2008. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 100, 442, 721, 747, 760, 763
- [147] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, April 2008. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 100, 442, 658, 701, 721, 747, 760, 763



- [148] Victor EIJKHOUT. *T<sub>E</sub>X by Topic: A T<sub>E</sub>Xnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley, Wokingham (England), 1992. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.cs.utk.edu/~eijkhout/texbytopic-a4.pdf>. 721, 763
- [149] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>. 719, 721, 760, 763
- [150] Victor EIJKHOUT and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Introduction to the Dutch L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document classes*, February 1994. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/classdoc.pdf>. 709, 721, 762, 763
- [151] Brian ELMGAARD and Patrick EGAN. *The nomentbl package*, April 2006. <mailto:be@mek.dtu.dk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/nomentbl/nomentbl.pdf>. 52, 398, 721, 757, 760, 763
- [152] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X and the Iranian T<sub>E</sub>X Community*. *TUGboat*, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 45, 216, 471, 514, 722, 725, 730, 760, 763, 766, 769
- [153] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>. 711, 724, 760, 763
- [154] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T<sub>E</sub>X FAQ. Your 423 Questions Answered*. Also visible here: <http://www.tex.ac.uk/faq>, November 2007. Version 3.17. Available from: <http://www.tex.ac.uk/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>. 724, 763
- [155] Simon FEAR. *Publication quality tables in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (with the booktabs package)*, March 2003. In the absence of the author, contact Danie ELS, <mailto:dnjels@sun.ac.za>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/booktabs/booktabs.pdf>. 23, 209, 709, 721, 725, 759, 763
- [156] Jürgen FENN. *Managing Citations and Your Bibliography with BibT<sub>E</sub>X. The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Neu-Isenburg, Germany. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/fenn/fenn.pdf>. 725, 763
- [157] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf>. 725, 763
- [158] Peter FLOM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for academics and researchers who (think they) don't need it*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(4), November 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/flom/flom.pdf>. 729, 763
- [159] Peter FLOM, Hans HAGEN, Joe HOGG, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, and David WALDEN. *What is T<sub>E</sub>X? The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk> and <mailto:dave@walden-family.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/walden-what-is/all.pdf>. 729, 733, 734, 763, 764, 767, 776, 777, 780

- [160] Peter L. FLOM. *A  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Fledgling Struggles to Take Flight*. *The Prac $\text{\TeX}$  Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:flo@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/flo/flo.pdf>. 729, 763
- [161] Peter FLYNN. *A categorized search of CTAN*. *The Prac $\text{\TeX}$  Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 729, 763
- [162] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>. 729, 763
- [163] Peter FLYNN. *Rolling your own Document Class: Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to keep away from the Dark Side*. *The Prac $\text{\TeX}$  Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Silmaril Consultants. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 729, 763
- [164] Peter FLYNN. *The very short guide to typesetting with  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , April 2007. Available from: <http://latex.silmaril.ie/veryshortguide/veryshortguide.pdf>. 729, 763
- [165] Federico GARCIA. *Capabilities of PDF interactivity*. *The Prac $\text{\TeX}$  Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/garcia1/garcia1.pdf>. 730, 763
- [166] Federico GARCIA. *Hypertext capabilities with pdf $\text{\LaTeX}$* . *TUGboat*, 28(1):129–132, March 2007. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-1/tb88garcia.pdf>. 730, 763
- [167] Hubert GÄSSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK. *The pict2e package*, August 2004. <mailto:HubertJG@open.min.de>, <mailto:Rolf.Niepraschk@ptb.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/pict2e/pict2e.pdf>. 59, 730, 756, 760, 763, 765, 767
- [168] Bernard GAULLE<sup>†</sup>. *L'extension frenchle pour  $\text{\LaTeX}$  (notice d'utilisation)*, February 1997. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/french/frenchle/frenchle.pdf>. 523, 730, 760, 763
- [169] Bernard GAULLE<sup>†</sup>. *Notice d'utilisation de l'extension frenchpro pour  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , June 1997. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/french/frenchpro/french/ALIRE.pdf>. 523, 730, 760, 763
- [170] Bernard GAULLE<sup>†</sup>. *Comment peut-on personnaliser l'extension french de  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ?* *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28-29:153–157, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-gaulle.pdf>. 523, 730, 760, 763
- [171] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>. 730, 763
- [172] Chuck GENSCHTE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 234, 730, 763, 767, 780

- [173] Helen GILHOLLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile DESPRAIRES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 719, 722, 730, 763
- [174] François GIRON. *Rédiger un document avec les programmes T<sub>E</sub>X et L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, October 2006. <http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/index.html>. Available from: <http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/LaTeX/surlatex.pdf>. 730, 763
- [175] Michel GOOSSENS, Frank MITTELBACH, Sebastian RAHTZ, Denis B. ROEGEL, and Herbert VOSS. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Graphics Companion*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, July 2007. 730, 748, 763, 765, 766, 767, 770, 771, 779
- [176] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S. SUTOR. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Web Companion: Integrating T<sub>E</sub>X, HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999. 730, 733, 749, 763, 764, 765, 766, 770, 776
- [177] Raymond G. GORDON, Jr. and Barbara F. GRIMES, editors. *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*. SIL International, Dallas, Texas, fifteenth edition, January 2005. Online version: <http://www.ethnologue.com>. 730, 733, 763
- [178] George GRÄTZER. *First Steps into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Birkhäuser, Boston, August 1999. 732, 763
- [179] George GRÄTZER. *Math into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Birkhäuser and Springer-Verlag, Boston, third edition, 2000. 732, 763
- [180] George GRÄTZER. *More Math into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Springer, fourth edition, October 2007. 732, 763
- [181] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, March 2007. <http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 214, 218, 239, 253, 683, 732, 763, 778
- [182] George D. GREENWADE. *The Comprehensive T<sub>E</sub>X Archive Network (CTAN)*. *TUGboat*, 14(3):342–351, October 1993. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf>. 733, 763
- [183] Enrico GREGORIO. *Babel, how to enjoy writing in different languages*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:Enrico.Gregorio@sci.univr.it>, Dipartimento di Informatica, Università di Verona, Italia. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/gregorio/gregorio.pdf>. 733, 749, 763, 765
- [184] Enrico GREGORIO. *Enjoying babel*. *TUGboat*, 28(2):247–255, July 2007. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-2/tb89gregorio.pdf>. 733, 763
- [185] Klaus GUNTERMANN and Joachim SCHROD. *WEB adapted to C*. *TUGboat*, 7(3):134–137, October 1986. 739, 764, 766, 772
- [186] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph 8*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 232, 707, 733, 759, 764
- [187] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from: <http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>. 733, 764

- [188] Reinhard F. HAHN. *Lowlands-L, Anniversary Celebration (One story in hundred of languages and dialects)* [online], 2007. Available from:  
<http://www.lowlands-l.net/anniversary/index.php>. <mailto:lowlands.list@gmail.com>.  
733, 764
- [189] Thế Thành HÀN. *The pdfT<sub>E</sub>X Program*. In *EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from:  
<http://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>. 213, 733, 764
- [190] Thế Thành HÀN. *Micro-typographic extensions to the T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>. 733, 764
- [191] Thế Thành HÀN. *Making Type 1 fonts for Vietnamese*. *TUGboat*, 24(1):79–84, July 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb24-1/thanh.pdf>. 615, 733, 764
- [192] Thế Thành HÀN. *Font-specific issues in pdfT<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):36–41, February 2008. Available from:  
<https://www.tug.org/members/TUGboat/tb29-1/tb91thanh-fonts.pdf>. 733, 764
- [193] Thế Thành HÀN. *Typesetting Vietnamese with VnT<sub>E</sub>X (and with the T<sub>E</sub>X Gyre fonts too)*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):95–100, February 2008. Available from:  
<https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb69thanh.pdf>. 615, 733, 764
- [194] Thế Thành HÀN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, Paweł JACKOWSKI, and Martin SCHRÖDER. *The pdfT<sub>E</sub>X user manual*, January 2007. See `pdftex-a.pdf`. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/texlive/Contents/live/texmf/doc/pdftex/manual/>.  
623, 733, 764, 766, 770, 772
- [195] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004.  
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 61, 209, 228, 709, 733, 759, 764
- [196] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004.  
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 61, 228, 733, 756, 760, 764
- [197] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>.  
91, 95, 221, 686, 733, 743, 760, 764
- [198] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman T<sub>E</sub>X for Mac and PC*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf>. 733, 764
- [199] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, <mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>, April 2004. English translation in [201]. Available from: <http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X>. 535, 538, 540, 641, 733, 764

- [200] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Voyage au centre de T<sub>E</sub>X: composition, paragraphage, césure*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:75–125, November 2004. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-haralambous.pdf>. 733, 764
- [201] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fonts & Encodings*. O'Reilly Media, September 2007. English translation of [199]. 535, 538, 540, 640, 733, 764
- [202] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of  $\Omega$ : Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc.* *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 232, 733, 764, 766, 767
- [203] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE.  *$\Omega$ , a T<sub>E</sub>X extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes*. In Wlodek BZYL and Tomasz PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European T<sub>E</sub>X Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 232, 641, 733, 764, 766, 767
- [204] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24\\_7.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf). 733, 764, 766, 767
- [205] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/39-yannis.pdf>. 733, 764, 766, 767
- [206] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL.  *$\Omega$ , une extension de T<sub>E</sub>X incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [203]. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/20-yannis.pdf>. 232, 733, 764, 766, 767
- [207] Alexander HARIN, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Vadim MASLOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 593, 712, 733, 744, 760, 764, 765, 767, 781
- [208] Stephen HARTKE. *A Survey of Free Math Fonts for T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/hartke/hartke.pdf>. 733, 764
- [209] Jim HEFFERON. *CTAN for Starters*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [210] Jim HEFFERON. *Minutes in Less Than Hours: Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Resources*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(4), October 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 733, 764
- [211] Jim HEFFERON. *What I Wish I Had . . . When I Was A Lad — Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X resources*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 733, 764

- [212] Thomas HENLICH. *The Marvosym Font Package*, May 2006.  
<mailto:thomas@henloch.de>, The font was designed by Martin VOGEL,  
<mailto:marvosym.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/fonts/psfonts/marvosym/marvodoc.pdf>. 224, 733, 744,  
 760, 764, 767, 779
- [213] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005.  
<mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 55, 73, 89,  
 222, 275, 733, 744, 760, 764
- [214] Pr. Thomas J. HINNEBUSCH and Dr. Barbara BLANKENSHIP. *UCLA Language Materials Project* [online]. Available from: <http://www.imp.ucla.edu>. University of California, Los Angeles; <mailto:imp@international.ucla.edu>. 465, 565, 572, 611, 709, 734, 762, 764
- [215] Taco HOEKWATER. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. *TUGboat*, 28(3):312–313, September 2007. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-3/tb90hoekwater-luatex.pdf>. 232, 734, 743, 760, 764
- [216] Taco HOEKWATER, Hartmut HENKEL, and Hans HAGEN. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X *Reference*, July 2007.  
<http://www.luatex.org/>. Available from:  
<http://context.aanhet.net/luatex/beta/manual/luatexref-t.pdf>. 232, 733, 734, 743, 760, 764
- [217] Alan HOENIG. *T<sub>E</sub>X Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X & T<sub>E</sub>X Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More. 734, 764
- [218] Klaus HÖPPNER. *Strategies for including graphics in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documents*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from:  
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/hoepfner/hoepfner.pdf>. 734, 764
- [219] Don HOSEK. *The morefloats package*, July 1990.  
<mailto:dhosek@ymir.claremont.edu>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/morefloats.sty>. 734, 749, 760, 764
- [220] Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. *Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. In *Congrès GUTenberg 2000, Toulouse*, volume 35-36 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 169–214, may 2000. Available from:  
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/35-hufflen.pdf>. 734, 764
- [221] ICELANDIC LANGUAGE INSTITUTE. *ICELANDIC – At once ancient and modern –*. Ministry of Education, Science and Culture, Sölvhölgata 4, 150 Reykjavik, 2001.  
<mailto:postur@mrn.stjr.is>, Web site: <http://www.menntamalaraduneyti.is>. Available from: <http://www.iceland.is/media/Utgafa/Icelandic.pdf>. 545
- [222] Roberto IERUSALIMSKY. *Programming in Lua*. Lua.Org, January 2005. 766, 771
- [223] Roberto IERUSALIMSKY, Luiz Henrique DE FIGUEIREDO, and Waldemar CELES. *Lua 5.1 Reference Manual*. Lua.Org, August 2006. 710, 719, 763, 766, 771
- [224] Hiroya IKEDA. *pL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>, September 2001. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 234, 737, 760, 764, 767



- [225] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in  $\text{\LaTeX}$* <sup>50</sup>, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and <mailto:furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp>. Available from: [http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX\\_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf](http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf). 730, 738, 763, 764
- [226] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the  $\text{\Arabi}$  package. The Users Guide*, December 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/arabi.html>. 40, 45, 208, 477, 516, 623, 688, 707, 738, 759, 764
- [227] Paweł JACKOWSKI.  *$\text{\TeX}$  beauties and oddities* [online], 2007. Available from: <http://www.pawcoo.com/>. <mailto:pearls@gust.org.pl>. 738, 764
- [228] Roland JACQUES. *Portuguese Pioneers of Vietnamese Linguistics*. Orchid Press, PO Box 19, Yuttitham Post Office, Bangkok 10907, Thailand, July 2002. Available from: <http://orchidpress.net/>. 617, 738, 764, 766, 771
- [229] Christophe JACQUET. *Memento  $\text{\LaTeX}$* . In *Memento*. Eyrolles, Paris, first edition, November 2007. 738, 764
- [230] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$* . *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>. 738, 764, 766, 771
- [231] Alan JEFFREY and  $\text{\LaTeX} 3$  PROJECT TEAM. *The file `ltnews.dtx` for use with  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$* , July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltnews.cls>. 27, 212, 222, 711, 738, 742, 743, 764, 765
- [232] Zhuhan JIANG. *The  $\text{\vruler}$  package*, October 1996. <mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>. 738, 761, 764, 779
- [233] David M. JONES. *The  $\text{\hangcaption}$  package*, August 1992. <mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 54, 80, 89, 218, 254, 273, 733, 738, 760, 764
- [234] Jean-Joseph JULAUD. *Le français correct pour les nuls*. In *Pour les Nuls Classic Pratique*. First Editions, August 2001. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>. 270, 738, 764
- [235] Jean-Joseph JULAUD. *Le petit livre de la conjugaison correcte*. First Editions, April 2002. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>. 738, 764
- [236] Jean-Joseph JULAUD. *Le petit livre de la grammaire facile*. First Editions, August 2004. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>. 738, 764
- [237] Akira KAKUTO. *W32 $\text{\TeX}$*  [online], March 2007. Available from: <http://www.fsci.fuk.kindai.ac.jp/kakuto/win32-ptex/web2c75-e.html>. <mailto:kakuto@fuk.kindai.ac.jp>, School of Humanity-Oriented Science and Engineering, Kinki University, Iizuka 820-8555, Japan. 234, 739, 760, 764, 767

---

<sup>50</sup>This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [238] Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN. *Standardization and Implementations of Thai Language*. National Electronics and Computer Technology Center, National Science and Technology Development Agency, Ministry of Science and Technology and Environment, THAILAND, 1999. <mailto:thep@links.nectec.or.th>. 608, 739, 764
- [239] Jonathan KEW. *The Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX typesetting system* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.scripts.sil.org/xetex>. 232, 739, 761, 764, 781
- [240] Ki-Joo KIM. *A Bib<sub>Λ</sub>TeX Guide via Examples*, April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: [http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/bibtex\\_guide.pdf](http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/bibtex_guide.pdf). 623, 739, 764
- [241] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from  $\Lambda$ TeX*, April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex2pdf.pdf>. 623, 739, 764
- [242] Ki-Joo KIM.  *$\Lambda$ TeX Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: [http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex\\_fonts.pdf](http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex_fonts.pdf). 623, 739, 764
- [243] Ingo KLÖCKL.  *$\Lambda$ TeX – Tipps und Tricks*. Dpunkt. Verlag GmbH, Ringstraße 19, 69115 Heidelberg, <mailto:i.kloeckl@2k-software.de>, January 2002. 739, 764
- [244] Jörg KNAPPEN. *Schnell ans Ziel mit  $\Lambda$ TeX 2<sub>ε</sub>*. Oldenbourg Wissenschaftsverlag GmbH, Rosenheimer Straße 145, 81671 München, second edition, May 2004. Available from: <http://www.oldenbourg-verlag.de>. 739, 764
- [245] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 37, 213, 739, 764
- [246] Donald E. KNUTH. *The T<sub>Λ</sub>Xbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover T<sub>Λ</sub>X3, 1991. 210, 221, 237, 238, 644, 739, 764
- [247] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 213, 739, 764
- [248] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T<sub>Λ</sub>Xbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [246], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 210, 221, 237, 238, 711, 739, 763, 764
- [249] Un KOAUNGH. *H<sub>Λ</sub>TeX: a  $\Lambda$ TeX package for the Korean language support*. In korean, April 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 204, 219, 471, 538, 540, 734, 739, 760, 764
- [250] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to  $\Lambda$ TeX*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 233, 719, 739, 763, 764
- [251] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in  $\Lambda$ TeX 2<sub>ε</sub>*. MAPS, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22\\_13.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf). 739, 764



- [252] Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/antomega.html>. 45, 207, 471, 530, 532, 533, 556, 582, 587, 590, 600, 604, 623, 707, 738, 739, 759, 764
- [253] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>, Computer Laboratory, University of Cambridge. 739, 764
- [254] Frank KÜSTER. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/alnumsec.pdf>. 55, 77, 89, 207, 253, 274, 707, 739, 759, 765
- [255] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de T<sub>E</sub>X et E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub>*. Masson, Paris, December 1997. 740, 765
- [256] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT<sub>E</sub>X—Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European T<sub>E</sub>X Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20\\_22.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf). 40, 45, 208, 471, 475, 477, 540, 707, 740, 759, 765
- [257] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT<sub>E</sub>X Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 40, 45, 208, 471, 475, 477, 540, 707, 740, 759, 765
- [258] Leslie LAMPORT. *MakeIndex, An Index Processor For E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub>*, 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf>. 740, 765
- [259] Leslie LAMPORT. *E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub>: A Document Preparation System — User’s Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 59, 221, 740, 765
- [260] Leslie LAMPORT, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *NTG Document Classes for E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub> version 2e*, June 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/ntgclass.pdf>. 709, 721, 740, 762, 763, 765
- [261] Leslie LAMPORT, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Producing proceedings articles with E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub>*, November 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/proc.dtx>. 27, 212, 709, 712, 740, 742, 762, 765, 769
- [262] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub> version 2e*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 27, 61, 72, 204, 208, 209, 212, 235, 707, 709, 711, 712, 740, 748, 762, 765, 771
- [263] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *Standard Letter Document Class for E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub> version 2e*, April 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/letter.dtx>. 61, 212, 221, 709, 711, 740, 742, 748, 762, 765, 766, 772

- [264] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR.  
Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>. 742, 765
- [265] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>.  
Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 32, 55, 89, 163, 217, 255, 268, 275, 694, 729, 742, 760, 765
- [266] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 40, 492, 591, 742, 744, 765
- [267] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998.  
Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>. 23, 720, 742, 760, 765
- [268] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/loutput.dtx>. 32, 234, 435, 729, 742, 760, 765
- [269] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for authors*, July 2001. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 204, 742, 765
- [270] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for Class and Package writers*, December 2003.  
Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 204, 742, 765
- [271] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> font selection*, February 2004. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 204, 229, 294, 372, 376, 742, 765
- [272] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font encodings*, January 2006. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 215, 229, 742, 765
- [273] Olivier LECARME. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X en bref*, August 2004. Available from:  
<http://deptinfo.unice.fr/~ol/L3MI/LaTeX/latexenbref.pdf>. 742, 765
- [274] Jacques LECLERC. *L'aménagement linguistique dans le monde* [online], March 2008.  
Available from: <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl>. TLFQ (Trésor de la langue française au Québec), Université Laval, Québec. 465, 472, 473, 474, 480, 481, 482, 483, 488, 495, 498, 500, 502, 503, 504, 507, 513, 517, 524, 526, 531, 535, 541, 543, 544, 547, 548, 549, 556, 558, 560, 573, 577, 581, 583, 585, 588, 596, 597, 599, 600, 601, 602, 605, 607, 608, 610, 611, 613, 616, 618, 742, 765
- [275] Philipp LEHMAN. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/Type1/fonts/fontinstallationguide/>. 742, 765
- [276] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> — Multilingual support beyond babel*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 40, 45, 211, 237, 238, 470, 498, 501, 535, 537, 538, 539, 550, 551, 608, 711, 742, 760, 765

- [277] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], October 2006. Available from:  
<http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 40, 45, 211, 237, 238, 470, 498, 501, 535, 537, 538, 539, 550, 551,  
 608, 711, 742, 760, 765
- [278] Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN. *The vietnam package*, October 2006.  
<mailto:wl@gnu.org>, <mailto:hanthethanh@gmx.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/>. 45, 615,  
 733, 742, 761, 764, 765, 779
- [279] Knut LICKERT. *LT<sub>ε</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> for people in associations: minutes.sty*, March 2007.  
<mailto:knut@lickert.net> et <http://tex.lickert.net/packages/minutes/index.html>.  
 Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/minutes.pdf>. 224, 294,  
 400, 743, 748, 760, 765
- [280] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005.  
<mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 54, 76, 89,  
 217, 253, 273, 729, 743, 760, 765
- [281] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001.  
<mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.pdf>. 32, 55, 89, 163, 217,  
 255, 268, 275, 694, 729, 743, 760, 765
- [282] Bernice Sacks LIPKIN. *LT<sub>ε</sub> for Linux: A Vade Mecum*. Springer, January 2000. 743,  
 765
- [283] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997.  
<mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University  
 of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy.  
 Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 55, 77,  
 89, 236, 253, 274, 743, 760, 765, 773
- [284] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced LT<sub>ε</sub>*, September 1994. [latex-advanced.pdf](#),  
<mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available from:  
[http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX\\_HOWTO/](http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/). 743, 765
- [285] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with LT<sub>ε</sub>* [online], March 2006.  
 Available from:  
<http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>.  
<mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. 743, 765
- [286] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur LT<sub>ε</sub> sans jamais  
 oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from:  
<http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>. 743, 765
- [287] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates,  
 Inc, September 1993. 204, 212, 647, 743, 765
- [288] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”*,  
 1996. See [287]. Available from:  
<ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 204, 212, 743, 765

- [289] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999. [743](#), [765](#)
- [290] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. [61](#), [237](#), [744](#), [761](#), [765](#), [775](#)
- [291] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of BibTeX)*, June 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb\\_en.pdf](http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf). [204](#), [209](#), [744](#), [765](#)
- [292] Alan MARSHALL. *La composition typographique*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 8:3–9, March 2007. [744](#), [765](#)
- [293] Éric MARTINI. *Petit guide de typographie*. Éditions Glyphe, second edition, February 2008. <mailto:eric.martini@editions-glyphe.com>. Available from: <http://www.editions-glyphe.com>. [744](#), [765](#)
- [294] Sven MATTISSON. *SETEX: Swedish speaking version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], November 1989. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>, Department of Applied Electronics, University of Lund, Box 118, S-221 00 Lund, Sweden. [45](#), [237](#), [606](#), [744](#), [761](#), [765](#), [773](#)
- [295] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002. <mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. [54](#), [71](#), [89](#), [129](#), [236](#), [251](#), [272](#), [744](#), [760](#), [765](#), [773](#)
- [296] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. Find `thai.dtx` in `thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz`, <mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from: <ftp://linux.thai.net/pub/ThaiLinux/software/thailatex/>. [238](#), [608](#), [739](#), [744](#), [761](#), [764](#), [765](#), [766](#), [769](#), [773](#), [777](#)
- [297] Frank MITTELBACH. *ε-T<sub>E</sub>X: Guidelines for future T<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>. [722](#), [748](#), [760](#), [765](#)
- [298] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts” [42]*. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>. [748](#), [765](#)
- [299] Frank MITTELBACH. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Encoding Interfaces*, June 1995. Available from: <http://www.latex-project.org/papers/encoding-concepts.pdf>. [215](#), [229](#), [748](#), [765](#)
- [300] Frank MITTELBACH. *Producing slides with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, August 1997. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/slides.dtx>. [212](#), [712](#), [748](#), [765](#), [774](#)
- [301] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000. <mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. [92](#), [116](#), [228](#), [748](#), [756](#), [760](#), [765](#)

- [302] Frank MITTELBACH. *The varioref package*, April 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/varioref.pdf>. 141, 748, 761, 765, 779
- [303] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>. 23, 720, 748, 760, 761, 765, 773
- [304] Frank MITTELBACH. *The dblacnt package*, April 2005. <mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org>, The current maintainer is Werner LEMBERG, <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/dblacnt.sty>. 213, 682, 719, 742, 748, 760, 765
- [305] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>. 709, 720, 721, 748, 760, 762, 763, 765, 767, 781
- [306] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion 2. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 32, 146, 204, 222, 228, 234, 435, 709, 710, 729, 730, 748, 760, 762, 763, 765, 766, 771
- [307] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Der L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version. 709, 710, 730, 748, 762, 763, 765, 766, 771
- [308] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 677, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 730, 734, 748, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 771, 774
- [309] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. TUGboat, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>. 748, 765, 766, 771
- [310] Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, Alan JEFFREY, and David P. CARLISLE. *The main structure of documents*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltxclass.dtx>. 710, 738, 748, 763, 764, 765, 766, 771
- [311] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>. 749, 765
- [312] Lapo Filippo MORI. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>Xpedia: the future of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documentation*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern

- University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from:  
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori2/mori2.pdf>. 749, 765
- [313] Lapo Filippo MORI. *Tables in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>: Packages and Methods*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori/mori.pdf>. 749, 765
- [314] Michael A. MORRISON. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Links* [online], December 1999. Available from:  
<http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~morrison/LaTeX/index.shtml>.  
<mailto:morrison@mail.nhn.ou.edu>, Department of Physics & Astronomy, University of Oklahoma. 749, 765
- [315] NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY. *Atlas of China*, November 2007. 756, 765
- [316] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 593, 743, 756, 760, 765
- [317] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, a versatile L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> bundle*, December 2007. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 43, 51, 63, 76, 89, 142, 143, 161, 204, 209, 220, 227, 236, 252, 253, 409, 681, 712, 739, 749, 756, 764, 765, 772
- [318] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>-Paket*, December 2007. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 43, 51, 63, 76, 89, 142, 143, 161, 204, 209, 220, 227, 236, 252, 253, 409, 681, 712, 739, 749, 756, 764, 765, 772
- [319] Elke NIEDERMAIR and Michael NIEDERMAIR. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Das Praxisbuch*. Franzis Verlag GmbH, January 2006. See [http://www.franzis.de/images/optfiles/p\\_dateien/1787\\_latex\\_praxisbuch\\_source.zip](http://www.franzis.de/images/optfiles/p_dateien/1787_latex_praxisbuch_source.zip). 756, 765
- [320] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: A L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Survivor's Guide*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from:  
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/null-bh02/null-bh02.pdf>. 757, 765
- [321] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: Topic #1: Creating my first L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X article, Part 3*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from:  
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/null-bh03/null-bh03.pdf>. 757, 765
- [322] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfT<sub>E</sub>X, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 89, 734, 757, 760, 765
- [323] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The ifpdf package*, February 2006. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/ifpdf.pdf>. 737, 757, 760, 765



- [324] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hypcap package*, April 2007. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/hypcap.pdf>. 734, 757, 760, 765
- [325] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *ChangeLog for the hyperref bundle*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/ChangeLog.pdf>. 89, 734, 757, 760, 765, 766, 770
- [326] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Hypertext marks in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.pdf>. 89, 734, 757, 760, 765, 766, 770
- [327] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *README for the hyperref bundle*, February 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/README.pdf>. 89, 734, 757, 760, 765, 766, 770
- [328] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [329] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 204, 729, 734, 757, 761, 763, 764, 765, 766, 772
- [329] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, May 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 204, 212, 221, 651, 734, 757, 761, 764, 765, 766, 772
- [330] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *Pakiet POLSKI (wersja 1.3.3)*. In polish and english; see also <http://www.tug.org/tex/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html>, February 2008. <mailto:M.Olko@Litterae.com.pl> and <mailto:wolinski@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/polski/polski.dtx>. 45, 234, 582, 758, 760, 765, 767, 769, 781
- [331] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X à 200%*. O'Reilly France, September 2007. 742, 759, 765
- [332] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Package*, November 2004. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/dtxut/dtxtut.pdf>. 761, 766
- [333] Scott PAKIN. *The Comprehensive L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Symbols List*, September 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/symbols/comprehensive/>. 761, 766
- [334] Scott PAKIN. *The newcommand.py utility*, January 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/support/newcommand/newcommand.pdf>. 756, 761, 766, 778

- [335] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T<sub>E</sub>X/L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X systems* [online], January 2001. Available from: <http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. <mailto:pbpal@theory.saha.ernet.in>. 45, 209, 471, 482, 708, 759, 761, 766
- [336] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in T<sub>E</sub>X*. TUGboat, 20(2):119–126, 1999. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>. 761, 766
- [337] Anshuman PANDEY, John SMITH, Dominik WUJASTYK, Zdeněk WAGNER, and Kevin CARMODY. *Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>, <mailto:jds10@cam.ac.uk>, <mailto:d.wujastyk@ucl.ac.uk>, <mailto:zdenek.wagner@gmail.com> and <mailto:i@kevincarmody.org>, home page: <http://devnag.sarovar.org/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/generic/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 45, 214, 218, 471, 506, 542, 710, 719, 760, 761, 763, 766, 767, 774, 780, 781
- [338] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, 15 rue Victor-Cousin, 70005 Paris, September 2003. 535, 538, 540, 761, 766
- [339] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibT<sub>E</sub>Xing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT<sub>E</sub>X users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 209, 762, 766
- [340] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibT<sub>E</sub>X Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibT<sub>E</sub>X's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 209, 762, 766
- [341] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [343]. 711, 719, 760, 762, 763, 766, 767, 780, 781
- [342] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [343]. 719, 762, 763, 766, 767, 780, 781
- [343] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 652, 719, 762, 763, 766, 767, 780, 781
- [344] Kasper PEETERS. *HyperT<sub>E</sub>X FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from: <http://arxiv.org/hypertex/>. 219, 239, 734, 760, 762, 766
- [345] Manuel PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD. *L'extension xargs*, March 2008. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/xargs/xargs-fr.pdf>. 761, 762, 766, 781
- [346] Manuel PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD. *The xargs package*, March 2008. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/xargs/xargs.pdf>. 761, 762, 766, 781



- [347] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>. 709, 762, 766, 767, 777
- [348] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in  $\Omega$* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: <http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 232, 733, 764, 766, 767
- [349] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in  $\Omega$* . In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 232, 733, 764, 766, 767
- [350] Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The Linux Thai HOWTO* [online], August 1998. Available from: <http://www.fedu.uec.ac.jp/Zzzthai/Thai-HOWTO>. <mailto:uecthai@fedu.uec.ac.jp>, <mailto:poon-v@fedu.uec.ac.jp>. 766, 769
- [351] Hilmar PREUSSE, Christian FAULHAMMER, and Ulrich SCHWARTZ. *What is a minimal working example?*, May 2006. version 0.4.1e. Available from: <http://www.latex-einfuehrung.de/mini-en.pdf>. 58, 222, 725, 763, 766, 769, 772
- [352] C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN and E. KRISHNAN. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Tutorial, A Primer*. Indian T<sub>E</sub>X Users Group, September 2003. Floor III, SJP Buildings, Cotton Hills, Trivandrum 695014, India. Available from: <http://www.tug.org.in/tutorials.html>. 766, 770
- [353] Sebastian RAHTZ. *hyperref package options*, September 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/options.pdf>. 89, 766, 770
- [354] Sebastian RAHTZ. *Section name references in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/nameref.pdf>. 756, 760, 766, 770
- [355] Sebastian RAHTZ and LEONOR BARROCA. *A style option for rotated objects in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/rotating/rotating.dtx>. 235, 708, 760, 762, 766, 770, 771
- [356] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 23, 63, 73, 89, 219, 223, 239, 240, 249, 272, 414, 734, 757, 760, 765, 766, 770
- [357] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: a manual for hyperref*, September 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 89, 116, 734, 757, 760, 765, 766, 770
- [358] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem T<sub>E</sub>X und DANTE*, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung T<sub>E</sub>X e.V., September 2003. Version 72. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>. 733, 756, 764, 765, 766, 770
- [359] Claude RAIMOND. *L'anglais correct pour les nuls*. In *Pour les Nuls Classic Pratique*. First Editions, August 2007. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>. 766, 770

- [360] Paul RASCOE. *Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection* [online], November 2007. Available from: <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/>. Mail via: <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/email.html>. 465, 479, 488, 492, 495, 535, 544, 607, 766, 770
- [361] Arthur REUTENAUER. *A brief history of TeX, volume II*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):68–72, February 2008. Available from: <https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb91reutenauer.pdf>. 766, 771
- [362] Adrian REZUŞ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian TeX*, October 1996. <mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 586, 760, 766, 770, 771
- [363] François RICHARDEAU and Olivier BINISTI. *Manuel de typographie et de mise en page (Du papier à l'écran)*. Éditions Retz, second edition, October 2005. Available from: <http://www.editions-retz.com>. 709, 762, 766, 771
- [364] Yuri ROBBERS, Markus KOHM, and Rasmus Pank ROULUND. *Replacing L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> standard classes by KOMA-Script*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 3, August 2006. <mailto:yuri.robbers@gmail.com>, [mailto:rasmus\\_pank@yahoo.dk](mailto:rasmus_pank@yahoo.dk) and <http://www.komascript.de>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robbers/robbers.pdf>. 43, 51, 63, 76, 89, 142, 143, 161, 209, 220, 227, 236, 252, 253, 409, 681, 712, 739, 764, 766, 771, 772
- [365] Will ROBERTSON. *Productivity with macros and packages*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 2(3), August 2006. <mailto:wspr81@gmail.com>, School of Mechanical Engineering, University of Adelaide, SA, Australia, 5005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robertson/robertson.pdf>. 766, 771
- [366] Christian ROLLAND. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999. <mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanadoo.fr>. 766, 771
- [367] Chris A. ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-3/tb64rowl.pdf>. 766, 771
- [368] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 37, 239, 761, 766, 772, 778
- [369] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, June 2001. <mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from: <http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>. 766, 772
- [370] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005. <mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from: <http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>. 766, 772
- [371] Walter SCHMIDT. *Using common PostScript fonts with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. *PSNFSS Version 9.2*, September 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/psnfss/psnfss2e.pdf>. 766, 772

- [372] Walter SCHMIDT. *Font selection in LaTeX: The most frequently asked questions*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/schmidt/schmidt.pdf>. 766, 772
- [373] Walter SCHMIDT. *Fonts für T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], June 2007. Available from: <http://home.vr-web.de/was/fonts.html>. 766, 772
- [374] Thomas A. SCHMITZ. *Mastering texmf-trees*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:thomas.schmitz@uni-bonn.de>, <http://www.uni-bonn.de/www/Philologie/Personnal/Schmitz.html>, Classics Department, Bonn University. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/schmitz/schmitz.pdf>. 766, 772
- [375] Joachim SCHROD. *International E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub> is ready to use*. *TUGboat*, 11(1):87–90, April 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-1/tb27schrod.pdf>. 766, 772
- [376] Martin SCHRÖDER. *The multitoc package*, June 1999. <mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx>. 94, 228, 756, 760, 766, 772
- [377] Martin SCHRÖDER. *pdfT<sub>E</sub>X 1.40: What's new*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):143–145, February 2008. Available from: <https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb91schroeder.pdf>. 766, 772
- [378] Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Lianyi SONG, and Charles GREThER. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 719, 733, 763, 766, 772, 774
- [379] Michael SHELL and David HOADLEY. *BibT<sub>E</sub>X Tips and FAQ*, January 2007. <http://www.michaelshell.org/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf>. 209, 734, 764, 766, 773
- [380] Bai SHOU<sup>†</sup>. *An outline history of China*. Foreign Language Press, 24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China, revised edition, 2002. <mailto:info@flp.com.cn> and <mailto:sales@flp.com.cn>; distributed by China International Book Trading Corporation. 35 Chegongzuang Xilu, Beijing 100044, China, P.O. Box 399, Beijing, China. Available from: <http://www.flp.com.cn>. 498, 766, 773
- [381] Sindhu SINGH. *Our Introduction to E<sub>T</sub><sub>X</sub>*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/singh/singh.pdf>. 766, 773
- [382] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The rotfloat package*, January 2004. <mailto:rotfloat@sommerfeldt.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/rotfloat/rotfloat.pdf>. 55, 89, 163, 217, 235, 255, 268, 276, 694, 760, 766, 771, 774
- [383] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Customizing captions in floating environments*, December 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-eng.pdf>. 55, 73, 89, 209, 274, 710, 759, 766, 774

- [384] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The implementation of the caption package*, December 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 55, 73, 89, 209, 274, 710, 759, 766, 774
- [385] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The (obsolete) caption2 package*, November 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 55, 73, 89, 209, 275, 710, 759, 766, 774
- [386] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, October 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-deu.pdf>. 55, 73, 89, 209, 274, 710, 759, 766, 774
- [387] D. P. STORY. *Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from: <http://www.math.uakron.edu/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>. 766, 775
- [388] Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Writing Greek with the greek option of the babel package*. <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usage.tex>, October 1997. <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/texlive/Contents/live/texmf-dist/doc/generic/babel/greek-usage.pdf>. 530, 766, 776
- [389] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Springer, October 2002. Available from: <http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>. 766, 767, 774, 776, 778
- [390] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a PDF document using PDFL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, July 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/pdfdoc/pdfdoc-a4.pdf>. 767, 776
- [391] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for UEA Administrative Work*, September 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: [http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/admin/admin\\_a4.pdf](http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/admin/admin_a4.pdf). 767, 776
- [392] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to Write a PhD Thesis*, July 2006. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: [http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/thesis/thesis\\_a4.pdf](http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/thesis/thesis_a4.pdf). 767, 776
- [393] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Minimal Example*, June 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/minexample/minexample.pdf>. 58, 222, 767, 776
- [394] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing

- Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/>. 80, 89, 217, 255, 414, 694, 729, 760, 767, 776
- [395] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty v 1.07*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/>. 80, 89, 217, 255, 414, 694, 729, 760, 767, 776
- [396] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Writing a Thesis in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: hints, tips and advice*, November 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/lms/lms.pdf>. 767, 776
- [397] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for Complete Novices*, January 2008. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: [http://theoval.cmp.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/novices/novices\\_a4.pdf](http://theoval.cmp.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/novices/novices_a4.pdf). 767, 776
- [398] Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 54, 74, 89, 240, 252, 272, 761, 767, 776, 779
- [399] Philip TAYLOR. *Computer Typesetting or Electronic Publishing? New trends in scientific publication*. *TUGboat*, 17(4):367–381, February 1996. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-4/tb53tayl.pdf>. 767, 776
- [400] Harold THIMBLEBY. “See also” indexing with *Makeindex*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):290–290, June 1991. Also check [401]. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32thim.pdf>. 657, 767, 777
- [401] Harold THIMBLEBY. *Erratum: “See also” indexing with Makeindex*. *TUGboat*, 13(1):95–95, April 1992. Erratum to [400]. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34thim.pdf>. 657, 767, 777
- [402] Kresten Krab THORUP, Frank JENSEN, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The calc package (Infix notation arithmetic in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X)*, August 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/calc.dtx>. 23, 209, 710, 738, 759, 764, 766, 767, 771, 777
- [403] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. <mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/quotchap.pdf>. 54, 76, 89, 235, 253, 273, 760, 767, 770, 777
- [404] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>. 725, 733, 763, 764, 767, 778

- [405] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>. 725, 763, 767, 778
- [406] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS<sup>51</sup>. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers  $\text{\TeX}$* , June 2004. French translation of [407] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 237, 238, 245, 711, 763, 766, 767, 769, 778
- [407] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A  $\text{\TeX}$  DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for  $\text{\TeX}$  Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 237, 238, 245, 658, 767, 778
- [408] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 116, 218, 730, 760, 767, 778
- [409] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 215
- [410] Piet VAN OOSTRUM.  *$\text{\TeX}$  Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>. 767, 779
- [411] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec Bib $\text{\TeX}$* , 2003. Available from: [http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres\\_Bibtex.tar.gz](http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz). 767, 779
- [412] Timothy VAN ZANDT. *Documentation for fancybox.sty: Box tips and tricks for  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , September 2000. <mailto:tvz@Princeton.EDU>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/fancybox/fancybox.pdf>. 725, 760, 767, 779
- [413] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting (Wuhan, China). 535, 767, 779
- [414] Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE, and Tony ROBERTS. *The minitoc-hyper package*, May 1999. **This package is obsolete, use now the minitoc package [147]**, <mailto:verna@inf.enst.fr>, <mailto:Bernd.Jaehne@aeon.de>, <mailto:aroberts@usq.edu.au>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/>. 63, 223, 249, 738, 748, 760, 764, 766, 767, 771, 779
- [415] Boris VEYTSMAN. *Notes on principles and  $\text{\TeX}$  implementation*. *The Prac $\text{\TeX}$  Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. <mailto:borisv@lk.net>, Computational Material Science Center, MS 5A2, George Mason University, Fairfax, VA 22030. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/veytsman-design/veytsman-design.pdf>. 767, 779

<sup>51</sup> TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a  $\text{\TeX}$  Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).



- [416] Boris VEYTSMAN, Bernd SCHANDL, Lee NETHERTON, and C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN. *nomenc* A Package to create a Nomenclature, September 2005.  
<http://sarovar.org/projects/nomenc>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/nomenc/nomenc.pdf>. 52, 136, 227, 398, 756, 757, 760, 765, 766, 767, 770, 772, 779
  - [417] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977. 767, 779
  - [418] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, March 1999. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 204, 742, 765, 767, 779
  - [419] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T<sub>E</sub>X in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>. 767, 779
  - [420] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T<sub>E</sub>X in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
 

1. Basics.	3. Tokens, Macros.
2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.	4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T<sub>E</sub>X). 277, 767, 779
- [421] Herbert Voss. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X in Naturwissenschaften & Mathematik*. Franzis Verlag GmbH, June 2006. 767, 779
  - [422] Douglas WAUD and Tim NULL. `\begin{here}`. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:douglas.waud@umassmed.edu>,  
<http://users.umassmed.edu/douglas.waud/>, and <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/waud/waud.pdf>. 757, 765, 767, 780
  - [423] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X i pdfP<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X*. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>, May 2005. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/tetex/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html>. 45, 234, 582, 760, 767, 769, 780
  - [424] Daphne WEST and Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006. 719, 763, 766, 767, 773, 780
  - [425] Graham WILLIAMS. *Graham Williams' T<sub>E</sub>X Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000. Last version at: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>. 767, 781
  - [426] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 235, 237, 761, 767, 775, 781

- [427] Peter R. WILSON. *The chngpage package*, August 2003.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/chngpage.sty>. 256, 695, 711,  
759, 767, 781
- [428] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 59, 229, 756,  
760, 767, 781
- [429] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 45, 65, 72, 79,  
89, 116, 129, 226, 228, 238, 410, 761, 767, 778, 781
- [430] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 54, 71, 89,  
206, 251, 413, 706, 759, 767, 781
- [431] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 65, 89,  
207, 250, 409, 707, 759, 767, 781
- [432] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocibind package*, May 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/tocibind/tocibind.pdf>. 51, 89, 97,  
101, 105, 145, 226, 228, 238, 250, 409, 761, 767, 778, 781
- [433] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>. 761, 767,  
778, 781
- [434] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 55, 73, 89,  
210, 275, 710, 759, 767, 781
- [435] Peter R. WILSON. *Critical editions and arabic typesetting: the ledarab and afoot packages*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledarab.pdf>. 706, 742, 759,  
760, 767, 781
- [436] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>. 720, 760, 767,  
781
- [437] Peter R. WILSON. *ledmac, a presumptuous attempt to port EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledmac.pdf>. 742, 760, 767,  
781



- [438] Peter R. WILSON. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the ledpar package*, April 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledpar.pdf>. 742, 760, 767, 781
- [439] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 65, 66, 73, 89, 223, 250, 252, 276, 285, 412, 712, 745, 767, 781
- [440] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>. 55, 77, 89, 235, 253, 273, 760, 767, 771, 781
- [441] Peter R. WILSON. *The memoir standard class*. *The PracT<sub>E</sub>X Journal*, 3, August 2006. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/wilson/wilson.pdf>. 65, 66, 73, 89, 223, 250, 252, 276, 285, 412, 712, 745, 767, 781
- [442] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2007. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 65, 66, 73, 89, 223, 250, 252, 276, 285, 412, 712, 745, 767, 781
- [443] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 219, 277, 707, 737, 760, 762, 767, 781
- [444] Joseph A. WRIGHT. *Quick floats in L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X*, June 2007. <mailto:joseph.wright@morningstar2.co.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/trivfloat/trivfloat.pdf>. 55, 89, 163, 239, 255, 268, 276, 694, 761, 767, 778, 781
- [445] C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. *KannadaT<sub>E</sub>X* [online], April 2004. Available from: <http://sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex/>. <mailto:yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in>, <mailto:yogacs@users.sarovar.org>, <mailto:subbukk@users.sarovar.org>. 220, 552, 739, 760, 766, 767, 776, 781
- [446] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X Cheat Sheet*, March 2007. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: <http://dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>. 767, 781
- [447] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV and Vadim MASLOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/lhcyr/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>, <mailto:vadik@cs.umd.edu>. 594, 595, 743, 760, 767, 781

# Changes history

## ★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
  - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
  - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate `toc-file-name` automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

## ★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
  - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
  - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
  - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
  - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
  - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocy`es is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
  - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
  - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
  - At least three passes (3) of  $\LaTeX$  are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
  - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).
  - Some mods added to work with `xr` (external references). `xr` version 5 is much more tolerant.

## ★ version 02

- 1993/07/05
  - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`.

W00092

## ※ version 03

- 1993/07/09
  - Version 3 not released (buggy).

## ★ version 04

- 1993/07/09
  - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
  - The package mtcoff allows you to use a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

## ★ version 05

- 1993/07/13
  - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

## ★ version 06

- 1993/07/15
  - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [145] package).

## ★ version 07

- 1993/07/22
  - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David P. CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

## ★ version 08

- 1993/07/29
  - Spacing adjustments.

## ★ version 09

- 1993/08/04
  - Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

## ★ version 10

- 1993/08/05
  - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

## ★ version 11

- 1993/08/18
  - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

## ★ version 12

- 1993/12/16
  - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
  - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
  - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

## ★ version 13

- 1993/12/17
  - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

## ★ version 14

- 1994/01/03
  - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
  - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
  - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
  - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
  - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

## ★ version 15

- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

## ★ version 16

- 1994/02/02
  - Bug fixes (typos).

## ★ version 17

- 1994/06/23
  - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
  - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).

## ★ version 18

- 1994/06/26
  - Make `minitoc` really compatible with  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ .
  - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes L. BRAAMS).

## ★ version 19

- 1994/08/16
  - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
  - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
  - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
  - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michael RYNNING).
  - Corrected appendix in articles.

## ★ version 20

- 1994/08/25
  - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
  - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.

- Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
- Corrected vertical spacing.
- Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.

**★ version 21**

- 1994/09/07
  - Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

**★ version 22**

- 1994/10/10
  - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

**★ version 23**

- 1994/11/08
  - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
  - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
  - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
  - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
  - Removed appendix stuff.

**★ version 24**

- 1994/12/21
  - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

**★ version 25**

- 1996/09/13
  - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

**★ version 26**

- 1996/11/14
  - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing names of the form `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
  - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

## ★ version 27

- 1996/12/20
  - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
  - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
  - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
  - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

## ★ version 28

- 1997/10/29
  - Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
  - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
  - Added the `shorttext` package option.
  - Added *coffee* stuff.
  - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
  - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
  - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU:  

$$\{\let@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline\}\}$$
 should probably be  

$$\{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline\}\}$$
 (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
  - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
  - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.

## ★ version 29

- 1999/03/16
  - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
- 1999/06/28
  - Added the armenian language (from `ArmTeX` [134]).
- 1999/07/23
  - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
- 1999/07/29
  - Added `lithuanian.mld`.

## ★ version 30

- 1999/12/06
  - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
  - Corrected a bug in `\sltnam` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).

## ★ version 31

- 2000/04/04
  - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.

## ★ version 32

- 2000/08/08
  - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
  - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
  - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

## ★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
  - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
  - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

## ★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
  - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
  - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

I0046

## ★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
  - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
  - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
  - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
  - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
  - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
  - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
  - Added the `interlingua` language.



## ★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
  - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
  - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
  - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19
  - Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
  - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
  - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
  - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.

## ※ version 37

- 2003/01/24
  - Version #37 dropped.

## ★ version 38

- 2003/01/24
  - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
  - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X).
  - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
  - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
  - Changed the test for empty titles.
  - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
  - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
  - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
  - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
  - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).

- Corrected secttocs, at least.
- 2003/03/18
  - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.

## ★ version 39

- 2003/04/09
  - Modern font commands for compatibility with the memoir class.
  - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and memoir class.
- 2003/06/08
  - Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the notoccite package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the notoccite package option (loads the notoccite package).
- 2004/09/08
  - Added language options and .mld files for dialects: canadian (english), acadian, acadien, canadien (french), naustrian, ngerman (ngermanb).
  - Added comments in .mld files using special fonts.
  - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
  - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

## ★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
  - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
  - Removed the test on the presence of the multicol package in `minitoc.tex`, because multicol is a required package.
  - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
  - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
  - Added a paragraph about a problem with the appendix package.
- 2004/12/13
  - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
  - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
  - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

## ★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
  - Corrections in documentation.
  - Message added if some sectioning commands are not available.
  - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
  - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
  - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11
  - $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$  classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
  - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
  - Added `\mtcsetttitle`.
  - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
  - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
  - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
  - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
  - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
  - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
  - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
  - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
  - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03

- Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
  - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
  - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
  - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
  - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
  - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

#### ※ version 42

- 2005/02/14
  - Version 42 not released.
  - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
  - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
  - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

#### ★ version 43

- 2005/02/21
  - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
  - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
  - Fixed a bug in `mtcoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
  - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
  - Moved history to the end of package code.
  - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
  - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
  - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

- 2005/03/08
  - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
  - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
  - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
  - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
  - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
  - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
  - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/18
  - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
  - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
  - Added a hint for the abstract package.
- 2005/04/07
  - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
  - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
  - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
  - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
  - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
  - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
  - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
  - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
  - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26

- Fixed rules in parttocs, partlofs and partlots.
- 2005/05/30
  - Fixed chapter-level entries in parttocs, when page numbers must be removed.
  - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
  - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
  - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
  - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
  - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
  - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
  - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
  - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06
  - Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
  - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
  - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
  - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
  - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
  - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
  - Added “OUT”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
  - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
  - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
  - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29

- Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
  - Added `castillian.mld`.
  - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
  - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
  - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
  - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
  - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
  - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21
  - Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
  - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
  - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
  - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
  - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
  - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
  - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitocs`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
  - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending on the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
  - The memoir class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
  - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
  - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
  - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
  - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.

- Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
- Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
  - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
  - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
  - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
  - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
  - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
  - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
  - Added a note about the `rubber` tool.
- 2005/09/15
  - Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
  - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

## ★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
  - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
  - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
  - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
  - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
  - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
  - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
  - Corrected typos.
  - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
  - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
  - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.



- Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.
- 2005/10/04
  - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
  - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
  - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
  - Added the french L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion [308].
- 2005/11/09
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
  - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
  - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.

- 2005/11/16
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
  - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Reordering a long sequence of citations.

- Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
  - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
  - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
  - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
  - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.
- 2005/12/08
  - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
  - Corrections of french quotes.
  - Added some PDF options.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected an URL to the  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$  in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
  - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
  - Correction of typos.
  - Added some labels.
  - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
  - The documentation needs 4  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs.
- 2005/12/22
  - Made some messages shorter.
  - Corrections in the list of messages.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
  - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
  - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04

- Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
  - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
  - Added “\*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected the bibliography entry about BangTeX.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Used the `afterpage` package [111] in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the bahasam language.
  - Added the albanian language.
  - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
  - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
  - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
  - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
  - Renamed the bahasa language as `bahasai`; bahasa is synonym of `bahasai`.
  - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of `bahasam`.
  - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of `bahasai`.
- 2006/01/12
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgements.
  - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
  - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
  - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
  - Added `magyar3.mld`.
  - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.

- 2006/01/16
  - Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
  - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
  - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
  - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
  - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23
  - Corrected the table about default titles.
  - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
  - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
  - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
  - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [317, 318, 364], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
  - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
  - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
  - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02

- Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added package `dblacont` [304] for the “The pdfT<sub>E</sub>X Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN).
- 2006/02/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13
  - Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
  - Added `kannada.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
  - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
  - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgments.
- 2006/02/17
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
  - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
  - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8.ml[d|o]` and `hanja-u8.ml[d|o]`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
  - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.

- Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
  - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `poliski.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
  - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`. W0029
- 2006/03/02
  - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [181]. W0025
- 2006/03/06
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
  - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
  - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
  - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
  - The messages are now numbered.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
  - Corrections in the documentation.

- 2006/03/21
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
  - Added FAQ 37 about .mld files and babel.
  - Added french1.mld and french2.mld.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
  - Added english1.mld and english2.mld.

**★ version 45**

- 2006/03/31
  - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.
  - Added arab2.mld, bicig3.mld, buryat2.mld, xalx2.mld, and xalx3.mld.
- 2006/04/03
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
  - Added swedish2.mld.
  - The `insection` package option loads also the `flatter` package.
- 2006/04/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
  - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
  - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
  - Corrections in the documentation.



- 2006/04/13
  - In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
  - Added a figure about the float barriers (figure 1.1 on page 33).
- 2006/04/27
  - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - Added comments about the `insection` option.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
  - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
  - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03
  - Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
  - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0086
  - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0087
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0088
  - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0089
  - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0090
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).

- Corrections in the documentation.
- Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
  - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
  - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
  - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/08
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.

## ★ version 46

- 2006/06/09
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
- 2006/06/21
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
- 2006/06/22
  - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
  - Added chapter “Example files”.
- 2006/06/23
  - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
  - Use the `lipsum` package [197] in some of the examples of documents.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/27
  - Update the examples of documents.

- Added the `second.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/29
  - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
- 2006/06/30
  - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/03
  - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
  - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
- 2006/07/04
  - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
- 2006/07/07
  - Corrections of typos.
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
  - Correction in `french2.mld`.
- 2006/07/10
  - Correction in `minilots` and `minilofs` (and `siblings`) about depth.
  - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
  - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
  - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
  - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
  - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
  - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
  - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc0` in the list of files.
  - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
  - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.

## ★ version 47

- 2006/07/26
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
  - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Arabi` system [226]).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
  - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
  - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
  - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.
  - Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
  - Minor correction in warning message `F0008`.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).

## ★ version 48

- 2006/08/04
  - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
  - Update the bibliography.
  - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
  - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
  - Increasing `\textwidth`.
  - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
  - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
  - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
  - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).

- 2006/08/28
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
  - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
  - Update the bibliography.
  - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
  - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
  - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
  - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
  - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
  - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
  - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
  - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
  - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
  - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
  - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
  - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
  - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
  - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
  - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
  - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
  - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
  - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
  - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.

E0036

- Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
- Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
- Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
- Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
- Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsfc.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
  - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
  - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
  - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
  - Added a figure about systems derived from  $\text{\TeX}$  and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .
- 2006/09/13
  - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

## ★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
  - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
  - Simplifications in the scripts.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
  - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Fixed typos.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
  - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
  - Improving some tables.
  - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.

- Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
  - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with minitoc.
  - Added a hint about the hangcaption package (must be loaded *before* minitoc).
- 2006/11/06
  - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
  - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the .mld and .mlo files.
  - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the english.mld file.
- 2006/11/13
  - The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

W0092

E0036

## ★ version 50

- 2006/11/17
  - Removed old examples of documents: mtc-adds.tex, mtc-amem.tex, mtc-book.tex, mtc-gaps.tex, mtc-mem1.tex, mtc-subf.tex, and mtc-tsfc.tex.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the tmk script and a table describing a TDS structure for minitoc.
  - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
  - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
  - Added the warning message W0094 with the list of the missing minitoc languages files (.mld and .mlo).
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the file minitoc-tds.zip (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

## ★ version 51

- 2006/12/18
  - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.

- 2006/12/20
  - Improving the index: names.
  - Updated some `.mld` files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
  - Miscellaneous corrections.
  - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
  - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
  - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
  - Indexing the files.
  - Renamed the file “catalog” into “CATALOG”.
  - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
  - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

## ★ version 52

- 2007/01/11
  - Correction of index ordering.
  - Default option in boldface in the index.
  - Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
  - Added fake sections in the “Examples of documents” chapter.
  - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
  - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
  - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
  - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
  - Corrected the name `Thế Thành HÀN` (first name before last name, the english way).
  - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
  - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
  - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
  - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
  - Trying to use a recent version of the `cite [15]` package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with `hyperref`.
- 2007/01/26
  - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29



- Correction of the indexing of the environments.
- 2007/01/31
  - Improving the index layout.
  - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
  - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
  - Indexing the names of authors.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
  - Updated the acknowledgements.

## ★ version 53

- 2007/02/13
  - Added the example file `mtc-fko.tex`.
  - Corrected `\kernafterminitoc` and `siblings`.
- 2007/02/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.
- 2007/03/02
  - Added a header to the index, to explain notations.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Changed the style of page and line numbers in the index.
  - Updated `kannada.mld`.
  - Dangerous bend symbols are now in the right margin.
- 2007/03/06
  - Improved the presentation of example files.
  - Using the `natbib` package [137, 138] to sort the sequences of citations.
- 2007/03/09
  - Correction in table 7.4 on page 246.
  - Renamed `minitoc-texmf.zip` into `minitoc-tds.zip`.
- 2007/03/19
  - Use the `sort&compress` option of the `natbib` package [137, 138] to compress the sequences of citations; the `hypernat` package must also be loaded (after `natbib` and `hyperref`).
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/03/22
  - Added changing the title of the `parttoc` for appendices in `mtc-apx.tex`.

## ★ version 54

- 2007/03/27
  - Added the “open” and “close” features.
  - Indexing the features.
  - Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.
- 2007/04/06
  - Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.
  - Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and siblings, using `\mtc@toks`.
  - Some mini-tables are set on two columns in the manual.
  - Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.
  - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
  - Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.
- 2007/04/12
  - Added internal hyperlinks for messages.
  - Load the `hypcap` package for hyperlinks in the documentation.
- 2007/06/06
  - Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.
  - Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.
  - Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.
  - Added flagging of macros in example files.
  - The 2007 section in the “Postface” chapter was garbled.
  - More internal links in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a clickable table of all messages.
  - Improved column breaks in the index.
  - Added a local minitoc in the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added `lithuanian2.mld`.
  - Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.
  - Grouped `.mld/.mlo` pairs in tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on page 243.

## ★ version 55

- 2007/06/12
  - Added a hint (warning W0097) about the `flowfram` [394, 395] package (incompatible). W0097
  - Added a *hint* (I0053) about the `float` [281], `floatrow` [265], `trivfloat` [444], and `rotfloat` [382] packages. I0053
- 2007/06/22
  - Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.
  - Improve page breaks in the documentation.

- Updated the bibliography.
- Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.
- 2007/06/29
  - Changed the color of hyperlinks.
  - Revised the format of the headers.
  - Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

## ★ version 56

- 2007/07/02
  - Added `swahili.mld`.
- 2007/08/03
  - Page headers modified in documentation.
  - Added stuff (files) for figures (maps) for many language areas.
  - Removed the `.eps` files.
  - Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.
  - Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on page 243).
- 2007/12/04
  - Many minor typo fixes.
  - Darker colors for hyperlinks.
  - Updated and corrected the bibliography.
  - Corrected a typo in the `ptc@verse` environment (thanks to François PÉTIARD).
  - Corrections of typos in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments (thanks to Andrew BOWDEN).
  - Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing the `(\jobname.mtc1)` file).
  - Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas DEININGER).
  - The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.
  - Added a hint (warning W0099) about the `titlesec` [46] package.
  - Complete indexing of the messages.
  - Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.
  - Using the `chnpage` package [427] to increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.
  - Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.
  - Updated `czech.mld`.
  - Removed `\l@xsection`.
  - Graphic files are indexed separately.
  - Updated `galician.mld`.
  - Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.
  - Updated `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.

- Updated malayalam-omega.mlo.
- Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

★ version 57

- 2007/12/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/12/18
  - Corrections in examples of documents.
  - Added occitan.mld.
  - Updated croatian.mld, danish.mld, dutch.mld, galician.mld, germanb2.mld, greek.mld, icelandic.mld, interlingua.mld, polish.mld, scottish.mld, and turkish.mld.
- 2008/01/15
  - Corrected polski.mld.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added table 6.10 on page 231.
  - Added maps of Manchuria (figure 13.24 on page 487).

★ version 2008/04/03

- Better captions for maps. Added maps for Italy, Karnataka, Germany, Mongols and China.
- Added occitan2.mld and mexican.mld.
- Added a map of czech dialects (figure 13.43 on page 504).
- Added maps of danish dialects (figure 13.45 on page 505).
- Added a map of the dutch language (figure 13.47 on page 507).
- Added a map of french dialects (figure 13.57 on page 521).
- Added a map of galician dialects (figure 13.59 on page 525).
- Added maps of german dialects (figures 13.62 on page 527, 13.63 on page 528 and 13.64 on page 529).
- Added maps of hindi dialects (figure 13.72 on page 543).
- Added maps of portugese dialects (figures 13.26 on page 489, 13.98 on page 584 and 13.99 on page 585).
- Added a map of the turkish language (figure 13.119 on page 610).
- Added a map of the vietnamese language (figure 13.125 on page 617).
- Added a map of the armenian diaspora (figure 13.17 on page 479).
- Added a map of the sami dialects (figure 13.105 on page 595).
- Added a map of the nationalities in ex-Yugoslavia (figure 13.41 on page 503).
- Added a map of countries where spanish is an official language (figure 13.113 on page 603).
- Added a map of the sorbian area (figure 13.84 on page 562).
- Added an entry for the Wikipedia in the jargon.

- Added a map of the minorities in Poland (figure [13.95](#) on page [581](#)).
- Added a map of the bengali diaspora (figure [13.21](#) on page [483](#)).
- Splitted the TDS hierarchy into two tables [7.4](#) on page [246](#) and [7.3](#) on page [243](#).
- Added maps of the basque dialects (figure [13.23](#) on page [484](#)).
- Added maps of the latvian dialects (figure [13.80](#) on page [556](#)).
- Added a map for the swahili language (figure [13.114](#) on page [605](#)).
- Added the turkish alphabet (figure [13.117](#) on page [609](#)).
- The page numbers in the index are now hyperlinks (thanks to François PÉTIARD).
- Colors added in figure [1.1](#) on page [33](#).
- Added maps of the languages in Europe (figure [13.7](#) on page [469](#), [13.6](#) on page [468](#) and [13.8](#) on page [470](#)).
- Added maps of Kosovo (figure [13.12](#) on page [474](#)).
- Added a map of the languages in Africa (figure [13.5](#) on page [468](#)).
- Corrected an error of message number.
- Added maps for Russia (figures [13.103](#) on page [589](#) and [13.104](#) on page [590](#)).
- Added a map of the districts of Slovakia (figure [13.108](#) on page [599](#)).
- Added maps about Islam (figures [13.14](#) and [13.15](#) on page [476](#)).
- Added a figure about hànzì characters (figure [13.35](#) on page [499](#)).
- Added a figure about chinese characters usage in the world (figure [13.36](#) on page [499](#)).
- Added a figure about chinese dialects ((figure [13.39](#) on page [501](#)).
- Added maps about writing systems (figures [13.3](#) and [13.4](#) on page [467](#)).
- Added a map of the regions where Finnish is spoken (figure [13.54](#) on page [518](#)).
- Shortened the “Installation” chapter.
- Updated from the babel package version v3.8j of 2008/03/16.
- Files `lamed.pdf` and `lamed.tex` replaced by `lamed3.png`.
- Added maps of the indigenous languages of México (figure [13.88](#) on page [571](#)).

# Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples<sup>52</sup>, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups<sup>53</sup>, and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Stéphane AICARDI, Vartan AKOPIAN, A.J. ALEX, Mark ALFORD, Jacques ANDRÉ, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Walter APPEL, Achod André ARADIAN, Patrick ANDRIES, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Jouko ARPONEN, Donald ARSENEAU, Helmer ASLASKEN, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN, Philipp BACHMANN, Gonçal BADENES, Jason BALDRIDGE, Marin BALGARENSKY, Leonor BARROCA, Giancarlo BASSI, Pierre BASSO, Dorjgotov BATMUNKH, Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI, Beebe NELSON H. F., Emmanuel BEFFARA, Benoît BELET, Rachid BELMOUHOUB, József BÉRCES, Alexander BERDNIKOV, Jens BERGER, Tobias BERNDT, Karl BERRY, Berhanu BEYENE, Javier BEZOS, Giuseppe BILOTTA, Olivier BINISTI, Árpád BÍRÓ, Denis BITOUZÉ, Dr. Barbara BLANKENSHIP, Laurent BLOCH, Patrick BOMAN, Onofre BONVILA, Georgi N. BOSHNAKOV, Patrice BOUGETTE, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Andrew BOWDEN, Victor BOYKO, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN, Jim BREEN, Peter BREITENLOHNER, Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ, Mimi BURBANK, Mustafa BURC, Patrick BURGEL, Alexey BURYKIN, Olivier CARDI, Samuele CARCAGNO, David CARELLA, David P. CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, Waldemar CELES, Raymond CHABBERT<sup>†</sup>, Winston CHANG, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Pascal CHAUVET, Pehong CHEN, Céline CHEVALIER, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Otfried CHEONG, Jin-Hwan CHO, Pai H. CHOU, Pierre CHUVIN, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Emmanuel CORNET, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Sergueï DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Holger DANIELSSON, Alice DAVISON, Luiz Henrique DE FIGUEIRO, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Andreas DEININGER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Bernard DESGRAUPES, Cécile DESPRAIRIES, Sébastien DESREUX, Christine DETIG, Antoni R. DILLER, Dorjpalam DORJ, Ivars DRIKIS, Matthew S. DRYER, Denys DUCHIER, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ĚEHAJA, Ta Quang DUNG, Patrick EGAN, Victor EIJKHOUT, Brian ELMEGAARD, Danie ELS, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Gilhooly ETIENNE, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Christian FAULHAMMER, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Michael J. FERGUSON, Jeff FESSLER, Ulrike FISCHER, Jean-Julien FLECK, Daniel FLIPO, Peter L. FLOM, Peter FLYNN, Jim FOX, Danny M. FÜRNISS, Tetsuo FURUKAWA, Federico GARCIA, Diego GARCÍA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Bernard GAULLE<sup>†</sup>,

---

<sup>52</sup> And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

<sup>53</sup> Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or in english).

Maarten GELDERMAN, Chuck GENSCHTE, Mohammad GHODSI, Helen GILHOOLY, Aleksas Stanislovas GIRDENIS, François GIRON, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Raymond G. GORDON, Jr., Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, George GRÄTZER, Norman GRAY, George D. GREENWADE, Enrico GREGORIO, Loïc GRENON, Charles GREThER, Barbara F. GRIMES, Olga A. GRINEVA, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD, Marion GUNN, Guntermann KLAUS, Eitan M. GURARI, Thomas HAFNER, Hans HAGEN, Reinhard F. HAHN, Boumediene HAMZI, Thế Thành HÀN, Thorsten HANSEN, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Kathryn A. HARGREAVES, Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS, Michael A. HARRISON, Stephen HARTKE, Danny HEAP, Jim HEFFERON, André HEIDER, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Håvard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Hartmut HENKEL, Thomas HENLICH, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Jörg HESOLL, Pr. Thomas J. HINNENBUSH, David HOADLEY, Taco HOEKWATER, Alan HOENIG, Joe HOGG, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Klaus HÖPPNER, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, Dave W. HUSEBY, Helene HYNA, Ierusalimschy ROBERTO, Hiroya IKEDA, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Tetsuo IWAKUMA, Zunbeltz IZAOLA AZKONA, Youssef JABRI, Paweł JACKOWSKI, Roland JACQUES, Christophe JACQUET, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Frank JENSEN, Alan JEFFREY, Regnor JERNsLETTEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES, Christophe JORsSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Jean-Joseph JULAUD, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY, Akira KAKUTO, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Jonathan KEW, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Ingo KLÖCKL, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald E. KNUTH, Markus KOHM, Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOVIAK, Kai KRATT, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Siep KROONENBERG, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Manfred KUDLEK, Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Olaf KUMMER, Frank KÜSTER, Stéphane LABORDE, Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Andris LASIS, Christian LAUCOU, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Olivier LECARME, Jacques LECLERC, Jeanne LEGRAND, Philipp LEHMAN, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, René LÉTOILE, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Bernice Sacks LIPKIN, Pierre LOBEL, Miloš V. LOKAJČEK, Stoffel LOMBARD, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Vincent LOZANO, Daniel H. LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre A. MacKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Pierre MALECKI, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Alan MARSHALL, Terry MART, Éric MARTINI, Vadim MASLOV, Henri MASSIAS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben McKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN, Jochen METZINGER, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACh, Young Joon MOON, Ross MOORE, Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Andrei NACU, NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY, Sergei O. NAUMOV, Lee NETHERTON, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Elke NIEDERMAIR, Michael NIEDERMAIR, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Tim NULL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Tobias OETIKER, Haruhito OKAMURA, Mariusz OLKO, Tanguy ORTOLO, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Minje Byeng-sen PARK, Hubert PARTL, Oren PATASHNIK, Jonathan PECHTA, Kasper PEETERS, Matthias PELGER, Manuel PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD, Sébastien PEYROUSE, François PÉTIARD, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Paul PICHAREAU, Éric PICHERAL, Bruno PIGUET, Karel PÍŠKA, John PLAICE, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Fabrice POPINEAU, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hilmar PREUSSE, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN,

Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Claude RAIMOND, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Paul RASCOE, Keranen REINO, Arthur REUTENAUER, Adrian REZUŞ, Alexandre DE RHODES<sup>†</sup>, François RICHAUDEAU, Luis RIVERA, Yuri ROBBERS, A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS, Will ROBERTSON, Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Rasmus Pank ROULUND, Chris A. ROWLEY, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michael RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Larry SANGER, Morgan SANGEUX, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, Bernd SCHANDL, Elisabeth SCHLEGL, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Walter SCHMIDT, Thomas A. SCHMITZ, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Rainer SCHÖPF, Joachim SCHROD, Martin SCHRÖDER, Ulrich SCHWARTZ, Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Michael SHELL, JUNGSHIK Shin, Bai SHOUYI<sup>†</sup>, Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Sindhu SINGH, Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Kristian SLIMAK, Janković SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Nick SOFRONIOU, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Lianyi SONG, Yves SOULET, Arjen STEINER, D. P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, K. K. SUBRAMANIAM, Robert S. SUTOR, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Raffaella TABACCO, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, Harold THIMBLEBY, Kresten Krab THORUP, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Ton ’t LAM, Sigitas TOLUŠIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Hideo UMEKI, Un KOAUNGH, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Piet van OOSTRUM, Thomas van OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Timothy VAN ZANDT, Vincent VAQUIN, Suki K. VENKATESAN, Didier VERNÉ, Sylvain VESCO, Boris VEYTSMAN, Alexandre VIAL, Carl F. VOEGELIN, Florence M. VOEGELIN, Martin VOGEL, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. von BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, David WALDEN, Jimmy WALES, Nigel WARD, John WARNOCK, Douglas WAUD Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Daphne WEST, Ferenc WETTL, Graham WILLIAMS, Peter R. WILSON, Jeroen WIJNHOUT, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Mark WOODING, Joseph A. WRIGHT, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C. S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Ludwig Lejzer ZAMENHOF<sup>†</sup>, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Federico ZENITH, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.



# Index

In this index, italic style numbers (*123*) are page numbers (and hyperlinks, thanks to François PÉTIARD), normal roman numbers (123) are code line references for usage, bold roman numbers (**123**) are code line references for definitions; colored numbers in square brackets, like this:  $\hookrightarrow$ [147], are bibliographic references, eventually sorted and compressed.

The names of commands, environments, files, suffixes, options, features, messages identifiers<sup>54</sup>, and languages, are in typewriter font (**bold** for default options or the default language). The names of tools, packages and classes are in sans serif font. The people names are in roman for the first names, in SMALL CAPS for the family names, separated by a comma, the family name first<sup>55</sup>, like in “LAMPART, Leslie” in the index.

Some commands (like the internal names of language specific letters) are not indexed.

## Symbols

.F (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 205, 299	.ist (extension) 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 673, 674, 676
.G (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 205, 335	.lan (extension) . 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 439
.H (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 205, 357	.lof (extension) . . . . . 29, 56, 59, 62–64, 69, 152, 179–181, 205, 208, 279, 281–283, 307, 308, 316, 335, 342, 357, 364, 455, 668
.M (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 205, 296	.log (extension) . . . . . 32, 35, 53, 56, 58, 81, 144, 151, 162, 169, 170, 202, 205, 218, 264, 266, 283, 408, 433, 434, 471, 671, 691
.P (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 205, 335	.lot (extension) . . . . . 29, 56, 59, 62, 64, 69, 152, 180, 181, 205, 208, 279, 281–283, 308, 318, 319, 335, 344, 358, 366, 455, 666, 668
.S (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 206, 357	.maf (extension) . . 53, 81, 154, 205, 208, 221, 252, 403, 436, 676
.T (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 206, 302	.map (extension) . . . . . 239
.U (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 206, 335	.mld (extension) . . . . . 22, 37, 40, 45, 71, 76, 82, 154, 163, 169, 187, 196, 198, 205, 207, 211, 241, 246, 248–
.V (extension) . . . . .	55, 56, 206, 358	
.afm (extension) . . . . .	239	
.aux (extension) . 56, 59, 61, 64, 205, 208, 271		
.bst (extension) 214, 218, 239, 243, 244, 246, 254, 689		
.cls (extension) . . . . .	205	
.dtx (extension) . 45, 205, 211, 245, 251, 252, 471, 596, 673		
.eps (extension) . . . . .	695	
.ins (extension) . . . . .	205, 211, 245, 251	

<sup>54</sup>The messages identifiers appear in the right margin of the text, near the points of usage.

<sup>55</sup>For some oriental names (like japanese, korean, vietnamese or indian names), it is sometimes difficult to know which is the first or the last name.

- 250, 252, 254, 264, 399, 400, 403–406, 460, 465, 470, 471, 522, 565, 666, 668, 670, 675, 676, 680, 684, 691, 692
- .mlf (extension) . . . 29, 55, 56, 205, 299, 308
- .mlo (extension) . . . . . 22, 40, 45, 71, 155, 163, 169, 188, 205, 211, 212, 216, 241, 246, 252, 254, 264, 400, 403, 405, 406, 460, 471, 568, 676, 683, 691
- .mlt (extension) . . . 29, 55, 56, 205, 302, 308
- .mtc (extension) 29, 53, 55, 56, 59, 60, 62, 205, 278, 283, 284, 296, 308, 436, 662
- .mtc0 (extension) . . . 256, 283, 436, 687, 695
- .mtc1 (extension) . . . . . 256, 695
- .pdf (extension) . . . . . 244
- .pfb (extension) . . . . . 239
- .plf (extension) . . . . . 34, 55, 56, 206, 335
- .plt (extension) . . . . . 34, 55, 56, 206, 335
- .pre (extension) . 224, 243, 244, 246, 677, 683
- .ptc (extension) . . . . . 34, 55, 56, 206, 335
- .slf (extension) . . . . . 31, 55, 56, 206, 357
- .slt (extension) . . . . . 31, 55, 56, 206, 358
- .stc (extension) . . . . . 31, 55, 56, 206, 357
- .sty (extension) 206, 233, 241, 244, 245, 248, 666
- .tar (extension) . . . . . 245
- .tex (extension) . . . . . 152, 206
- .tfm (extension) . . . . . 239
- .tgz (extension) . . . . . 245
- .toc (extension) 29, 51, 56, 59, 60, 62–64, 69, 152, 180, 181, 206, 208, 248, 279, 281–283, 290, 292, 307, 308, 313, 335, 339, 357, 362, 455, 663, 666, 668
- .vf (extension) . . . . . 239
- .zip (extension) . . . . . 245
- /tmp/‘whoami’.imk (file) . . . . . 244, 245
- /tmp/‘whoami’.rmk (file) . . . . . 245, 246
- /tmp/‘whoami’.tmk (file) . . . . . 244, 246
- /tmp/‘whoami’/OLD (file) . . . . . 687
- \@@dominilof . . . . . 3374, 3412
- \@@dominilot . . . . . 3393, 3412
- \@@dominitoc (command) . . . . . 308
- \@@dominitoc . . . . . 3340, 3355, 3412
- \@@dopartlof . . . . . 4075, 4095
- \@@dopartlot . . . . . 4094, 4095
- \@@doparttoc . . . . . 4056, 4095
- \@@dosectlof . . . . . 4695, 4715
- \@@dosectlot . . . . . 4714, 4715
- \@@dosecttoc . . . . . 4676, 4715
- \@M 1220, 1230, 2828, 3266, 3289, 3301, 4005, 4585, 4586, 4616
- \@Undottedtocline (command) . . . . . 306
- \@Undottedtocline . . . . . 3284, 6037, 7787
- \@Undottedtoclinep (command) . . 306, 307
- \@Undottedtoclinep 3296, 3309, 3321, 3324, 3327, 3332, 3335, 3338, 7787
- \@addtoreset . . . . . 816, 999
- \@afterheading 3753, 3760, 3767, 7873, 7881
- \@afterindenttrue . . . . . 2827, 3288, 3300
- \@caption (command) . . . . . 663
- \@centercr . . . . . 3049, 3778, 4371
- \@chapter (command) . . . . . 54, 281, 305, 415
- \@chapter 2760, 3268, 6601, 7338, 7847, 7849
- \@dominilof . . . . . 3345, 3413
- \@dominilof@used@false . . . . . 2545
- \@dominilof@used@true . . . . . 3385
- \@dominilot . . . . . 3350, 3414
- \@dominilot@used@false . . . . . 2546
- \@dominilot@used@true . . . . . 3404
- \@dominitoc (command) . . . . . 308
- \@dominitoc . . . . . 3340, 3412
- \@dominitoc@used@false . . . . . 2544
- \@dominitoc@used@true (command) . . 308
- \@dominitoc@used@true . . . . . 3366
- \@dopartlof . . . . . 4027, 4096
- \@dopartlof@used@false . . . . . 2539
- \@dopartlof@used@true . . . . . 4068
- \@dopartlot . . . . . 4031, 4097
- \@dopartlot@used@false . . . . . 2540
- \@dopartlot@used@true . . . . . 4087
- \@doparttoc . . . . . 4023, 4095
- \@doparttoc@used@false . . . . . 2538
- \@doparttoc@used@true . . . . . 4049
- \@dosectlof . . . . . 4647, 4716
- \@dosectlof@used@false . . . . . 2551
- \@dosectlof@used@true . . . . . 4688
- \@dosectlot (command) . . . . . 673
- \@dosectlot . . . . . 4651, 4717
- \@dosectlot@used@false . . . . . 2552
- \@dosectlot@used@true . . . . . 4707
- \@dosecttoc . . . . . 4643, 4715
- \@dosecttoc@used@false . . . . . 2550
- \@dosecttoc@used@true . . . . . 4669
- \@dotsep (command) . . . . . 45–47, 380
- \@dotsep 5341, 5354, 5359, 5364, 5369, 5374, 5379, 5384, 5389, 5394
- \@dottedtocline (command) . 72, 285, 307, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355
- \@dottedtocline . . 160, 3109, 3181, 3249, 3266, 3309, 3321, 3324, 3327, 3332, 3335, 3338, 3835, 3912, 3987, 4005, 4432, 4502, 4569, 4585
- \@dottedxxxline . . . . . 2143
- \@ensure@R . . . . . 8929
- \@fileswfalse (command) . . . . . 670

- \@fileswfalse 3113, 3185, 3253, 3842, 3916, 3991, 4437, 4506, 4574
- \@firstchapteris@used@false . . . . . 2554
- \@firstchapteris@used@true . . . . . 3013
- \@firstoftwo . . . . . 2662
- \@firstpartis@used@false . . . . . 2553
- \@firstpartis@used@true . . . . . 3704
- \@firstsectionis@used@false . . . . . 2555
- \@firstsectionis@used@true . . . . . 4342
- \@gobble (command) . . . . . 671
- \@gobble . . . . . 7648, 7649, 7787
- \@gobblethree (command) . . . . . 403
- \@gobblethree . . . . . 6079, 6160
- \@gobbletwo (command) . . . . . 448
- \@gobbletwo . . . . . 7587, 7632
- \@hangfrom . . . . . 4606
- \@ifclasslater . . . . . 2654
- \@ifclassloaded . . 2629, 6412, 6520, 6529, 6544, 6567
- \@ifnextchar (command) 296, 299, 302, 368, 447
- \@ifnextchar 3060, 3130, 3198, 3340, 3345, 3350, 3790, 3856, 3930, 4035, 4383, 4450, 4517, 4655, 4936, 4977, 4980, 4983, 4986, 7568, 7574, 7580, 7586, 7847
- \@ifpackagelater . . . . . 6510
- \@ifpackageloaded . 2583, 2599, 2601, 2603, 2605, 2607, 2609, 2611, 2613, 2615, 2617, 2619, 2621, 2623, 2625–2628, 6388, 6396, 6404, 6436, 6444, 6452, 6460, 6553, 6574, 7274
- \@ifpackagewith . . . . . 6460, 6553
- \@ifundefined (command) 281, 282, 292, 319, 367
- \@ifundefined 2441, 2459, 4936, 5454, 5530, 5861, 5904, 5947, 6041, 6058, 6582, 6601, 6620, 7335, 7338, 7341, 7392, 7473
- \@input (command) . 314, 317, 319, 340, 342, 344
- \@input . . . . . 3518, 3583, 3644, 5990, 6010
- \@inputcheck (command) . . . . . 61, 284, 664
- \@inputcheck 2684, 2811, 3502, 3514, 3531, 3568, 3579, 3596, 3629, 3640, 3657, 4180, 4181, 4192, 4208, 4240, 4241, 4252, 4268, 4300, 4301, 4312, 4328, 4784, 4785, 4796, 4812, 4844, 4845, 4856, 4872, 4904, 4905, 4916, 4932
- \@m@mchapter . . . . . 7845
- \@mainaux . . . . . 2563
- \@makechapterhead . 1217, 7872, 7877, 7879
- \@makephead@c . . . . . 3767
- \@makephead@l . . . . . 3753
- \@makephead@r . . . . . 3760
- \@makeschapterhead . . . . . 1227
- \@minilof@used@false . . . . . 2542
- \@minilof@used@true (command) . . . . . 299
- \@minilof@used@true . . . . . 3132
- \@minilot@used@false . . . . . 2543
- \@minilot@used@true (command) . . . . . 302
- \@minilot@used@true . . . . . 3200
- \@minitoc@used@false . . . . . 2541
- \@minitoc@used@true (command) . . . . . 296
- \@minitoc@used@true . . . . . 3062
- \@mkboth . . . . . 2979, 3805, 3871, 3946
- \@mtc@FEfalse (command) . . . . . 278
- \@mtc@FEfalse . . . . . 2693, 2703
- \@mtc@FEtrue (command) . . . . . 278
- \@mtc@FEtrue . . . . . 2685, 2696, 2701
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false . . . . . 2501
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true . . . . . 2606
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false . . . . . 2500
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@true . . . . . 2605
- \@mtc@Himlof@false . . . . . 5793, 5809, 5825
- \@mtc@Himlof@true . . . . . 5801, 5819
- \@mtc@Himlot@false . . . . . 5827, 5843, 5859
- \@mtc@Himlot@true . . . . . 5835, 5853
- \@mtc@Himtoc@false . . . . . 5778, 5791
- \@mtc@Himtoc@true . . . . . 5785
- \@mtc@LIfalse . . . . . 2688, 2692, 2693
- \@mtc@LItrue . . . . . 2684, 2696
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false . . . . . 6379
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@true . . . . . 6554
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false . . . . . 2509
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true . . . . . 2614
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false . . . . . 2508
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true . . . . . 2613
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false . . . . . 2495
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true . . . . . 2616
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false . . . . . 2494
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@true . . . . . 2615
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false . . . 2489
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true . . . . 2620
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false . . . . . 2488
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@true . . . . . 2619
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false . . . . . 2487
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true . . . . . 2618
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@false . . . . . 2486
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@true . . . . . 2617
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false . . . . 2491
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true . . . . . 2622
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false . . . . . 2490
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true . . . . . 2621
- \@mtc@chapter@def@false . . . 2525, 2526
- \@mtc@chapter@def@true . . . . . 2526
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@false . . . . . 2532

- \@mtc@chapter@undef@true... 2531, 2532
- \@mtc@checkfilesfalse ..... 6050
- \@mtc@checkfilestrue ..... 2686, 6049
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@false..... 2518
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@true..... 3142
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@false..... 2519
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@true..... 3210
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false..... 2517
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true..... 3072
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@false..... 2515
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@true... 3868, 3943
- \@mtc@empty@partlot@false..... 2516
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false..... 2514
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true..... 3802
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false..... 2521
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true..... 4462
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false..... 2522
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true..... 4529
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false..... 2520
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true..... 4395
- \@mtc@floatLoaded@false ..... 2510
- \@mtc@floatLoaded@true ..... 2625
- \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false ..... 2511
- \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true ..... 2626
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false ... 2499
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true ... 2604
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false ..... 2498
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true ..... 2603
- \@mtc@hints@false ..... 6378
- \@mtc@hints@given@false ..... 2479
- \@mtc@hints@given@true **3355, 3374, 3393,**  
**4038, 4057, 4076, 4658, 4677, 4696,**  
4956, 6389, 6397, 6405, 6413, 6421,  
6429, 6437, 6445, 6453, 6463, 6480,  
6495, 6511, 6521, 6530, 6538, 6545,  
6556, 6568, 6575, 6589, 6608, 6628,  
6680, 6690, 6699, 6708, 6719, 6728,  
6737, 6748, 6757, 6776, 6785, 6794,  
6805, 6814, 6823, 6834, 6843, 6865,  
6876, 6887, 6900, 6911, 6922, 6935,  
6946, 6957, 6965, 6973, 6981, 6997,  
7006, 7015, 7024, 7033, 7042, 7051,  
7060, 7069, 7078, 7087, 7096, 7105,  
7117, 7128, 7139, 7150, 7157, 7164,  
7171, 7178, 7185, 7192, 7199, 7206,  
7213, 7220, 7227, 7234
- \@mtc@hints@true..... 2477, 6377
- \@mtc@hints@w@false2478, 6582, 6601, 6620
- \@mtc@hints@w@true 6584, 6586, 6588, 6603,  
6605, 6607, 6623, 6625, 6627, 6680
- \@mtc@hyper@used@false ..... 2584
- \@mtc@hyper@used@true ..... 2587
- \@mtc@insellang@false . 5990, 6008, 6035
- \@mtc@insellang@true ..... 5992
- \@mtc@listfiles@false ..... 6078
- \@mtc@listfiles@true ..... 6076, 6077
- \@mtc@lof@used@false ..... 6381, 6642
- \@mtc@lof@used@true ..... 6649, 6658
- \@mtc@longext@false (command) .... **283**
- \@mtc@longext@false ... 2784, 2789, 6055
- \@mtc@longext@true (command) .... **283**
- \@mtc@longext@true ..... 2786, 7731
- \@mtc@lot@used@false ..... 6382, 6643
- \@mtc@lot@used@true ..... 6652, 6661
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false .... 2493
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true .... 2624
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false ..... 2492
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true ..... 2623
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false... 2482, 2635
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@true ..... 2630
- \@mtc@memoirnew@false .... 2483, 2638
- \@mtc@memoirnew@true ..... 2640
- \@mtc@misslangfalse ..... 6084
- \@mtc@misslangtrue 6088, 6104, 6117, 6133
- \@mtc@notoccite@false ..... 2578
- \@mtc@notoccite@true ..... 6053
- \@mtc@part@def@false ..... 2523, 2524
- \@mtc@part@def@true ..... 2524
- \@mtc@part@undef@false ..... 2530
- \@mtc@part@undef@true ..... 2529, 2530
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false . 2481, 7278
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true ..... 7278
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false .... 2503
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true .... 2608
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false ..... 2502
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true ..... 2607
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false .... 2505
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true .... 2610
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false ..... 2504
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@true ..... 2609
- \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false ..... 2513
- \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true ..... 2628
- \@mtc@sect@floats@false ..... 2480
- \@mtc@sect@floats@true .... 6665–6668
- \@mtc@section@def@false ... 2527, 2528
- \@mtc@section@def@true ..... 2528
- \@mtc@section@undef@false ..... 2534
- \@mtc@section@undef@true... 2533, 2534
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false ..... 2485
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true ..... 2600
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false ..... 2484
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true ..... 2599
- \@mtc@setdepth@false ..... 5695
- \@mtc@setdepth@true ..... 5690, 5693
- \@mtc@setfeature@false .... 5635, 5652
- \@mtc@setfeature@true ..... 5629, 5633

- \@mtc@setfont@false . . . . . 5095, 5113,  
5153–5156, 5159, 5160, 5163, 5164,  
5167–5173, 5176–5180, 5183–5187,  
5190–5197, 5200–5205, 5208–5213
- \@mtc@setfont@true . . . . . 5090, 5093, 5151
- \@mtc@setformat@false . . . . . 5402, 5418
- \@mtc@setformat@true . . . . . 5396, 5400
- \@mtc@setoffset@false . . . . . 5739
- \@mtc@setoffset@true . . . . . 5734, 5737
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false . 5452, 5477,  
5499
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true . . . . . 5474
- \@mtc@setrules@false . . 5528, 5553, 5575
- \@mtc@setrules@true . . . . . 5550
- \@mtc@settitle@false . . . . . 5278
- \@mtc@settitle@true . . . . . 5273, 5276
- \@mtc@settitlefont@false . . . . . 5237
- \@mtc@settitlefont@true . . . 5232, 5235
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false . . 2507
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true . . . 2612
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false . . . . 2506
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true . . . . . 2611
- \@mtc@spn@ok@false . . . . . 5496
- \@mtc@spn@ok@true . . . . . 5494
- \@mtc@sru@ok@false . . . . . 5572
- \@mtc@sru@ok@true . . . . . 5570
- \@mtc@ss@insection@false . . . . . 6058
- \@mtc@ss@insection@true . . . . . 6073
- \@mtc@toc@used@false . . . . . 6380, 6641
- \@mtc@toc@used@true . . . . . 6646, 6655
- \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false . . . . 2512
- \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true . . . . . 2627
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false . . . . 2497
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true . . . . 2602
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false . . . . . 2496
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true . . . . . 2601
- \@mtcfixglossary@false . . . . . 5883, 5885
- \@mtcfixglossary@true . . 5887, 5889, 5891
- \@mtcfixindex@false . . . . . 5926, 5928
- \@mtcfixindex@true . . . . . 5930, 5932, 5934
- \@mtcfixnomenclature@false . . 5969, 5971
- \@mtcfixnomenclature@true . . 5973, 5975,  
5977
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false . . . . . 2629
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true . . . . . 2650
- \@namedef (command) . . . . . 370
- \@namedef . . . . . 5024, 5033, 5042, 5079, 5314
- \@nameuse (command) . . . . . 370
- \@nameuse 5024, 5092, 5111, 5234, 5275, 5415,  
5417, 5492, 5511, 5549, 5586, 5649,  
5651, 5692, 5736
- \@nobreakfalse . . . 2972, 3120, 3192, 3260,  
3849, 3923, 3998, 4444, 4511, 4579
- \@part (command) . . . . . 54, 279, 334, 415
- \@part . . . . . 2716, 4010, 6582, 7335
- \@partlof@used@false . . . . . 2536
- \@partlof@used@true . . . . . 3858
- \@partlot@used@false . . . . . 2537
- \@partlot@used@true . . . . . 3933
- \@parttoc@used@false . . . . . 2535
- \@parttoc@used@true . . . . . 3792
- \@plus . . . . . 3286, 3298
- \@pnumwidth (command) . . . . . 46
- \@pnumwidth . . 3306, 5323, 5352, 5357, 5362,  
5367, 5372, 5377, 5382, 5387, 5392
- \@pnumwith (command) . . . . . 379
- \@resetfont . . . . . 3660, 3680
- \@schapter (command) . . . . 54, 281, 305, 415
- \@schapter . . . . . 3273, 6601, 7338
- \@secondoftwo . . . . . 2662
- \@sect (command) . . . . 54, 280, 356, 357, 416
- \@sect . . 2749, 4589, 4596, 4635, 6620, 7341
- \@sectlof@used@false . . . . . 2548
- \@sectlof@used@true . . . . . 4452
- \@sectlot@used@false . . . . . 2549
- \@sectlot@used@true . . . . . 4519
- \@secttoc@used@false . . . . . 2547
- \@secttoc@used@true . . . . . 4385
- \@spart (command) . . . . . 54, 279, 334, 415
- \@spart . . . . . 2716, 4010, 6582, 7335
- \@ssect (command) . . . . . 54, 280, 356, 416
- \@ssect . . . . . 2749, 6620, 7341
- \@starttoc (command) . . . . . 283, 290
- \@svsec . . . . . 4606
- \@svsechd . . . . . 4606
- \@tempdima . . . 2830, 3291, 3292, 3303, 3304
- \@tempskipa . . . . . 4606
- \@tocfile (command) . . . . . 296, 299, 302
- \@tocfile 3063, 3068, 3071, 3116, 3133, 3138,  
3141, 3188, 3201, 3206, 3209, 3256,  
3791, 3798, 3835, 3857, 3864, 3912,  
3931, 3939, 3987, 4384, 4391, 4432,  
4451, 4458, 4502, 4518, 4525, 4569
- \@tocrmarg (command) . . . . . 46, 47, 380
- \@tocrmarg . . 2826, 3287, 3299, 5332, 5353,  
5358, 5363, 5368, 5373, 5378, 5383,  
5388, 5393
- \@topnewpage . . . . . 3753, 3760, 3767, 7877
- \@undottedtocline (command) . . . . . 285
- \@undottedtocline . 2822, 3109, 3181, 3249,  
3835, 3912, 3987, 4432, 4502, 4569
- \@width . . . . . 3022
- \@xsect . . . . . 4606
- \\ . . 3049, 3107, 3121, 3177, 3193, 3245, 3261,  
3778
- \jobname.lan (file) . . . . . 439
- \jobname.mtc (file) . . . . . 283

\jobname.mtc0 (file) . . . . . 283  
 \~ . . . . . 10190, 10194, 10198  
 2c.tex (old example document) . . . . 687, 689

## Numbers

\2 . . . . . 8957  
 \8 . . . . . 8348, 8957

## A

\a@tok . . . . . 7959  
 aathira (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 abjad . . . . . 467  
 ABOLHASSANI, Hassan . . . . . 514, 698  
 above (placeins package) . . . . . 31–33, 183  
 ABRAHAMS, Paul W. . . . . 698, ↪[1, 2]  
 abstract (package) . . 54, 71, 89, 160, 206, 251,  
 413, 673, ↪[430]  
 abstract (environment) . . . . . 54, 71  
 abugida . . . . . 467  
 ABU EL-ATA, Nabil . . . . . 698  
 acadian (language option) . . . . . 471, 670  
 acadian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 471  
 acadien (language option) . . . . . 40, 471, 670  
 acadien.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 471  
 acadien.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 472  
 add.bib (old example document) . . . 688, 689  
 add.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 689  
 ADDABBO, Tommaso . . . . . 698  
 \addappheadtotoc (command) . . . . 65, 106  
 \addappheadtotoc . . . . . 766  
 \addcoffeeline (command) . . . . . 224, 401  
 \addcoffeeline . . . . . 6037, 7787  
 \addcontentsline (command) 35, 51, 52, 65,  
 201, 202  
 \addcontentsline . . . . . 24,  
 437, 482, 483, 716, 717, 839, 1028,  
 1091, 1741, 2306, 2726, 2753–2756,  
 2762–2765, 2981, 3268, 4012–4014,  
 4589, 4596, 4606, 5883, 5926, 5969,  
 7754, 7804, 7886, 7889, 7893, 7896  
 addsec.tex (old example document) 679, 680,  
 687, 689  
 \addst@rred (command) . . . . . 305  
 \addst@rred . . . . . 2981, 3003, 3278  
 \addstarred (command) . . . . . 667  
 \addstarredchapter (command) . . 35, 201,  
 249, 305  
 \addstarredchapter . . . . 1091, 3278, 7804

\addstarredpart (command) . . 35, 201, 305  
 \addstarredpart . . . . . 3278, 7804  
 \addstarredsection (command) . . 35, 201,  
 292, 305  
 \addstarredsection . 892, 3003, 3278, 7804  
 \addto (command) . . . . . 76  
 \addtocontents (command) . . . . . 64, 65  
 \addtocontents . . 1175, 3273, 4010, 4635,  
 5779, 5793, 5827, 6037  
 \addtocontentsline . . . . . 1027  
 \addtocounter (command) . . . . . 36, 51  
 \addtocounter 1017, 2713, 3016–3018, 3518,  
 3583, 3644, 3707–3709, 4206, 4266,  
 4326, 4344–4346, 4810, 4870, 4930  
 \addtolength 1190, 1732, 3055, 3056, 3785,  
 3786, 4378, 4379  
 addtotoc (abstract package) 54, 71, 160, 206  
 \addvspace . . . . . 2435  
 \adjustmtc (command) 36, 51, 65, 88, 99, 143,  
 206, 282, 293, 676  
 \adjustmtc . 475, 750, 768, 2317, 2761, 3007,  
 7558  
 \adjustptc (command) . 36, 88, 94, 206, 252,  
 279, 321, 676  
 \adjustptc . . . . . 25, 1428, 2726, 3695, 7558  
 \adjuststc (command) . 36, 65, 88, 105, 206,  
 281, 346, 676  
 \adjuststc . . . . . 709, 2752, 4338, 7558  
 \ae . . . . . 9136  
 afoot (package) . . . . . ↪[435]  
 africa-lf.pdf (graphic file) . . . . 243, 468  
 africa-lo.pdf (graphic file) . . . . 243, 468  
 afrikaan (language option) . . . . . 40, 473  
 afrikaan.mld (file) . . . . 242, 246, 472, 473  
 afrikaans (language option) . . . . . 40, 473  
 afrikaans.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 473  
 afrsud-l.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 472  
 afrsud-p.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 472  
 after (feature) . 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 189, 207,  
 216, 288, 289  
 \afterminilof (command) . . . . . 49, 87, 301  
 \afterminilof . . . . . 2933, 3193, 7701  
 \afterminilot (command) . . . . . 49, 87, 304  
 \afterminilot . . . . . 2933, 3261, 7701  
 \afterminitoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87, 298  
 \afterminitoc . . . . . 2933, 3121, 7701  
 afterpage (package) . . 29, 207, 680, ↪[111]  
 \afterpage (command) . . . . . 29  
 \afterpartlof (command) . 49, 87, 331, 668  
 \afterpartlof . . . . . 2926, 3925, 7686  
 \afterpartlot (command) . 49, 87, 333, 668  
 \afterpartlot . . . . . 2926, 4000, 7686  
 \afterparttoc (command) . 49, 87, 328, 668



- `\afterparttoc` . . . . . **2926, 3851, 7686**
- `\aftersectlof` (command) . . . . . *49, 87, 353*
- `\aftersectlof` . . . . . **2936, 4513, 7716**
- `\aftersectlot` (command) . . . . . *49, 87, 355*
- `\aftersectlot` . . . . . **2936, 4581, 7716**
- `\aftersecttoc` (command) . . . . . *49, 87, 350*
- `\aftersecttoc` . . . . . **2936, 4446, 7716**
- AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . . . . *483, 698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [61]
- AICARDI, Stéphane . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [3]
- AKOPIAN, Vartan . . . . . *208, 478, 698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [134]
- alba-eth.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 474*
- albania.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 474*
- albanian (language option) . . . . . *40, 473*
- albanian.dtx (file) . . . . . *473*
- albanian.mld (file) . . . . . *242, 246, 473*
- Aleph (package) . . . . . *221, 232*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [49, 186]
- ALEX, A.J. . . . . *565–569, 698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [4, 5]
- ALFORD, Mark . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [6]
- allemand.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 526*
- `\alloc@` . . . . . *2768*
- alnumsec (package) . *55, 77, 89, 185, 207, 253, 274, 428, 685*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [254]
- `\Alph` . . . . . *1301, 1302*
- alphanum (package) . *54, 76, 89, 170, 207, 408, 683*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [102]
- ambili (malayalam package) . . . . . *565*
- amem.tex (old example document) . . . . . *687*
- american (language option) . . . . . *40, 475*
- american.mld (file) . *242, 246, 406, 475, 668*
- amsart (class) . *54, 67, 89, 170, 207, 413, 671*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]
- amsart.cls (file) . . . . . *207*
- amsbook (class) *54, 67, 89, 160, 207, 413, 671*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]
- amsbook.cls (file) . . . . . *207*
- amsproc (class) *54, 67, 89, 171, 207, 413, 671*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]
- amsproc.cls (file) . . . . . *207*
- anahka (malayalam package) . . . . . *565*
- ANDRÉ, Jacques . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [8, 9, 308]
- ANDRIES, Patrick . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [10]
- ANDRIEUX, Jérôme . . . . . *698*
- ANGELI, Ralf . . . . . *698*
- anglo1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 508*
- Antomega (package) . . . . . *207, 471, 530, 532, 533, 556, 582, 587, 590, 600, 604*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [252]
- app-mem.tex (old example document) . . . . . *689*
- APPEL, Walter . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [11]
- appendices (environment) . *65, 106, 207, 226*
- appendix (package) . . *54, 65, 66, 89, 161, 207, 250, 409, 670, 685*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [431]
- `\appendix` (command) . . . . . *64*
- `\appendix23`, *487, 720, 950, 1151, 2212, 2992, 3438, 4136*
- `\appendix@mtcck` . . . *5141, 5169, 5178, 5185, 5192, 5202, 5210*
- `\appendixmtc` . . . . . **7587**
- apx.tex (old example document) . . . . . *689*
- arab (language option) . . . . . *40, 475, 477, 478*
- arab-1.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 475*
- arab.mld (file) . . . *208, 242, 246, 475, 478, 667*
- arab2 (language option) . . . . . *40, 477*
- arab2.mld (file) . . . . *208, 242, 246, 477, 684*
- Arabi (package) . . . . *40, 45, 208, 477, 516, 688*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [226]
- arabi (language option) . . . . . *40, 477*
- arabi.mld (file) . . . . *208, 242, 246, 477, 688*
- arabic (language option) . . . . . *40, 208, 478*
- `\arabic` *319–342, 344–379, 1738, 2115–2140, 3007, 3019, 3422, 3542, 3603, 3698, 3710, 4573, 4724, 4755, 4820, 4880, 5779, 5793, 5827, 6969, 6977, 6985, 7298–7300, 7304–7306, 7309–7311, 7316–7318, 7321–7323, 7326–7328*
- arabic.ldf (file) . . . . . *208*
- arabic.mld (file) . . . . . *208, 242, 246, 478*
- ArabTeX (package) . *40, 45, 208, 471, 475, 477, 540*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [256, 257]
- arabw.png (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 475*
- ARADIAN, Achod André . . . . . *698*
- armeniad.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 479*
- armenian (language option) . . . . . *40, 208, 478*
- armenian-1.png (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 478*
- armenian.mld (file) . . . . . *208, 242, 246, 478*
- armeniar.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 479*
- ArmTeX (package) . . . . *45, 208, 471, 478, 667*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [134]
- ÁRNASON, Einar . . . . . *545, 698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [62]
- ARNOLD, Tim . . . . . *311, 698*
- ARPONEN, Jouko . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [12]
- ARSENEAU, Donald . . . . . *31, 32, 53, 89, 232, 250, 271, 277, 282, 298, 301, 304, 664, 667, 670, 682, 691, 698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [13–19, 443]
- article (class) . . . . . *27, 38, 39, 61, 62, 72, 101, 106, 126, 146, 197, 198, 208, 212, 214, 220, 222, 226–228, 234, 236, 240, 280, 288, 322, 438*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [262]
- ashtamudi (malayalam package) . . . . . *565*
- ASLASKEN, Helmer . . . . . *698*,  $\hookrightarrow$ [20, 21]
- ASPINALL, David . . . . . *698*
- ÅSSEN, Ivar . . . . . *578, 698*
- aswathi (malayalam package) . . . . . *565*
- `\AtBeginDocument` (command) . . . . . *76, 171, 174, 208, 272–276, 291, 321,*

345, 368, 369, 380, 408, 414, 437, 438  
`\AtBeginDocument` . . . . . 2557, 2583, 2599, 2601, 2603, 2605, 2607, 2609, 2611, 2613, 2615, 2617, 2619, 2621, 2623, 2625–2628, 2973, 3689, 4331, 4970, 5322, 5793, 5827, 6041, 6379, 6582, 7331, 7353, 7737  
`\AtEndDocument` (command) . 208, 408, 417, 437, 453  
`\AtEndDocument` . . . 2563, 6160, 6379, 6664, 7330, 7331, 7738  
australian (language option) . . . . . 40, 478  
australian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 478  
austrian (language option) . . . . . 40, 479  
austrian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 479  
`\author` . . . . . 1740  
ayilyambold (malayalam package) . . . . 565

## B

babel (package)  
40, 45, 76, 122, 208, 216, 248, 257, 470, 473, 480, 481, 483, 488, 490–492, 497, 502, 503, 506–511, 517, 518, 520–522, 524, 525, 528–530, 541, 545–547, 554, 555, 558, 559, 563, 564, 574–578, 581, 583, 585–587, 591, 595–600, 603, 606, 609, 612, 614, 616, 665, 666, 674, 684, 697,  $\hookrightarrow$  [53, 60, 73]  
BACHMANN, Philipp . . . . . 698  
backref (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$  [117]  
BADENES, Gonal . . . . . 497, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [63]  
bahasa (language option) . . . . . 40, 480  
bahasa.dtx (file) . . . . . 480  
bahasa.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 480  
bahasai (language option) . . . . . 40, 480, 545  
bahasai.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 480, 545  
bahasam (language option) . 40, 481, 565, 570  
bahasam.dtx (file) . . . . . 481  
bahasam.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 481, 565, 570  
BALDRIDGE, Jason . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [22]  
BALGARENSKY, Marin . . . . . 698  
baltes.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 556, 558  
bangla (language option) . . 40, 209, 256, 482, 484, 669, 695  
bangla.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 482, 484  
bangla.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 482  
bangla1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 482  
bangla2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 482

BangTeX (package) . . 45, 209, 471, 482, 680,  $\hookrightarrow$  [335]  
BARROCA, Leonor . . . . . 89, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [355]  
`\baselineskip` . . . . . 1947  
`\baselinestretch` . . . . . 1292  
basque (language option) . . . . . 40, 483  
basque-de.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 484  
basque-df.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243  
basque.dtx (file) . . . . . 483  
basque.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 483  
basque1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 483  
basque2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 483  
BASSI, Giancarlo . . . . . 605, 698  
BASSO, Pierre . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [24]  
BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . . . . 574, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [25]  
BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves . . . . . 698  
BAUSUM, David . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [26, 27]  
BAYART, Benjamin . 50, 251, 370, 671, 672, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [28, 29]  
BAYET, Thierry . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [29]  
`\bcg` . . . . . 8088  
BECCARI, Claudio . . . . . 547, 549, 554, 555, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [30, 31, 64, 72]  
BEFFARA, Emmanuel . . . . . 62, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [33]  
before (feature) 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 189, 209, 216, 288, 289  
`\beforeminilof` (command) . . . 49, 87, 300  
`\beforeminilof` . . . . . 2920, 3146, 7701  
`\beforeminilot` (command) . . . 49, 87, 303  
`\beforeminilot` . . . . . 2920, 3214, 7701  
`\beforeminitoc` (command) . . . 49, 87, 297  
`\beforeminitoc` . . . . . 2920, 3076, 7701  
`\beforepartlof` (command) 49, 87, 329, 668  
`\beforepartlof` . . . . . 2913, 3870, 7686  
`\beforepartlot` (command) 49, 87, 331, 668  
`\beforepartlot` . . . . . 2913, 3945, 7686  
`\beforeparttoc` (command) 49, 87, 249, 288, 326, 452, 668  
`\beforeparttoc` . . . . . 2913, 3804, 7686  
`\beforesectlof` (command) . . . 49, 87, 351  
`\beforesectlof` . . . . . 2923, 4464, 7716  
`\beforesectlot` (command) . . . 49, 87, 353  
`\beforesectlot` . . . . . 2923, 4531, 7716  
`\beforesecttoc` (command) . . . 49, 87, 348  
`\beforesecttoc` . . . . . 2923, 4397, 7716  
`\begingroup` . 2659, 2968, 3109, 3181, 3249, 3835, 3912, 3987, 4432, 4502, 4569, 4614  
BELET, Benoît . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [308]  
belgique.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 507  
BELMOUHOU, Rachid . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$  [34]  
below (placeins package) . . . . . 31–33, 184  
bengali (language option) . 40, 209, 256, 482, 484, 695



- bengali-m.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 483  
 bengali.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 484  
 BÉRCES, József . . . . . 563, 564, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]  
 BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [35–38]  
 BERGER, Jens . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [39]  
 BERNDT, Tobias . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [40, 41]  
 BERRY, Karl . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2, 42, 43]  
 BEYENE, Berhanu . . . . . 512, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]  
 BEZOS, Javier . . . . . 89, 524, 534, 600, 604, 698,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [45–48]  
 \bfseries (command) . . . . . 231  
 \bfseries . . . . . 1222, 1224, 1248,  
 1251, 1272, 1277, 1281, 1284, 1517,  
 1519, 1555, 1557, 1737, 2159–2163,  
 2165–2168, 3031, 3036, 3720, 3729,  
 3733, 3743, 4351, 4359  
 Bg5.cap (file) . . . . . 498  
 Bg5.cpx (file) . . . . . 501  
 bhanu (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 bhavana (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 \bibitem . . . . . 1991, 2317  
 \bibliography (command) . . . . . 51, 143  
 \bibliography . . . . . 475, 709  
 \bibliographystyle . . . . . 475, 709  
 bibtopic (package) . . . . . 61, 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24]  
 bibtotoc (KOMA-Script package) . . . 51, 143  
 bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script package) 51  
 bibunit (environment) . . . . . 209  
 bibunits (package) . . . . . 61, 209, 228,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
 bicig (language option) 40, 225, 485, 486, 609  
 bicig.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 485, 609  
 bicig2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 485, 609  
 bicig2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 485, 609, 678  
 bicig3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 486, 612  
 bicig3.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 486, 612, 684  
 \bigskipamount (command) 30, 31, 82, 265,  
 443  
 \bigskipamount . . . . . 2437, 7383  
 BILOTTA, Giuseppe . . . . . 232, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [49]  
 BINISTI, Olivier . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [363]  
 Bíró, Árpád . . . . . 563, 564, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]  
 bithe (language option) . . . . . 40, 225, 486, 570  
 bithe.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 486, 570, 678  
 BITOUZÉ, Denis . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [50]  
 BLANKENSHIP, Dr. Barbara . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [214]  
 BLOCH, Laurent . . . . . 698  
 bo.tex (old example document) . . . . . 689  
 BOMAN, Patrick . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]  
 BONVILA, Onofre . . . . . 602, 698  
 book (class) . 27, 38, 39, 47, 48, 50, 61, 62, 72,  
 77, 111, 129, 197, 198, 209, 212, 214,  
 217, 220, 226, 227, 235, 236, 240,  
 280, 281, 288, 322, 688,  $\hookrightarrow$ [262]  
 book.cls (file) . . . . . 72  
 booktabs (package) . . . . . 23, 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [155]  
 BOSHNAKOV, Georgi N. . . . . 491, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [66]  
 bosnia.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 597  
 BOUGETTE, Patrice . . . . . 698  
 BOURBONNAIS, Daniel . . . . . 698  
 BOWDEN, Andrew . . . . . 695, 698  
 BOYKO, Victor . . . . . 593, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52]  
 BRAAMS, Johannes L.  
 45, 208, 248, 473, 507–509, 528,  
 529, 546, 577, 578, 616, 665, 698,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [53–101, 150, 260–263, 305–308]  
 BRAUN, Felix . . . . . 89, 207, 220, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [102]  
 brazil (language option) . . . . . 40, 488, 490  
 brazil.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 488, 490  
 brazil.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 488  
 brazilian (language option) . . . . . 40, 490  
 brazilian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 490, 675  
 brazilp.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 488  
 BREEN, Jim . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [103]  
 BREITENLOHNER, Peter . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [104]  
 bretagne.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 490  
 breton (language option) . . . . . 40, 490  
 breton.dtx (file) . . . . . 490  
 breton.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 490  
 british (language option) . . . . . 40, 491  
 british.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 491, 675  
 BUDOSÓ, Gyöngyi . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [105, 106]  
 bulgarian (language option) . . . . . 40, 491  
 bulgarian.dtx (file) . . . . . 491  
 bulgarian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 491, 668  
 bulgarianb (language option) . . . . . 40, 492  
 bulgarianb.mld (file) . 45, 242, 246, 492, 673  
 bulgariar.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 492  
 bulgarski.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 491  
 bulgmap.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 492  
 BURBANK, Mimi . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [347]  
 BURC, Mustafa . . . . . 609, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67]  
 BURGEL, Patrick . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]  
 buryat (language option) . . . . . 40, 493, 494  
 buryat.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 493  
 buryat2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 494  
 buryat2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 494, 684  
 buryatia-l.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 493  
 buryatia.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 493  
 BURYKIN, Alexey . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [36–38]

## C

- `\C` ..... **9384, 9414**
- `\c@lofdepth` . **2973, 3177, 3689**, 3909, 3910, **4331**, 4499, 4500
- `\c@lotdepth` (command) ..... **304**
- `\c@lotdepth` . **2973, 3245, 3689**, 3984, 3985, **4331**, 4566, 4567
- `\c@minilofdepth` (command) ..... **301**
- `\c@minilofdepth` ..... **3177**
- `\c@minilotdepth` (command) ..... **304**
- `\c@minilotdepth` ..... **3245**
- `\c@minitocdepth` (command) ..... **297**
- `\c@minitocdepth` ..... **3107, 7383**
- `\c@mtc` . **2981**, 7303, 7307, 7320, 7324, **7390**
- `\c@mti` (command) ..... **665**
- `\c@mti` . **3038, 3076, 3146, 3214, 3355, 3374, 3393**
- `\c@page` ..... 1716
- `\c@partlofdepth` ..... 3909
- `\c@partlotdepth` ..... 3984
- `\c@parttocdepth` ..... **3833, 7383**
- `\c@ptc` . **2981**, 7297, 7301, 7315, 7319, **7390**
- `\c@pti` . **3745, 3767, 3809, 3877, 3952, 4038, 4057, 4076**
- `\c@secnumdepth` . . . 1221, 4606, 4619, 4628, 7865, 7883
- `\c@sectlofdepth` ..... **4497**
- `\c@sectlotdepth` ..... **4564**
- `\c@secttocdepth` ..... **4430, 7383**
- `\c@stc` . **2981**, 7308, 7312, 7325, 7329, **7390**
- `\c@sti` . **4360, 4399, 4467, 4534, 4658, 4677, 4696**
- `\c@tocdepth` (command) ..... **297, 301**
- `\c@tocdepth` . 2824, **3107**, 3285, 3297, **3833, 4430, 4497, 4564**
- `calc` (package) ..... **23, 209**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [402]
- `canada-l.pdf` (graphic file) ..... **243, 496**
- `canada-pe.png` (graphic file) ..... **243, 496**
- `canada-pf.pdf` (graphic file) ..... **243**
- `canada.pdf` (graphic file) ..... **243, 495**
- `canada1.pdf` (graphic file) ..... **243, 495**
- `canadian` (language option) . . . **40, 494, 670**
- `canadian.mld` (file) . . . . . **242, 246, 494**
- `canadien` (language option) . . . **40, 494, 670**
- `canadien.mld` (file) . . . . . **242, 246, 494**
- `captcont` (package) . . **55, 77, 89, 185, 209, 253, 274, 428, 685**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [127]
- `caption` (package) . . **55, 73, 89, 172, 209, 210, 252, 274, 428, 677**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [383, 384]
- `\caption` (command) . . . . . **31, 218, 663**
- `\caption` . . . . . 56, 59, 62, 65, 73, 76, 79, 82, 90, 93, 96, 99, 115, 118, 121, 124, 130, 133, 138, 141, 147, 150, 153, 156, 413, 414, 430, 431, 468, 469, 473, 474, 495, 496, 500, 501, 509, 510, 514, 515, 580, 581, 595, 596, 630, 631, 635, 636, 649, 650, 666, 667, 702, 703, 707, 708, 726, 727, 731, 732, 740, 741, 745, 746, 877, 887, 918, 938, 960, 1071, 1077, 1088, 1124, 1145, 1164, 1586, 1590, 1595, 1599, 1606, 1611, 1615, 1633, 1637, 1642, 1646, 1653, 1658, 1662, 1683, 1689, 1698, 1704, 2186, 2230, 2409
- `caption2` (package) . . **55, 73, 89, 172, 209, 210, 252, 275, 429, 677**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [385, 386]
- `\captions` (command) . . . . . **76**
- `captions.dn` (file) . . . . . **542**
- CARCAGNO, Samuele . . . . . **698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [108]
- CARDI, Olivier . . . . . **698**
- CARELLA, David . . . . . **698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [109]
- CARLISLE, David P. **29, 217, 240, 310, 663, 698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [68, 110–117, 306–308, 310]
- CARMODY, Kevin . . . . **506, 542, 698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [337]
- CARRIBA, Manuel . . . . **524, 698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [69, 70]
- CASPAR, Régis . . . . . **698**
- `castillan` (language option) . . **40, 497, 600**
- `castillan.mld` (file) . . . . . **242, 246, 497**
- `castillian` (language option) . . . . . **40**
- `castillian.mld` (file) . . . **242, 246, 497, 675**
- `catalan` (language option) . . . . **40, 497, 600**
- `catalan-d.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . **243, 498**
- `catalan-p.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . **243, 498**
- `catalan.dtx` (file) . . . . . **497**
- `catalan.mld` (file) . . . . . **242, 246, 497**
- `CATALOG` (file) . . . . . **210, 242, 244, 246, 692**
- `\catcode` . . . . . 2660
- `caucasus.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . **243, 479**
- `ccaption` (package) . . **55, 73, 89, 173, 210, 252, 275, 429, 677**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [434]
- CELES, Waldemar . . . . . **698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [223]
- `\centering` . . 1682, 1688, 1697, 1703, 2174, 2223, 2376, 2387, 3771
- CervanTeX (package) . . . . . **45, 604**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [47]
- `\cftpagenumbersoff` **192, 1198**, 2843–2847, 2854–2857, 2866–2871, 2873, 2875, 2877, 2879, 2881, 2883
- `\cftpagenumberson` . 2837–2841, 2849–2852, 2859–2864, 2872, 2874, 2876, 2878, 2880, 2882
- `\cftsecfont` . . . . . **192, 1911, 1913, 1920**
- `\cftsecindent` . . . . . **1190**
- `\cftsecnumwidth` . . . . . **1190**
- `\cftsetrmarg` . . . . . **1732**

- `\cftsubsecfont` . . . . . 1911, 1913, 1920
- `\cftsubsecindent` . . . . . 1190, 1732
- `\cftsubsecnumwidth` . . . . . 1190
- `\cftsubsubsecindent` . . . . . 1190
- `\cftsubsubsecnumwidth` . . . . . 1190
- `ch0.tex` (old example document) . . . 687, 689
- `\ch@pt@c` . . . . . 7846, 7850, 7852, 7858, 7860
- CHABBERT<sup>†</sup>, Raymond . . . . . 698, ⇨[118]
- CHANG, Winston . . . . . 698, ⇨[119]
- `\chapbegin` (command) . . . . . 308
- `\chapbegin` . . . . . 3340
- `\chapter` (command) . . . . . 27–30, 38, 39, 47, 50, 52, 54, 60, 64, 66, 68, 69, 71, 79, 84, 133, 153, 158, 159, 164, 165, 167, 169, 171, 208, 209, 214, 235, 236, 280, 281, 283, 288–290, 292, 294, 295, 299, 302, 305, 307, 311–313, 322, 323, 325, 326, 328, 329, 331–333, 345, 402, 414, 415, 438, 662
- chapter (counter) . . . . . 269
- `\chapter` . . . . . 13, 18, 31, 36, 53, 67, 84, 112, 126, 144, 160, 170, 175, 180, 195, 197, 214, 221, 231, 240, 276, 277, 280, 281, 286, 287, 316, 407, 432, 447, 461, 488, 502, 761, 766, 922, 979, 1021, 1058, 1091, 1113, 1128, 1154, 1309, 1384, 1412, 1428, 1496, 1521, 1561, 1620, 1640, 1678, 1741, 1890, 1927, 1947, 2020, 2034, 2058, 2106, 2170, 2212, 2251, 2256, 2261, 2266, 2290, 2292, 2304, 2306, 2381, 2645, 2733, 2759, 2760, 2913, 2926, 2989, 3003, 3060, 3130, 3198, 3278, 3422, 4133, 5864, 5889, 5907, 5932, 5950, 5975, 6582, 6601, 7338, 7731
- `\chapter*` (command) . . . 35, 36, 73, 88, 94, 98, 234, 250, 281, 292, 662, 668, 669
- `\chapter*` 432, 1091, 1384, 1428, 2251, 2290, 2304, 2306
- `\chapter@mtcck` . . . 5140, 5168, 5177, 5184, 5191, 5201, 5209
- `\chapterbegin` 3273, 3518, 3583, 3644, 7564
- chapterbib (package) . . . 61, 211, 228, ⇨[18]
- `\chapterend` (command) . . . . . 65, 662, 663
- `\chapterend` . . . 3273, 3518, 3583, 3644, 7564
- `\chapterfont` . . . . . 1732
- `\chaptermark` . . . . . 7870
- `\chapternumberline` . . . . . 7887, 7890
- `\chardef` . . . . . 2768
- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme . . . . . 698, ⇨[8, 50, 248, 308, 406]
- CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal . . . . . 698, ⇨[120]
- checkfiles** (default option) . . . 31, 35, 62, 154, 174–176, 211, 232, 250, 401, 668
- CHEN, Pehong . . . . . 698, ⇨[121]
- CHEONG, Otfried . . . . . 698, ⇨[122]
- CHEVALIER, Céline . . . . . 698, ⇨[11]
- china-ae.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 500
- china-af.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243
- china-ch.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 499
- china-l.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 501
- china-w.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 498
- chine1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 500
- chine2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 500
- chinese1 (language option) . . . . . 40, 498
- chinese1.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 498, 671
- chinese1.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 498
- chinese2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 501
- chinese2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 501, 671
- chinese2.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 501
- chippi (malayalam package) . . . . . 565
- CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana . . . . . 598, 698, ⇨[71]
- chnpage (package) . . . 211, 256, 695, ⇨[427]
- CHO, Jin-Hwan . . . . . 698, ⇨[123]
- CHOU, Pai H. . . . . 698, ⇨[124]
- CHUVIN, Pierre . . . . . 698, ⇨[125]
- cite (package) . . . . . 692, ⇨[15]
- `\cite` (command) . . . . . 53, 81, 211, 232
- `\cite` . . . . . 417, 584, 653, 1981, 1982
- CJK (package) . . . . . 40, 45, 211, 212, 238, 239, 470, 498, 501, 535, 537–539, 550, 551, 608, ⇨[20, 21, 124, 153, 276, 277, 341]
- Classes
  - amsart 54, 67, 89, 170, 207, 413, 671, ⇨[7]
  - amsbook . . . 54, 67, 89, 160, 207, 413, 671, ⇨[7]
  - amsproc . . . 54, 67, 89, 171, 207, 413, 671, ⇨[7]
  - article . . . . . 27, 38, 39, 61, 62, 72, 101, 106, 126, 146, 197, 198, 208, 212, 214, 220, 222, 226–228, 234, 236, 240, 280, 288, 322, 438, ⇨[262]
  - book . . . 27, 38, 39, 47, 48, 50, 61, 62, 72, 77, 111, 129, 197, 198, 209, 212, 214, 217, 220, 226, 227, 235, 236, 240, 280, 281, 288, 322, 688, ⇨[262]
  - jura 54, 76, 89, 171, 207, 220, 408, 414, 683, ⇨[102]
  - letter . . . . . 27, 61, 198, 212, 220, 221, 236, ⇨[263]
  - ltnews . . . . . 27, 212, 222, ⇨[231]
  - ltxdoc . . . . . 27, 212, 222, ⇨[112]

- memoir . . . . . 54, 65–67, 73, 89, 106, 133,  
134, 156, 158, 159, 161, 195, 203,  
223, 226–228, 241, 250, 252, 256,  
267, 276, 285, 311, 412, 458, 670,  
675–677, 695,  $\hookrightarrow$ [439, 441, 442]
- proc . . . . . 27, 212, 234, 236,  $\hookrightarrow$ [261]
- report . . . . . 27, 38, 39, 47, 48, 50, 61, 62, 72,  
76, 77, 111, 127, 197, 198, 212, 214,  
217, 220, 226, 227, 235, 236, 240,  
280, 281, 288, 322, 688,  $\hookrightarrow$ [262]
- scrartcl . . . . . 43, 51, 54, 76, 89, 161, 220, 235,  
236,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318, 364]
- scrbook . . . . . 43, 51, 54,  
76, 89, 122, 128, 161, 220, 226, 227,  
236,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318, 364]
- scrlettr . . . . . 220,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318, 364]
- scrlettr2 . . . . . 220,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318, 364]
- scrreprt . . . . . 43, 51, 54, 76, 89, 142, 161, 220,  
227, 236,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318, 364]
- slides . . . . . 212,  $\hookrightarrow$ [300]
- \cleardoublepage (command) 48–50, 73, 87,  
129, 288, 289, 325
- \cleardoublepage . . 1700, 1714, **2917, 2930**
- \clearpage (command) . . 48, 50, 73, 288, 325
- CLEGG, Marian . . . . . 698
- close (feature) . . . . . 49,  
50, 82, 87, 138, 139, 189, 212, 216,  
227, 255, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304,  
327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 694
- \closeinilof (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closeinilof . . . . . 2943, **3181, 7701**
- \closeinilot (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closeinilot . . . . . 2944, **3249, 7701**
- \closeinitoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closeinitoc . . . . . 2942, **3109, 7701**
- \closeout2709, 2712, **2782**, 3412–3414, **3426**,  
**3438, 3471, 3518, 3546, 3583, 3607**,  
**3644**, 4095–4097, 4115, 4129, 4203,  
4227, 4263, 4287, 4323, 4715–4717,  
4736, **4755**, 4807, 4832, 4867, 4892,  
4927, 7288, 7291
- \closepartlof (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closepartlof . . . . . 2940, **3912, 7686**
- \closepartlot (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closepartlot . . . . . 2941, **3987, 7686**
- \closeparttoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closeparttoc . . . . . 2939, **3835, 7686**
- \closesectlof (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closesectlof . . . . . 2946, **4502, 7716**
- \closesectlot (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closesectlot . . . . . 2947, **4569, 7716**
- \closesecttoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \closesecttoc . . . . . 2945, **4432, 7716**
- \clubpenalty (command) . . . . . 664
- cmcyralt (package) . . . . . 593,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52, 207]
- cmcyralt.sty (file) . . . . . 593
- cmk (script) . . . . . 212, 217, 224, 243–246, 253, 692
- COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . . . . . 35, 55, 77, 89, 698,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [126–128]
- CODOGNO, Maurizio . . . . . 547, 549, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [72]
- \coffee (command) . . . . . 312
- \coffee . . . . . **3468, 4133, 4739**
- \coffefont (command) . . . . . 294
- \coffefont . . . . . **3037, 3284, 3680, 7631**
- \coffeeline (command) . . . . . 224, 401
- \coffeeline . . . . . **6037, 7787**
- color (package) . . . . . 116,  $\hookrightarrow$ [116]
- \colorbox . . . . . 1261
- \columnbreak . . . . . 1250, 1266
- \columnsep . . . . . 1257
- \columnseprule . . . . . 1257
- \columnwidth . . . . . **3007, 3022, 3076, 3126, 3146**,  
**3214, 3713, 3821, 3889, 3968, 4338**,  
**4414, 4481, 4548, 4997, 5006, 5015**
- Commands
- \@@dominitoc . . . . . 308
- \@Undottedtocline . . . . . 306
- \@Undottedtoclinep . . . . . 306, 307
- \@caption . . . . . 663
- \@chapter . . . . . 54, 281, 305, 415
- \@dominitoc . . . . . 308
- \@dominitoc@used@true . . . . . 308
- \@dosectlot . . . . . 673
- \@dotsep . . . . . 45–47, 380
- \@dottedtocline 72, 285, 307, 327, 330,  
333, 349, 352, 355
- \@fileswfalse . . . . . 670
- \@gobble . . . . . 671
- \@gobblethree . . . . . 403
- \@gobbletwo . . . . . 448
- \@ifnextchar . . . . . 296, 299, 302, 368, 447
- \@ifundefined . . . . . 281, 282, 292, 319, 367
- \@input . . . . . 314, 317, 319, 340, 342, 344
- \@inputcheck . . . . . 61, 284, 664
- \@minilof@used@true . . . . . 299
- \@minilot@used@true . . . . . 302
- \@minitoc@used@true . . . . . 296
- \@mtc@FEfalse . . . . . 278
- \@mtc@FEtrue . . . . . 278
- \@mtc@longext@false . . . . . 283
- \@mtc@longext@true . . . . . 283
- \@namedef . . . . . 370
- \@nameuse . . . . . 370
- \@part . . . . . 54, 279, 334, 415
- \@pnumwidth . . . . . 46
- \@pnumwith . . . . . 379
- \@schapter . . . . . 54, 281, 305, 415

- \@sect ..... 54, 280, 356, 357, 416
- \@spart ..... 54, 279, 334, 415
- \@ssect ..... 54, 280, 356, 416
- \@starttoc ..... 283, 290
- \@tocfile ..... 296, 299, 302
- \@tocrmarg ..... 46, 47, 380
- \@undottedtocline ..... 285
- \addappheadtotoc ..... 65, 106
- \addcoffeeline ..... 224, 401
- \addcontentsline .. 35, 51, 52, 65, 201, 202
- \addst@rred ..... 305
- \addstarred ..... 667
- \addstarredchapter . 35, 201, 249, 305
- \addstarredpart ..... 35, 201, 305
- \addstarredsection . 35, 201, 292, 305
- \addto ..... 76
- \addtocontents ..... 64, 65
- \addtocounter ..... 36, 51
- \adjustmtc . 36, 51, 65, 88, 99, 143, 206, 282, 293, 676
- \adjustptc 36, 88, 94, 206, 252, 279, 321, 676
- \adjuststc 36, 65, 88, 105, 206, 281, 346, 676
- \afterminilof ..... 49, 87, 301
- \afterminilot ..... 49, 87, 304
- \afterminitoc ..... 49, 87, 298
- \afterpage ..... 29
- \afterpartlof ..... 49, 87, 331, 668
- \afterpartlot ..... 49, 87, 333, 668
- \afterparttoc ..... 49, 87, 328, 668
- \aftersectlof ..... 49, 87, 353
- \aftersectlot ..... 49, 87, 355
- \aftersecttoc ..... 49, 87, 350
- \appendix ..... 64
- \AtBeginDocument 76, 171, 174, 208, 272–276, 291, 321, 345, 368, 369, 380, 408, 414, 437, 438
- \AtEndDocument 208, 408, 417, 437, 453
- \beforeminilof ..... 49, 87, 300
- \beforeminilot ..... 49, 87, 303
- \beforeminitoc ..... 49, 87, 297
- \beforepartlof ..... 49, 87, 329, 668
- \beforepartlot ..... 49, 87, 331, 668
- \beforeparttoc . 49, 87, 249, 288, 326, 452, 668
- \beforesectlof ..... 49, 87, 351
- \beforesectlot ..... 49, 87, 353
- \beforesecttoc ..... 49, 87, 348
- \bfseries ..... 231
- \bibliography ..... 51, 143
- \bigskipamount ... 30, 31, 82, 265, 443
- \c@lotdepth ..... 304
- \c@minilofdepth ..... 301
- \c@minilotdepth ..... 304
- \c@minitocdepth ..... 297
- \c@mti ..... 665
- \c@tocdepth ..... 297, 301
- \caption ..... 31, 218, 663
- \captions ..... 76
- \chapbegin ..... 308
- \chapter ..... 27–30, 38, 39, 47, 50, 52, 54, 60, 64, 66, 68, 69, 71, 79, 84, 133, 153, 158, 159, 164, 165, 167, 169, 171, 208, 209, 214, 235, 236, 280, 281, 283, 288–290, 292, 294, 295, 299, 302, 305, 307, 311–313, 322, 323, 325, 326, 328, 329, 331–333, 345, 402, 414, 415, 438, 662
- \chapter\* 35, 36, 73, 88, 94, 98, 234, 250, 281, 292, 662, 668, 669
- \chapterend ..... 65, 662, 663
- \cite ..... 53, 81, 211, 232
- \cleardoublepage .. 48–50, 73, 87, 129, 288, 289, 325
- \clearpage ..... 48, 50, 73, 288, 325
- \closeminilof ..... 49, 87
- \closeminilot ..... 49, 87
- \closeminitoc ..... 49, 87
- \closepartlof ..... 49, 87
- \closepartlot ..... 49, 87
- \closeparttoc ..... 49, 87
- \closesectlof ..... 49, 87
- \closesectlot ..... 49, 87
- \closesecttoc ..... 49, 87
- \clubpenalty ..... 664
- \coffee ..... 312
- \coffeefont ..... 294
- \coffeeline ..... 224, 401
- \contentsline .. 63, 279, 281, 282, 308
- \count@ ..... 443
- \csname ..... 320, 371, 374
- \decrementmtc ... 36, 88, 206, 293, 675
- \decrementptc 36, 88, 206, 252, 321, 675
- \decrementstc ... 36, 88, 206, 346, 675
- \def ..... 75
- \df@mtlf ..... 294
- \df@mtlt ..... 294
- \df@mtitc ..... 294
- \dimen@ ..... 443
- \do@mtlf ..... 294
- \do@mtlt ..... 294
- \do@mtitc ..... 294
- \documentclass 30, 32, 34, 79, 122, 205, 212, 216, 234

- \dominilof . 29, 30, 42, 84, 88, 159, 165,  
178, 182, 234, 299, 307, 308, 334
- \dominilot . 29, 30, 42, 84, 88, 160, 165,  
178, 183, 234, 302, 307, 308, 334
- \dominitoc 29, 30, 42, 51, 56, 62, 79, 84,  
88, 144, 157, 159, 166, 178, 182, 234,  
240, 248, 251, 295, 296, 307, 308,  
334, 357, 438, 663, 665, 671, 672
- \dominitoc@ . . . . . 308
- \dopartlof . . 30, 34, 41, 42, 83, 88, 159,  
166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336
- \dopartlot . . 30, 34, 41, 42, 83, 88, 160,  
166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336
- \doparttoc . . . . . 30, 34, 41, 42, 54, 64,  
83, 88, 157, 166, 179, 182, 234, 283,  
334, 335, 416, 418, 420
- \dosectlof . 30, 32, 42, 85, 88, 159, 166,  
179, 183, 234, 267, 357, 358
- \dosectlot . . . . . 30, 32, 42, 54,  
85, 88, 160, 167, 179, 183, 234, 267,  
283, 358, 359
- \dosecttoc . 30, 32, 42, 85, 88, 157, 167,  
179, 183, 234, 346, 357, 358
- \edef . . . . . 256, 320, 383, 695
- \else . . . . . 266
- \empty . . . 48–50, 87, 288, 448, 452, 664
- \endcsname . . . . . 320, 371, 374
- \endmtc@verse . . . . . 295
- \endmtchideinmainlof . . . 70, 88, 227
- \endmtchideinmainlot 70, 88, 127, 227
- \endptc@verse . . . . . 324
- \enlargethispage . . . . . 59
- \expandafter . . . . . 371
- \fake@starttoc . . . . . 290
- \fakelistoffigures . 30, 32, 34, 82–85,  
179–181, 290
- \fakelistoftables 30, 32, 34, 54, 82–85,  
180, 181, 290
- \faketableofcontents . . . . . 30, 32,  
34, 54, 56, 82–85, 94, 180, 181, 290,  
416, 422, 663
- \fi . . . . . 241, 266, 439
- \figure . . . . . 315
- \firstchapteris 29, 51, 55, 90, 164, 176,  
206, 211, 216, 293, 433, 665, 666
- \firstpartis . . 29, 51, 55, 90, 164, 176,  
206, 216, 321, 433
- \firstsectionis 29, 51, 55, 90, 165, 176,  
206, 216, 346, 434
- \FloatBarrier . . . . . 31, 217, 234, 675
- \footnotesize . . . . . 231
- \frontmatter . . . . . 79
- \gdef . . . . . 277
- \gobbleopt@ . . . . . 368, 447
- \hline . . . . . 327, 329, 332, 349, 351, 354
- \hrule . . . . . 293
- \Huge . . . . . 231
- \huge . . . . . 231
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ . . . . . 393
- \if@mtc@hints@ . . . . . 266
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ . . . . . 266
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ . . . . . 266
- \if@mtc@insellang@ . . . . . 399, 400
- \if@mtc@longext@ . . . . . 256, 695
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . . . . . 285
- \if@mtc@misslang . . . . . 403
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ . . . . . 396
- \if@partlof@used@ . . . . . 328
- \if@partlot@used@ . . . . . 331
- \if@parttoc@used@ . . . . . 325
- \if@sectlof@used@ . . . . . 350
- \if@sectlot@used@ . . . . . 353
- \if@secttoc@used@ . . . . . 348
- \ifcase . . . . . 217, 241, 439
- \iffTR . . . . . 674
- \ifmtcsecondpart . . . . . 684
- \ifnum . . . . . 356
- \ifthenelse . . . . . 219
- \ifundottedmtc . . . . . 306, 680
- \incrementmtc . . . 36, 88, 206, 293, 675
- \incrementptc 36, 88, 206, 252, 321, 675
- \incrementstc . . . 36, 88, 206, 346, 675
- \itemindent . . . . . 295, 324
- \itemsep . . . . . 295, 324
- \itshape . . . . . 231
- \jobname . . 217, 220, 256, 278, 283, 284,  
296, 299, 302, 307, 308, 315, 318,  
424, 436, 439, 687, 695
- \kern . . . . . 293, 664
- \kernafterminilof . . . . . 79, 86
- \kernafterminilot . . . . . 79, 86
- \kernafterminitoc . . . . . 79, 86, 693
- \kernafterpartlof . . . . . 79, 86
- \kernafterpartlot . . . . . 79, 86
- \kernafterparttoc . . . . . 79, 86, 254
- \kernaftersectlof . . . . . 79, 86
- \kernaftersectlot . . . . . 79, 86
- \kernaftersecttoc . . . . . 79, 86
- \ktightmtcfalse . . . . . 43, 82
- \ktightmtctrue . . . . . 43, 82
- \l@chapter . . . . . 72, 282, 305, 327
- \l@coffee . . . . . 401
- \l@paragraph . . . . . 72, 369
- \l@part . . . . . 72, 279
- \l@section . . . . . 72, 281, 369
- \l@subparagraph . . . . . 72
- \l@subsection . . . . . 72, 334



- \l@subsubsection ..... 72
- \l@xchapter ..... 282, 305
- \l@xpart ..... 279, 334
- \l@xsect ..... 281
- \l@xsection ..... 688
- \LANG ..... 217, 439
- \LARGE ..... 231
- \Large ..... 231
- \large ..... 231
- \let ..... 74, 75, 667
- \linebreak ..... 59
- \linewidth ..... 46
- \list ..... 295, 324
- \listoffigures . 23, 30, 32, 34, 51, 67,  
82–85, 179–181, 283
- \listoftables 23, 30, 32, 34, 51, 54, 67,  
82–85, 143, 180, 181, 283
- \listparindent ..... 295, 324
- \mainmatter ..... 79
- \makeatletter ..... 72, 222
- \makeatother ..... 72, 222
- \MakeUpperCase ..... 685
- \markboth ..... 73, 325, 673, 685
- \markright ..... 73
- \mdseries ..... 231
- \MessageBreak ..... 680
- \minilof ..... 23,  
30, 35, 38, 42, 84, 88, 178, 179, 219,  
295, 298, 299, 302, 350, 664
- \minilof@ ..... 299, 306
- \minilot . 23, 30, 35, 38, 42, 84, 88, 178,  
180, 219, 295, 302, 353, 664
- \minilot@ ..... 302
- \minitoc ..... 23,  
29, 30, 34, 35, 38, 39, 42, 56, 60, 68,  
79, 84, 88, 114, 178, 180, 219, 248,  
251, 295, 296, 298, 308, 325, 347,  
663–665, 671–673
- \minitoc@ ..... 294, 296, 306
- \MLF@contentsline ..... 315
- \MLF@next ..... 316
- \mlf@setform ..... 301, 381
- \MLF@test ..... 316
- \mlffont ..... 37, 38, 84, 300
- \mlfoffset ..... 84
- \mlfpagenumbers ..... 47, 86
- \mlfrule ..... 47, 86, 672
- \mlfSfont ..... 37, 38, 43, 84, 677
- \mlftitle ..... 37, 38, 84, 470
- \MLT@contentsline ..... 318
- \MLT@next ..... 318
- \mlt@setform ..... 304, 381
- \MLT@test ..... 319
- \mltfont ..... 37, 38, 84, 303
- \mltoffset ..... 84
- \mltpagenumbers ..... 47, 86
- \mltrule ..... 47, 86, 672
- \mltSfont ..... 37, 38, 84, 677
- \mltttitle ..... 37, 38, 84, 470
- \mtc@admisslanguage ..... 403
- \mtc@BBR ..... 282
- \mtc@CkFile ..... 278, 296, 299, 303
- \MTC@contentsline ..... 311, 314, 320
- \mtc@featparam@ ..... 389
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev ..... 390
- \mtc@featparam@third ..... 389, 390
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev ..... 383
- \mtc@glofix@level ..... 395
- \mtc@hints@begindoc ..... 408, 417
- \mtc@hints@chapter ..... 414
- \mtc@hints@enddoc ..... 408, 417, 434
- \mtc@hints@part ..... 414
- \mtc@hints@section ..... 414
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . 271, 298,  
301, 304, 670
- \mtc@ifmtarg ..... 277, 279, 281, 282
- \mtc@ixfix@level ..... 397
- \mtc@level@abbrev ..... 373
- \mtc@listmisslanguages ..... 403
- \mtc@maf ..... 436, 437
- \mtc@maf@long ..... 436
- \mtc@maf@short ..... 436
- \mtc@mta@abbrev ..... 373
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev ..... 391
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev ..... 392
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev ..... 377
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev ..... 378
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev ..... 382
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev ..... 389, 390
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev ..... 384
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev ..... 387
- \MTC@next ..... 313
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level ..... 398
- \mtc@onebacksect ..... 280
- \mtc@pns@abbrev ..... 385
- \mtc@rule ..... 293, 664
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev ..... 387
- \mtc@savetocdepth ..... 393
- \mtc@setform ..... 298, 380
- \mtc@setlangopt ..... 406
- \mtc@setlangoptm ..... 406
- \mtc@setlangopto ..... 406
- \mtc@string ..... 282
- \mtc@strutbox ..... 669
- \MTC@test ..... 314

- `\mtc@toks` . 255, 256, 282, 312, 315, 318, 320, 338, 341, 343, 360, 363, 365, 694, 695
- `\mtc@verse` . . . . . 295
- `\mtc@While` . . . . . 278
- `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` . . . . . 320, 360
- `\MTC@WriteContentsline` 315, 318, 320, 338, 341, 343, 360, 363, 365
- `\mtc@zrule` . . . . . 282, 669
- `\mtcaddchapter` . . . . . 36, 51, 52, 54, 67, 71, 73, 88, 94, 98, 143, 144, 201, 207, 226, 250, 282, 668
- `\mtcaddpart` 36, 73, 88, 94, 201, 207, 279, 668
- `\mtcaddsection` 36, 54, 71, 73, 88, 102, 202, 207, 226, 253, 281, 668, 681
- `\mtcfixglossary` . . . . . 52, 88, 164, 165, 186, 194, 207, 251, 253, 395, 396, 455, 673, 681, 682
- `\mtcfixindex` . . . . . 52, 88, 99, 105, 164, 165, 186, 195, 207, 251, 253, 397, 456, 672, 681, 682
- `\mtcfixnomenclature` . 52, 88, 137, 169, 199, 207, 255, 398, 399, 456, 694
- `\mtcfont` . . . . . 30, 37–39, 84, 297
- `\mtcgapafterheads` 77, 83, 227, 253, 686
- `\mtcgapbeforeheads` . . 77, 83, 227, 253, 686
- `\mtchideinmainlof` . . . . . 70, 88, 227
- `\mtchideinmainlot` 70, 88, 126, 127, 227
- `\mtcindent` . 30, 46, 84, 92, 265, 293, 295
- `\mtcloadmlo` . . . 196, 252, 400, 450, 676
- `\mtcoffset` . . . 30, 45, 84, 255, 295, 694
- `\mtcoffwarn@true` . . . . . 675
- `\mtcpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86, 665
- `\mtcPfont` . . . . . 37, 39, 73, 84, 664
- `\mtcprepare` . . 30, 42, 88, 162, 219, 234, 253, 367, 369, 448, 683
- `\mtcrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 665
- `\mtcselectlanguage` . . . . . 37, 39, 41, 71, 76, 82, 152, 154, 155, 187, 188, 196, 250, 252, 399, 406, 450, 470, 471, 668, 676
- `\mtcsetdepth` . 30, 32, 34, 44, 67, 82–85, 155, 189, 252, 390, 391, 674
- `\mtcsetfeature` . . . . . 49, 50, 82, 87, 155, 189, 193, 207, 209, 212, 216, 233, 251, 255, 290, 388, 389, 673, 694
- `\mtcsetfont` 30, 32, 34, 43, 66, 67, 73, 75, 79, 82, 152, 155, 190, 194, 251, 294, 372, 376, 671, 678, 681
- `\mtcsetformat` . . . . . 46, 82, 95, 156, 190, 191, 194, 251, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 379, 380, 382, 671, 672
- `\mtcsetoffset` . . . . . 30, 32, 34, 44, 45, 82–85, 139, 152, 163, 200, 227, 255, 392, 694
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` 48, 79, 82, 86, 191, 192, 251, 253, 383, 386, 671, 680
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` . . . . . 384
- `\mtcsetrules` . 48, 82, 86, 192, 251, 253, 386, 671, 680
- `\mtcsetrules@` . . . . . 386
- `\mtcsetttitle` . . . . . 37, 39, 41, 44, 67, 71, 82, 152, 156, 193, 251, 378, 390, 392, 671, 672
- `\mtcsetttitlefont` . . 43, 66, 67, 82, 156, 193, 251, 294, 376–378, 671
- `\mtcSfont` . . . 30, 37, 39, 66, 73, 84, 664
- `\mtcskip` . . 30, 31, 82, 250, 265, 669, 673
- `\mtcskipamount` 30, 31, 82, 250, 265, 443, 669
- `\mtcSPfont` . . . . . 37, 39, 73, 84, 85, 664
- `\mtcSSfont` . . 37, 39, 43, 73, 84, 448, 664
- `\mtcSSSfont` . . . 37, 39, 67, 73, 84, 664
- `\mtctitle` . . . . . 37, 38, 44, 67, 84, 470
- `\mtifont` . . 37, 38, 84, 297, 300, 303, 664
- `\name` . . . . . 688
- `\newcommand` . . . . . 45
- `\newfloat` . . . . . 217
- `\newif` . . . . . 266
- `\newread` . . . . . 282, 664
- `\newtheorem` . . . . . 217
- `\newwrite` . . . . . 247, 283
- `\nofiles` . . . . . 30, 170, 256, 368, 695
- `\noindent` . . . . . 664
- `\nomlfpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\nomlfrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\nomltpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\nomltrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\nomtcpagenumbers` . . . 47, 86, 665, 670
- `\nomtcrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 665, 668
- `\nopagebreak` . . . . . 664
- `\noplfpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\noplfrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\nopltpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\nopltrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\noptcpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\noptcrule` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\normalsize` . . . . . 38, 231
- `\noslfpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\noslfrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\nosltpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86
- `\nosltrule` . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\nostcpagenumbers` . . . . . 47, 86



- `\nostcrule` ..... 47, 86
- `\numwidth` ..... 46
- `\openminilof` ..... 49, 87
- `\openminilot` ..... 49, 87
- `\openminitoc` ..... 49, 87
- `\openpartlof` ..... 49, 87
- `\openpartlot` ..... 49, 87
- `\openparttoc` ..... 49, 87
- `\opensectlof` ..... 49, 87
- `\opensectlot` ..... 49, 87
- `\opensecttoc` ..... 49, 87
- `\or` ..... 241, 439
- `\outer` ..... 282
- `\PackageError` ..... 228, 251
- `\PackageInfo` ..... 228, 251, 671, 675
- `\PackageWarning`... 228, 251, 671, 675
- `\PackageWarningNoLine` ..... 228
- `\pagestyle` ..... 50
- `\par` ..... 679
- `\paragraph` ..... 214, 236
- `\parsep` ..... 43, 295, 324
- `\parskip` ..... 43, 265, 295, 324
- `\part` ..... 28, 34, 52, 54, 61,  
64, 83, 157, 164, 167, 169, 171, 186,  
199, 208, 209, 214, 235, 236, 279,  
283, 305, 307, 321, 325, 328, 331,  
334, 337, 341, 343, 414, 415, 437
- `\part*` ... 73, 88, 94, 279, 292, 334, 668
- `\partbegin` ..... 64, 334
- `\partend` ..... 65
- `\partlof` . 34, 38, 41, 42, 83, 88, 178, 180,  
219, 323, 325, 328, 665
- `\partlof@` ..... 328
- `\partlot` . 34, 38, 41, 42, 83, 88, 178, 180,  
219, 323, 325, 331, 665
- `\partlot@` ..... 331
- `\partoc` ..... 325
- `\partopsep` ..... 324
- `\parttoc` 23, 34, 38, 39, 41, 42, 54, 64, 83,  
88, 94, 179, 181, 219, 323, 325, 416,  
418, 420, 422, 665, 669
- `\parttoc@` ..... 325
- `\PLF@contentsline` ..... 341
- `\PLF@next` ..... 341
- `\plf@setform` ..... 330, 381
- `\PLF@test` ..... 342
- `\plffont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\plffoffset` ..... 83
- `\plfpagenumbers` ..... 47, 86
- `\plfrule` ..... 47, 86, 672
- `\plfSfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83, 677
- `\plftitle` ..... 38, 39, 83, 470
- `\PLT@contentsline` ..... 343
- `\PLT@next` ..... 344
- `\plt@setform` ..... 333, 381
- `\PLT@test` ..... 344
- `\pltfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\pltoffset` ..... 83
- `\pltpagenumbers` ..... 47, 86
- `\plrulerule` ..... 47, 86, 672
- `\pltSfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83, 677
- `\plttitle` ..... 38, 39, 83, 470
- `\printglossary` ..... 51
- `\printindex` ..... 52
- `\printnomenclature` ..... 52
- `\protect` ..... 59, 63, 666
- `\ProvidesFile` ..... 692
- `\ProvidesPackage` ..... 152
- `\PTC@contentsline` ..... 337
- `\PTC@next` ..... 339
- `\ptc@rule` ..... 322
- `\ptc@setform` ..... 327, 380
- `\PTC@test` ..... 340
- `\ptc@verse` ..... 324
- `\ptcCfont` ... 34, 37, 39, 74, 75, 83, 322
- `\ptcfont` ..... 34, 37–39, 43, 74, 75, 83
- `\ptcindent` ..... 34, 83, 324
- `\ptcoffset` ..... 34, 83, 324
- `\ptcpagenumbers` ..... 47, 86
- `\ptcPfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\ptcrule` ..... 47, 86
- `\ptcSfont` ..... 34, 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\ptcSPfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\ptcSSfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\ptcSSSfont` ..... 38, 39, 74, 75, 83
- `\ptctitle` ..... 38, 39, 83, 470, 600
- `\ptifont` ..... 38, 39, 43, 67, 83, 671
- `\quad` ..... 36
- `\raggedright` ..... 664
- `\relax` ... 305, 334, 439, 448, 452, 664
- `\renewcommand` 30, 32, 34, 37–39, 41, 45,  
66, 71, 75, 77, 78, 265, 266, 448, 452
- `\renewcommand*` ..... 72
- `\reset@font` ..... 61, 284, 664
- `\rmfamily` ..... 231
- `\samepage` ..... 664
- `\scriptsize` ..... 231
- `\scshape` ..... 231
- `\sectbegin` ..... 357
- `\sectend` ..... 65, 357
- `\sectfont` ..... 123
- `\section` ..... 27, 28, 31–33,  
52, 54, 68, 85, 153, 158, 164, 165,  
167, 169, 174, 208, 209, 214, 234–  
236, 280, 283, 305, 307, 345, 347,  
350, 353, 356, 360, 363, 365, 402,  
414, 416, 438, 662

- \section\* . 35, 36, 73, 88, 250, 280, 292, 668, 669
- \sectlof . 32, 38, 42, 54, 85, 88, 179, 181, 219, 347, 350, 417, 665, 666
- \sectlof@ . . . . . 350
- \sectlot . 32, 38, 42, 54, 85, 88, 179, 181, 219, 347, 353, 417, 665
- \sectlot@ . . . . . 353
- \secttoc . 31, 32, 38, 39, 42, 85, 88, 179, 181, 219, 346, 347, 665
- \secttoc@ . . . . . 347, 348
- \setcounter 30, 32, 34, 60, 64, 83–85, 393
- \setlength . . . . . 30, 32, 34, 77
- \sffamily . . . . . 231
- \SHORTTEXT . . . . . 664
- \shorttoc . . . . . 22
- \SLF@contentsline . . . . . 363
- \SLF@next . . . . . 363
- \slf@setform . . . . . 352, 381
- \SLF@test . . . . . 364
- \slffont . . . . . 38, 41, 85
- \slfoffset . . . . . 85
- \slfpagenumbers . . . . . 47, 86
- \slfrule . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- \slfSfont . . . . . 38, 41, 85, 677
- \slftitle . . . . . 38, 41, 85, 470
- \slshape . . . . . 231
- \SLT@contentsline . . . . . 365
- \SLT@next . . . . . 365
- \slt@setform . . . . . 355, 382
- \SLT@test . . . . . 366
- \sltfont . . . . . 38, 41, 85
- \sltname . . . . . 667
- \sltoffset . . . . . 85
- \sltpagenumbers . . . . . 47, 86
- \sltrule . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- \sltSfont . . . . . 38, 41, 85, 677
- \sltttitle . . . . . 38, 41, 67, 85, 470
- \small . . . . . 231
- \space . . . . . 36
- \special . . . . . 219
- \starchapter . . . . . 312
- \starsection . . . . . 356
- \STC@contentsline . . . . . 360
- \STC@next . . . . . 361
- \stc@rule . . . . . 346
- \stc@setform . . . . . 349, 381
- \STC@test . . . . . 362
- \stcfont . . . . . 32, 38, 39, 41, 85
- \stcindent . . . . . 32, 85, 346
- \stcoffset . . . . . 32, 85, 347
- \stcpagenumbers . . . . . 47, 86
- \stcPfont . . . . . 39, 41, 85
- \stcrule . . . . . 47, 86
- \stcSPfont . . . . . 39, 41
- \stcSSfont . . . . . 32, 39, 41, 85
- \stcSSSfont . . . . . 39, 41, 85
- \stctitle . . . . . 38, 41, 85, 470
- \stepcounter . . . . . 36, 279–281
- \stifont . . . . . 38, 41, 85
- \subparagraph . . . . . 214, 236
- \subsection . . . . . 214, 236, 356, 662
- \subsubsection . . . . . 214, 236
- \table . . . . . 318
- \tableofcontents 23, 30, 32, 34, 51, 54, 60, 64, 66, 79, 82–85, 180, 181, 250, 283, 290, 416, 422, 669, 673
- \tableofcontents\* . . . . . 133
- \textbf . . . . . 231
- \textit . . . . . 231
- \textmd . . . . . 231
- \textnormal . . . . . 231
- \textrm . . . . . 231
- \textsc . . . . . 231
- \textsf . . . . . 231
- \textsl . . . . . 231
- \texttt . . . . . 231
- \textup . . . . . 231
- \textwidth . . . . . 688
- \tf@mtc . . . . . 264, 283, 436
- \The@mtc . . . . . 293, 668
- \themtc . . . . . 293
- \Thepart . . . . . 321
- \theptc . . . . . 321
- \thispageminilofstyle . . 49, 87, 300
- \thispageminilotstyle . . 49, 87, 303
- \thispageminitocstyle . . 49, 87, 296
- \thispagepartlofstyle . . 49, 87, 668
- \thispagepartlotstyle . . 49, 87, 668
- \thispageparttocstyle 49, 87, 288, 668
- \thispagesectlofstyle . . . . . 49, 87
- \thispagesectlotstyle . . . . . 49, 87
- \thispagesecttocstyle . . . . . 49, 87
- \thispagestyle . . . . . 49, 50, 87, 288
- \tightmtcfalse . . . . . 43, 82
- \tightmtctrue . . . . . 43, 82
- \tiny . . . . . 231
- \topsep . . . . . 295, 324
- \ttfamily . . . . . 231
- \undottedmtcfalse . . . . . 82
- \undottedmtctrue . . . . . 82
- \upshape . . . . . 231
- \usepackage 29–32, 34, 79, 202, 206, 233, 234, 442, 470
- \vspace\* . . . . . 664
- \widowpenalty . . . . . 664
- \xchapter . . . . . 315, 318

`\xdef` . . . . . 393  
`comment` (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [149]  
`\contentsline` (command) 63, 279, 281, 282, 308  
`\contentsline` 2726, 2752, 2761, 3340, 3518, 3583, 3644, 3660, 4196, 4256, 4316, 4800, 4860, 4920  
Cook, David B. . . . . 698  
`\copy` . . . . . 2773, 2777  
CORFF, Oliver 571, 617–619, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [130–133]  
CORNET, Emmanuel . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [11]  
`\count@` (command) . . . . . 443  
`\count@` . . . . . 7383  
COUNTCHAM, Prakash . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
Counters  
  chapter . . . . . 269  
  mtc 88, 278, 281, 282, 290, 293, 311, 312, 315, 318, 373, 669  
  part . . . . . 268, 269  
  ptc 88, 278, 279, 290, 321, 334, 337, 341, 343  
  section . . . . . 269  
  stc 88, 278, 280, 281, 290, 346, 360, 363, 365, 669  
`cri.tex` (old example document) . . . 687, 689  
croatian (language option) . . . . . 40, 502  
croatian.dtx (file) . . . . . 502  
croatian.mld (file) . 242, 246, 257, 502, 696  
croatie1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 502  
croatie2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 502  
`\csname` (command) . . . . . 320, 371, 374  
`\cyr` . . . 8185, 8210, 9466, 9825, 9954, 10143  
`\cz` . . . . . 9748  
`cz1.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 503  
`cz3.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 503  
czech (language option) . . . . . 40, 503  
czech.dtx (file) . . . . . 503  
czech.mld (file) . . . . 242, 246, 256, 503, 695  
czechd.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 504

## D

DACHIAN, Sergueï . . . . 208, 478, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [134]  
DAERR, Adrian . . . . . 698  
DALALYAN, Arnak . . . . 208, 478, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [134]  
DALY, Patrick W. . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [135–138, 250]  
danemark.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 504  
DANIELSSON, Holger . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [341–343]  
danish (language option) . . . . . 40, 506  
danish.dtx (file) . . . . . 506  
danish.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 257, 504, 696  
danishd.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 505

danishg.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 505  
DAVISON, Alice . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [139]  
dblacnt (package) . . . . . 213, 682,  $\hookrightarrow$ [304]  
`\DeclareOption` . . . 6045, 6049, 6051, 6053, 6054, 6058, 6076, 6084, 6130, 6186, 6377  
`\decrementmtc` (command) . 36, 88, 206, 293, 675  
`\decrementmtc` . . . . . 2265, 3007, 7558  
`\decrementptc` (command) . 36, 88, 206, 252, 321, 675  
`\decrementptc` . . . . . 3695, 7558  
`\decrementstc` (command) . 36, 88, 206, 346, 675  
`\decrementstc` . . . . . 4338, 7558  
`\def` (command) . . . . . 75  
DE FIGUEIRO, Luiz Henrique . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [223]  
DEININGER, Andreas . . . . . 256, 368, 695, 698  
DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . . . . 488, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [91]  
DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien . . . . . 698  
DEPARDIEU, Éric . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
Depth counters  
  lofdepth . . . . . 35, 221, 291, 321, 345  
  lotdepth . . . . 35, 222, 291, 304, 321, 345  
  minilofdepth . . . 35, 214, 223, 291, 301  
  minilotdepth . . . . 35, 214, 223, 304  
  minitocdepth . 23, 29, 30, 35, 44, 67, 72, 84, 214, 223, 293, 297, 662  
  partlofdepth . . . 35, 214, 233, 321, 330  
  partlotdepth . . . 35, 214, 233, 321, 333  
  parttocdepth . . 23, 34, 35, 83, 214, 234, 321, 327  
  secnumdepth . . . . . 213, 214  
  sectlofdepth . . . 35, 214, 236, 345, 352  
  sectlotdepth . 35, 67, 214, 236, 345, 355  
  secttocdepth . 32, 35, 85, 214, 236, 346, 349  
  tocdepth 35, 64, 72, 83–85, 214, 238, 293, 297, 301, 393, 662, 674  
DE RYDT, Ben . . . . . 698  
DESGRAUPES, Bernard . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [140–142]  
DESPRAIRIES, Cécile . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [34, 173, 378, 424]  
DESREUX, Sébastien . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [11]  
DETIG, Christine . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [143]  
Devanāgarī (package) 45, 214, 218, 471, 506, 542,  $\hookrightarrow$ [337]  
devanagari (language option) . . 40, 218, 506, 542  
devanagari.mld (file) 242, 246, 254, 506, 542, 688  
devanagari.png (graphic file) . . . . 243, 506  
devanagari.sty (file) . . . . . 214, 506  
`\df@mtic` . . . . . 3076, 3146, 3214  
`\df@mtilf` (command) . . . . . 294

- `\df@mtilf` . . . . . **3038, 3043**, 3153, **3374**
- `\df@mtilt` (command) . . . . . **294**
- `\df@mtilt` . . . . . **3038, 3043**, 3221, **3393**
- `\df@mtitc` (command) . . . . . **294**
- `\df@mtitc` . . . . . **3038, 3043**, 3083, **3355**
- `\df@pti` . . . . . **3809, 3877, 3952**
- `\df@ptilf` . . . . . **3775, 3883, 4057**
- `\df@ptilt` . . . . . **3775, 3958, 4076**
- `\df@ptitc` . . . . . **3775, 3815, 4038**
- `\df@sti` . . . . . **4399, 4467, 4534**
- `\df@stilf` . . . . . **4365, 4473, 4677**
- `\df@stilt` . . . . . **4365, 4540, 4696**
- `\df@stitc` . . . . . **4365, 4406, 4658**
- DILLER, Antoni R. . . . . **698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [144]
- `\dimen@` (command) . . . . . **443**
- `\dimen@` . . . . . **7383**
- `\divide` . . . . . 2366
- `\dn` . . . . . **8348, 8957**
- `\do@mtilf` (command) . . . . . **294**
- `\do@mtilf` **3038, 3043**, 3148–3153, 3155, 3165, 3169
- `\do@mtilt` (command) . . . . . **294**
- `\do@mtilt` **3038, 3043**, 3216–3221, 3223, 3233, 3237
- `\do@mtitc` (command) . . . . . **294**
- `\do@mtitc` . . . . . **3038, 3043, 3076, 3146, 3214**
- `\do@ptilf` . . . . . **3775, 3877, 3889**
- `\do@ptilt` . . . . . **3775, 3952, 3968**
- `\do@ptitc` . . . . . **3775, 3809, 3821**
- `\do@stilf` . . . . . **4365, 4467, 4481**
- `\do@stilt` . . . . . **4365, 4534, 4548**
- `\do@stitc` . . . . . **4365, 4399, 4414**
- doc (package) . . . . . **23**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [303]
- docmfp (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [436]
- docstrip (package) . . . . . **23**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [267, 305]
- document (environment) . **54, 79, 217, 222, 234**
- `\documentclass` (command) . **30, 32, 34, 79, 122, 205, 212, 216, 234**
- `\documentclass` . . . . . 2, 45, 104, 161, 184, 202, 256, 291, 385, 386, 552, 751, 797, 981, 982, 1183, 1378, 1429, 1487, 1507, 1535, 1571, 1621, 1668, 1709, 1879, 1907, 1938, 2011, 2042, 2093, 2144, 2198, 2245, 2280, 2325, 2358
- `\dominilof` (command) . . . . . **29, 30, 42, 84, 88, 159, 165, 178, 182, 234, 299, 307, 308, 334**
- `\dominilof` . . . . . 51, 110, **403, 1008, 1674, 2169, 2378, 3130, 3340, 3345, 3378, 4936, 4980, 6727, 6811, 7357, 7574**
- `\dominilof@` . . . . . 3349, 3374
- `\dominilot` (command) . . . . . **29, 30, 42, 84, 88, 160, 165, 178, 183, 234, 302, 307, 308, 334**
- `\dominilot` . . . . . 52, 111, **403, 1008, 1620, 3198, 3340, 3350, 3397, 4936, 4980, 6736, 6820, 7357, 7574**
- `\dominilot@` . . . . . 3354, 3393
- `\dominitoc` (command) **29, 30, 42, 51, 56, 62, 79, 84, 88, 144, 157, 159, 166, 178, 182, 234, 240, 248, 251, 295, 296, 307, 308, 334, 357, 438, 663, 665, 671, 672**
- `\dominitoc` 10, 191, 213, 314, **403, 750, 1008, 1308, 1377, 1428, 1496, 1506, 1541, 1674, 1741, 1890, 1927, 1937, 2018, 2058, 2106, 2206, 2244, 2283, 3060, 3340, 3359, 4936, 4980, 6718, 6802, 7357, 7574**
- `\dominitoc@` (command) . . . . . **308**
- `\dominitoc@` . . . . . **3340, 3344, 3355**
- `\dopartlof` (command) **30, 34, 41, 42, 83, 88, 159, 166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336**
- `\dopartlof` **563, 819, 1008, 4023, 4035, 4061, 4936, 4977, 6698, 6782, 7354, 7568**
- `\dopartlof@` . . . . . 4036, **4057**
- `\dopartlot` (command) **30, 34, 41, 42, 83, 88, 160, 166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336**
- `\dopartlot` **563, 824, 1008, 4023, 4035, 4080, 4936, 4977, 6707, 6791, 7354, 7568**
- `\dopartlot@` . . . . . 4037, **4076**
- `\doparttoc` (command) **30, 34, 41, 42, 54, 64, 83, 88, 157, 166, 179, 182, 234, 283, 334, 335, 416, 418, 420**
- `\doparttoc` . . . . . 10, 167, **272, 563, 819, 1008, 1428, 1506, 1541, 4023, 4035, 4042, 4936, 4977, 6689, 6773, 7354, 7568**
- `\doparttoc@` . . . . . 4035, **4038**
- Dorj, Dorjpalam . . . . . **571, 617–619, 698**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [133]
- `\dosectlof` (command) **30, 32, 42, 85, 88, 159, 166, 179, 183, 234, 267, 357, 358**
- `\dosectlof` **563, 819, 2480, 4647, 4655, 4681, 4936, 4983, 6673, 6756, 6840, 7360, 7580**
- `\dosectlof@` . . . . . 4656, **4677**
- `\dosectlot` (command) **30, 32, 42, 54, 85, 88, 160, 167, 179, 183, 234, 267, 283, 358, 359**
- `\dosectlot` **563, 819, 1570, 2480, 4651, 4655, 4700, 4936, 4983, 6675, 6765, 6849, 7360, 7580**
- `\dosectlot@` . . . . . 4657, **4696**
- `\dosecttoc` (command) **30, 32, 42, 85, 88, 157, 167, 179, 183, 234, 346, 357, 358**

`\dosecttoc` **563, 819, 2337, 4643, 4655**, 4662,  
**4936, 4983**, 6747, 6831, **7360, 7580**  
`\dosecttoc@` . . . . . 4655, **4658**  
`\dotfil` . . . . . 396, 398, 557, 559  
`\dotfill` . . . . . 397, 558  
**dotted** (default option) . **48, 81, 249, 402, 667**  
DRIKIS, Ivars . . . . . 557, 698  
DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. . 27,  $\hookrightarrow$ [**29, 145–147**]  
DRYER, Matthew S. . . . . 479, 698  
DUCHIER, Denys . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [**305**]  
DUDGING, Lyndon . . . . . 65, 698  
DUNG, Ta Quang . . . . . 698  
`duplex2v.pro` (file) . . . . . 692  
`dutch` (language option) . . . . . 40, 507  
`dutch.dtx` (file) . . . . . 473, 507  
`dutch.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 257, 507, 696  
`dutchw.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 507  
`dvips` (tool) . . . . . 219, 239  
`dvipsone` (tool) . . . . . 219  
`dviwindo` (tool) . . . . . 219

## E

E0001 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 186, 395  
E0002 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 186, 397  
E0003 (message) . . . . . 151, 186, 394  
E0004 (message) . . . . . 151, 187, 395  
E0005 (message) . . . . . 151, 187, 393  
E0006 (message) . . . . . 151, 187, 399  
E0007 (message) . . . . . 151, 188, 400  
E0008 (message) . . . . . 151, 188, 391  
E0009 (message) . . . . . 151, 188, 391  
E0010 (message) . . . . . 151, 189, 391  
E0011 (message) . . . . . 151, 189, 389  
E0012 (message) . . . . . 151, 189, 389  
E0013 (message) . . . . . 151, 190, 373  
E0014 (message) . . . . . 151, 190, 373  
E0015 (message) . . . . . 151, 190  
E0016 (message) . . . . . 151, 191, 383  
E0017 (message) . . . . . 151, 191, 384  
E0018 (message) . . . . . 151, 191, 385  
E0019 (message) . . . . . 151, 192, 387  
E0020 (message) . . . . . 151, 192, 387  
E0021 (message) . . . . . 151, 193, 378, 382  
E0022 (message) . . . . . 151, 193, 377  
E0023 (message) . . . . . 151, 193, 390  
E0024 (message) . . . . . 151, 194, 376  
E0025 (message) . . . . . 151, 194, 383  
E0026 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 194, 396  
E0027 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 195, 397  
E0028 (message) . . . . . 66, 151, 195, 223, 277  
E0029 (message) . . . . . 151, 195, 394

E0030 (message) . . . . . 151, 195, 395  
E0031 (message) . . . . . 151, 196, 393  
E0032 (message) . . . . . 151, 196, 400  
E0033 (message) . . . . . 151, 196, 378  
E0034 (message) . . . . . 151, 197, 377  
E0035 (message) . . . . . 151, 197, 402  
E0036 (message) . 151, 197, 241, 435, 471, 508,  
689, 691  
E0037 (message) . . . . . 151, 198, 438  
E0038 (message) . . . . 151, 198, 241, 404, 471  
E0039 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 199, 398  
E0040 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 199, 399  
E0041 (message) . . . . . 151, 199, 393  
E0042 (message) . . . . . 151, 200, 392  
E0043 (message) . . . . . 151, 200, 393  
`\e@mti` . 3038, 3076, 3146, 3214, 3355, 3374,  
3393  
`\e@pti` . 3745, 3751, 3809, 3877, 3952, 4038,  
4057, 4076  
`\e@sti` . 4360, 4399, 4467, 4534, 4658, 4677,  
4696  
`ecosse1.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 596  
`ecosse2.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 596  
`ecosse3.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 596  
`\edef` (command) . . . . . 256, 320, 383, 695  
`\edef` . . 3416, 3524, 3538, 3589, 3599, 3650,  
4099, 4201, 4211, 4261, 4271, 4321,  
4610, 4719, 4805, 4815, 4865, 4875,  
4925, 5109, 5127, 5222, 5251, 5262,  
5292, 5303, 5415, 5432, 5441, 5492,  
5511, 5568, 5586, 5649, 5667, 5668,  
5680, 5709, 5753, 6083  
ÈEHAJA, Marko . . . . . 598, 698  
EGAN, Patrick . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [151]  
EIJKHOUT, Victor . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [73, 148–150, 260]  
ELMEGAARD, Brian . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [151]  
ELS, Danie . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [155]  
`\else` (command) . . . . . 266  
`\em` . . . . . 1996, 2003  
`emk` (script) . . . . . 214, 219, 235, 243–246, 677  
`\emph` . . . . . 1786, 1788, 1854, 1865  
`\empty` (command) . 48–50, 87, 288, 448, 452,  
664  
`\empty` . 1911, 1920, 2914–2916, 2920–2925,  
2927–2929, 2933–2947, 2949–2951,  
2955–2960, **5793, 5827**, 6079, **7598**,  
7634, 7637, 7638, 7686–7730, 7761,  
7772, 7783, 7792–7800  
`en-mtc.bst` (file) 214, 243, 244, 246, 254, 689  
`\endcsname` (command) . . . . . 320, 371, 374  
`\endgroup` 2664, 2972, 3120, 3192, 3260, 3849,  
3923, 3998, 4444, 4511, 4579, 4617  
`\endlist` . . . . . 3059, 3789, 4382  
`\endmtc@verse` (command) . . . . . 295

- `\endmtc@verse` . . . . . 299, 3059
- `\endmtchideinmainlof` (command) . 70, 88, 227
- `\endmtchideinmainlof` . . . . . 103, 134
- `\endmtchideinmainlot` (command) . 70, 88, 127, 227
- `\endmtchideinmainlot` 103, 142, 1605, 1652
- `\endptc@verse` (command) . . . . . 324
- `\endptc@verse` . . . . . 3778
- `\endstc@verse` . . . . . 4382
- english** (default language option)
  - 40, 81, 434, 475, 478, 491, 494, 508, 575, 612, 615, 670
- `english.dtx` (file) . . . . . 508, 509
- `english.mld` (file) . . . . . 37, 39–41, 154, 197, 241, 242, 246, 404, 406, 471, 475, 478, 491, 494, 508, 575, 612, 615, 667, 668, 689, 691
- `english1` (language option) . . . . . 40, 509
- `english1.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 509, 684
- `english2` (language option) . . . . . 40, 509
- `english2.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 509, 684
- `\enlargethispage` (command) . . . . . 59
- Environments
  - `abstract` . . . . . 54, 71
  - `appendices` . . . . . 65, 106, 207, 226
  - `bibunit` . . . . . 209
  - `document` . . . . . 54, 79, 217, 222, 234
  - `figure` . . . . . 209, 237, 239
  - `filecontents` . . . . . 45, 216, 400, 471
  - `margincap` . . . . . 222
  - `minipage` . . . . . 135, 662
  - `mtc@verse` 94, 95, 295, 297, 298, 300, 301, 304, 380, 381
  - `mtchideinmainlof` . . . . . 68, 69, 88, 187, 195, 207, 227, 251, 394, 455, 672, 675, 685, 695
  - `mtchideinmainlot` . . . . . 68, 69, 88, 187, 196, 207, 227, 251, 394, 395, 455, 672, 675, 685, 695
  - `mtchideinmaintoc` 68, 88, 115, 187, 196, 207, 226, 251, 393, 455, 672, 685
  - `multicols` . . . . . 92, 95, 117, 138, 139, 228
  - `pageUn` . . . . . 117
  - `ptc@verse` . 324, 327, 330, 333, 380, 381, 695
  - `quote` . . . . . 59, 679
  - `samepage` . . 297, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 326, 328, 329, 331–333, 348, 350, 351, 353–355, 664
  - `sidewaysfigure` . . . . . 235
  - `sidewaystable` . . . . . 235
  - `stc@verse` . 347, 349, 352, 355, 381, 382, 673
  - `subappendices` . . . . . 207
  - `tabbing` . . . . . 59
  - `table` . . . . . 209, 237, 239
  - `tabular` . 59, 297, 300, 303, 327, 329, 332, 349, 351, 354
  - `thebibliography` . . . . . 136, 146
  - `verse` . . . . . 36, 295, 324, 347, 662
  - `wrapfigure` . . . . . 135, 227, 240
  - `wraptable` . . . . . 240
- ESFAHBOD, Behdad . . . . . 514, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [152]
- `espa-l.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 602
- `espa-o.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 603
- `esperant` (language option) . . . . . 40, 510
- `esperant.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 510
- `esperanto` (language option) . . . . . 40, 510
- `esperanto.dtx` (file) . . . . . 510
- `esperanto.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 510
- ESSER, Thomas . . . . . 698
- `estonia-a.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 511
- `estonia-b.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 511
- `estonian` (language option) . . . . . 40, 511, 668
- `estonian.dtx` (file) . . . . . 511
- `estonian.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 511
- $\varepsilon$ -TeX (package) . . . . . 213, 216, 232, 266,  $\hookrightarrow$ [104, 297]
- `eth2.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 512
- `\eth@doaltchar` . . . . . 8476
- `ethiolang.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 513
- `ethiop` (package) . . . . . 45, 216, 471, 512,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]
- `ethiopia` (language option) . . . . . 40, 512
- `ethiopia-p.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 513
- `ethiopia.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 512
- `ethiopia.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 513
- `ethiopian` (language option) . . . . . 40, 216, 512
- `ethiopian.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246
- `ethiopian2` (language option) . . . . . 40, 512
- `ethiopian2.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 512, 681
- `ethopian.mld` (file) . . . . . 512
- ETIENNE, Gilhooly . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [173]
- `euro-lan.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 468
- `euro-lan1.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 469
- `euro-lan2.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 470
- `euskara.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 484
- EVERITT, Karl F. . . . . 668, 698
- Examples
  - `mtc-2c.pdf` . . . . . 246
  - `mtc-2c.tex` . . 92, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
  - `mtc-2nd.pdf` . . . . . 246
  - `mtc-2nd.tex` 93, 226, 242, 244, 246, 271, 522, 690
  - `mtc-3co.pdf` . . . . . 246
  - `mtc-3co.tex` 94, 226, 228, 242, 244, 246, 255, 692



- mtc-add.bib . . . 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-add.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-add.tex . . 53, 97, 98, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-ads.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-ads.tex 53, 101, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-amm.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-amm.tex 65, 106, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-apx.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-apx.tex . 68, 91, 106, 226, 242, 244, 246, 686, 689
- mtc-art.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-art.tex 106, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-bk.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-bk.tex . 111, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-bo.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-bo.tex 116, 226, 242, 244, 246, 687, 689
- mtc-ch0.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-ch0.tex 120, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-cri.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-cri.tex 122, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-fko.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-fko.tex 122, 226, 242, 244, 246, 255, 693
- mtc-fo1.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-fo1.tex 123, 124, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-fo2.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-fo2.tex 124, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-gap.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-gap.tex . 77, 91, 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hil.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-hil.tex . 69, 91, 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hi2.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-hi2.tex . 70, 91, 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hia.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-hia.tex 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hir.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-hir.tex 127, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hop.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-hop.tex 128, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-liv.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-liv.tex 129, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-mem.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-mem.tex 133, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-mm1.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-mm1.tex 133, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-mu.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-mu.tex . 135, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-nom.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-nom.tex 53, 136, 227, 242, 244, 246, 255, 694
- mtc-ocf.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-ocf.tex 138, 212, 227, 233, 242, 244, 246, 255, 694
- mtc-ofs.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-ofs.tex 139, 227, 242, 244, 246, 255, 694
- mtc-sbf.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-sbf.tex 141, 227, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-scr.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-scr.tex 142, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-syn.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-syn.tex 144, 227, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tbi.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-tbi.tex 145, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tlc.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-tlc.tex 146, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tlo.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-tlo.tex . 80, 91, 147, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tsf.pdf . . . . . 246
- mtc-tsf.tex 147, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- \ExecuteOptions . . . . . 7248
- \expandafter (command) . . . . . 371
- \expandafter . . . . . 2689, 2969, 2984, 2989, 2992, 2997, 3420, 3424, 3438, 3453, 3456, 3459, 3462, 3465, 3468, 3471, 3485, 3488, 3491, 3494, 3497, 3501, 3508, 3511, 3516, 3532, 3534, 3541, 3544, 3558, 3562, 3567, 3574, 3578, 3581, 3596, 3597, 3602, 3605, 3619, 3623, 3628, 3635, 3639, 3642, 3657, 3658, 3665, 3670, 4102, 4104, 4118, 4133, 4136, 4139, 4142, 4145, 4148, 4151, 4154, 4157, 4160, 4163, 4166, 4169, 4172, 4175, 4179, 4186, 4190, 4193, 4208, 4209, 4214, 4216, 4230, 4234, 4239, 4246, 4250, 4253, 4268, 4269, 4274, 4276, 4290, 4294, 4299, 4306, 4310, 4313, 4328, 4329, 4597, 4722, 4725, 4740, 4743, 4746, 4749, 4752, 4770, 4773, 4776, 4779, 4783, 4790, 4794, 4797, 4812, 4813, 4818, 4821, 4836, 4839, 4843, 4850, 4854, 4857, 4872, 4873, 4878, 4881, 4896, 4899, 4903, 4910, 4914, 4917, 4932, 4933, 5056, 5057, 5077, 5078, 5085, 5094, 5112, 5152–5156, 5158–5160, 5162–5164, 5166–5173, 5175–5180, 5182–5187, 5189–5197,

- 5199–5205, 5207–5213, 5222, 5236,  
5262, 5277, 5303, 5401, 5417, 5441,  
5455, 5476, 5495, 5515, 5531, 5552,  
5571, 5590, 5623–5626, 5628, 5634,  
5651, 5680, 5694, 5713, 5726, 5738,  
5757, 5770, 5886, 5888, 5890, 5929,  
5931, 5933, 5972, 5974, 5976, 8660,  
8665, 8670, 9435, 9472, 9482, 9492,  
9829, 10003, 10048
- `\ext@subfigure` . . . . . **2143**
- Extensions
- `.F` . . . . . 55, 56, 205, 299
  - `.G` . . . . . 55, 56, 205, 335
  - `.H` . . . . . 55, 56, 205, 357
  - `.M` . . . . . 55, 56, 205, 296
  - `.P` . . . . . 55, 56, 205, 335
  - `.S` . . . . . 55, 56, 206, 357
  - `.T` . . . . . 55, 56, 206, 302
  - `.U` . . . . . 55, 56, 206, 335
  - `.V` . . . . . 55, 56, 206, 358
  - `.afm` . . . . . 239
  - `.aux` . . . . . 56, 59, 61, 64, 205, 208, 271
  - `.bst` 214, 218, 239, 243, 244, 246, 254, 689
  - `.cls` . . . . . 205
  - `.dtx` 45, 205, 211, 245, 251, 252, 471, 596,  
673
  - `.eps` . . . . . 695
  - `.ins` . . . . . 205, 211, 245, 251
  - `.ist` 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 673, 674, 676
  - `.lan` . . . . . 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 439
  - `.lof` . . . . . 29, 56, 59, 62–64, 69,  
152, 179–181, 205, 208, 279, 281–  
283, 307, 308, 316, 335, 342, 357,  
364, 455, 668
  - `.log` . . . . . 32, 35, 53,  
56, 58, 81, 144, 151, 162, 169, 170,  
202, 205, 218, 264, 266, 283, 408,  
433, 434, 471, 671, 691
  - `.lot` . . . . . 29, 56, 59, 62, 64, 69,  
152, 180, 181, 205, 208, 279, 281–  
283, 308, 318, 319, 335, 344, 358,  
366, 455, 666, 668
  - `.maf` 53, 81, 154, 205, 208, 221, 252, 403,  
436, 676
  - `.map` . . . . . 239
  - `.mld` . . . . . 22, 37, 40, 45,  
71, 76, 82, 154, 163, 169, 187, 196,  
198, 205, 207, 211, 241, 246, 248–  
250, 252, 254, 264, 399, 400, 403–  
406, 460, 465, 470, 471, 522, 565,  
666, 668, 670, 675, 676, 680, 684,  
691, 692
  - `.mlf` . . . . . 29, 55, 56, 205, 299, 308
  - `.mlo` . . . . . 22,  
40, 45, 71, 155, 163, 169, 188, 205,  
211, 212, 216, 241, 246, 252, 254,  
264, 400, 403, 405, 406, 460, 471,  
568, 676, 683, 691
  - `.mlt` . . . . . 29, 55, 56, 205, 302, 308
  - `.mtc` . . . . . 29, 53, 55, 56, 59, 60, 62, 205, 278,  
283, 284, 296, 308, 436, 662
  - `.mtc0` . . . . . 256, 283, 436, 687, 695
  - `.mtc1` . . . . . 256, 695
  - `.pdf` . . . . . 244
  - `.pfb` . . . . . 239
  - `.plf` . . . . . 34, 55, 56, 206, 335
  - `.plt` . . . . . 34, 55, 56, 206, 335
  - `.pre` . . . . . 224, 243, 244, 246, 677, 683
  - `.ptc` . . . . . 34, 55, 56, 206, 335
  - `.slf` . . . . . 31, 55, 56, 206, 357
  - `.slt` . . . . . 31, 55, 56, 206, 358
  - `.stc` . . . . . 31, 55, 56, 206, 357
  - `.sty` . . . . . 206, 233, 241, 244, 245, 248, 666
  - `.tar` . . . . . 245
  - `.tex` . . . . . 152, 206
  - `.tfm` . . . . . 239
  - `.tgz` . . . . . 245
  - `.toc` . . . . . 29, 51, 56, 59, 60, 62–64, 69, 152,  
180, 181, 206, 208, 248, 279, 281–  
283, 290, 292, 307, 308, 313, 335,  
339, 357, 362, 455, 663, 666, 668
  - `.vf` . . . . . 239
  - `.zip` . . . . . 245
  - `ps.gz` . . . . . 623
- ## F
- `\F` . . . . . **9384, 9414**
  - `F0001` (message) . . . . . 151, 200, 456
  - `F0002` (message) . . . . . 151, 201, 456
  - `F0003` (message) . . . . . 151, 201, 456
  - `F0004` (message) . . . . . 151, 201, 454
  - `F0005` (message) . . . . . 151, 201, 454
  - `F0006` (message) . . . . . 151, 202, 454
  - `F0007` (message) . . . . . 151, 202, 453
  - `F0008` (message) . . . . . 151, 202, 443
  - `F0009` (message) . . . . . 151, 202, 445
  - `\f@rhdr` . . . . . 7854, 7860, 7862, 7870, 7898
  - `\f@rtoc` 7853, 7858, 7887, 7890, 7893, 7896,  
7898
  - FABIAN, Mike . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [153]
  - FAIRBAIRNS, Robin . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [154]
  - `\fake@starttoc` (command) . . . . . 290
  - `\fake@starttoc` . . . . . **2961**



- `\fakelistoffigures` (command) . 30, 32, 34, 82–85, 179–181, 290
- `\fakelistoffigures` 825, 1015, 1675, **2961**, **6653**, 6875, 6910, 6945, **7554**
- `\fakelistoftables` (command) . 30, 32, 34, 54, 82–85, 180, 181, 290
- `\fakelistoftables` . 825, **1014**, **2961**, **6653**, 6886, 6921, 6956, **7554**
- `\faketableofcontents` (command) . 30, 32, 34, 54, 56, 82–85, 94, 180, 181, 290, 416, 422, 663
- `\faketableofcontents` 167, **272**, **825**, 1014, 1308, **2106**, **2337**, **2961**, **6653**, 6864, 6899, 6934, **7554**
- fancybox (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [412]
- farsi (language option) . . . . . 208, 216
- farsi-logo.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 514
- farsi.ldf (file) . . . . . 208, 516
- farsi.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 515
- farsi.sty (file) . . . . . 216, 514
- farsi1 (language option) . . . . . 40, 514
- farsi1.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 676
- farsi1.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 676
- farsi2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 514, 515
- farsi2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 676
- farsi2.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 515, 676
- farsi3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 516
- farsi3.mld (file) . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 516, 688
- FarsiTeX (package) 45, 216, 471, 514,  $\hookrightarrow$ [152]
- FAULHAMMER, Christian . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [351]
- `\fbox` . . . . . 2175, 2180, 2183, 2185, 2375
- `\fboxrule` . . . . . 2373
- `\fboxsep` . . . . . 2373
- FEAR, Simon . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [155]
- Features
  - after . 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 189, 207, 216, 288, 289
  - before 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 189, 209, 216, 288, 289
  - close . . . . . 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 139, 189, 212, 216, 227, 255, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 694
  - open . . . . . 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 139, 189, 216, 227, 232, 255, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 694
  - pagestyle . 49, 50, 82, 87, 216, 233, 288, 290, 388
- FENN, Jürgen . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [156, 404, 405]
- FERGUSON, Michael J. . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [157]
- feroe.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 504
- FESSLER, Jeff . . . . . 698
- `\fi` (command) . . . . . 241, 266, 439
- `\figbox` 2374, 2389, 2392, 2395, 2398, 2401, 2404, 2407
- `\figure` (command) . . . . . 315
- figure (environment) . . . . . 209, 237, 239
- `\figure` . . . . . **3558**, **4230**, **4835**
- `\figure@mtcck` 5147, 5153, 5163, 5170, 5186, 5194, 5212
- filecontents (environment) 45, 216, 400, 471
- Files
  - /tmp/'whoami'.imk . . . . . 244, 245
  - /tmp/'whoami'.rmk . . . . . 245, 246
  - /tmp/'whoami'.tmk . . . . . 244, 246
  - /tmp/'whoami'/OLD . . . . . 687
  - `\jobname.lan` . . . . . 439
  - `\jobname.mtc` . . . . . 283
  - `\jobname.mtc0` . . . . . 283
  - acadian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 471
  - acadien.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 471
  - afrikaan.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 472, 473
  - afrikaans.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 473
  - albanian.dtx . . . . . 473
  - albanian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 473
  - american.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 406, 475, 668
  - amsart.cls . . . . . 207
  - amsbook.cls . . . . . 207
  - amsproc.cls . . . . . 207
  - arab.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 475, 478, 667
  - arab2.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 477, 684
  - arabi.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 477, 688
  - arabic.ldf . . . . . 208
  - arabic.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 478
  - armenian.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 478
  - australian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 478
  - austrian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 479
  - bahasa.dtx . . . . . 480
  - bahasa.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 480
  - bahasai.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 480, 545
  - bahasam.dtx . . . . . 481
  - bahasam.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 481, 565, 570
  - bangla.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 482, 484
  - basque.dtx . . . . . 483
  - basque.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 483
  - bengali.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 484
  - Bg5.cap . . . . . 498
  - Bg5.cpx . . . . . 501
  - bicig.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 485, 609
  - bicig2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 485, 609, 678
  - bicig3.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 486, 612, 684
  - bithe.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 486, 570, 678
  - book.cls . . . . . 72
  - brazil.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 488, 490
  - brazilian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 490, 675
  - breton.dtx . . . . . 490

- breton.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 490  
 british.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 491, 675  
 bulgarian.dtx . . . . . 491  
 bulgarian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 491, 668  
 bulgarianb.mld . 45, 242, 246, 492, 673  
 buryat.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 493  
 buryat2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 494, 684  
 canadian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 494  
 canadien.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 494  
 captions.dn . . . . . 542  
 castillan.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 497  
 castillian.mld . . . 242, 246, 497, 675  
 catalan.dtx . . . . . 497  
 catalan.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 497  
 CATALOG . . . . . 210, 242, 244, 246, 692  
 chinese1.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 498, 671  
 chinese1.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 498  
 chinese2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 501, 671  
 chinese2.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 501  
 cmcyralt.sty . . . . . 593  
 croatian.dtx . . . . . 502  
 croatian.mld . . 242, 246, 257, 502, 696  
 czech.dtx . . . . . 503  
 czech.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 256, 503, 695  
 danish.dtx . . . . . 506  
 danish.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 257, 504, 696  
 devanagari.mld 242, 246, 254, 506, 542,  
     688  
 devanagari.sty . . . . . 214, 506  
 duplex2v.pro . . . . . 692  
 dutch.dtx . . . . . 473, 507  
 dutch.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 257, 507, 696  
 en-mtc.bst . 214, 243, 244, 246, 254, 689  
 english.dtx . . . . . 508, 509  
 english.mld . . . . . 37,  
     39–41, 154, 197, 241, 242, 246, 404,  
     406, 471, 475, 478, 491, 494, 508,  
     575, 612, 615, 667, 668, 689, 691  
 english1.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 509, 684  
 english2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 509, 684  
 esperant.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 510  
 esperanto.dtx . . . . . 510  
 esperanto.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 510  
 estonian.dtx . . . . . 511  
 estonian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 511  
 ethiopia.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 512  
 ethiopian.mld . . . . . 242, 246  
 ethiopian2.mld . . . 242, 246, 512, 681  
 ethopian.mld . . . . . 512  
 farsi.ldf . . . . . 208, 516  
 farsi.sty . . . . . 216, 514  
 farsi1.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 676  
 farsi1.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 676  
 farsi2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 676  
 farsi2.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 514, 515, 676  
 farsi3.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 516, 688  
 finnish.dtx . . . . . 517, 518  
 finnish.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 517  
 finnish2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 518, 673  
 fminitoc.bib . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 670  
 fminitoc.dtx 64, 217, 241–246, 439, 674  
 fminitoc.ins . . . . . 244  
 fminitoc.ist . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 674  
 fminitoc.lan . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 439  
 fminitoc.pdf . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 670  
 fminitoc.ps . . . . . 217  
 fr-mtc.bst . 218, 243, 244, 246, 254, 689  
 franc.sty . . . . . 243  
 francais.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 519  
 frbib.sty . . . . . 243  
 french.mld 37, 39, 41, 242, 246, 471, 494,  
     519, 520, 523, 674, 680  
 french1.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 521, 684  
 french2.mld 93, 242, 246, 271, 522, 684,  
     686, 687  
 frenchb.dtx . . . . . 520–522  
 frenchb.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 523  
 frenchle.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 523  
 frenchpro.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 523  
 frnew.sty . . . . . 243  
 frplain1.bst . . . . . 254, 689  
 galician.dtx . . . . . 524  
 galician.mld . . 242, 246, 256, 257, 524,  
     693, 695, 696  
 german.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 479, 525  
 germanb.dtx . . . . . 528, 529  
 germanb.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 528  
 germanb2.mld 242, 246, 257, 529, 676, 696  
 greek-mono.mld 207, 242, 246, 530, 672  
 greek-polydemo.mld 207, 242, 246, 532,  
     672  
 greek-polykatha.mld 207, 242, 246, 533,  
     672  
 greek.dtx . . . . . 530  
 greek.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 257, 530, 696  
 guarani.ldf . . . . . 218, 534  
 guarani.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 534, 675  
 hangul-u8.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 538, 682  
 hangul-u8.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 538, 682  
 hangul.cap . . . . . 535  
 hangul.cpx . . . . . 537  
 hangul1.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 535, 671  
 hangul1.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 535  
 hangul2.cap . . . . . 537  
 hangul2.cpx . . . . . 538  
 hangul2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 537, 671  
 hangul2.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 537

- hangul3.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 537, 671
- hangul3.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 537
- hangul4.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 538, 671
- hangul4.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 538
- hanja-u8.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 540, 682
- hanja-u8.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 540, 682
- hanja.cap . . . . . 539
- hanja.cpx . . . . . 539
- hanja1.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 539, 671
- hanja1.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 539
- hanja2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 539, 671
- hanja2.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 539
- hebrew.dtx . . . . . 541
- hebrew.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 540, 668
- hebrew2.mld . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 541
- hindi-modern.mld . . 242, 246, 254, 542, 688, 689
- hindi.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 254, 542, 688
- hungarian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 544
- icelandic.dtx . . . . . 545
- icelandic.mld . 242, 246, 257, 544, 668, 696
- indon.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 545
- indonesian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 545
- INSTALL 219, 242, 243, 246, 251, 254, 672, 686, 691
- interlingua.dtx . . . . . 545
- interlingua.mld 242, 246, 257, 545, 696
- irish.dtx . . . . . 546
- irish.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 546, 683
- italian.dtx . . . . . 547
- italian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 547, 680
- italian2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 549
- japanese.mld . . . . . 45, 242, 246, 549
- japanese.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 549, 550
- japanese2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 550, 671
- japanese2.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 550
- japanese3.mld . 242, 246, 550, 671, 680
- japanese3.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 550, 551
- japanese4.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 551, 671
- japanese4.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 551
- japanese5.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 551, 671
- japanese5.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 551
- japanese6.mld . 242, 246, 254, 552, 690
- japanese6.mlo . 242, 246, 254, 552, 690
- JIS.cap . . . . . 550
- JIS.cpx . . . . . 550
- kanlel.sty . . . . . 552
- kannada.mld . . . 242, 246, 552, 682, 693
- khalkha.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 553, 678
- latex-advanced.pdf . . . . . 647
- latex.fmt . . . . . 61
- latex.tex . . . . . 61, 664
- latin.dtx . . . . . 554, 555
- latin.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 554, 668
- latin2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 554, 673
- latinc.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 255, 555, 694
- latinc2.mld . . . 242, 246, 255, 555, 694
- latvian.ldf . . . . . 556, 557
- latvian.mld 207, 242, 246, 556, 557, 672
- latvian2.mld 242, 246, 255, 557, 558, 694
- letton.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 557, 672
- letton2.mld . . . 242, 246, 255, 558, 694
- lhcyralt.sty . . . . . 594
- lhcyrkoi.sty . . . . . 594
- lhcyrwin.sty . . . . . 595
- lithuanian.ldf . . . . . 558, 559
- lithuanian.mld . 242, 246, 558, 667, 680
- lithuanian2.mld 242, 246, 255, 256, 559, 694, 695
- lowersorbian.mld . . 242, 246, 559, 562, 681
- lsorbian.dtx . . . . . 559
- lsorbian.mld 242, 246, 256, 562, 683, 695
- magyar.dtx . . . . . 563, 564
- magyar.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 544, 563, 683
- magyar2.mld . . . 242, 246, 564, 673, 683
- magyar3.mld . . . 242, 246, 564, 680, 683
- malay.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 565
- malayalam-b.mld 242, 246, 256, 565, 695
- malayalam-keli.mld 242, 246, 566, 674
- malayalam-keli2.mld 242, 246, 256, 567, 695
- malayalam-mr.mld . . 242, 246, 256, 567, 695
- malayalam-omega.mld 242, 246, 568, 682
- malayalam-omega.mlo 242, 246, 256, 568, 682, 696
- malayalam-rachana.mld 242, 246, 568, 674
- malayalam-rachana2.mld 242, 246, 569, 674
- malayalam-rachana3.mld 242, 246, 256, 569, 695
- manju.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 570, 678
- memoir.cls . . . . . 223, 276
- mexican.ldf . . . . . 570
- mexican.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 570, 696
- meyalu.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 570
- minitoc-hyper.sty . . . . . 223
- minitoc-tds.zip 224, 243, 245, 246, 254, 691, 693
- minitoc.bib . . . . . 223, 243, 244, 246, 670
- minitoc.bug . 53, 58, 223, 243, 244, 246, 252, 253, 670, 675, 677, 681, 685
- minitoc.dtx 64, 217, 219, 223, 241–246, 252, 400, 439, 686

- minitoc.ins 45, 101, 216–219, 224, 228,  
241–246, 400, 439, 471, 674, 686
- minitoc.ist . . . 224, 243, 244, 246, 673
- minitoc.l . . . . 224, 241–244, 246, 677
- minitoc.lan 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 439
- minitoc.pdf . . . . 224, 243, 244, 246
- minitoc.pre 224, 243, 244, 246, 677, 683
- minitoc.ps . . . . . 224
- minitoc.sty . . . 224, 241, 242, 246, 264
- minitoc.sum . . . . 224, 243, 244, 246
- minitoc.tex . . . . . 666, 670
- mongol.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 571
- mongolb.mld 242, 246, 254, 255, 574, 575,  
692, 693
- mongolb.mlo . . . . . 254, 692
- mongolian.dtx . . . . . 574
- mongolian.mld . 242, 246, 255, 575, 693
- mtc-apx.tex . . . . . 693
- mtc-cri.log . . . . . 122
- mtcglo.ist . . . . . 676
- mtcmess.sty . . . . . 241, 242, 246
- mtcnorsk.sty . . . . . 666
- mtcnynorsk.sty . . . . . 666
- mtcoeff.sty . . . . . 241, 242, 246, 672
- mtcpatchmem.sty . . . . . 241, 242, 246
- mtcswedish.sty . . . . . 665
- naustrian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 575
- newzealand.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 575
- ngerman.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 575
- ngermanb.dtx . . . . . 576
- ngermanb.mld . . . . 242, 246, 575, 576
- ngermanb2.mld . . . . 242, 246, 576, 676
- norsk.dtx . . . . . 577, 578
- norsk.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 577
- norsk2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 578, 676
- nynorsk.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 578
- nynorsk2.mld . . . . 242, 246, 579, 676
- occitan.mld . . . 242, 246, 257, 579, 696
- occitan2.mld . . . . 242, 246, 580, 696
- OLD . . . . . 687
- omega-greek.ldf . . . . . 530, 532, 533
- omega-polish.ldf . . . . . 582
- omega-russian.ldf . . . . . 590
- omega-spanish.ldf . . . . . 604
- omega.sty . . . . . 207
- placeins.sty . . . . . 32
- placeins.txt . . . . . 32, 234
- plain.bst . . . . . 214, 218
- plainurl.bst . . . . . 254, 689
- polish.dtx . . . . . 581
- polish.mld . . . . 242, 246, 257, 581, 696
- polish2.mld . . . 207, 242, 246, 582, 672
- polski.dtx . . . . . 582
- polski.mld . 242, 246, 257, 582, 683, 696
- portuges.dtx . . . . . 488, 583
- portuges.mld . . 242, 246, 583, 673, 674
- portugues.mld . . . . . 673–675
- portuguese.mld . . . 242, 246, 583, 675
- rapport.doc . . . . . 606
- README . . . . . 242, 244, 246
- romanian.dtx . . . . . 585, 586
- romanian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 585
- romanian2.mld . 242, 246, 586, 681, 688
- romanian3.mld . 242, 246, 586, 681, 688
- russian-cca.mld . . . 242, 246, 593, 683
- russian-cca.mlo . . . . 242, 246, 593
- russian-cca1.mld . . 242, 246, 593, 683
- russian-cca1.mlo . . . . 242, 246, 593
- russian-lh.mld . . . 242, 246, 593, 683
- russian-lh.mlo . . . . 242, 246, 593
- russian-lhcyralt.mld . 242, 246, 594,  
683
- russian-lhcyralt.mlo . . 242, 246, 594
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mld . 242, 246, 594,  
683
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo . . 242, 246, 594
- russian-lhcyrwin.mld . 242, 246, 595,  
683
- russian-lhcyrwin.mlo . . 242, 246, 595
- russian.def . . . . . 592
- russian.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 587
- russian.sty . . . . . 593
- russian2m.ldf . . . . . 587
- russian2m.mld . 207, 242, 246, 587, 672
- russian2o.mld . 207, 242, 246, 590, 672
- russianb.dtx . . . . . 492, 574, 591
- russianb.mld . . . . 242, 246, 591, 682
- russianc.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 592
- samin.dtx . . . . . 595, 596
- samin.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 595, 668
- scottish.dtx . . . . . 596
- scottish.mld . . 242, 246, 257, 596, 696
- scrbook.cls . . . . . 123
- serbian.dtx . . . . . 597
- serbian.mld . . . . 242, 246, 597, 681
- serbianc.mld 45, 242, 246, 598, 671, 681
- SJIS.cap . . . . . 551
- SJIS.cpx . . . . . 551
- slovak.dtx . . . . . 598
- slovak.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 598
- slovene.dtx . . . . . 599
- slovene.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 599
- spanish.dtx . . . . . 524, 600, 603, 604
- spanish.mld . . . 242, 246, 497, 600, 682
- spanish2.mld . . . . 242, 246, 603, 673
- spanish3.mld . . 207, 242, 246, 604, 676
- spanish4.mld . . . . 242, 246, 604, 681

- swahili.mld . . . 242, 246, 256, 605, 695
- swahili.tex . . . . . 605
- swedish.dtx . . . . . 606
- swedish.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 606
- swedish2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 606, 684
- thai.dtx . . . . . 648
- thai.ldf . . . . . 608
- thai.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 608, 671
- thai.mlo . . . . . 242, 246, 608
- thaicjk.ldf . . . . . 608
- thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz . . . . . 648
- titletoc.sty . . . . . 238
- tocloft.pdf . . . . . 79
- TODO . . . . . 238, 242, 244, 246
- turkish.dtx . . . . . 609
- turkish.mld . . . 242, 246, 257, 609, 696
- u8hangul.tex . . . . . 538
- u8hanja.tex . . . . . 540
- uighur.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 609, 686
- uighur2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 609, 686
- uighur3.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 612, 686
- UKenglish.mld . . . . 242, 246, 612, 675
- ukraineb.dtx . . . . . 612
- ukraineb.mld . . 242, 246, 256, 612, 695
- ukrainian.mld . . . . 242, 246, 612, 681
- uppersorbian.mld . . 242, 246, 614, 615, 681
- USenglish.mld . . . . 242, 246, 615, 675
- usorbian.dtx . . . . . 614
- usorbian.mld 242, 246, 256, 615, 683, 695
- vietnam.mld . . . 242, 246, 615, 616, 667
- vietnamese.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 616
- welsh.dtx . . . . . 616
- welsh.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 616
- win-gn.def . . . . . 534
- xalx.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 553, 617, 678
- xalx2.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 618, 684
- xalx3.mld . . . . . 242, 246, 619, 684
- finlande1.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 517
- finlande2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 517
- finnish (language option) . . . . . 40, 517
- finnish.dtx (file) . . . . . 517, 518
- finnish.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 517
- finnish2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 518
- finnish2.mld (file) . . . . 242, 246, 518, 673
- finnishd.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 519
- finnishl.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 518
- \firstchapteris (command) . . . . . 29, 51, 55, 90, 164, 176, 206, 211, 216, 293, 433, 665, 666
- \firstchapteris . . . . . 3007, 7226, 7648
- \firstpartis (command) 29, 51, 55, 90, 164, 176, 206, 216, 321, 433
- \firstpartis . . . . . 3695, 7219, 7648
- \firstsectionis (command) 29, 51, 55, 90, 165, 176, 206, 216, 346, 434
- \firstsectionis . . . . . 4338, 7233, 7648
- FISCHER, Ulrike . . . . . 698
- flafter (package) . . . . . 32, 234, 435, 684, 685, ↪[268, 306]
- FLECK, Jean-Julien . . . . . 698, ↪[11]
- FLIPO, Daniel . . . . . 520–522, 698, ↪[74, 328]
- float (package) . . . 32, 55, 89, 163, 217, 235, 255, 268, 275, 430, 694, ↪[281]
- \FloatBarrier (command) 31, 217, 234, 675
- \FloatBarrier . . . . . 867, 922
- floatrow (package) . . 32, 55, 89, 163, 217, 255, 268, 275, 430, 694, ↪[265]
- FLOM, Peter L. . . . . 698, ↪[158–160]
- flowfram (package) . . 54, 80, 89, 185, 217, 255, 414, 694, ↪[394, 395]
- flsection (option) . . . . . 250, 669
- flsectionb (option) . . . . . 250, 669
- \flushbottom . . . . . 813, 997
- \flushcolumns . . . . . 2056, 2101
- FLYNN, Peter . . . . . 698, ↪[161–164]
- fminitoc.bib (file) . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 670
- fminitoc.dtx (file) 64, 217, 241–246, 439, 674
- fminitoc.ins (file) . . . . . 244
- fminitoc.ist (file) . . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 674
- fminitoc.lan (file) . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 439
- fminitoc.pdf (file) . . 217, 243, 244, 246, 670
- fminitoc.ps (file) . . . . . 217
- fmk (script) . . . . . 217, 219, 235, 243–246, 677
- fnchap (package) . . . 54, 76, 89, 184, 217, 253, 273, 426, 685, ↪[280]
- fo1.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 689
- fo2.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 689
- \footnotesize (command) . . . . . 231
- \footnotesize . . . . . 2335
- Fox, Jim . . . . . 698
- \FR . . . . . 8530
- fr-mtc.bst (file) 218, 243, 244, 246, 254, 689
- \frac . . . . . 2024
- franc (package) . . . . . 93, 217, 244, 246
- franc.sty (file) . . . . . 243
- francais (language option) . . . . . 40, 519
- francais.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 519
- france-lr.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 521
- franco.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 520
- frbib (package) . . . . . 218, 244, 246
- frbib.sty (file) . . . . . 243
- french (language option) . . 40, 494, 519, 520, 523, 669, 670
- french.mld (file) . . . 37, 39, 41, 242, 246, 471, 494, 519, 520, 523, 674, 680
- french1 (language option) . . . . . 40, 521

french1.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 521, 684  
 french2 (language option) . . . 40, 93, 226, 522  
 french2.mld (file) 93, 242, 246, 271, 522, 684,  
     686, 687  
 frenchb (language option) . . . . . 40, 523  
 frenchb.dtx (file) . . . . . 520–522  
 frenchb.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 523  
 frenchle (package) . . . . . ⇨[168]  
 frenchle (language option) . . . . 40, 523, 669  
 frenchle.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 523  
 frenchpro (package) . . . . . ⇨[169, 170]  
 frenchpro (language option) . . . . 40, 523, 669  
 frenchpro.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 523  
 frnew (package) . . . . . 93, 218, 244, 246  
 frnew.sty (file) . . . . . 243  
 \frontmatter (command) . . . . . 79  
 \frontmatter . . . . . 190  
 frplain1.bst (file) . . . . . 254, 689  
 fswahili.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243  
 fullpage (package) . . . . . 138, 139, 147, ⇨[136]  
 \fup . . . . . 1731, 1753, 1755, 1821  
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. . . . . 698  
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo . . . . . 698, ⇨[225]  
 \fussy . . . . . 867, 1058

## G

gael-ft.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 546  
 galicia-m.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 524  
 galicia-mp.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 524  
 galician (language option) . . . . 40, 524, 600  
 galician-l.pdf (graphic file) . . . . 243, 525  
 galician.dtx (file) . . . . . 524  
 galician.mld (file) . 242, 246, 256, 257, 524,  
     693, 695, 696  
 galles1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 618  
 galles2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 618  
 gaps . . . . . 77  
 gaps.tex (old example document) . . . 686, 689  
 GARCIA, Federico . . . . . 698, ⇨[165, 166]  
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego . . . . . 698  
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert . . . . . 59, 698, ⇨[167]  
 GAULLE†, Bernard . . . . . 698, ⇨[168–170]  
 gauri (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 \gdef (command) . . . . . 277  
 \gdef . . . 2661, 2663, 3004, 3019, 3423, 3543,  
     3604, 4573, 4590, 4724, 4757, 4820,  
     4880  
 GELDERMAN, Maarten . . . . . 699, ⇨[171]  
 GENSCHTE, Chuck . . . . . 699, ⇨[172]  
 geometry (package) . . . . . 116, 218, ⇨[408]  
 germ-w.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 526

german (language option) 40, 122, 479, 525, 529  
 german-c.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 529  
 german-d.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 527  
 german-m.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 528  
 german.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 479, 525  
 germanb (language option) . . . . . 40, 528, 575  
 germanb.dtx (file) . . . . . 528, 529  
 germanb.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 528  
 germanb2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 529  
 germanb2.mld (file) . 242, 246, 257, 529, 676,  
     696  
 GHODSI, Mohammad . . . 471, 514, 699, ⇨[152]  
 GILHOOLY, Helen . . . . . 699, ⇨[173]  
 GIRDENIS, Aleksas Stanislovas . . . . . 558, 699  
 GIRON, François . . . . . 699, ⇨[174]  
 GLEISZNER, Markus . . . . . 679, 680, 699  
 \global . . . . . 2535–2555, 2559, 2561, 2572,  
     2575, 2584, 2587, 2692, 2972, 2979,  
     2980, 3062, 3120, 3132, 3192, 3200,  
     3260, 3363, 3366, 3382, 3385, 3401,  
     3404, 3792, 3806, 3849, 3858, 3872,  
     3873, 3923, 3933, 3947, 3948, 3998,  
     4046, 4049, 4065, 4068, 4084, 4087,  
     4385, 4444, 4452, 4511, 4519, 4579,  
     4666, 4669, 4685, 4688, 4704, 4707,  
     5785, 5791, 5801, 5809, 5819, 5825,  
     5835, 5843, 5853, 5859, 6380–6382,  
     6641–6643, 6646, 6649, 6652, 6655,  
     6658, 6661, 7962  
 \glqq . . . . . 1502  
 \gobbleopt@ (command) . . . . . 368, 447  
 \gobbleopt@ . . . . . 4969, 4977–4986, 7567,  
     7568–7586  
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali . . . . . 699  
 \goodap . . . . . 2153  
 GOOSSENS, Michel . . . . . 665, 699,  
     ⇨[175, 176, 306–308]  
 gopika (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 GORDON, Jr., Raymond G. . . . . 699, ⇨[177]  
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 GRANT, Fraser . . . . . 546, 596, 699, ⇨[56, 75]  
 Graphic files  
     acadien.pdf . . . . . 243, 472  
     africa-lf.pdf . . . . . 243, 468  
     africa-lo.pdf . . . . . 243, 468  
     afrsud-l.pdf . . . . . 243, 472  
     afrsud-p.pdf . . . . . 243, 472  
     alba-eth.pdf . . . . . 243, 474  
     albania.pdf . . . . . 243, 474  
     allemand.jpg . . . . . 243, 526  
     anglo1.pdf . . . . . 243, 508  
     arab-1.jpg . . . . . 243, 475  
     arabw.png . . . . . 243, 475  
     armeniad.pdf . . . . . 243, 479



armenian-l.png	243, 478	ethiolang.png	243, 513
armeniar.jpg	243, 479	ethiopia-p.pdf	243, 513
balt.es.pdf	243, 556, 558	ethiopia.pdf	243, 513
bangla.png	243, 482	euro-lan.pdf	243, 468
bangla1.pdf	243, 482	euro-lan1.pdf	243, 469
bangla2.pdf	243, 482	euro-lan2.png	243, 470
basque-de.pdf	243, 484	euskara.pdf	243, 484
basque-df.pdf	243	farsi-logo.png	243, 514
basque1.pdf	243, 483	farsi.pdf	243, 515
basque2.pdf	243, 483	feroe.jpg	243, 504
belgique.pdf	243, 507	finlandel.png	243, 517
bengali-m.jpg	243, 483	finlande2.pdf	243, 517
bosnia.pdf	243, 597	finnishd.pdf	243, 519
brazil.pdf	243, 488	finnishl.pdf	243, 518
brazilp.pdf	243, 488	france-lr.png	243, 521
bretagne.pdf	243, 490	franco.png	243, 520
bulgariar.jpg	243, 492	fswahili.pdf	243
bulgarski.png	243, 491	gael-ft.pdf	243, 546
bulgmap.png	243, 492	galicia-m.pdf	243, 524
buryatia-l.pdf	243, 493	galicia-mp.pdf	243, 524
buryatia.pdf	243, 493	galician-l.pdf	243, 525
canada-l.pdf	243, 496	galles1.pdf	243, 618
canada-pe.png	243, 496	galles2.pdf	243, 618
canada-pf.pdf	243	germ-w.pdf	243, 526
canada.pdf	243, 495	german-c.pdf	243, 529
canadal.pdf	243, 495	german-d.pdf	243, 527
catalan-d.pdf	243, 498	german-m.pdf	243, 528
catalan-p.pdf	243, 498	grece1.pdf	243, 531
caucasus.pdf	243, 479	grece2.pdf	243, 531
china-ae.png	243, 500	greeka.png	243, 530
china-af.png	243	greekm.jpg	243, 531
china-ch.pdf	243, 499	hangul.png	243, 536
china-l.pdf	243, 501	hanja.png	243, 536
china-w.png	243, 498	hanzi.png	243, 499
chine1.pdf	243, 500	hin.png	243, 542
chine2.pdf	243, 500	hindi-b.png	243, 543
croatie1.pdf	243, 502	hindi-p.png	243, 543
croatie2.pdf	243, 502	hispano.png	243, 602
cz1.pdf	243, 503	hrv.png	243, 502
cz3.png	243, 503	hun1.png	243, 563
czechd.pdf	243, 504	hun2.jpg	243, 563
danemark.jpg	243, 504	inde1.pdf	243, 543
danishd.pdf	243, 505	inde2.jpg	243, 543
danishg.pdf	243, 505	indonesia1.pdf	243, 480
devanagari.png	243, 506	indonesia2.pdf	243, 480
dutchw.pdf	243, 507	iranian.jpg	243, 516
ecosse1.pdf	243, 596	irish.png	243, 547
ecosse2.pdf	243, 596	irlande.pdf	243, 547
ecosse3.pdf	243, 596	islam-pbc.png	243, 476
espa-l.pdf	243, 602	islam-sw.pdf	243, 476
espa-o.png	243, 603	islande.png	243, 544
estonia-a.pdf	243, 511	islandep.jpg	243, 544
estonia-b.pdf	243, 511	isrl1.pdf	243, 541
eth2.png	243, 512		

- isr2.pdf ..... 243, 541
- italian.pdf ..... 243, 548
- italo1.png ..... 243, 548
- italysm.png ..... 243, 548
- ivrit.png ..... 243, 540
- japon1.pdf ..... 243, 549
- japon2.jpg ..... 243, 549
- kannada-n.png ..... 243, 552
- karnad1.jpg ..... 243, 553
- karnataka.jpg ..... 243, 553
- kerala.jpg ..... 243, 565
- khalkha.pdf ..... 243, 619
- korean1.png ..... 243, 536
- korean2.jpg ..... 243, 536
- kos-alb.png ..... 243, 474
- kos-ml.png ..... 243, 474
- lamed3.png ..... 221, 232, 243, 697
- lang-g.png ..... 243, 466
- latvian-d.pdf ..... 243, 556
- latvian-rl.png ..... 243, 556
- lettonie.pdf ..... 243, 556
- lituanie.png ..... 243, 558
- lusol.pdf ..... 243, 584
- lusol.pdf ..... 243
- malayalam.pdf ..... 243, 565
- malayalam.png ..... 243, 565
- malaysia1.pdf ..... 243, 481
- malaysia2.pdf ..... 243, 481
- manchu.jpg ..... 243, 487
- manchuria.jpg ..... 243, 487
- manjuc.jpg ..... 243, 487
- manjui.png ..... 243, 486
- mex1.pdf ..... 243, 571
- mex2.pdf ..... 243, 571
- mex3.pdf ..... 243, 571
- mexip.pdf ..... 243, 571
- meyalu.png ..... 243, 481
- mondep.png ..... 243, 466
- mongasie.pdf ..... 243, 572
- mongolcy.png ..... 225, 243, 574
- mongolian.pdf ..... 243, 572
- mongols.pdf ..... 243, 573
- mongoltr.png ..... 243, 571
- neder.pdf ..... 243, 507
- nihongo.png ..... 243, 550
- norvege-c.pdf ..... 243, 577
- norvege-t.pdf ..... 243, 577
- occdial1.jpg ..... 243, 580
- occdial2.png ..... 243, 580
- occitanie.pdf ..... 243, 580
- occtaur.jpg ..... 243, 580
- paraguay.png ..... 243, 535
- paraguayp.pdf ..... 243, 535
- polmin.jpg ..... 243, 581
- pologne.pdf ..... 243, 581
- portu-a.png ..... 243, 585
- portu-b.png ..... 243, 489
- portu-p.jpg ..... 243, 584
- portugal.pdf ..... 243, 583
- romanian.pdf ..... 243, 585
- rus-re.png ..... 243, 589
- rus-su.pdf ..... 243, 590
- russian-e.pdf ..... 243, 588
- russian-f.png ..... 243
- russian-n.png ..... 243, 587
- russian.png ..... 243, 588
- same-f.pdf ..... 243, 595
- same.png ..... 243, 595
- serbia1.pdf ..... 243, 597
- slovak-ok.pdf ..... 243, 599
- slovakia.pdf ..... 243, 599
- slovenian.pdf ..... 243, 600
- slovenie.pdf ..... 243, 600
- sorabe-1.jpg ..... 243, 560
- sorabe-2.jpg ..... 243, 560
- sorben.jpg ..... 243, 562
- sorbian.jpg ..... 243, 561
- spain.pdf ..... 243, 601
- suede-a.pdf ..... 243, 607
- suede-f.pdf ..... 243, 607
- svenska.png ..... 243, 607
- swahili-m.png ..... 243, 605
- swahili.pdf ..... 243, 605
- sweden.pdf ..... 243, 607
- thai.pdf ..... 243, 608
- thai.png ..... 243, 608
- turkish.png ..... 243, 610
- turquie.pdf ..... 243, 610
- uighur.pdf ..... 243, 611
- ukra.png ..... 243, 612
- ukraine.jpg ..... 243, 613
- ukrainep.pdf ..... 243, 613
- viet-w.pdf ..... 243, 617
- viet2.pdf ..... 243, 616
- viet3.pdf ..... 243, 616
- wiki.png ..... 240, 243, 465
- wikif.png ..... 243
- wrs-a.png ..... 243, 467
- wrs-c.pdf ..... 243, 467
- xinjiang.png ..... 243, 611
- xinjiangc.png ..... 243, 611
- xyugo.pdf ..... 243, 503
- GRÄTZER, George ..... 699, ⇔[178–180]
- GRAY, Norman ..... 239, 699, ⇔[181]
- grece1.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 531
- grece2.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 531
- greek (language option) ..... 40, 530



greek-mono (language option) . . . 40, 45, 530  
 greek-mono.mld (file) 207, 242, 246, 530, 672  
 greek-polydemo (language option) 40, 45, 532  
 greek-polydemo.mld (file) 207, 242, 246, 532,  
 672  
 greek-polykatha (language option) . 40, 45,  
 533  
 greek-polykatha.mld (file) . 207, 242, 246,  
 533, 672  
 greek.dtx (file) . . . . . 530  
 greek.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 257, 530, 696  
 greeka.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 530  
 greekm.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 531  
 GREENWADE, George D. . . . . 699, ⇨[182]  
 GREGORIO, Enrico . . . . . 605, 699, ⇨[183, 184]  
 GRENON, Loïc . . . . . 699  
 GREYER, Charles . . . . . 699, ⇨[378]  
 GRIMES, Barbara F. . . . . 699, ⇨[177]  
 GRINEVA, Olga A. . . . . 699, ⇨[35]  
 GROT, Sébastien . . . . . 699  
 \grqq . . . . . 1502  
 guarani (package) . . 45, 218, 471, 534, ⇨[45]  
 guarani (language option) . . . . . 40, 218, 534  
 guarani.ldf (file) . . . . . 218, 534  
 guarani.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 534, 675  
 GUIGNARD, Micael . . . . . 699  
 GUNN, Marion . . . . . 546, 699, ⇨[56]  
 GURARI, Eitan M. . . . . 699, ⇨[176]

## H

HAFNER, Thomas . . . . . 699, ⇨[358]  
 HAGEN, Hans . 699, ⇨[159, 186, 187, 194, 216]  
 HAHN, Reinhard F. . . . . 699, ⇨[188]  
 HAMZI, Boumediene . . . . . 699  
 HÀN, Thế Thành . . . . . 213, 615, 682, 692, 699,  
 ⇨[189–194, 278]  
 hangcaption (package) . . 54, 80, 89, 185, 218,  
 254, 273, 426, 663, 691, ⇨[233]  
 hangul-u8 (language option) . . . . . 40, 538  
 hangul-u8.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 538, 682  
 hangul-u8.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 538, 682  
 hangul.cap (file) . . . . . 535  
 hangul.cpx (file) . . . . . 537  
 hangul.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 536  
 hangul1 (language option) . . . . . 40, 535  
 hangul1.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 535, 671  
 hangul1.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 535  
 hangul2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 537  
 hangul2.cap (file) . . . . . 537  
 hangul2.cpx (file) . . . . . 538  
 hangul2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 537, 671

hangul2.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 537  
 hangul3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 537  
 hangul3.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 537, 671  
 hangul3.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 537  
 hangul4 (language option) . . . . . 40, 538  
 hangul4.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 538, 671  
 hangul4.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 538  
 hanja-u8 (language option) . . . . . 40, 540  
 hanja-u8.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 540, 682  
 hanja-u8.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 540, 682  
 hanja.cap (file) . . . . . 539  
 hanja.cpx (file) . . . . . 539  
 hanja.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 536  
 hanja1 (language option) . . . . . 40, 539  
 hanja1.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 539, 671  
 hanja1.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 539  
 hanja2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 539  
 hanja2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 539, 671  
 hanja2.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 539  
 HANSEN, Thorsten . . . . . 699, ⇨[195, 196]  
 hanzi.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 499  
 HAPPEL, Patrick . . . . . 699, ⇨[197]  
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis . . . . . 232, 699,  
 ⇨[9, 198–206, 348, 349]  
 HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. . . . . 699, ⇨[1, 2]  
 HARIN, Alexander . . . . . 593, 699, ⇨[207]  
 HARRIS, Russel L. . . . . 699  
 HARRISON, Michael A. . . . . 699, ⇨[121]  
 HARTKE, Stephen . . . . . 699, ⇨[208]  
 \hb@xt@ . . . . . 3306  
 HEAP, Danny . . . . . 699  
 hebrew (language option) . . . . . 40, 208, 540  
 hebrew.dtx (file) . . . . . 541  
 hebrew.mld (file) . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 540, 668  
 hebrew2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 541  
 hebrew2.mld (file) . . . . . 208, 242, 246, 541  
 HEFFERON, Jim . . . . . 699, ⇨[210, 211]  
 HEIDER, André . . . . . 699  
 HEIN, Thorsten . . . . . 699  
 HELLMAN, Sten . . . . . 606, 699, ⇨[76]  
 HELSTRUP, Håvard . . . . . 577, 578, 699, ⇨[57]  
 HENEL, Yvon . . . . . 699, ⇨[29, 404]  
 HENKEL, Hartmut . . . . . 699, ⇨[216]  
 HENLICH, Thomas . . . . . 699, ⇨[212]  
 HENNIG, Stephan . . . . . 55, 73, 89, 699, ⇨[213]  
 HENRY, Florence . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 HERBORN, Stephen . . . . . 699  
 here (package) . . . . . 217  
 HESOLL, Jörg . . . . . 699  
 hia.tex (old example document) . . . . . 687, 689  
 hide.tex (old example document) . . . . . 685  
 hide1.tex (old example document) . . . . . 685, 689  
 hide2.tex (old example document) . . . . . 685, 689  
 hin.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 542

hindi (language option) . . . . . 40, 218, 542  
 hindi-b.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 543  
 hindi-modern (language option) . 40, 218, 542  
 hindi-modern.mld (file) . 242, 246, 254, 542,  
     688, 689  
 hindi-p.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 543  
 hindi.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 254, 542, 688  
 HINNENBUSH, Pr. Thomas J. . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [214]  
**hints** (default option) 53–55, 58, 71, 73, 74, 76,  
     77, 80, 81, 156, 162, 170, 218, 232,  
     251, 252, 266, 269, 408, 417, 434,  
     437, 670, 674, 683  
 hints (option) . . . . . 58  
 hir.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 689  
 hispano.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 602  
 H $\LaTeX$  (package) . 219, 471, 538, 540,  $\hookrightarrow$ [249]  
 \hline (command) 327, 329, 332, 349, 351, 354  
 \hline . 3099, 3169, 3237, **3821, 3889, 3968,**  
     **4414, 4481, 4548**  
 HOADLEY, David . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [379]  
 HOEKWATER, Taco . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [215, 216]  
 HOENIG, Alan . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [217]  
 HOGG, Joe . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [159]  
 HØGHOLM, Morten . . . . . 699  
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil . . . . . 577, 578, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [57]  
 hop.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 689  
 HÖPPNER, Klaus . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [218]  
 HORST, Umstatter . . . . . 585, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [77]  
 HOSEK, Don . . . . . 673, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [219]  
 \hrule (command) . . . . . 293  
 \hrule . 1290, 3022, 5000–5002, 5009–5011,  
     5018–5020  
 hrv.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 502  
 Hu, Yufan . . . . . 662, 699  
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [220, 308]  
 \Huge (command) . . . . . 231  
 \Huge . . . . . 1222, 1224, 1231  
 \huge (command) . . . . . 231  
 \huge . . . . . 1737  
 hun1.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 563  
 hun2.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 563  
 hungarian (language option) . . . 40, 544, 563  
 hungarian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 544  
 HUSEBY, Dave W. . . . . 699  
 HYNA, Helene . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [328, 329]  
 hypcap (package) . . . . . 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [324]  
 hypernat (package) . . . . . 693,  $\hookrightarrow$ [39]  
 hyperref (package) . . . . . 23, 54, 63, 64,  
     73, 89, 116, 143, 153, 170, 171, 174,  
     219, 223, 239, 240, 246, 249, 252,  
     272, 310, 414, 668, 677, 681, 692,  
     693,  $\hookrightarrow$ [322, 325–327, 356, 357]  
 Hyper $\TeX$  (package) . . . . . 219, 239,  $\hookrightarrow$ [344]

## I

I0000 (message) . . . . . 151, 152, 264  
 I0001 (message) . . . . . 23, 151, 153, 264  
 I0002 (message) . . . . . 151, 153, 283  
 I0003 (message) . . . . . 151, 153, 281  
 I0004 (message) . . . . . 151, 153, 280  
 I0005 (message) . . . . . 151, 153, 272  
 I0006 (message) . 55, 151, 154, 296, 299, 303,  
     326, 328, 331, 348, 351, 353  
 I0007 (message) . . . . . 151, 154, 387  
 I0008 (message) . . . . . 151, 154, 387  
 I0009 (message) . . . . . 151, 154, 436  
 I0010 (message) . . . . . 151, 154, 399  
 I0011 (message) . . . . . 151, 155, 400  
 I0012 (message) . . . . . 151, 155, 283  
 I0013 (message) . . . . . 151, 155, 391  
 I0014 (message) . . . . . 151, 155, 390  
 I0015 (message) . . . . . 151, 155, 376  
 I0016 (message) . . . . . 151, 156, 383  
 I0017 (message) . . . . . 151, 156, 378  
 I0018 (message) . . . . . 151, 156, 377  
 I0019 (message) . . . . . 151, 156, 434  
 I0020 (message) . . . . . 66, 151, 156, 223, 276  
 I0021 (message) . . . . . 151, 157, 385  
 I0022 (message) . . . . . 151, 157, 385  
 I0023 (message) . . . . . 151, 157, 279  
 I0024 (message) . . . . . 151, 157, 313  
 I0025 (message) . . . . . 151, 157, 339  
 I0026 (message) . . . . . 151, 157, 361  
 I0027 (message) . . . . . 66, 151, 158, 223, 276  
 I0028 (message) . . . . . 151, 158, 280  
 I0029 (message) . . . . . 151, 158, 280  
 I0030 (message) . . . . . 66, 151, 158, 223, 276  
 I0031 (message) . . . . . 151, 158, 283  
 I0032 (message) . . . . . 66, 151, 159, 223, 276  
 I0033 (message) 151, 159, 311, 312, 315, 318,  
     337, 338, 341, 343, 360, 361, 363,  
     365  
 I0034 (message) . . . . . 151, 159, 316  
 I0035 (message) . . . . . 151, 159, 341  
 I0036 (message) . . . . . 151, 159, 364  
 I0037 (message) . . . . . 151, 160, 318  
 I0038 (message) . . . . . 151, 160, 344  
 I0039 (message) . . . . . 151, 160, 366  
 I0040 (message) . . 54, 71, 151, 160, 206, 251,  
     413, 673  
 I0041 (message) . . . . . 67, 151, 160, 207, 413  
 I0042 (message) . 65, 151, 161, 207, 250, 409,  
     670  
 I0043 (message) 43, 51, 76, 151, 161, 220, 251,  
     253, 409, 674, 681

- I0044 (message) . . . . . 66, 151, 161, 223, 412
- I0045 (message) 151, 161, 309, 310, 335, 336, 358, 359
- I0046 (message) . 51, 151, 162, 238, 250, 409, 668
- I0047 (message) . . . . . 65, 151, 162, 238, 410
- I0048 (message) . . . . . 151, 162, 367
- I0049 (message) . . . . . 151, 162, 408
- I0050 (message) . 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 471
- I0051 (message) . 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 471
- I0052 (message) . . . . . 151, 163, 393
- I0053 (message) . 55, 151, 163, 217, 235, 239, 255, 430, 431, 694
- icelandic (language option) . . . . . 40, 545
- icelandic.dtx (file) . . . . . 545
- icelandic.mld (file) 242, 246, 257, 544, 668, 696
- idxtotoc (KOMA-Script package) . . . . . 51
- \if@dominilof@used@2541, 3374, 6712, 6798
- \if@dominilot@used@2541, 3393, 6712, 6798
- \if@dominitoc@used@ . . 2541, 3340, 3355, 6712, 6798
- \if@dopartlof@used@2535, 4057, 6683, 6769
- \if@dopartlot@used@2535, 4076, 6683, 6769
- \if@doparttoc@used@2535, 4038, 6683, 6769
- \if@dosectlof@used@ . . 2547, 4677, 6665, 6741, 6827
- \if@dosectlot@used@ . . 2547, 4696, 6665, 6741, 6827
- \if@dosecttoc@used@2547, 4658, 6741, 6827
- \if@filesw . . . . . 2569, 2961, 4970
- \if@firstchapteris@used@ . . 2553, 3007, 7222
- \if@firstpartis@used@ . 2553, 3695, 7215
- \if@firstsectionis@used@ . . 2553, 7229
- \if@mainmatter . . . . . 7866, 7884
- \if@minilof@used@ . 2541, 3131, 6712, 6798, 6891
- \if@minilot@used@ . 2541, 3199, 6712, 6798, 6891
- \if@minitoc@used@ . 2541, 3061, 6712, 6798, 6891
- \if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ . . . . . 6379
- \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2504, 2613, 7054
- \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ . . 2504, 2613, 7054
- \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2486, 2615, 7063
- \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ . . 2486, 2615, 7063
- \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ . . 2486, 2619, 7081
- \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ . 2486, 2619, 7081
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@ 2486, 2617, 7072
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ . . 2486, 2617, 7072
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ . . 2486, 2621, 7090
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ . . 2486, 2621, 7090
- \if@mtc@chapter@def@ . . 2525, 6712, 6798, 6891, 6961
- \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ 2531, 4337, 4935
- \if@mtc@checkfiles . . . . . 2684, 6049
- \if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2514, 3138, 7180
- \if@mtc@empty@minilot@ 2519, 3206, 7187
- \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2514, 3068, 7173
- \if@mtc@empty@partlof@ . . . 2514, 7159
- \if@mtc@empty@partlot@ . . . 2514, 7166
- \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ . . . 2514, 7152
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ . . . 2514, 7201
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ . . . 2514, 7208
- \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ . . . 2520, 7194
- \if@mtc@FE . . 2684, 3068, 3076, 3138, 3146, 3206, 3214, 3798, 3809, 3864, 3877, 3939, 3952, 4391, 4399, 4458, 4467, 4525, 4534
- \if@mtc@floatLoaded@ . . 2510, 2625, 7108
- \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ 2510, 2626, 7119
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2496, 2603, 7009
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ . . 2496, 2603, 7009
- \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ . . . 2496, 2605, 7018
- \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ . . 2496, 2605, 7018
- \if@mtc@Himlof@ . . . . . 5793
- \if@mtc@Himlot@ . . . . . 5827
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ (command) . . . . . 393
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ . . . . . 5778, 5779
- \if@mtc@hints@ (command) . . . . . 266
- \if@mtc@hints@ . . 2477, 3355, 3374, 3393, 4038, 4057, 4076, 4658, 4677, 4696, 4955, 6377, 6640, 7331
- \if@mtc@hints@giben@ . . . . . 2477
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ (command) . . 266
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ . . 2479, 6388, 6396, 6404, 6412, 6436, 6444, 6452, 6460, 6520, 6529, 6544, 6553, 6567, 6574, 6582, 6601, 6620, 6670, 6683, 6712, 6741, 6769, 6798, 6827, 6856, 6891, 6926, 6991, 7000, 7009, 7018, 7027, 7036, 7045, 7054, 7063, 7072, 7081, 7090, 7099, 7108, 7119, 7130, 7141, 7236
- \if@mtc@hints@given@true . . . . . 6961
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ (command) . . . . . 266
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ . . 2477, 6582, 6601, 6620, 6670
- \if@mtc@hyper@used@2583, 6582, 6601, 6620

- \if@mtc@insellang@ (command) . . . 399, 400
- \if@mtc@insellang@ . . . . . 5990, 6010
- \if@mtc@LI . . . . . 2684
- \if@mtc@listfiles@ . . . . . 6076, 7330
- \if@mtc@lof@used@ . 6379, 6640, 6644, 6653,  
6869, 6904, 6939
- \if@mtc@longext@ (command) . . . 256, 695
- \if@mtc@longext@ . . 2782, 3063, 3133, 3201,  
3426, 3438, 3471, 3546, 3607, 3791,  
3857, 3931, 4106, 4120, 4218, 4278,  
4384, 4451, 4518, 4727, 4755, 4823,  
4883, 6054, 6961, 7283, 7731
- \if@mtc@lot@used@ . 6379, 6640, 6644, 6653,  
6880, 6915, 6950
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2486, 2623, 7099
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ . . 2486, 2623,  
7099
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ (command) . . 285
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . 2481, 2629, 2835
- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ . . . . . 2481, 2629
- \if@mtc@misslang (command) . . . . . 403
- \if@mtc@misslang . . . . . 6084, 6130, 6160
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ . . . . 2578, 6053, 7280
- \if@mtc@part@def@ . 2523, 6683, 6769, 6856,  
6961
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ . . . . . 2529
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ 2481, 6670, 7274
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2496, 2607, 7027
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ . . 2496, 2607,  
7027
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 2504, 2609, 7036
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ . . 2504, 2609,  
7036
- \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ 2510, 2628, 7141
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ . . 2480, 6665, 6670
- \if@mtc@section@def@ . . 2527, 4337, 4934,  
6665, 6741, 6827, 6926, 6961
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ . . . . . 2533
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2481, 2599, 6991
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ . . 2481, 2599,  
6991
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ . . . . . 5690, 5692, 5711
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ . . . 5629, 5651, 5670
- \if@mtc@setfont@ . . 5090, 5092, 5111, 5130,  
5215
- \if@mtc@setformat@ . . . . . 5396, 5434
- \if@mtc@setoffset@ . . . 5734, 5736, 5755
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ . . . 5452, 5494
- \if@mtc@setrules@ . . . . . 5528, 5549
- \if@mtc@setttitle@ . . . . 5273, 5275, 5294
- \if@mtc@setttitlefont@ . . 5232, 5234, 5253
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ . . 2504, 2611,  
7045
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ . 2504, 2611,  
7045
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ . . . . . 5452, 5494
- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ . . . . . 5528, 5570
- \if@mtc@ss@insection@ . . 6058, 6460, 7274
- \if@mtc@toc@used@ . 6379, 6640, 6644, 6653,  
6858, 6893, 6928
- \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ . . . 2510, 2627,  
7130
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ 2496, 2601, 7000
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ . . 2496, 2601,  
7000
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ (command) . . . . 396
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ . . . . . 5883
- \if@mtcfixindex@ . . . . . 5926
- \if@mtcfixnomclature@ . . . . . 5969
- \if@mtcfixnomenclature@ . . . 5969, 5978
- \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ . . . . . 2629, 2652
- \if@partlof@used@ (command) . . . . . 328
- \if@partlof@used@ . 2535, 3857, 6683, 6769,  
6856
- \if@partlot@used@ (command) . . . . . 331
- \if@partlot@used@ . 2535, 3931, 6683, 6769,  
6856
- \if@parttoc@used@ (command) . . . . . 325
- \if@parttoc@used@ . 2535, 3791, 6683, 6769,  
6856
- \if@sectlof@used@ (command) . . . . . 350
- \if@sectlof@used@ . 2547, 4451, 6665, 6741,  
6827, 6926
- \if@sectlot@used@ (command) . . . . . 353
- \if@sectlot@used@ . 2547, 4518, 6665, 6741,  
6827, 6926
- \if@secttoc@used@ (command) . . . . . 348
- \if@secttoc@used@ . 2547, 4384, 6741, 6827,  
6926
- \if@setrules@false . . . . . 5570
- \if@twocolumn . . . . . 3753, 3760, 3767
- \if@twoside . . . . . 1715
- \ifanappendix . . . . . 7885
- \ifartopt . . . . . 7871
- \ifcase (command) . . . . . 217, 241, 439
- \ifcase . . . . . 8417, 8619
- \ifdim . . . . . 4613
- \ifeof . 2688, 2692, 3503, 3531, 3569, 3596,  
3630, 3657, 4181, 4208, 4241, 4268,  
4301, 4328, 4785, 4812, 4845, 4872,  
4905, 4932
- \IfFileExists 2653, 2698, 4936, 5990, 6010,  
6084, 6130, 7283
- \ifFTR (command) . . . . . 674
- \ifheadnameref . . . . . 7898
- \ifkthightmtc 2581, 3049, 3778, 4371, 6045,  
7731

- ifmtarg (package) . . . . . [219](#), [277](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[443](#)]
- \ifmtc@lof@used@ . . . . . [6856](#), [6891](#), [6926](#)
- \ifmtc@lot@used@ . . . . . [6856](#), [6891](#), [6926](#)
- \ifmtc@toc@used@ . . . . . [6856](#), [6891](#), [6926](#)
- \ifmtcoffwarn@ . . . . . [7737](#), [7754](#), [7804](#)
- \ifmtcsecondpart (command) . . . . . [684](#)
- \ifmtcsecondpart . . . . . [266](#), [266](#), [2556](#), [2557](#),  
[2563](#), [7731](#), [8615](#)
- \ifnum (command) . . . . . [356](#)
- \ifnum . . . . . [8395](#), [8593](#), [8615](#)
- \ifodd . . . . . [1716](#)
- ifpdf (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [[323](#)]
- \ifscan@allowed . . . . . [393](#), [556](#)
- ifthen (package) . . . . . [219](#)
- \ifthenelse (command) . . . . . [219](#)
- \iftightmtc . . . . . [2581](#), [3049](#), [3778](#), [4371](#), [6045](#),  
[7731](#)
- \ifundottedmtc (command) . . . . . [306](#), [680](#)
- \ifundottedmtc . . . . . [2822](#), [3311](#), [3314](#), [3317](#),  
[3319](#), [3329](#), [6051](#), [7731](#)
- \ifx2689, 2984, 2989, 2992, 2997, 3093, 3127,  
3163, 3231, 3420, 3424, 3438, 3453,  
3456, 3459, 3462, 3465, 3468, 3471,  
3485, 3488, 3491, 3494, 3497, 3519,  
3523, 3525, 3528, 3541, 3544, 3558,  
3562, 3584, 3588, 3590, 3593, 3602,  
3605, 3619, 3623, 3645, 3649, 3651,  
3654, 3673, 3821, 3893, 3968, 4102,  
4104, 4118, 4133, 4136, 4139, 4142,  
4145, 4148, 4151, 4154, 4157, 4160,  
4163, 4166, 4169, 4172, 4175, 4196,  
4200, 4202, 4205, 4214, 4216, 4230,  
4234, 4256, 4260, 4262, 4265, 4274,  
4276, 4290, 4294, 4316, 4320, 4322,  
4325, 4417, 4483, 4550, 4598, 4602,  
4722, 4725, 4740, 4743, 4746, 4749,  
4752, 4755, 4770, 4773, 4776, 4779,  
4800, 4804, 4806, 4809, 4818, 4821,  
4836, 4839, 4860, 4864, 4866, 4869,  
4878, 4881, 4896, 4899, 4920, 4924,  
4926, 4929, 5094, 5112, 5152–5156,  
5158–5160, 5162–5164, 5166–5173,  
5175–5180, 5182–5187, 5189–5197,  
5199–5205, 5207–5213, 5236, 5277,  
5401, 5417, 5455, 5476, 5495, 5515,  
5531, 5552, 5571, 5590, 5634, 5651,  
5694, 5738, 5887, 5889, 5891, 5930,  
5932, 5934, 5973, 5975, 5977, 6583,  
6585, 6587, 6602, 6604, 6606, 6622,  
6624, 6626, 7761, 7772, 7783, 7852,  
7859, 8660, 8665, 8670, 9435, 9472,  
9482, 9492, 9829, 10003, 10048
- \ignorespaces . . . . . [3268](#)
- IKEDA, Hiroya . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[224](#)]
- imk (script) . . . . . [214](#), [217](#), [219](#), [235](#), [243–246](#), [677](#),  
[686](#)
- \immediate . . . . . [2571](#), [2574](#), [2687](#), [2699](#),  
[2707–2709](#), [2711](#), [2712](#), [2782](#), [2961](#),  
[3412–3414](#), [3435](#), [3436](#), [3449](#), [3450](#),  
[3482](#), [3483](#), [3526](#), [3527](#), [3555](#), [3556](#),  
[3591](#), [3592](#), [3616](#), [3617](#), [3652](#), [3653](#),  
[3663](#), [3681](#), [4095–4097](#), [4115](#), [4116](#),  
[4129](#), [4130](#), [4203](#), [4204](#), [4227](#), [4228](#),  
[4263](#), [4264](#), [4287](#), [4288](#), [4323](#), [4324](#),  
[4715–4717](#), [4736](#), [4737](#), [4767](#), [4768](#),  
[4807](#), [4808](#), [4832](#), [4833](#), [4867](#), [4868](#),  
[4892](#), [4893](#), [4927](#), [4928](#), [7288](#), [7289](#),  
[7291](#), [7293](#)
- \incrementmtc (command) . . . . . [36](#), [88](#), [206](#), [293](#),  
[675](#)
- \incrementmtc . . . . . [3007](#), [7558](#)
- \incrementptc (command) . . . . . [36](#), [88](#), [206](#), [252](#),  
[321](#), [675](#)
- \incrementptc . . . . . [3695](#), [7558](#)
- \incrementstc (command) . . . . . [36](#), [88](#), [206](#), [346](#),  
[675](#)
- \incrementstc . . . . . [4338](#), [7558](#)
- inde1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [543](#)
- inde2.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [543](#)
- indon (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [545](#)
- indon.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [545](#)
- indonesia1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [480](#)
- indonesia2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [480](#)
- indonesian (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [545](#)
- indonesian.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [545](#)
- indulekha (malayalam package) . . . . . [565](#)
- \input . . . . . [2782](#), [7374](#)
- \InputIfFileExists . . . . . [5993](#), [6012](#), [7248](#)
- insection (option) . . . . . [31](#),  
[54](#), [81](#), [101](#), [108](#), [172](#), [177](#), [183](#), [184](#),  
[197](#), [219](#), [234](#), [250](#), [251](#), [253](#), [402](#),  
[417](#), [418](#), [435](#), [669](#), [671](#), [684](#), [685](#)
- \insertchapterspace . . . . . [7875](#)
- INSTALL (file) . . . . . [219](#), [242](#), [243](#), [246](#), [251](#), [254](#),  
[672](#), [686](#), [691](#)
- \interlinepenalty . . . . . [1220](#), [1230](#), [2828](#), [3289](#),  
[3301](#), [4616](#)
- interlingua (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [545](#)
- interlingua.dtx (file) . . . . . [545](#)
- interlingua.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [257](#), [545](#),  
[696](#)
- intoc (nomencl package) . . . . . [136](#), [137](#)
- iranian.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [516](#)
- irish (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [546](#)
- irish.dtx (file) . . . . . [546](#)
- irish.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [546](#), [683](#)
- irish.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [547](#)

irlande.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 547  
 islam-pbc.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 476  
 islam-sw.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 476  
 islande.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 544  
 islandep.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 544  
 ISMashtamudi (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 ISMkarthika (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 ISMkaumudi (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 ISMrevathi (malayalam package) . . . . . 565  
 isr1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 541  
 isr2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 541  
 italian (language option) . . . . . 40, 547, 549  
 italian.dtx (file) . . . . . 547  
 italian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 547, 680  
 italian.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 548  
 italian2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 549  
 italian2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 549  
 italo1.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 548  
 italysm.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 548  
 \itemindent (command) . . . . . 295, 324  
 \itemindent . 3049, 3104, 3174, 3242, **3778**,  
 3832, 3905, 3980, 4373, 4374, 4428,  
 4495, 4562  
 \itemsep (command) . . . . . 295, 324  
 \itemsep . . . . . 3049, **3778**, 4373  
 \itshape (command) . . . . . 231  
 IVANOV, Dmitry . 207, 530, 532, 533, 556, 582,  
 587, 590, 699, ⇨[252]  
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar . . 577, 578, 699, ⇨[57]  
 ivrit.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 540  
 IWAKUMA, Tetsuo . . . . . 699, ⇨[225]  
 IZAOLA AZKONA, Zunbeltz . . . . 483, 699, ⇨[61]

## J

JABRI, Youssef . . . 208, 477, 516, 699, ⇨[226]  
 JACKOWSKI, Paweł . . . . . 699, ⇨[227]  
 JACQUES, Roland . . . . . 699, ⇨[228]  
 JACQUET, Christophe . . . . . 699, ⇨[229]  
 JAEHNE, Bernd . . . 63, 223, 249, 310, 314, 699,  
 ⇨[414]  
 JALAM, Radwan . . . . . 699  
 JANICH, Michael . . . . . 581, 699, ⇨[95]  
 japanese (language option) . . . . . 40, 550  
 japanese.mld (file) . . . . . 45, 242, 246, 549  
 japanese.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 549, 550  
 japanese2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 550  
 japanese2.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 550, 671  
 japanese2.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 550  
 japanese3 (language option) . . . 40, 550, 551  
 japanese3.mld (file) 242, 246, 550, 671, 680  
 japanese3.mlo (file) . . . 242, 246, 550, 551

japanese4 (language option) . . . . . 40, 551  
 japanese4.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 551, 671  
 japanese4.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 551  
 japanese5 (language option) . . . . . 40, 551  
 japanese5.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 551, 671  
 japanese5.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 551  
 japanese6 (language option) . . . . . 40, 552  
 japanese6.mld (file) 242, 246, 254, 552, 690  
 japanese6.mlo (file) 242, 246, 254, 552, 690  
 japon1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 549  
 japon2.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 549  
 jaya (malayalam package) . . . . . 566  
 JEFFREY, Alan . . . . 699, ⇨[68, 230, 231, 310]  
 JENSEN, Frank . . . . . 699, ⇨[402]  
 JERNSLETTEN, Regnor . . . . . 595, 699, ⇨[78]  
 JIANG, Zhuhan . . . . . 78, 699, ⇨[232]  
 JIS.cap (file) . . . . . 550  
 JIS.cpx (file) . . . . . 550  
 \jobname (command) 217, 220, 256, 278, 283,  
 284, 296, 299, 302, 307, 308, 315,  
 318, 424, 436, 439, 687, 695  
 \jobname 2707, 2710, 2711, **2782**, 2971, 3068,  
 3071, 3116, 3138, 3141, 3188, 3206,  
 3209, 3256, 3412–3414, 3428, 3429,  
 3432, 3433, 3442, 3443, 3446, 3447,  
 3475, 3476, 3479, 3480, 3527, 3548,  
 3549, 3552, 3553, 3592, 3609, 3610,  
 3613, 3614, 3653, 3798, 3801, 3845,  
 3864, 3867, 3919, 3939, 3942, 3994,  
 4095–4097, 4108, 4109, 4112, 4113,  
 4122, 4123, 4126, 4127, 4204, 4220,  
 4221, 4224, 4225, 4264, 4280, 4281,  
 4284, 4285, 4324, 4391, 4394, 4440,  
 4458, 4461, 4509, 4525, 4528, 4577,  
 4715–4717, 4729, 4730, 4733, 4734,  
 4760, 4761, 4764, 4765, 4808, 4825,  
 4826, 4829, 4830, 4868, 4885, 4886,  
 4889, 4890, 4928, **4936**, 6169, 7240,  
 7245, **7283**, **7374**  
 JOLY, Loïc . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 JONES, David M. . . . . 54, 80, 89, 699, ⇨[233]  
 JORSSSEN, Christophe . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 JUHASZ, Robert . . . . . 585, 699, ⇨[77]  
 JULAUD, Jean-Joseph . . . . . 699, ⇨[234–236]  
 JUNG, Stefan . . . . . 699  
 jura (class) 54, 76, 89, 171, 207, 220, 408, 414,  
 683, ⇨[102]  
 JURAFSKY, Dan . . . . . 27, 247, 662, 699



## K

**k-loose** (default option) [43](#), [81](#), [220](#), [252](#), [271](#),  
[347](#), [401](#), [676](#)  
**k-tight** (option) [43](#), [63](#), [81](#), [143](#), [220](#), [252](#), [271](#),  
[295](#), [324](#), [347](#), [401](#), [676](#)  
 KAKUTO, Akira . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[237](#)]  
 KANERVA, Mikko . . . . . [517](#), [518](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[79](#)]  
 kanlel.sty (file) . . . . . [552](#)  
 kannada (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [552](#)  
 kannada-n.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [552](#)  
 kannada.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [552](#), [682](#), [693](#)  
 KannadaT<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . [220](#), [552](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[445](#)]  
 karnad1.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [553](#)  
 karnataka.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [553](#)  
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak . . . . . [608](#), [699](#),  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [[238](#), [296](#)]  
 karthika (malayalam package) . . . . . [566](#)  
 KASTRUP, David . . . . . [699](#)  
 kaumudi (malayalam package) . . . . . [566](#)  
 kerala.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [565](#)  
 \kern (command) . . . . . [293](#), [664](#)  
 \kern . . . . . [2102](#), [2103](#), [2442](#)–[2444](#),  
[2449](#)–[2451](#), [2455](#)–[2457](#), [3022](#), [3091](#),  
[3161](#), [3229](#), [3819](#), [3891](#), [3966](#), [4414](#),  
[4481](#), [4548](#), [5000](#)–[5002](#), [5009](#)–[5011](#),  
[5018](#)–[5020](#), [7400](#), [7408](#), [7416](#), [7428](#),  
[7436](#), [7444](#), [7455](#), [7463](#), [7471](#)  
 \kernafterminilof (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernafterminilof . . . . . [2441](#), [3194](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernafterminilot (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernafterminilot . . . . . [2441](#), [3262](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernafterminitoc (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#), [693](#)  
 \kernafterminitoc . . . . . [2441](#), [3122](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernafterpartlof (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernafterpartlof . . . . . [2441](#), [3925](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernafterpartlot (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernafterpartlot . . . . . [2441](#), [4000](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernafterparttoc (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#), [254](#)  
 \kernafterparttoc . . . . . [2441](#), [3851](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernaftersectlof (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernaftersectlof . . . . . [2441](#), [4513](#), [4581](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernaftersectlot (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernaftersectlot . . . . . [2441](#), [7392](#)  
 \kernaftersecttoc (command) . . . . . [79](#), [86](#)  
 \kernaftersecttoc . . . . . [2441](#), [4446](#), [7392](#)  
 KERYELL, Ronan . . . . . [218](#), [699](#)  
 KEW, Jonathan . . . . . [232](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[239](#)]  
 khalkha (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [553](#)  
 khalkha.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [553](#), [678](#)  
 khalkha.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [619](#)  
 KIELHORN, Axel . . . . . [89](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[317](#), [318](#)]  
 KIM, Ki-Joo . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[240](#)–[242](#)]

KLAUS, Guntermann . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[185](#)]  
 KLEB, Bil . . . . . [54](#), [699](#)  
 KLEIWEG, Peter . . . . . [545](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[80](#)]  
 KLEVELAND, Rune . . . . . [577](#), [578](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[57](#)]  
 Klöckl, Ingo . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[243](#)]  
 KNAPPEN, Jörg . . . . . [480](#), [481](#), [497](#), [510](#), [699](#),  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [[81](#), [82](#), [93](#), [244](#)]  
 KNUTH, Donald E. [213](#), [229](#), [230](#), [232](#), [237](#), [699](#),  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [[245](#)–[248](#)]  
 KOAUNGHI, Un . . . . . [219](#), [538](#), [540](#), [700](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[249](#)]  
 KOHM, Markus . . . . . [89](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[317](#), [318](#), [364](#)]  
 KOPKA, Helmut . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[250](#)]  
 KOPPANYI, Attila . . . . . [563](#), [564](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[65](#)]  
 KORAI, Adamantios . . . . . [533](#), [699](#)  
 korean1.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [536](#)  
 korean2.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [536](#)  
 kos-alb.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [474](#)  
 kos-ml.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [474](#)  
 kottakkal (malayalam package) . . . . . [566](#)  
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent . . . . . [699](#)  
 KRATT, Kai . . . . . [699](#)  
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar . . . . . [699](#)  
 KROONENBERG, Siep . . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[251](#)]  
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. . . . . [207](#), [530](#), [532](#), [533](#), [556](#),  
[582](#), [587](#), [590](#), [604](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[252](#)]  
 \ktightmtcfalse (command) . . . . . [43](#), [82](#)  
 \ktightmtcfalse . . . . . [2582](#), [6048](#), [7733](#)  
 \ktightmtctrue (command) . . . . . [43](#), [82](#)  
 \ktightmtctrue . . . . . [6047](#)  
 KUDLEK, Manfred . . . . . [512](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[44](#)]  
 KUHN, Markus G. . . . . [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[253](#)]  
 KULZER, Florian . . . . . [699](#)  
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki . . . . . [550](#), [552](#), [699](#)  
 KUMMER, Olaf . . . . . [512](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[44](#)]  
 KÜSTER, Frank . . . . . [55](#), [77](#), [89](#), [598](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[254](#)]

## L

\l@chapter (command) . . . . . [72](#), [282](#), [305](#), [327](#)  
 \l@chapter . . . . . [160](#), [2761](#), [3266](#), [3840](#), [3841](#),  
[4989](#), [4991](#), [7642](#)  
 \l@chapter@SVPN . . . . . [3840](#), [3841](#)  
 \l@coffee (command) . . . . . [401](#)  
 \l@coffee . . . . . [6037](#), [7789](#)  
 \l@listof . . . . . [4988](#), [7731](#)  
 \l@mti . . . . . [3038](#), [3043](#), [3076](#), [3146](#), [3214](#), [3355](#),  
[3374](#), [3393](#)  
 \l@paragraph (command) . . . . . [72](#), [369](#)  
 \l@paragraph . . . . . [160](#), [4995](#), [7646](#)  
 \l@part (command) . . . . . [72](#), [279](#)  
 \l@part . . . . . [160](#), [2726](#), [4990](#), [7641](#)  
 \l@pchapter . . . . . [4005](#)

- `\l@psect` . . . . . 4005
- `\l@pti` . 3745, 3753, 3775, 3809, 3877, 3952, 4038, 4057, 4076
- `\l@schapter` . . . . . 4585
- `\l@section` (command) . . . . . 72, 281, 369
- `\l@section` . . . 160, 2752, 4988, 4992, 7643
- `\l@starchapter` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@starparagraph` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@starp` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@starsection` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@starsubparagraph` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@starsubsection` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@starsubsubsection` . . . . . 4988, 7641
- `\l@sti` . 4360, 4365, 4399, 4467, 4534, 4658, 4677, 4696
- `\l@subfigure` . . . . . 2143
- `\l@subparagraph` (command) . . . . . 72
- `\l@subparagraph` . . . . . 160, 4996, 7647
- `\l@subsection` (command) . . . . . 72, 334
- `\l@subsection` . . . . . 160, 4993, 7644
- `\l@subsubsection` (command) . . . . . 72
- `\l@subsubsection` . . . . . 160, 4994, 7645
- `\l@xchapter` (command) . . . . . 282, 305
- `\l@xchapter` . . . . . 2761, 3266, 7587
- `\l@xpart` (command) . . . . . 279, 334
- `\l@xpart` . . . . . 2726, 4005, 7587
- `\l@xsect` (command) . . . . . 281
- `\l@xsect` . . . . . 2752, 4585, 7587
- `\l@xsection` (command) . . . . . 688
- `\l@xsection` . . . . . 4586
- `\label` . 1748, 1828, 1947, 2184, 2186, 2216, 2220, 2239, 2389, 2392, 2395, 2398, 2401, 2404, 2407, 2410
- `\labelitemi` . . . . . 1273, 1278
- `\labelsep` 3105, 3175, 3243, 3832, 3906, 3981, 4429, 4496, 4563
- `\labelwidth` . 3104, 3174, 3242, 3832, 3905, 3980, 4428, 4495, 4562
- LABORDE, Stéphane . . . . . 699
- LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas . . . . . 699, ⇨[255]
- LAGALLY, Klaus . . 40, 208, 475, 477, 540, 699, ⇨[256, 257]
- lamed3.png (graphic file) . 221, 232, 243, 697
- LAMPORT, Leslie . . 221, 699, ⇨[68, 258–263]
- LANARI, Fabio . . . . . 699
- `\LANG` (command) . . . . . 217, 439
- lang-g.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 466
- LANGE, Robert . . . . . 699
- LANGMYHR, Dag . . . . . 577, 578, 666, 699
- `\LangSig` . . . . . 1944, 1979
- Language options
  - acadian . . . . . 471, 670
  - acadien . . . . . 40, 471, 670
  - afrikaan . . . . . 40, 473
  - afrikaans . . . . . 40, 473
  - albanian . . . . . 40, 473
  - american . . . . . 40, 475
  - arab . . . . . 40, 475, 477, 478
  - arab2 . . . . . 40, 477
  - arabi . . . . . 40, 477
  - arabic . . . . . 40, 208, 478
  - armenian . . . . . 40, 208, 478
  - australian . . . . . 40, 478
  - austrian . . . . . 40, 479
  - bahasa . . . . . 40, 480
  - bahasai . . . . . 40, 480, 545
  - bahasam . . . . . 40, 481, 565, 570
  - bangla . 40, 209, 256, 482, 484, 669, 695
  - basque . . . . . 40, 483
  - bengali . . . . . 40, 209, 256, 482, 484, 695
  - bicig . . . . . 40, 225, 485, 486, 609
  - bicig2 . . . . . 40, 485, 609
  - bicig3 . . . . . 40, 486, 612
  - bithe . . . . . 40, 225, 486, 570
  - brazil . . . . . 40, 488, 490
  - brazilian . . . . . 40, 490
  - breton . . . . . 40, 490
  - british . . . . . 40, 491
  - bulgarian . . . . . 40, 491
  - bulgarianb . . . . . 40, 492
  - buryat . . . . . 40, 493, 494
  - buryat2 . . . . . 40, 494
  - canadian . . . . . 40, 494, 670
  - canadien . . . . . 40, 494, 670
  - castillan . . . . . 40, 497, 600
  - castillian . . . . . 40
  - catalan . . . . . 40, 497, 600
  - chinese1 . . . . . 40, 498
  - chinese2 . . . . . 40, 501
  - croatian . . . . . 40, 502
  - czech . . . . . 40, 503
  - danish . . . . . 40, 506
  - devanagari . . . . . 40, 218, 506, 542
  - dutch . . . . . 40, 507
  - english** (default) . 40, 81, 434, 475, 478, 491, 494, 508, 575, 612, 615, 670
  - english1 . . . . . 40, 509
  - english2 . . . . . 40, 509
  - esperant . . . . . 40, 510
  - esperanto . . . . . 40, 510
  - estonian . . . . . 40, 511, 668
  - ethiopia . . . . . 40, 512
  - ethiopian . . . . . 40, 216, 512
  - ethiopian2 . . . . . 40, 512
  - farsi . . . . . 208, 216
  - farsi1 . . . . . 40, 514
  - farsi2 . . . . . 40, 514, 515



- farsi3 . . . . . 40, 516
- finnish . . . . . 40, 517
- finnish2 . . . . . 40, 518
- francais . . . . . 40, 519
- french . 40, 494, 519, 520, 523, 669, 670
- french1 . . . . . 40, 521
- french2 . . . . . 40, 93, 226, 522
- frenchb . . . . . 40, 523
- frenchle . . . . . 40, 523, 669
- frenchpro . . . . . 40, 523, 669
- galician . . . . . 40, 524, 600
- german . . . . . 40, 122, 479, 525, 529
- germanb . . . . . 40, 528, 575
- germanb2 . . . . . 40, 529
- greek . . . . . 40, 530
- greek-mono . . . . . 40, 45, 530
- greek-polydemo . . . . . 40, 45, 532
- greek-polykatha . . . . . 40, 45, 533
- guarani . . . . . 40, 218, 534
- hangul-u8 . . . . . 40, 538
- hangul1 . . . . . 40, 535
- hangul2 . . . . . 40, 537
- hangul3 . . . . . 40, 537
- hangul4 . . . . . 40, 538
- hanja-u8 . . . . . 40, 540
- hanja1 . . . . . 40, 539
- hanja2 . . . . . 40, 539
- hebrew . . . . . 40, 208, 540
- hebrew2 . . . . . 40, 541
- hindi . . . . . 40, 218, 542
- hindi-modern . . . . . 40, 218, 542
- hungarian . . . . . 40, 544, 563
- icelandic . . . . . 40, 545
- indon . . . . . 40, 545
- indonesian . . . . . 40, 545
- interlingua . . . . . 40, 545
- irish . . . . . 40, 546
- italian . . . . . 40, 547, 549
- italian2 . . . . . 40, 549
- japanese . . . . . 40, 550
- japanese2 . . . . . 40, 550
- japanese3 . . . . . 40, 550, 551
- japanese4 . . . . . 40, 551
- japanese5 . . . . . 40, 551
- japanese6 . . . . . 40, 552
- kannada . . . . . 40, 552
- khalkha . . . . . 40, 553
- latin . . . . . 40, 554
- latin2 . . . . . 40, 554
- latinc . . . . . 40, 555
- latinc2 . . . . . 40, 555
- latvian . . . . . 40, 556, 557
- latvian2 . . . . . 40, 557, 558
- letton . . . . . 40, 556, 557
- letton2 . . . . . 40, 558
- lithuanian . . . . . 40, 558
- lithuanian2 . . . . . 40, 559
- lowersorbian . . . . . 40, 559, 562
- lsorbian . . . . . 40, 559, 562
- magyar . . . . . 40, 544, 563
- magyar2 . . . . . 40, 564
- magyar3 . . . . . 40, 564
- malay . . . . . 40, 565
- malayalam-b . . . . . 40, 565
- malayalam-keli . . . . . 40, 566
- malayalam-keli2 . . . . . 40, 567
- malayalam-mr . . . . . 40, 567
- malayalam-omega . . . . . 40, 45, 471, 568
- malayalam-rachana . . . . . 40, 568
- malayalam-rachana2 . . . . . 40, 569
- malayalam-rachana3 . . . . . 40, 569
- manju . . . . . 40, 486, 570
- mexican . . . . . 40, 570
- meyalu . . . . . 40, 570
- mongol . . . . . 40, 571
- mongolb . . . . . 40, 574
- mongolian . . . . . 40, 575
- naustrian . . . . . 40, 575, 670
- newzealand . . . . . 40, 575
- ngerman . . . . . 40, 575, 670
- ngermanb . . . . . 40, 575, 576, 670
- ngermanb2 . . . . . 40, 576
- norsk . . . . . 40, 577
- norsk2 . . . . . 40, 578
- nynorsk . . . . . 40, 578, 579
- nynorsk2 . . . . . 40, 579
- occitan . . . . . 40, 579
- occitan2 . . . . . 40, 580
- polish . . . . . 40, 581, 582
- polish2 . . . . . 40, 45, 582
- polski . . . . . 40, 234, 582
- portuges . . . . . 40, 583
- portuguese . . . . . 40, 583
- romanian . . . . . 40, 585
- romanian2 . . . . . 40, 586
- romanian3 . . . . . 40, 586
- russian . . . . . 40, 587, 590–592
- russian-cca . . . . . 40, 593
- russian-cca1 . . . . . 40, 593
- russian-lh . . . . . 40, 593
- russian-lhcyralt . . . . . 40, 594
- russian-lhcyrkoi . . . . . 40, 594
- russian-lhcyrwin . . . . . 40, 595
- russian2m . . . . . 40, 45, 587
- russian2o . . . . . 40, 45, 590
- russianb . . . . . 40, 591
- russianc . . . . . 40, 592

- samin . . . . . 40, 595
- scottish . . . . . 40, 596
- serbian . . . . . 40, 597
- serbianc . . . . . 40, 598
- slovak . . . . . 40, 598
- slovene . . . . . 40, 599
- spanish . . . . . 40, 497, 600
- spanish2 . . . . . 40, 600, 603
- spanish3 . . . . . 40, 45, 600, 604
- spanish4 . . . . . 40, 600, 604
- swahili . . . . . 40, 605
- swedish . . . . . 40, 606
- swedish2 . . . . . 40, 606
- thai . . . . . 40, 608
- turkish . . . . . 40, 609
- uighur . . . . . 40, 609
- uighur2 . . . . . 40, 609
- uighur3 . . . . . 40, 612
- UKenglish . . . . . 40, 612
- ukraineb . . . . . 40, 612
- ukrainian . . . . . 40, 612
- uppersorbian . . . . . 40, 614, 615
- USenglish . . . . . 40, 615
- usorbian . . . . . 40, 614, 615
- vietnam . . . . . 40, 615, 616
- vietnamese . . . . . 40, 616
- welsh . . . . . 40, 616
- xalx . . . . . 40, 553, 617–619
- xalx2 . . . . . 40, 618
- xalx3 . . . . . 40, 619
- LAPKO, Olga G. 89, 217, 492, 574, 591, 612, 699,  
↪[36–38, 83, 96, 264–266]
- \LARGE (command) . . . . . 231
- \LARGE . . . . . 3743
- \Large (command) . . . . . 231
- \Large . . . . . 1739, 1924, 3729
- \large (command) . . . . . 231
- \large . . . . . 1248, 1272, 1277, 1281, 1284, 1494,  
3036, 4359
- LARSEN, Henning . . . . . 506, 699, ↪[84]
- LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc . . . . . 699
- LASIS, Andris . . . . . 557, 699
- latex-advanced.pdf (file) . . . . . 647
- latex.fmt (file) . . . . . 61
- latex.tex (file) . . . . . 61, 664
- L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM,  
↪[231, 261, 267–272, 418]
- latin (language option) . . . . . 40, 554
- latin.dtx (file) . . . . . 554, 555
- latin.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 554, 668
- latin2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 554
- latin2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 554, 673
- latinc (language option) . . . . . 40, 555
- latinc.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 255, 555, 694
- latinc2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 555
- latinc2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 255, 555, 694
- latvian (language option) . . . . . 40, 556, 557
- latvian-d.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 556
- latvian-r1.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 556
- latvian.ldf (file) . . . . . 556, 557
- latvian.mld (file) 207, 242, 246, 556, 557, 672
- latvian2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 557, 558
- latvian2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 255, 557, 558,  
694
- LAUCOU, Christian . . . . . 699, ↪[51]
- LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe . . . . . 699
- LAUNAY, Arnaud . . . . . 699
- LAUVERNET, Claire . . . . . 699
- LAVVA, Boris . . . . . 541, 699, ↪[85]
- \ldots . . . . . 1451, 1455, 1459, 2346, 2354
- \leavevmode . . . . . 308, 2779, 2829, 3102, 3108,  
3119, 3123, 3172, 3180, 3191, 3195,  
3240, 3248, 3259, 3263, 3290, 3302,  
3452, 3559, 3563, 3620, 3624, 3830,  
3834, 3848, 3852, 3903, 3911, 3922,  
3926, 3978, 3986, 3997, 4001, 4132,  
4231, 4235, 4291, 4295, 4426, 4431,  
4443, 4447, 4493, 4501, 4514, 4560,  
4568, 4582, 4739, 4835, 4895
- LEBACQ, André . . . . . 699
- LECARME, Olivier . . . . . 699, ↪[273]
- LECLERC, Jacques . . . . . 699, ↪[274]
- ledarab (package) . . . . . ↪[435]
- ledmac (package) . . . . . ↪[437]
- ledpar (package) . . . . . ↪[438]
- \leftmargin . . . . . 3054, 3055, 3103, 3173, 3241,  
3782, 3785, 3831, 3904, 3979, 4377,  
4378, 4427, 4494, 4561
- \leftskip 2826, 2830, 2831, 3287, 3292, 3299,  
3304
- LEGRAND, Jeanne . . . . . 699, ↪[331]
- LEHMAN, Philipp . . . . . 699, ↪[275]
- LEMBERG, Werner . . . . . 211,  
492, 498, 501, 535, 537–539, 550,  
551, 574, 591, 608, 612, 615, 699,  
↪[83, 96, 276–278, 304, 418]
- LEONHARDT, Thomas . . . . . 669, 699
- LE PENNEC, Erwan . . . . . 699, ↪[29]
- LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane . . . . . 699
- \let (command) . . . . . 74, 75, 667
- LE THUAUT, Julien . . . . . 699
- LÉTOILE, René . . . . . 699, ↪[125]
- letter (class) . . . . . 27, 61, 198, 212, 220, 221, 236,  
↪[263]
- letton (language option) . . . . . 40, 556, 557
- letton.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 557, 672
- letton2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 558

- letton2.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 255, 558, 694
- lettonie.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 556
- LEWENBERG, Adam . . . . . 699
- LH (package) . . . . . 593, ⇔[316]
- lhcyr (package) . . . . . 594, 595, ⇔[447]
- lhcyralt.sty (file) . . . . . 594
- lhcyrkoi.sty (file) . . . . . 594
- lhcyrwin.sty (file) . . . . . 595
- LICKERT, Knut . . . . . 224, 400, 699, ⇔[279]
- LINDGREN, Ulf A. . . . . 54, 76, 89, 699, ⇔[280]
- \linebreak (command) . . . . . 59
- \linewidth (command) . . . . . 46
- \linewidth . . . . . 1246, 1255, 1262, 1947
- LINGNAU, Anselm . . . . . 89, 217, 699, ⇔[281]
- LIPKIN, Bernice Sacks . . . . . 699, ⇔[282]
- lipsum (package) . . . 91, 95, 221, 686, ⇔[197]
- \lipsum . . . . . 16, 17, 21, 22, 34, 35, 39, 40, 217, 219, 224, 226, 228, 234, 236, 238, 244, 246, 248, 319–342, 344–379, 763, 765, 771, 774, 778, 783, 787, 789, 834–837, 840–866, 872, 873, 881–883, 890, 895–900, 910–914, 921, 930, 932–934, 942, 943, 951, 954–956, 963, 969–971, 1023–1026, 1029–1057, 1065, 1066, 1081–1083, 1090, 1093, 1096, 1099, 1102, 1105, 1108, 1115–1119, 1126, 1127, 1136, 1138–1140, 1147–1150, 1157–1159, 1171–1174, 1179, 1525–1531, 1563–1567, 1584, 1588, 1592, 1597, 1601, 1604, 1609, 1613, 1617, 1631, 1635, 1639, 1644, 1648, 1651, 1656, 1660, 1664, 1680, 1686, 1695, 1701, 1895–1897, 1901–1903, 1932–1934, 2115–2140
- \list (command) . . . . . 295, 324
- \list . . . . . 3049, 3778, 4372
- listfiles (default option) . . . . . 53, 62, 81, 154, 205, 221, 232, 252, 254, 403, 436, 676, 689
- \listoffigures (command) 23, 30, 32, 34, 51, 67, 82–85, 179–181, 283
- \listoffigures . . . 51, 110, 404, 566, 1014, 1674, 2169, 2315, 2378, 2743, 6644, 6873, 6908, 6943
- \listoftables (command) 23, 30, 32, 34, 51, 54, 67, 82–85, 143, 180, 181, 283
- \listoftables 52, 111, 404, 566, 1016, 1570, 1620, 2211, 2743, 6644, 6884, 6919, 6954
- \listparindent (command) . . . . . 295, 324
- \listparindent . . . 3049, 3105, 3175, 3243, 3778, 3832, 3906, 3981, 4374, 4429, 4496, 4563
- liststotoc (KOMA-Script package) . 51, 143
- liststotocnumbered (KOMA-Script package) 51
- lithuanian (language option) . . . . . 40, 558
- lithuanian.ldf (file) . . . . . 558, 559
- lithuanian.mld (file) 242, 246, 558, 667, 680
- lithuanian2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 559
- lithuanian2.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 255, 256, 559, 694, 695
- lituanie.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 558
- livre.tex (old example document) . 687, 689
- LOBEL, Pierre . . . . . 699
- \localgreek . . . . . 8736, 8773, 8810
- \locallatvian . . . . 9187–9189, 9191–9193, 9195–9197
- \localpolish . . . . . 9653
- \localrussian . . . . . 9763, 9794
- \localspanish . . . . . 10030
- lofdepth (depth counter) . . 35, 221, 291, 321, 345
- logographic . . . . . 467
- LOKAJÍČEK, Miloš V. . . . . 503, 699, ⇔[86]
- LOMBARD, Stoffel . . . . . 473, 699
- loose (default option) . 43, 81, 220, 222, 238, 249, 271, 347, 401, 667, 669
- LORETI, Maurizio . . . . 55, 77, 89, 699, ⇔[283]
- LORINO, Tristan . . . . . 699
- lotdepth (depth counter) . . 35, 222, 291, 304, 321, 345
- LOVE, Tim . . . . . 699, ⇔[284, 285]
- lowersorbian (language option) . 40, 559, 562
- lowersorbian.mld (file) . 242, 246, 559, 562, 681
- LOZANO, Vincent . . . . . 699, ⇔[286]
- lsorbian (language option) . . . . 40, 559, 562
- lsorbian.dtx (file) . . . . . 559
- lsorbian.mld (file) . 242, 246, 256, 562, 683, 695
- ltnews (class) . . . . . 27, 212, 222, ⇔[231]
- ltxdoc (class) . . . . . 27, 212, 222, ⇔[112]
- LUA<sub>T</sub><sub>E</sub><sub>X</sub> (package) . . . . . 232, ⇔[215, 216]
- LUECKING, Daniel H. . . . . 699
- LUNDE, Ken . . . . . 212, 699, ⇔[287–289]
- luso1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 584
- luso2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243
- LYHNE, Anders . . . . . 699

## M

- M0001 (message) . . . 66, 151, 203, 223, 228, 458  
 \M@getttitle . . . . . 7898  
 MacKAY, Pierre A. . . . . 609, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67]  
 MADSEN, Lars . . . . . 699  
 magyar (language option) . . . . . 40, 544, 563  
 magyar.dtx (file) . . . . . 563, 564  
 magyar.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 544, 563, 683  
 magyar2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 564  
 magyar2.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 564, 673, 683  
 magyar3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 564  
 magyar3.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 564, 680, 683  
 MAHONEY, Richard . . . . . 506, 542, 699  
 \mainmatter (command) . . . . . 79  
 \mainmatter . . . . . 194  
 makam (malayalam package) . . . . . 566  
 \makeatletter (command) . . . . . 72, 222  
 \makeatletter 304, 392, 556, 816, 999, 1216,  
     1712, 2148, 2968, 3110, 3182, 3250,  
     3341, 3346, 3351, 3836, 3913, 3988,  
     4024, 4028, 4032, 4433, 4503, 4570,  
     4644, 4648, 4652, 7962  
 \makeatother (command) . . . . . 72, 222  
 \makeatother 311, 395, 556, 816, 999, 1233,  
     1723, 2150  
 \makenomenclature . . . . . 2014  
 \maketitle . . . . . 1743  
 \MakeUpperCase (command) . . . . . 685  
 \MakeUpperCase . . . 3075, 3145, 3213, 3805,  
     3871, 3946, 4399, 4465, 4532  
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. . . 492, 591, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [266]  
 malavika (o package) . . . . . 566  
 malay (language option) . . . . . 40, 565  
 malay.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 565  
 malayalam (package) . 45, 471, 565–569,  $\hookrightarrow$ [4]  
 malayalam-b (language option) . . . . . 40, 565  
 malayalam-b.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 256, 565,  
     695  
 malayalam-keli (language option) . . 40, 566  
 malayalam-keli.mld (file) 242, 246, 566, 674  
 malayalam-keli2 (language option) . 40, 567  
 malayalam-keli2.mld (file) . 242, 246, 256,  
     567, 695  
 malayalam-mr (language option) . . . 40, 567  
 malayalam-mr.mld (file) . 242, 246, 256, 567,  
     695  
 malayalam-omega (language option) . 40, 45,  
     471, 568  
 malayalam-omega.mld (file) . 242, 246, 568,  
     682  
 malayalam-omega.mlo (file) . 242, 246, 256,  
     568, 682, 696  
 malayalam-rachana (language option) 40, 568  
 malayalam-rachana.mld (file) 242, 246, 568,  
     674  
 malayalam-rachana2 (language option) . . 40,  
     569  
 malayalam-rachana2.mld (file) . . . 242, 246,  
     569, 674  
 malayalam-rachana3 (language option) . . 40,  
     569  
 malayalam-rachana3.mld (file) . . . 242, 246,  
     256, 569, 695  
 malayalam.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 565  
 malayalam.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 565  
 malaysia1.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 481  
 malaysia2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 481  
 MALECKI, Pierre . . . . . 699  
 manchu.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 487  
 manchuria.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 487  
 manju (language option) . . . . . 40, 486, 570  
 manju.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 570, 678  
 manjuc.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 487  
 manjui.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 486  
 margincap (environment) . . . . . 222  
 MARGOLIS, Bob . . . . . 481, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [82]  
 \markboth (command) . . . . . 73, 325, 673, 685  
 \markboth2979, 2980, 3806, 3872, 3873, 3947,  
     3948  
 MARKEY, Nicolas . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29, 290, 291]  
 \markright (command) . . . . . 73  
 MARR, Marcus . . . . . 699  
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
 MARSHALL, Alan . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [292]  
 MART, Terry . . . . . 480, 481, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [81, 82]  
 MARTINI, Éric . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [293]  
 marvosym (package) . . . . . 224,  $\hookrightarrow$ [212]  
 MASLOV, Vadim . . . . . 593, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52, 207]  
 MASSIAS, Henri . . . . . 67, 699  
 MATTHIAS, Andreas . . . . . 699  
 MATTISSON, Sven . . . . . 606, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [294]  
 mcaption (package) . 55, 73, 89, 173, 222, 252,  
     275, 429, 677,  $\hookrightarrow$ [213]  
 McDONNELL, Rowland . 54, 71, 89, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [295]  
 McKAY, Ben . . . . . 699  
 \mdseries (command) . . . . . 231  
 \mdseries 807, 1521, 1559, 3030, 3037, 3719,  
     3732, 3734, 4350  
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant . . . . . 608, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [296]  
 mem.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 689  
 mem1.tex (old example document) . . 687, 689  
 memoir (class)  
     54, 65–67, 73, 89, 106, 133, 134, 156,  
     158, 159, 161, 195, 203, 223, 226–  
     228, 241, 250, 252, 256, 267, 276,

285, 311, 412, 458, 670, 675–677,  
695, ↪[439, 441, 442]

memoir.cls (file) . . . . . 223, 276

MENGIN, Sébastien . . . . . 699, ↪[29]

\MessageBreak (command) . . . . . 680

\MessageBreak 2633, 2644, 2646, 2648, 2739,  
2797, 2802, 2804, 2814, 2819, 3011,  
3360, 3362, 3379, 3381, 3398, 3400,  
3506, 3572, 3633, 3702, 4043, 4045,  
4062, 4064, 4081, 4083, 4184, 4244,  
4304, 4340, 4663, 4665, 4682, 4684,  
4701, 4703, 4788, 4848, 4908, 4959,  
4961, 4963, 4965, 4973, 4975, 5099,  
5101, 5103, 5106, 5117, 5119, 5121,  
5124, 5220, 5226, 5229, 5241, 5243,  
5245, 5248, 5258, 5260, 5266, 5269,  
5282, 5284, 5286, 5289, 5299, 5301,  
5307, 5310, 5406, 5408, 5410, 5413,  
5422, 5424, 5426, 5429, 5439, 5445,  
5448, 5482, 5485, 5487, 5489, 5503,  
5506, 5508, 5518, 5523, 5558, 5561,  
5563, 5565, 5578, 5581, 5583, 5593,  
5598, 5639, 5641, 5643, 5646, 5657,  
5659, 5661, 5664, 5676, 5678, 5684,  
5687, 5699, 5701, 5703, 5706, 5716,  
5719, 5724, 5731, 5743, 5745, 5747,  
5750, 5760, 5763, 5768, 5775, 5865,  
5867, 5875, 5877, 5899, 5908, 5910,  
5918, 5920, 5942, 5951, 5953, 5961,  
5963, 5985, 5995, 5999, 6001, 6004,  
6006, 6015, 6018, 6020, 6022, 6025,  
6027, 6032, 6063, 6065, 6068, **6079**,  
6092, 6094, 6096, 6098, 6108, 6110,  
6112, 6114, 6121, 6123, 6125, 6137,  
6139, 6141, 6143, 6146, 6148, **6160**,  
6386, 6392, 6394, 6400, 6402, 6408,  
6410, 6416, 6418, 6424, 6426, 6432,  
6434, 6440, 6442, 6448, 6450, 6456,  
6458, 6466, 6468, 6470, 6472, 6474,  
6476, 6483, 6485, 6487, 6489, 6491,  
6498, 6500, 6502, 6504, 6506, 6514,  
6516, 6524, 6526, 6533, 6535, 6541,  
6543, 6548, 6550, 6559, 6561, 6563,  
6565, 6571, 6573, 6578, 6580, 6592,  
6597, 6611, 6616, 6631, 6636, 6674,  
6676, 6678, 6688, 6697, 6706, 6717,  
6726, 6735, 6746, 6755, 6764, 6774,  
6783, 6792, 6803, 6812, 6821, 6832,  
6841, 6850, 6861, 6863, 6872, 6874,  
6883, 6885, 6896, 6898, 6907, 6909,  
6918, 6920, 6931, 6933, 6942, 6944,  
6953, 6955, 6968, 6976, 6984, 6995,  
7004, 7013, 7022, 7031, 7040, 7049,  
7058, 7067, 7076, 7085, 7094, 7103,

7111, 7113, 7115, 7122, 7124, 7126,  
7133, 7135, 7137, 7144, 7146, 7148,  
7155, 7162, 7169, 7176, 7183, 7190,  
7197, 7204, 7211, 7218, 7225, 7232,  
7239, 7244, 7252, 7254, 7256, 7259,  
7261, 7286, 7347, 7350, 7397, 7399,  
7405, 7407, 7413, 7415, 7425, 7427,  
7433, 7435, 7441, 7443, 7452, 7454,  
7460, 7462, 7468, 7470, 7478, 7480,  
7486, 7488, 7494, 7496, 7506, 7508,  
7514, 7516, 7522, 7524, 7533, 7535,  
7541, 7543, 7549, 7551, 7741, 7743,  
7745, 7747, 7749, 7751, 7757, 7759,  
7768, 7770, 7779, 7781, 7807, 7809,  
7814, 7816, 7821, 7823, **7826**

## Messages

E0001 . . . . . 52, 151, 186, 395

E0002 . . . . . 52, 151, 186, 397

E0003 . . . . . 151, 186, 394

E0004 . . . . . 151, 187, 395

E0005 . . . . . 151, 187, 393

E0006 . . . . . 151, 187, 399

E0007 . . . . . 151, 188, 400

E0008 . . . . . 151, 188, 391

E0009 . . . . . 151, 188, 391

E0010 . . . . . 151, 189, 391

E0011 . . . . . 151, 189, 389

E0012 . . . . . 151, 189, 389

E0013 . . . . . 151, 190, 373

E0014 . . . . . 151, 190, 373

E0015 . . . . . 151, 190

E0016 . . . . . 151, 191, 383

E0017 . . . . . 151, 191, 384

E0018 . . . . . 151, 191, 385

E0019 . . . . . 151, 192, 387

E0020 . . . . . 151, 192, 387

E0021 . . . . . 151, 193, 378, 382

E0022 . . . . . 151, 193, 377

E0023 . . . . . 151, 193, 390

E0024 . . . . . 151, 194, 376

E0025 . . . . . 151, 194, 383

E0026 . . . . . 52, 151, 194, 396

E0027 . . . . . 52, 151, 195, 397

E0028 . . . . . 66, 151, 195, 223, 277

E0029 . . . . . 151, 195, 394

E0030 . . . . . 151, 195, 395

E0031 . . . . . 151, 196, 393

E0032 . . . . . 151, 196, 400

E0033 . . . . . 151, 196, 378

E0034 . . . . . 151, 197, 377

E0035 . . . . . 151, 197, 402

E0036 . 151, 197, 241, 435, 471, 508, 689,  
691

- E0037 ..... 151, 198, 438  
 E0038 ..... 151, 198, 241, 404, 471  
 E0039 ..... 52, 151, 199, 398  
 E0040 ..... 52, 151, 199, 399  
 E0041 ..... 151, 199, 393  
 E0042 ..... 151, 200, 392  
 E0043 ..... 151, 200, 393  
 F0001 ..... 151, 200, 456  
 F0002 ..... 151, 201, 456  
 F0003 ..... 151, 201, 456  
 F0004 ..... 151, 201, 454  
 F0005 ..... 151, 201, 454  
 F0006 ..... 151, 202, 454  
 F0007 ..... 151, 202, 453  
 F0008 ..... 151, 202, 443  
 F0009 ..... 151, 202, 445  
 I0000 ..... 151, 152, 264  
 I0001 ..... 23, 151, 153, 264  
 I0002 ..... 151, 153, 283  
 I0003 ..... 151, 153, 281  
 I0004 ..... 151, 153, 280  
 I0005 ..... 151, 153, 272  
 I0006 .. 55, 151, 154, 296, 299, 303, 326,  
           328, 331, 348, 351, 353  
 I0007 ..... 151, 154, 387  
 I0008 ..... 151, 154, 387  
 I0009 ..... 151, 154, 436  
 I0010 ..... 151, 154, 399  
 I0011 ..... 151, 155, 400  
 I0012 ..... 151, 155, 283  
 I0013 ..... 151, 155, 391  
 I0014 ..... 151, 155, 390  
 I0015 ..... 151, 155, 376  
 I0016 ..... 151, 156, 383  
 I0017 ..... 151, 156, 378  
 I0018 ..... 151, 156, 377  
 I0019 ..... 151, 156, 434  
 I0020 ..... 66, 151, 156, 223, 276  
 I0021 ..... 151, 157, 385  
 I0022 ..... 151, 157, 385  
 I0023 ..... 151, 157, 279  
 I0024 ..... 151, 157, 313  
 I0025 ..... 151, 157, 339  
 I0026 ..... 151, 157, 361  
 I0027 ..... 66, 151, 158, 223, 276  
 I0028 ..... 151, 158, 280  
 I0029 ..... 151, 158, 280  
 I0030 ..... 66, 151, 158, 223, 276  
 I0031 ..... 151, 158, 283  
 I0032 ..... 66, 151, 159, 223, 276  
 I0033 .. 151, 159, 311, 312, 315, 318, 337,  
           338, 341, 343, 360, 361, 363, 365  
 I0034 ..... 151, 159, 316  
 I0035 ..... 151, 159, 341  
 I0036 ..... 151, 159, 364  
 I0037 ..... 151, 160, 318  
 I0038 ..... 151, 160, 344  
 I0039 ..... 151, 160, 366  
 I0040 54, 71, 151, 160, 206, 251, 413, 673  
 I0041 ..... 67, 151, 160, 207, 413  
 I0042 .. 65, 151, 161, 207, 250, 409, 670  
 I0043 43, 51, 76, 151, 161, 220, 251, 253,  
           409, 674, 681  
 I0044 ..... 66, 151, 161, 223, 412  
 I0045 .. 151, 161, 309, 310, 335, 336, 358,  
           359  
 I0046 .. 51, 151, 162, 238, 250, 409, 668  
 I0047 ..... 65, 151, 162, 238, 410  
 I0048 ..... 151, 162, 367  
 I0049 ..... 151, 162, 408  
 I0050 ..... 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 471  
 I0051 ..... 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 471  
 I0052 ..... 151, 163, 393  
 I0053 .. 55, 151, 163, 217, 235, 239, 255,  
           430, 431, 694  
 M0001 ..... 66, 151, 203, 223, 228, 458  
 W0001 ..... 52, 151, 164, 395  
 W0002 ..... 52, 151, 164, 397  
 W0003 ..... 51, 55, 151, 164, 293  
 W0004 ..... 51, 55, 151, 164, 321  
 W0005 ..... 51, 55, 151, 165, 346  
 W0006 ..... 52, 151, 165, 395  
 W0007 ..... 52, 151, 165, 397  
 W0008 ..... 151, 165, 316  
 W0009 ..... 151, 165, 318  
 W0010 ..... 151, 166, 313  
 W0011 ..... 151, 166, 341  
 W0012 ..... 151, 166, 344  
 W0013 ..... 151, 166, 339  
 W0014 ..... 151, 166, 364  
 W0015 ..... 151, 167, 366  
 W0016 ..... 151, 167, 361  
 W0017 ..... 61, 151, 167, 280  
 W0018 ..... 151, 167, 279  
 W0019 ..... 151, 167, 283  
 W0020 ..... 151, 168, 236, 402  
 W0021 ..... 61, 151, 168, 284  
 W0022 ..... 61, 151, 168, 284  
 W0023 ..... 151, 170, 219, 415, 416  
 W0024 ..... 151, 170, 434  
 W0025 .. 54, 76, 151, 170, 207, 408, 683  
 W0026 ..... 54, 67, 151, 170, 207, 413  
 W0027 ..... 54, 67, 151, 171, 207, 413  
 W0028 ..... 151, 171, 219, 415  
 W0029 .. 54, 76, 151, 171, 220, 414, 683  
 W0030 ..... 151, 171, 219, 415  
 W0031 ..... 151, 172, 234, 411

- W0032 ..... 151, 172, 234, 411  
 W0033 ..... 55, 73, 151, 172, 209, 428  
 W0034 ..... 55, 73, 151, 172, 209, 429  
 W0035 ..... 55, 73, 151, 173, 210, 429  
 W0036 ..... 55, 73, 151, 173, 222, 429  
 W0037 ..... 54, 71, 151, 173, 236, 425  
 W0038 54, 74, 151, 173, 240, 252, 425, 679  
 W0039 ..... 151, 173, 219, 416  
 W0040 ..... 54, 151, 174, 238, 411  
 W0041 ..... 151, 174, 432  
 W0042 ..... 151, 174, 432  
 W0043 ..... 151, 174, 432  
 W0044 ..... 151, 175, 431  
 W0045 ..... 151, 175, 431  
 W0046 ..... 151, 175, 431  
 W0047 ..... 151, 175, 433  
 W0048 ..... 151, 176, 433  
 W0049 ..... 151, 176, 432  
 W0050 ..... 151, 176, 433  
 W0051 ..... 151, 176, 433  
 W0052 ..... 151, 176, 434  
 W0053 ..... 54, 55, 60, 151, 177, 424  
 W0054 ..... 54, 55, 60, 151, 177, 424  
 W0055 ..... 54, 55, 60, 151, 177, 424  
 W0056 ..... 31, 54, 151, 177, 219, 418  
 W0057 ..... 151, 178, 419  
 W0058 ..... 151, 178, 419  
 W0059 ..... 151, 178, 419  
 W0060 ..... 151, 178, 418  
 W0061 ..... 151, 178, 418  
 W0062 ..... 151, 179, 418  
 W0063 ..... 151, 179, 419  
 W0064 ..... 151, 179, 419  
 W0065 ..... 151, 179, 419  
 W0066 ..... 151, 179, 423  
 W0067 ..... 151, 180, 423  
 W0068 ..... 151, 180, 423  
 W0069 ..... 151, 180, 422  
 W0070 ..... 151, 180, 422  
 W0071 ..... 151, 181, 422  
 W0072 ..... 151, 181, 424  
 W0073 ..... 151, 181, 424  
 W0074 ..... 151, 181, 424  
 W0075 ..... 151, 182, 420  
 W0076 ..... 151, 182, 420  
 W0077 ..... 151, 182, 420  
 W0078 ..... 151, 182, 421  
 W0079 ..... 151, 182, 421  
 W0080 ..... 151, 183, 421  
 W0081 ..... 151, 183, 421  
 W0082 ..... 151, 183, 421  
 W0083 ..... 151, 183, 421  
 W0084 ..... 151, 183, 234, 411  
 W0085 ..... 151, 184, 234, 411  
 W0086 54, 76, 151, 184, 217, 253, 426, 685  
 W0087 54, 76, 151, 184, 235, 253, 427, 685  
 W0088 55, 77, 151, 184, 235, 253, 427, 685  
 W0089 55, 77, 151, 185, 236, 253, 427, 685  
 W0090 55, 77, 151, 185, 207, 253, 428, 685  
 W0091 ..... 55, 77, 151, 185, 209, 428  
 W0092 54, 80, 151, 185, 218, 254, 426, 663, 691  
 W0093 ..... 151, 168, 405  
 W0094 ..... 151, 169, 241, 405, 471  
 W0095 ..... 52, 151, 169, 398  
 W0096 ..... 52, 151, 169, 398  
 W0097 54, 80, 151, 185, 217, 255, 414, 694  
 W0098 ..... 30, 151, 169  
 W0099 .. 54, 151, 186, 238, 256, 410, 695  
 METZINGER, Jochen ..... 512, 699, ↪[44]  
 mex1.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 571  
 mex2.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 571  
 mex3.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 571  
 mexican (language option) ..... 40, 570  
 mexican.ldf (file) ..... 570  
 mexican.mld (file) ..... 242, 246, 570, 696  
 mexip.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 571  
 meyalu (language option) ..... 40, 570  
 meyalu.mld (file) ..... 242, 246, 570  
 meyalu.png (graphic file) ..... 243, 481  
 MICHOU, Yanick ..... 699  
 mini-art.tex (old example document) . 689  
 \minilof (command) ..... 23, 30, 35, 38, 42, 84, 88, 178, 179, 219, 295, 298, 299, 302, 350, 664  
 \minilof ..... 54, 68, 88, 113, 127, 145, 407, 464, 491, 506, 1058, 1169, 1678, 2170, 2381, 3130, 6725, 6813, 6906, 7366, 7574  
 \minilof@ (command) ..... 299, 306  
 \minilof@ ..... 3130, 3131, 3309  
 \minilof@mtcck ..... 5134, 5175  
 minilofdepth (depth counter) . 35, 214, 223, 291, 301  
 \minilot (command) 23, 30, 35, 38, 42, 84, 88, 178, 180, 219, 295, 302, 353, 664  
 \minilot ..... 54, 68, 88, 113, 127, 145, 407, 465, 492, 507, 1058, 1170, 1620, 1640, 3198, 6734, 6822, 6917, 7366, 7574  
 \minilot@ (command) ..... 302  
 \minilot@ ..... 3198, 3199, 3309  
 \minilot@mtcck ..... 5137, 5182  
 minilotdepth (depth counter) . 35, 214, 223, 304  
 minipage (environment) ..... 135, 662  
 minitoc (package) .... 26, 260, ↪[146, 147]



- \minitoc (command) . . . . . 23,  
29, 30, 34, 35, 38, 39, 42, 56, 60, 68,  
79, 84, 88, 114, 178, 180, 219, 248,  
251, 295, 296, 298, 308, 325, 347,  
663–665, 671–673
- \minitoc . . . . . 14, 19, 32, 37, 195, 197, 214,  
215, 222, 230, 232, 240, 242, 317,  
407, 463, 490, 505, 750, 766, 1022,  
1058, 1113, 1114, 1132, 1154, 1264,  
1310, 1384, 1412, 1428, 1496, 1521,  
1562, 1678, 1741, 1890, 1927, 1947,  
2020, 2034, 2058, 2106, 2110, 2112,  
2212, 2266, 2292, 2306, 3060, 6716,  
6804, 6895, 7366, 7574
- minitoc-ex.tex (old example document) 689
- minitoc-hyper (package) . . . . . 63, 223, ↪[414]
- minitoc-hyper.sty (file) . . . . . 223
- minitoc-tds.zip (file) . . . . . 224, 243, 245, 246,  
254, 691, 693
- minitoc.bib (file) . . . . . 223, 243, 244, 246, 670
- minitoc.bug (file) 53, 58, 223, 243, 244, 246,  
252, 253, 670, 675, 677, 681, 685
- minitoc.dtx (file) 64, 217, 219, 223, 241–246,  
252, 400, 439, 686
- minitoc.ins (file) 45, 101, 216–219, 224, 228,  
241–246, 400, 439, 471, 674, 686
- minitoc.ist (file) . . . . . 224, 243, 244, 246, 673
- minitoc.l (file) . . . . . 224, 241–244, 246, 677
- minitoc.lan (file) 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 439
- minitoc.pdf (file) . . . . . 224, 243, 244, 246
- minitoc.pre (file) 224, 243, 244, 246, 677, 683
- minitoc.ps (file) . . . . . 224
- minitoc.sty (file) . . . . . 224, 241, 242, 246, 264
- minitoc.sum (file) . . . . . 224, 243, 244, 246
- minitoc.tex (file) . . . . . 666, 670
- \minitoc@ . . . . . 294, 296, 306
- \minitoc@ . . . . . 3060, 3061, 3309
- \minitoc@mtcql . . . . . 5131, 5166
- minitocdepth (depth counter) . . . . . 23, 29,  
30, 35, 44, 67, 72, 84, 214, 223, 293,  
297, 662
- minitocoff (package) . . . . . 248, 249, 667
- minutes (package) . . . . . 224, 294, 400, ↪[279]
- MITTELBAH, Frank . . . . . 221, 248,  
294, 323, 346, 665, 669, 670, 699,  
↪[68, 175, 262, 263, 297–310]
- \MLF@ . . . . . 3581, 3583
- \MLF@contentsline (command) . . . . . 315
- \MLF@contentsline . . . . . 3542, 3583
- \MLF@explist . . . . . 3540, 3567
- \MLF@line . . . . . 3580, 3581
- \MLF@list . . . . . 3537, 3540, 3567, 3583
- \MLF@lof . . . . . 3540, 3568, 3583
- \MLF@loop . . . . . 3537, 3568
- \MLF@next (command) . . . . . 316
- \MLF@next . . . . . 3345, 3537, 3567
- \mlf@pgno . . . . . 2891, 2892
- \MLF@read . . . . . 3568, 3579, 3583
- \mlf@rule . . . . . 3022, 3146, 3195, 5006
- \mlf@setform (command) . . . . . 301, 381
- \mlf@setform . . . . . 3181, 5371
- \MLF@test (command) . . . . . 316
- \MLF@test . . . . . 3581, 3583
- \mlf@dotsep . . . . . 5341, 5374
- \mlffont (command) . . . . . 37, 38, 84, 300
- \mlffont . . . . . 3030, 3146, 7610
- \mlffloformarg . . . . . 5332
- \mlfname . . . . . 3546
- \mlfoffset (command) . . . . . 84
- \mlfoffset . . . . . 2459, 3172
- \mlfpagenumbers (command) . . . . . 47, 86
- \mlfpagenumbers . . . . . 2872, 2885, 2891, 2904,  
7668
- \mlfpnumwidth . . . . . 5323, 5372
- \mlfrule (command) . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- \mlfrule . . . . . 5006, 7650
- \mlfSfont (command) . . . . . 37, 38, 43, 84, 677
- \mlfSfont . . . . . 3030, 7610
- \mlftitle (command) . . . . . 37, 38, 84, 470
- \mlftitle . . . . . 3145, 3155, 3165, 3169, 6150,  
7250, 7901, 7915, 7934, 7952, 7968,  
7984, 8003, 8028, 8044, 8059, 8078,  
8096, 8111, 8126, 8141, 8157, 8175,  
8198, 8222, 8242, 8257, 8284, 8311,  
8326, 8341, 8358, 8373, 8388, 8410,  
8436, 8451, 8469, 8486, 8509, 8538,  
8553, 8568, 8586, 8608, 8639, 8667,  
8683, 8699, 8714, 8729, 8754, 8758,  
8791, 8827, 8852, 8922, 8942, 8967,  
8986, 9007, 9022, 9038, 9054, 9110,  
9111, 9129, 9145, 9161, 9177, 9192,  
9208, 9231, 9248, 9263, 9281, 9296,  
9311, 9328, 9343, 9358, 9373, 9392,  
9407, 9422, 9441, 9459, 9487, 9522,  
9537, 9554, 9569, 9582, 9597, 9616,  
9631, 9646, 9661, 9676, 9694, 9709,  
9725, 9756, 9778, 9809, 9844, 9868,  
9917, 9932, 9947, 9963, 9978, 9993,  
10009, 10023, 10038, 10054, 10071,  
10086, 10101, 10121, 10148, 10173,  
10194, 10212, 10227, 10242, 10257
- \mlftocrmarg . . . . . 5336, 5373
- \MLT@ . . . . . 3642, 3644
- \MLT@contentsline (command) . . . . . 318
- \MLT@contentsline . . . . . 3603, 3644
- \MLT@explist . . . . . 3601, 3628
- \MLT@line . . . . . 3641, 3642



- `\MLT@list` . . . . . 3598, 3601, 3628, 3644
- `\MLT@loop` . . . . . 3598, 3629
- `\MLT@lot` . . . . . 3601, 3629, 3644
- `\MLT@next` (command) . . . . . 318
- `\MLT@next` . . . . . 3350, 3598, 3628
- `\mlt@pgno` . . . . . 2897, 2898
- `\MLT@read` . . . . . 3629, 3640, 3644
- `\mlt@rule` . . . . . 3022, 3214, 3263, 5015
- `\mlt@setform` (command) . . . . . 304, 381
- `\mlt@setform` . . . . . 3249, 5386
- `\MLT@test` (command) . . . . . 319
- `\MLT@test` . . . . . 3642, 3644
- `\mltdotsep` . . . . . 5341
- `\mltfont` (command) . . . . . 37, 38, 84, 303
- `\mltfont` . . . . . 3030, 3214, 7610
- `\mltitle` . . . . . 7935
- `\mltloformarg` . . . . . 5332
- `\mltname` . . . . . 3607
- `\mltoffset` (command) . . . . . 84
- `\mltoffset` . . . . . 2459, 3240, 7473
- `\mltpagenumbers` (command) . . . . . 47, 86
- `\mltpagenumbers` . . 2878, 2885, 2891, 2897, 2904, 7668
- `\mltpnumwidth` . . . . . 5323
- `\mltrule` (command) . . . . . 47, 86, 672
- `\mltrule` . . . . . 5015, 7650
- `\mltSfont` (command) . . . . . 37, 38, 84, 677
- `\mltSfont` . . . . . 3030, 7610
- `\mltttitle` (command) . . . . . 37, 38, 84, 470
- `\mltttitle` . . . . . 3213, 3223, 3233, 3237, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7916, 7953, 7969, 7985, 8004, 8029, 8045, 8060, 8079, 8097, 8112, 8127, 8142, 8158, 8176, 8200, 8224, 8243, 8258, 8285, 8312, 8327, 8342, 8359, 8374, 8389, 8411, 8437, 8452, 8470, 8488, 8510, 8539, 8554, 8569, 8587, 8609, 8640, 8668, 8684, 8700, 8715, 8730, 8795, 8830, 8853, 8923, 8944, 8968, 8987, 9008, 9023, 9039, 9055, 9130, 9146, 9162, 9178, 9193, 9209, 9232, 9249, 9264, 9282, 9297, 9312, 9329, 9344, 9359, 9374, 9393, 9408, 9423, 9442, 9460, 9489, 9523, 9538, 9555, 9570, 9583, 9598, 9617, 9632, 9647, 9662, 9677, 9695, 9710, 9726, 9741, 9742, 9757, 9781, 9812, 9847, 9869, 9918, 9933, 9948, 9964, 9979, 9994, 10010, 10024, 10039, 10055, 10072, 10087, 10102, 10122, 10150, 10174, 10195, 10213, 10228, 10243, 10258
- `\mlttocrmarg` . . . . . 5339
- `\mm` . 9321, 9335, 9350, 9365, 9384, 9399, 9414
- `\mnr` . . . . . 8234, 8249, 9451, 10219, 10234
- `mondep.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 466
- `mongasie.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 572
- `mongol` (language option) . . . . . 40, 571
- `mongol.mld` (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 571
- `mongolb` (language option) . . . . . 40, 574
- `mongolb.mld` (file) . . 242, 246, 254, 255, 574, 575, 692, 693
- `mongolb.mlo` (file) . . . . . 254, 692
- `mongolcy.png` (graphic file) . . 225, 243, 574
- `mongolian` (language option) . . . . . 40, 575
- `mongolian.dtx` (file) . . . . . 574
- `mongolian.mld` (file) . 242, 246, 255, 575, 693
- `mongolian.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 572
- `mongols.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 573
- `mongoltr.png` (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 571
- MonTeX (package) . . . . . 45, 224, 471, 485, 486, 493, 494, 571, 592, 617–619, 686,  $\hookrightarrow$ [130, 133]
- MOON, Young Joon . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [311]
- MOORE, ROSS . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [176]
- MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe . . 89, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318]
- morefloats (package) . . . . . 673,  $\hookrightarrow$ [219]
- MORI, Lapo Filippo . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [183, 312, 313]
- MORRISON, Michael A. . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [314]
- mridula (malayalam package) . . . . . 566
- mtc (counter) . 88, 278, 281, 282, 290, 293, 311, 312, 315, 318, 373, 669
- `mtc-2c.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-2c.tex` (example document) . 92, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- `mtc-2nd.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-2nd.tex` (example document) . . 93, 226, 242, 244, 246, 271, 522, 690
- `mtc-3co.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-3co.tex` (example document) . . 94, 226, 228, 242, 244, 246, 255, 692
- `mtc-add.bib` (example document) . . 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- `mtc-add.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-add.tex` (example document) . 53, 97, 98, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- `mtc-adds.tex` (old example document) . 691
- `mtc-ads.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-ads.tex` (example document) . . 53, 101, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- `mtc-amem.tex` (old example document) . 691
- `mtc-amm.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-amm.tex` (example document) . . 65, 106, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- `mtc-apx.pdf` (example document) . . . . . 246
- `mtc-apx.tex` (file) . . . . . 693
- `mtc-apx.tex` (example document) . 68, 91, 106, 226, 242, 244, 246, 686, 689

- mtc-art.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-art.tex (example document) . . 106, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-bk.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-bk.tex (example document) . . 111, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-bo.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-bo.tex (example document) . . 116, 226, 242, 244, 246, 687, 689
- mtc-book.tex (old example document) . 691
- mtc-ch0.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-ch0.tex (example document) . . 120, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-cri.log (file) . . . . . 122
- mtc-cri.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-cri.tex (example document) . . 122, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-fko.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-fko.tex (example document) . . 122, 226, 242, 244, 246, 255, 693
- mtc-fo1.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-fo1.tex (example document) . . 123, 124, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-fo2.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-fo2.tex (example document) . . 124, 226, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-gap.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-gap.tex (example document) 77, 91, 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-gaps.tex (old example document) . 691
- mtc-hi1.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-hi1.tex (example document) 69, 91, 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hi2.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-hi2.tex (example document) 70, 91, 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hia.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-hia.tex (example document) . . 126, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hir.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-hir.tex (example document) . . 127, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-hop.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-hop.tex (example document) . . 128, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-liv.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-liv.tex (example document) . . 129, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-mem.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-mem.tex (example document) . . 133, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-mem1.tex (old example document) . 691
- mtc-mm1.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-mm1.tex (example document) . . 133, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-mu.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-mu.tex (example document) . . 135, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-nom.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-nom.tex (example document) . . 53, 136, 227, 242, 244, 246, 255, 694
- mtc-ocf.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-ocf.tex (example document) . . 138, 212, 227, 233, 242, 244, 246, 255, 694
- mtc-ofs.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-ofs.tex (example document) . . 139, 227, 242, 244, 246, 255, 694
- mtc-sbf.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-sbf.tex (example document) . . 141, 227, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-scr.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-scr.tex (example document) . . 142, 227, 242, 244, 246, 689
- mtc-subf.tex (old example document) . 691
- mtc-syn.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-syn.tex (example document) . . 144, 227, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tbi.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-tbi.tex (example document) . . 145, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tlc.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-tlc.tex (example document) . . 146, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tlo.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-tlo.tex (example document) 80, 91, 147, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tsfc.pdf (example document) . . . . . 246
- mtc-tsfc.tex (example document) . . 147, 228, 242, 244, 246, 690
- mtc-tsfc.tex (old example document) . 691
- \MTC@ . . . . . 3516
- \mtc@While . . . . . 2670, 2672, 2677
- \mtc@addmislanguage (command) . . 403
- \mtc@addmislanguage . . 6079, 6084, 6130
- \mtc@addtomaf . . . . . 7283
- \mtc@arg@dotinterval . . . . . 5315
- \mtc@arg@numwidth . . . . . 5321
- \mtc@arg@pagenumwidth . . . . . 5319
- \mtc@arg@tocrightmargin . . . . . 5317
- \mtc@BBR (command) . . . . . 282
- \mtc@BBR 2768, 3102, 3107, 3172, 3177, 3240, 3245, 3830, 3833, 3903, 3907, 3978, 3982, 4426, 4430, 4493, 4497, 4560, 4564
- \mtc@Body . . . . . 2684
- \mtc@bottom@rule . . 3121, 3126, 3193, 3261
- \mtc@ck . . . . . 7754

- \mtc@CkFile (command) . 278, 296, 299, 303
- \mtc@CkFile . 2684, 3068, 3138, 3206, 3798, 3864, 3939, 4391, 4458, 4525
- \mtc@CkStr . . 2684, 3076, 3146, 3214, 3809, 3877, 3952, 4399, 4467, 4534
- \mtc@classck . . . . . 7344
- \MTC@contentsline (command) 311, 314, 320
- \MTC@contentsline . . . . . 3422, 3518
- \mtc@dot . . . . . 3660
- \mtc@EndWhile . . . . . 2659, 2684
- \MTC@explist . . . . . 3419, 3501
- \mtc@featparam@ (command) . . . . . 389
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev (command) . . 390
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev . 5631, 5651, 5670
- \mtc@featparam@third (command) 389, 390
- \mtc@featparam@third . . . . . 5651, 5670
- \mtc@featureparam@after . . . . . 5616
- \mtc@featureparam@before . . . . . 5614
- \mtc@featureparam@close . . . . . 5620
- \mtc@featureparam@open . . . . . 5618
- \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle . . . . 5622
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev (command) . . . . 383
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev . . . . 5398, 5417, 5434
- \mtc@glofix@level (command) . . . . . 395
- \mtc@glofix@level . 5861, 5884, 5893–5895, 5901
- \mtc@hints@@chapter . . . . . 6601, 7338
- \mtc@hints@@part . . . . . 6582, 7335
- \mtc@hints@@schapter . . . . . 6601, 7338
- \mtc@hints@@sect . . . . . 6620, 7341
- \mtc@hints@@spart . . . . . 6582, 7335
- \mtc@hints@@ssect . . . . . 6620, 7341
- \mtc@hints@begindoc (command) . 408, 417
- \mtc@hints@begindoc . . 6379, 6663, 7331
- \mtc@hints@chapter (command) . . . . 414
- \mtc@hints@chapter . . . 6582, 6601, 7338
- \mtc@hints@checklongext . . . . . 6961
- \mtc@hints@enddoc (command) 408, 417, 434
- \mtc@hints@enddoc . 6379, 6664, 7236, 7331
- \mtc@hints@part (command) . . . . . 414
- \mtc@hints@part . . . . . 6582, 7335
- \mtc@hints@section (command) . . . . 414
- \mtc@hints@section . . . 6582, 6620, 7341
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile (command) 271, 298, 301, 304, 670
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . . 2578, 3109, 3181, 3249, 3835, 3912, 3987, 4432, 4502, 4569
- \mtc@hstrut . 2768, 3900, 3975, 4489, 4556
- \mtc@hstrutbox . . . . . 2768
- \mtc@ifmtarg (command) 277, 279, 281, 282
- \mtc@ifmtarg . 2659, 2693, 2726, 2752, 2761
- \mtc@ixfix@level (command) . . . . . 397
- \mtc@ixfix@level . . 5904, 5927, 5936–5938, 5944
- \mtc@level@abbrev (command) . . . . . 373
- \mtc@level@abbrev . . . . 5111, 5129, 5215
- \MTC@line . . . . . 3514, 3516
- \MTC@list . . . . . 3415, 3419, 3501, 3518
- \mtc@listmisslanguages (command) . 403
- \mtc@listmisslanguages . . . 6079, 6160
- \mtc@LML . . . . . 6079
- \MTC@loop . . . . . 3415, 3502
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof . . . . . 5608
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot . . . . . 5609
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc . . . . . 5607
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof . . . . . 5605
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot . . . . . 5606
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc . . . . . 5604
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof . . . . . 5611
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot . . . . . 5612
- \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc . . . . . 5610
- \mtc@maf (command) . . . . . 436, 437
- \mtc@maf . . . . . 7283, 7330
- \mtc@maf@long (command) . . . . . 436
- \mtc@maf@long . . . . . 7283
- \mtc@maf@short (command) . . . . . 436
- \mtc@maf@short . . . . . 7283
- \mtc@markboth 2979, 3075, 3145, 3213, 3805, 3871, 3946, 4399, 4465, 4532
- \mtc@mta@abbrev (command) . . . . . 373
- \mtc@mta@abbrev . . . . 5092, 5129, 5215
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev (command) . . . . 391
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev . . . . 5692, 5711
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev (command) . . . . 392
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev . . . . 5736, 5755
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev (command) . . . . 377
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev . . . . 5234, 5253
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev (command) . . . . 378
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev . . . . 5275, 5294
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev (command) . . . . . 382
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev . . . . . 5398, 5434
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev (command) . . 389, 390
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev . . . . 5631, 5670
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev (command) . . . . 384
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev . . . . 5473, 5494
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev (command) . . . . 387
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev . . . . 5549, 5570
- \MTC@next (command) . . . . . 313
- \MTC@next . . . . . 3340, 3415, 3501
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level (command) . . 398
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level . . . . 5947, 5970, 5979–5981, 5987
- \mtc@noX . . . . . 5513, 5515, 5570
- \mtc@onebackchap . . . . . 2714
- \mtc@onebackchapter . . . . . 2713
- \mtc@onebackpart . . . . . 2713

- \mtc@onebacksect (command) . . . . . 280
- \mtc@onebacksect . . . . . 2715, 2743
- \mtc@onebacksection . . . . . 2713
- \mtc@param . . . . . 3660
- \mtc@pgno . . . . . 2885, 2886, 3109, 3181, 3249
- \mtc@pns@abbrev (command) . . . . . 385
- \mtc@pns@abbrev . . . . . 5473, 5494
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX . . . . . 5512
- \MTC@read . . . . . 3502, 3514, 3518
- \mtc@restorelofdepth . . . . . 5814, 7795
- \mtc@restorelotdepth . . . . . 5848, 7795
- \mtc@restoretocdepth . . . . . 5779, 5810, 5826, 5844, 5860, 7795
- \mtc@Rline . . . . . 2684
- \mtc@rule (command) . . . . . 293, 664
- \mtc@rule . . . . . 3022, 3076, 3126, 4997
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev (command) . . . . . 387
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev . . . . . 5549, 5570
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX . . . . . 5587
- \mtc@savelofdepth . . . . . 5793, 7795
- \mtc@savelotdepth . . . . . 5827, 7795
- \mtc@savetocdepth (command) . . . . . 393
- \mtc@savetocdepth . . . . . 5779, 5804, 5838, 7795
- \mtc@chapter . . . . . 3273
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter . . . . . 5079
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure . . . . . 5086
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph . . . . . 5083
- \mtc@sectlevel@section . . . . . 5080
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure . . . . . 5088
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph . . . . . 5084
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection . . . . . 5081
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection . . . . . 5082
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable . . . . . 5089
- \mtc@sectlevel@table . . . . . 5087
- \mtc@setform (command) . . . . . 298, 380
- \mtc@setform . . . . . 3109, 5356
- \mtc@setlangopt (command) . . . . . 406
- \mtc@setlangopt . . . . . 6084, 6186
- \mtc@setlangoptm (command) . . . . . 406
- \mtc@setlangoptm . . . . . 6130, 6186
- \mtc@setlangopto (command) . . . . . 406
- \mtc@setlangopto . . . . . 6084, 6186
- \mtc@string (command) . . . . . 282
- \mtc@string . . . . . 2768, 3518, 3583, 3644, 3660, 3680, 4195, 4255, 4315, 4799, 4859, 4919, 7587
- \mtc@strut . . . . . 2768, 3109, 3181, 3249, 3835, 3912, 3987, 4432, 4502, 4569
- \mtc@strutbox (command) . . . . . 669
- \mtc@strutbox . . . . . 2768
- \mtc@sv@fklistoffigures . . . . . 6653
- \mtc@sv@fklistoftables . . . . . 6653
- \mtc@sv@fktableofcontents . . . . . 6653
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures . . . . . 6644
- \mtc@sv@listoftables . . . . . 6644
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth . . . . . 5793
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth . . . . . 5827
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents . . . . . 6644
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth . . . . . 5779, 5793, 5827
- \mtc@svchapter . . . . . 2760
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth . . . . . 5793
- \mtc@svpart . . . . . 2716, 4010
- \mtc@svsection . . . . . 2749
- \mtc@svspart . . . . . 2716
- \mtc@svss . . . . . 2749
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth . . . . . 5827
- \MTC@test (command) . . . . . 314
- \MTC@test . . . . . 3516, 3518
- \mtc@tmp@name . . . . . 5129, 5215
- \mtc@tmpde@name . . . . . 5711
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name . . . . . 5670
- \mtc@tmpfm@name . . . . . 5434
- \mtc@tmpof@name . . . . . 5755
- \mtc@tmppn@name . . . . . 5494, 5570
- \mtc@tmptf@name . . . . . 5253
- \mtc@tmpti@name . . . . . 5294
- \MTC@toc . . . . . 3419, 3502, 3518
- \mtc@toks (command) 255, 256, 282, 312, 315, 318, 320, 338, 341, 343, 360, 363, 365, 694, 695
- \mtc@toks 2768, 3452, 3558, 3619, 3660, 3680, 4132, 4230, 4290, 4739, 4835, 4895, 5215, 5253, 5294, 5435, 5440, 5441, 5673, 5679, 5680, 5711, 5755
- \mtc@typetable@minilof . . . . . 5028
- \mtc@typetable@minilot . . . . . 5029
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc . . . . . 5027
- \mtc@typetable@partlof . . . . . 5025
- \mtc@typetable@partlot . . . . . 5026
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc . . . . . 5024
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof . . . . . 5031
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot . . . . . 5032
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc . . . . . 5030
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof . . . . . 5037
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot . . . . . 5038
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc . . . . . 5036
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof . . . . . 5034
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot . . . . . 5035
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc . . . . . 5033
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof . . . . . 5040
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot . . . . . 5041
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc . . . . . 5039
- \mtc@v . . . . . 2768, 3095, 3099, 3165, 3169, 3233, 3237, 3821, 3889, 3968, 4414, 4481, 4548
- \mtc@verse (command) . . . . . 295

- mtc@verse (environment) [94](#), [95](#), [295](#), [297](#), [298](#),  
[300](#), [301](#), [304](#), [380](#), [381](#)
- \mtc@verse . . . . . [299](#), [3049](#)
- \mtc@While (command) . . . . . [278](#)
- \mtc@While . . . . . [2659](#), [2684](#)
- \mtc@WhileBody . . . . . [2659](#)
- \mtc@WhileCondition . . . . . [2659](#)
- \mtc@WhileNext . . . . . [2659](#)
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition . . . . . [2659](#)
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline (command) [320](#), [360](#)
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline . . [3468](#), [3680](#), [4146](#),  
[4739](#)
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine [4103](#), [4723](#), [4819](#),  
[4879](#)
- \MTC@WriteContentsline (command) . [315](#),  
[318](#), [320](#), [338](#), [341](#), [343](#), [360](#), [363](#),  
[365](#)
- \MTC@WriteContentsline [3453](#), [3485](#), [3558](#),  
[3619](#), [3660](#), [4133](#), [4160](#), [4230](#), [4290](#),  
[4739](#), [4770](#), [4835](#), [4895](#)
- \mtc@xifmtarg . . . . . [2659](#)
- \mtc@YN@F . . . . . [5053](#)
- \mtc@YN@f . . . . . [5052](#)
- \mtc@YN@FALSE . . . . . [5049](#)
- \mtc@YN@false . . . . . [5048](#)
- \mtc@YN@FAUX . . . . . [5051](#)
- \mtc@YN@faux . . . . . [5050](#)
- \mtc@YN@N . . . . . [5047](#)
- \mtc@YN@n . . . . . [5046](#)
- \mtc@YN@NO . . . . . [5045](#)
- \mtc@YN@no . . . . . [5044](#)
- \mtc@YN@NON . . . . . [5054](#)
- \mtc@YN@non . . . . . [5055](#)
- \mtc@YN@O . . . . . [5075](#)
- \mtc@YN@o . . . . . [5076](#)
- \mtc@YN@OFF . . . . . [5043](#)
- \mtc@YN@off . . . . . [5042](#)
- \mtc@YN@ON . . . . . [5060](#)
- \mtc@YN@on . . . . . [5059](#)
- \mtc@YN@OUI . . . . . [5073](#)
- \mtc@YN@oui . . . . . [5074](#)
- \mtc@YN@T . . . . . [5068](#)
- \mtc@YN@t . . . . . [5067](#)
- \mtc@YN@TRUE . . . . . [5066](#)
- \mtc@YN@true . . . . . [5065](#)
- \mtc@YN@V . . . . . [5072](#)
- \mtc@YN@v . . . . . [5071](#)
- \mtc@YN@VRAI . . . . . [5070](#)
- \mtc@YN@vrai . . . . . [5069](#)
- \mtc@YN@Y . . . . . [5064](#)
- \mtc@YN@y . . . . . [5063](#)
- \mtc@YN@YES . . . . . [5062](#)
- \mtc@YN@yes . . . . . [5061](#)
- \mtc@zrule (command) . . . . . [282](#), [669](#)
- \mtc@zrule . . [2768](#), [3102](#), [3124](#), [3172](#), [3196](#),  
[3240](#), [3264](#), [3830](#), [3851](#), [3903](#), [3925](#),  
[3978](#), [4000](#), [4426](#), [4446](#), [4493](#), [4513](#),  
[4560](#), [4581](#)
- \mtcaddchapter (command) . [36](#), [51](#), [52](#), [54](#),  
[67](#), [71](#), [73](#), [88](#), [94](#), [98](#), [143](#), [144](#), [201](#),  
[207](#), [226](#), [250](#), [282](#), [668](#)
- \mtcaddchapter 12, [160](#), [404](#), [432](#), [435](#), [436](#),  
[439](#), [440](#), [445](#), [446](#), [484](#), [1384](#), [1428](#),  
[2211](#), [2251](#), [2287](#), [2290](#), [2304](#), [2306](#),  
[2315](#), [2761](#), [7754](#)
- \mtcaddpart (command) . [36](#), [73](#), [88](#), [94](#), [201](#),  
[207](#), [279](#), [668](#)
- \mtcaddpart . . . . . [1428](#), [1676](#), [2726](#), [7754](#)
- \mtcaddsection (command) . . . . [36](#), [54](#), [71](#),  
[73](#), [88](#), [102](#), [202](#), [207](#), [226](#), [253](#), [281](#),  
[668](#), [681](#)
- \mtcaddsection . . . [160](#), [566](#), [597](#), [718](#), [867](#),  
[2752](#), [7754](#)
- \mtcArabTok . . . . . [7959](#)
- \mtcdotsep . . . . . [5341](#), [5359](#)
- \mtcEnglishIIpart . . . . . [8417](#)
- \mtcfixglossary (command)  
[52](#), [88](#), [164](#), [165](#), [186](#), [194](#), [207](#), [251](#),  
[253](#), [395](#), [396](#), [455](#), [673](#), [681](#), [682](#)
- \mtcfixglossary . . [5866](#), [5872](#), [5874](#), [5883](#),  
[7801](#)
- \mtcfixindex (command) . . . . . [52](#),  
[88](#), [99](#), [105](#), [164](#), [165](#), [186](#), [195](#), [207](#),  
[251](#), [253](#), [397](#), [456](#), [672](#), [681](#), [682](#)
- \mtcfixindex . . . [480](#), [481](#), [714](#), [5909](#), [5915](#),  
[5917](#), [5926](#), [7802](#)
- \mtcfixnomclature . . . . . [5958](#)
- \mtcfixnomenclature (command)  
[52](#), [88](#), [137](#), [169](#), [199](#), [207](#), [255](#), [398](#),  
[399](#), [456](#), [694](#)
- \mtcfixnomenclature . . . [2033](#), [5952](#), [5960](#),  
[5969](#), [7803](#)
- \mtcfont (command) . . . [30](#), [37–39](#), [84](#), [297](#)
- \mtcfont . . . . . [974](#), [3030](#), [3076](#), [7610](#)
- \mtcFrenchIIpart . . . . . [8615](#)
- \mtcgapafterheads (command) . [77](#), [83](#), [227](#),  
[253](#), [686](#)
- \mtcgapafterheads . . [172](#), [177](#), [2439](#), [3753](#),  
[3760](#), [3767](#), [7391](#)
- \mtcgapbeforeheads (command) [77](#), [83](#), [227](#),  
[253](#), [686](#)
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . [172](#), [177](#), [2439](#), [3753](#),  
[3760](#), [3767](#), [7391](#)
- mtcglo.ist (file) . . . . . [676](#)
- \mtchideinmainlof (command) [70](#), [88](#), [227](#)

- mtchideinmainlof (environment) . . . . . 68,  
69, 88, 187, 195, 207, 227, 251, 394,  
455, 672, 675, 685, 695
- \mtchideinmainlof . . . . . 103, 129
- \mtchideinmainlot (command) . 70, 88, 126,  
127, 227
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) . . . . . 68,  
69, 88, 187, 196, 207, 227, 251, 394,  
395, 455, 672, 675, 685, 695
- \mtchideinmainlot . . 103, 137, 1593, 1640
- mtchideinmaintoc (environment)  
68, 88, 115, 187, 196, 207, 226, 251,  
393, 455, 672, 685
- \mtcindent (command) . . 30, 46, 84, 92, 265,  
293, 295
- \mtcindent . . 201, 211, 299, 974, 1200, 1490,  
1937, 2101, 2112, 2435, 3022, 3049,  
3102, 3172, 3240, 7383
- \mtcloadmlo (command) . 196, 252, 400, 450,  
676
- \mtcloadmlo . 6010, 7649, 8291, 8297, 8518,  
8524, 8859, 8866, 8873, 8880, 8888,  
8893, 8901, 8909, 9061, 9067, 9074,  
9081, 9087, 9094, 9380, 9875, 9881,  
9888, 9893, 9899, 9904, 10108
- \mtclofr marg . . . . . 5332
- mtcmess (package) 152, 228, 253, 442, 457, 683
- mtcmess.sty (file) . . . . . 241, 242, 246
- \mtcname . . . . . 3426, 3438, 3471
- mtcnorsk.sty (file) . . . . . 666
- mtcnynorsk.sty (file) . . . . . 666
- mtcoff (package) . . . . . 36,  
56, 59, 97, 150, 151, 200–203, 228,  
248, 249, 441, 442, 455–457, 663,  
667, 675, 694
- mtcoff.sty (file) . . . . . 241, 242, 246, 672
- \mtcoffset (command) . 30, 45, 84, 255, 295,  
694
- \mtcoffset . . . . . 2459, 3102, 7473
- \mtcoffwarn@false . . . . . 7737
- \mtcoffwarn@true (command) . . . . . 675
- \mtcoffwarn@true . . 7394, 7402, 7410, 7422,  
7430, 7438, 7449, 7457, 7465, 7475,  
7483, 7491, 7503, 7511, 7519, 7530,  
7538, 7546, 7754, 7765, 7776, 7804,  
7811, 7818
- \mtcPackageError . . 2655, 5097, 5115, 5224,  
5239, 5264, 5280, 5305, 5404, 5420,  
5443, 5480, 5501, 5556, 5576, 5637,  
5655, 5682, 5697, 5714, 5728, 5741,  
5758, 5772, 5782, 5788, 5798, 5806,  
5816, 5822, 5832, 5840, 5850, 5856,  
5870, 5897, 5913, 5940, 5956, 5983,  
5997, 6016, 6030, 6061, 6130, 7250,  
7344, 7826
- \mtcPackageInfo . . 2428, 2583, 2631, 2638,  
2640, 2642, 2720, 2733, 2735, 2741,  
2759, 2782, 2793, 2795, 3070, 3140,  
3208, 3358, 3377, 3396, 3427, 3431,  
3441, 3445, 3474, 3478, 3510, 3547,  
3551, 3576, 3608, 3612, 3637, 3800,  
3866, 3941, 4041, 4060, 4079, 4107,  
4111, 4121, 4125, 4188, 4219, 4223,  
4248, 4279, 4283, 4308, 4393, 4460,  
4527, 4661, 4680, 4699, 4728, 4732,  
4759, 4763, 4792, 4824, 4828, 4852,  
4884, 4888, 4912, 4936, 5218, 5256,  
5297, 5437, 5516, 5521, 5591, 5596,  
5674, 5722, 5766, 5994, 6013, 6090,  
6106, 6119, 6384, 6398, 6406, 6414,  
6422, 6430, 6438, 6522, 6546, 6557,  
7109, 7120, 7131, 7142, 7242, 7284,  
7826, 7843
- \mtcPackageWarning 3009, 3504, 3570, 3631,  
3700, 4182, 4242, 4302, 4338, 4786,  
4846, 4906, 7395, 7403, 7411, 7423,  
7431, 7439, 7450, 7458, 7466, 7476,  
7484, 7492, 7504, 7512, 7520, 7531,  
7539, 7547, 7755, 7766, 7777, 7805,  
7812, 7819, 7826
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine . . 2717, 2737,  
2800, 2812, 2817, 4970, 5863, 5873,  
5906, 5916, 5949, 5959, 6056, 6084,  
6160, 6390, 6446, 6454, 6464, 6481,  
6496, 6512, 6531, 6539, 6569, 6576,  
6590, 6595, 6609, 6614, 6629, 6634,  
6672, 6686, 6695, 6704, 6715, 6724,  
6733, 6744, 6753, 6762, 6772, 6781,  
6790, 6801, 6810, 6819, 6830, 6839,  
6848, 6859, 6870, 6881, 6894, 6905,  
6916, 6929, 6940, 6951, 6966, 6974,  
6982, 6993, 7002, 7011, 7020, 7029,  
7038, 7047, 7056, 7065, 7074, 7083,  
7092, 7101, 7153, 7160, 7167, 7174,  
7181, 7188, 7195, 7202, 7209, 7216,  
7223, 7230, 7237, 7739, 7826
- \mtcpagenumbers (command) . . 47, 86, 665
- \mtcpagenumbers . . 1001, 2836, 2885, 2904,  
7668
- mtcpatchmem (package) . . 150, 151, 203, 228,  
241, 458
- mtcpatchmem.sty (file) . . . . . 241, 242, 246
- \mtcPfont (command) . . . 37, 39, 73, 84, 664
- \mtcPfont . . . . . 160, 995, 3030, 7610
- \mtcpnumwidth . . . . . 5323, 5357
- \mtcprepare (command) 30, 42, 88, 162, 219,  
234, 253, 367, 369, 448, 683



- `\mtcprepare` . . . . . **4936, 4986, 7586**
- `\mtcprepare@` . . . . . **4936**
- `\mtcrule` (command) . . . . . *47, 86, 665*
- `\mtcrule` . . . . . **4997, 7650**
- `\mtcsecondpartfalse` . . . . . 2556, 2561, 2567, 2575, 7735
- `\mtcsecondparttrue` . . . . . 2559, 2565, 2572
- `\mtcselectlanguage` (command) . *37, 39, 41, 71, 76, 82, 152, 154, 155, 187, 188, 196, 250, 252, 399, 406, 450, 470, 471, 668, 676*
- `\mtcselectlanguage` **160, 5990, 6087, 6132, 7649, 7901, 7904, 7922, 7941, 7991, 8010, 8013, 8016, 8085, 8164, 8182, 8264, 8267, 8270, 8273, 8458, 8497, 8575, 8646, 8649, 8652, 8954, 8974, 8993, 8996, 9117, 9215, 9218, 9270, 9318, 9429, 9448, 9502, 9505, 9508, 9511, 9683, 10128, 10131, 10134, 10137, 10140, 10180, 10183, 10201**
- `\mtcsetdepth` (command) . *30, 32, 34, 44, 67, 82–85, 155, 189, 252, 390, 391, 674*
- `\mtcsetdepth` **1428, 2158, 2170, 2332, 2381, 5691, 5698, 5715, 5723, 5729, 5733, 7632**
- `\mtcsetfeature` (command) . . . . . *49, 50, 82, 87, 155, 189, 193, 207, 209, 212, 216, 233, 251, 255, 290, 388, 389, 673, 694*
- `\mtcsetfeature` . . . **2054–2056, 2101, 2961, 5629, 5638, 5656, 5675, 5683, 7632**
- `\mtcsetfont` (command) . . *30, 32, 34, 43, 66, 67, 73, 75, 79, 82, 152, 155, 190, 194, 251, 294, 372, 376, 671, 678, 681*
- `\mtcsetfont` . . . **160, 189, 1493, 1517, 1519, 1521, 1555, 1557, 1559, 1915, 2158, 2332, 5090, 5091, 5098, 5116, 5219, 5225, 7632**
- `\mtcsetformat` (command) *46, 82, 95, 156, 190, 191, 194, 251, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 379, 380, 382, 671, 672*
- `\mtcsetformat` **299, 3109, 3181, 3249, 5351, 5396, 5405, 5421, 5438, 5444, 7632**
- `\mtcsetoffset` (command) *30, 32, 34, 44, 45, 82–85, 139, 152, 163, 200, 227, 255, 392, 694*
- `\mtcsetoffset` **2110, 2112, 5735, 5742, 5759, 5767, 5773, 5777, 7632**
- `\mtcsetpagenumber@` . . . . . **5472**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` (command) . . . *48, 79, 82, 86, 191, 192, 251, 253, 383, 386, 671, 680*
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` **5454, 5481, 5502, 7632**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` (command) . . . . *384*
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` . . . . . **5454, 5472**
- `\mtcsetrules` (command) *48, 82, 86, 192, 251, 253, 386, 671, 680*
- `\mtcsetrules` . . . . . **5530, 5557, 5577, 7632**
- `\mtcsetrules@` (command) . . . . . *386*
- `\mtcsetrules@` . . . . . **5530, 5548**
- `\mtcsettitle` (command) . . . . . *37, 39, 41, 44, 67, 71, 82, 152, 156, 193, 251, 378, 390, 392, 671, 672*
- `\mtcsettitle` . . . 26, **160, 1493, 1924, 5273, 5274, 5281, 5298, 5306, 7632**
- `\mtcsettitlefont` (command) *43, 66, 67, 82, 156, 193, 251, 294, 376–378, 671*
- `\mtcsettitlefont` . . **1493, 1924, 5232, 5233, 5240, 5257, 7632**
- `\mtcSfont` (command) . *30, 37, 39, 66, 73, 84, 664*
- `\mtcSfont` . . . . . **160, 974, 3030, 7610**
- `\mtcskip` (command) *30, 31, 82, 250, 265, 669, 673*
- `\mtcskip` . . . . . **407, 463, 464, 490, 491, 505, 506, 572, 627, 642, 646, 699, 723, 737, 829, 870, 894, 908, 922, 1058, 1268, 2110, 2112, 2170, 2381, 2435, 7554**
- `\mtcskipamount` (command) *30, 31, 82, 250, 265, 443, 669*
- `\mtcskipamount` . . . . . **2435, 7383**
- `\mtcSPfont` (command) *37, 39, 73, 84, 85, 664*
- `\mtcSPfont` . . . . . **160, 995, 3030, 7610**
- `\mtcSSfont` (command) *37, 39, 43, 73, 84, 448, 664*
- `\mtcSSfont` . . . . . **160, 974, 3030, 7610**
- `\mtcSSSfont` (command) . . *37, 39, 67, 73, 84, 664*
- `\mtcSSSfont` . . . . . **160, 995, 3030, 7610**
- `\mtcsv@listoffigures` . . . . . **2743**
- `\mtcsv@listoftables` . . . . . **2743**
- `\mtcsv@tableofcontents` . . . . . **2743**
- `mtcswedish.sty` (file) . . . . . *665*
- `\mtctitle` (command) . *37, 38, 44, 67, 84, 470*
- `\mtctitle` **1200, 3075, 3076, 3146, 3214, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7914, 7933, 7951, 7967, 7983, 8002, 8027, 8043, 8058, 8077, 8095, 8110, 8125, 8140, 8156, 8174, 8196, 8220, 8241, 8256, 8283, 8310, 8325, 8340, 8357, 8372, 8387, 8409, 8435, 8450, 8468, 8485, 8508, 8537, 8552, 8567, 8585, 8607, 8638, 8666, 8682, 8698, 8713, 8728, 8751, 8788, 8824, 8851, 8921, 8940, 8966, 8985, 9006, 9021, 9037, 9053, 9109, 9128,**

9144, 9160, 9176, 9191, 9207, 9230,  
9247, 9262, 9280, 9295, 9310, 9327,  
9342, 9357, 9372, 9391, 9406, 9421,  
9440, 9458, 9483, 9485, 9521, 9536,  
9553, 9568, 9581, 9596, 9615, 9630,  
9645, 9660, 9675, 9693, 9708, 9724,  
9740, 9755, 9776, 9807, 9842, 9867,  
9916, 9931, 9946, 9962, 9977, 9992,  
10008, 10022, 10037, 10053, 10070,  
10085, 10100, 10120, 10147, 10172,  
10193, 10211, 10226, 10241, 10256  
`\mtctocmarg` . . . . . 5333, 5358  
`\mtifont` (command) [37](#), [38](#), [84](#), [297](#), [300](#), [303](#),  
[664](#)  
`\mtifont` . . . . . **3030, 3076, 3146, 3214, 7610**  
`mu.tex` (old example document) . . . . . [687](#), [689](#)  
MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . . . [524](#), [699](#),  
↪[\[69, 70\]](#)  
MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan . . . . . [597](#), [699](#), ↪[\[87\]](#)  
`multibib` (package) . . . . . [61](#), [228](#), ↪[\[196\]](#)  
`multicol` (package) . . . . . [92](#), [116](#), [228](#), [670](#), ↪[\[301\]](#)  
`multicols` (environment) [92](#), [95](#), [117](#), [138](#), [139](#),  
[228](#)  
`\multicolumnmtc` . . . . . **299**  
`\multicolumntoc` . . . . . 298  
`multitoc` (package) . . . . . [94](#), ↪[\[376\]](#)  
`mypatches` (package) . . . . . [93](#)  
`\mz` . . . . . **9748**

## N

`\n@mti` . . . . . **3038, 3076, 3146, 3214, 3355, 3374,**  
**3393**  
`\n@pti` . . . . . **3745, 3751, 3809, 3877, 3952, 4038,**  
**4057, 4076**  
`\n@sti` . . . . . **4360, 4399, 4467, 4534, 4658, 4677,**  
**4696**  
NACU, Andrei . . . . . [468](#), [699](#)  
`\name` (command) . . . . . 688  
`nameref` (package) . . . . . ↪[\[354\]](#)  
`natbib` (package) . . . . . [209](#), [228](#), [693](#), ↪[\[137, 138\]](#)  
NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY, . . . . . [699](#), ↪[\[315\]](#)  
NAUMOV, Sergei O. . . . . [593](#), [699](#), ↪[\[316\]](#)  
`naustrian` (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [575](#), [670](#)  
`naustrian.mld` (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [575](#)  
`neder.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [507](#)  
`needspace` (package) . . . . . [59](#), [229](#), ↪[\[428\]](#)  
`\NeedsTeXFormat` . . . . . **2428, 7379**, 7828, 7839  
NELSON H. F., Beebe . . . . . [698](#), ↪[\[32\]](#)  
NETHERTON, Lee . . . . . [699](#), ↪[\[416\]](#)  
NEUKAM, Frank . . . . . [89](#), [699](#), ↪[\[317, 318\]](#)  
`\newblock` . . . . . 1994, 1996, 2002, 2003

`\newbox` . . . . . 2771, 2775  
`newcommand` (tool) . . . . . ↪[\[334\]](#)  
`\newcommand` (command) . . . . . [45](#)  
`\newcommand` . . . . . 303, 1944, **2153**, 2364,  
2374, 2726, 2752, 2761, 3016, 3707,  
4344, 5091, 5233, 5274, 5397, 5454,  
5472, 5530, 5548, 5630, 5691, 5735,  
5779, 5780, 5813, 5814, 5847, 5848,  
5884, 5927, 5970, 6040, 6085, 6101,  
6130, 7558–7560, 7754, 7765, 7776,  
7801–7803, 7829, 7831, 7833, 7835  
`\newcounter` . . . . . **2973, 3007, 3689, 3695, 4331**,  
4343, 4347  
`\newdimen` . . . . . 2363  
`\newenvironment` . . . . . 1244, 5781, 5797, 5815,  
5831, 5849, 7792–7794  
`\newfloat` (command) . . . . . [217](#)  
`\newif` (command) . . . . . [266](#)  
`\newif` 393, 556, 2477–2523, 2525, 2527, 2529,  
2531, 2533, 2535–2556, 2578, 2581,  
2582, 2584, 2629, 2684–2686, **2782**,  
2822, 5090, 5232, 5273, 5396, 5452,  
5453, 5528, 5529, 5629, 5690, 5734,  
5778, 5793, 5827, 5883, 5926, 5969,  
5990, 6058, 6076, 6084, 6379–6382,  
7731–7735, 7737  
`\newlength` . . . . . 2435, 3716, 4349  
`\newpage` 1286, 1289, 1717, 1718, 1895, 1901,  
2380  
`\newread` (command) . . . . . [282](#), [664](#)  
`\newread` . . . . . **2768**, 2815  
`\newskip` . . . . . 2436  
`\newtheorem` (command) . . . . . [217](#)  
`\newtoks` . . . . . **2768**  
`\newwrite` (command) . . . . . [247](#), [283](#)  
`\newwrite` . . . . . **2434, 2961**  
`newzealand` (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [575](#)  
`newzealand.mld` (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [575](#)  
`ngerman` (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [575](#), [670](#)  
`ngerman.mld` (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [575](#)  
`ngermanb` (language option) [40](#), [575](#), [576](#), [670](#)  
`ngermanb.dtx` (file) . . . . . 576  
`ngermanb.mld` (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [575](#), [576](#)  
`ngermanb2` (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [576](#)  
`ngermanb2.mld` (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [576](#), [676](#)  
NGUYEN, Cuong . . . . . [699](#)  
NICOLAS, Julien . . . . . [699](#)  
NIEDERMAIR, Elke . . . . . [699](#), ↪[\[319\]](#)  
NIEDERMAIR, Michael . . . . . [699](#), ↪[\[319\]](#)  
NIEPRASCHK, Rolf . . . . . [59](#), [699](#), ↪[\[167, 358\]](#)  
`nihongo.png` (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [550](#)  
`\nobreak` . . . . . 397, 558, 1224, 1231, 2832, 3292,  
3293, 3304, 3305, 3757, 3764, 3771



- nocheckfiles (option) [35](#), [55](#), [174–176](#), [211](#),  
[232](#), [250](#), [401](#), [668](#)
- \nocite ..... [475](#), [709](#)
- \noexpand [3452](#), [3559](#), [3563](#), [3620](#), [3624](#), [4132](#),  
[4231](#), [4235](#), [4291](#), [4295](#), [4739](#), [4835](#),  
[4895](#), [5713](#), [5757](#)
- \nofiles (command) [30](#), [170](#), [256](#), [368](#), [695](#)
- \nofiles ..... [4969](#), [4972](#)
- nohints (option) ..... [53](#), [81](#), [218](#), [232](#), [408](#)
- \noindent (command) ..... [664](#)
- \noindent [3092](#), [3162](#), [3230](#), [3820](#), [3892](#), [3967](#),  
[4415](#), [4482](#), [4549](#)
- NOIREL, Josselin ..... [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[29](#)]
- nolistfiles (option) [53](#), [81](#), [232](#), [403](#), [677](#)
- nomencl (package) [52](#), [136](#), [137](#), [227](#), [398](#),  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [[416](#)]
- \nomenclature ..... [2020](#), [2034](#)
- nomentbl (package) ..... [52](#), [398](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[151](#)]
- \nomlfpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \nomlfpagenumbers . [1006](#), [2872](#), [2885](#), [2891](#),  
[7668](#)
- \nomlfrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [672](#)
- \nomlfrule ..... [5006](#), [7650](#)
- \nomltpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \nomltpagenumbers . [1007](#), [2878](#), [2885](#), [2891](#),  
[2897](#), [7668](#)
- \nomltrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [672](#)
- \nomltrule ..... [5015](#), [7650](#)
- \nomtcpagenumbers (command) [47](#), [86](#), [665](#),  
[670](#)
- \nomtcpagenumbers . [1005](#), [1200](#), [2836](#), [2885](#),  
[7668](#)
- \nomtcrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [665](#), [668](#)
- \nomtcrule ..... [1004](#), [1200](#), [4997](#), [7650](#)
- \noopsort ..... [476](#), [710](#)
- \nopagebreak (command) ..... [664](#)
- \noplpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \noplpagenumbers ..... [2872](#), [2896](#), [7668](#)
- \noplfrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [672](#)
- \noplfrule ..... [5006](#), [7650](#)
- \nopltpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \nopltpagenumbers ..... [2878](#), [2902](#), [7668](#)
- \nopltrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [672](#)
- \nopltrule ..... [5015](#), [7650](#)
- \noptcpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \noptcpagenumbers ..... [2858](#), [2890](#), [7668](#)
- \noptcrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \noptcrule ..... [1001](#), [4997](#), [7650](#)
- \normalcolor ..... [3306](#)
- \normalfont ..... [189](#), [193](#), [1219](#), [1229](#), [3306](#)
- \normalsize (command) ..... [38](#), [231](#)
- \normalsize . [1517](#), [1519](#), [1521](#), [1555](#), [1557](#),  
[1559](#), [1913](#), [1914](#), [1918](#), [1919](#), [1922](#),  
[1923](#), [3732–3734](#)
- norsk (language option) ..... [40](#), [577](#)
- norsk.dtx (file) ..... [577](#), [578](#)
- norsk.mld (file) ..... [242](#), [246](#), [577](#)
- norsk2 (language option) ..... [40](#), [578](#)
- norsk2.mld (file) ..... [242](#), [246](#), [578](#), [676](#)
- norvege-c.pdf (graphic file) ..... [243](#), [577](#)
- norvege-t.pdf (graphic file) ..... [243](#), [577](#)
- \noslfpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \noslfpagenumbers ..... [2872](#), [2894](#), [7668](#)
- \noslfrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [672](#)
- \noslfrule ..... [5006](#), [7650](#)
- \nosltpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \nosltpagenumbers ..... [2878](#), [2900](#), [7668](#)
- \nosltrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#), [672](#)
- \nosltrule ..... [5015](#), [7650](#)
- \nostcpagenumbers (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \nostcpagenumbers ..... [2848](#), [2888](#), [7668](#)
- \nostcrule (command) ..... [47](#), [86](#)
- \nostcrule ..... [4997](#), [7650](#)
- notoccite (package) [53](#), [89](#), [232](#), [250](#), [271](#), [298](#),  
[301](#), [304](#), [402](#), [436](#), [670](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[13](#)]
- notoccite (option) [53](#), [81](#), [232](#), [271](#), [402](#), [436](#),  
[670](#)
- nottoc (tocbind package) ..... [145](#)
- NULL, Tim ..... [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[320](#), [321](#), [422](#)]
- \numberline ..... [1028](#), [4606](#)
- \numwidth (command) ..... [46](#)
- nynorsk (language option) ..... [40](#), [578](#), [579](#)
- nynorsk.mld (file) ..... [242](#), [246](#), [578](#)
- nynorsk2 (language option) ..... [40](#), [579](#)
- nynorsk2.mld (file) ..... [242](#), [246](#), [579](#), [676](#)

## O

- OBERDIEK, Heiko [63](#), [89](#), [223](#), [249](#), [310](#), [314](#), [320](#),  
[668](#), [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[322–327](#), [356](#), [357](#)]
- occdial1.jpg (graphic file) ..... [243](#), [580](#)
- occdial2.png (graphic file) ..... [243](#), [580](#)
- occitan (language option) ..... [40](#), [579](#)
- occitan.mld (file) [242](#), [246](#), [257](#), [579](#), [696](#)
- occitan2 (language option) ..... [40](#), [580](#)
- occitan2.mld (file) ..... [242](#), [246](#), [580](#), [696](#)
- occitanie.pdf (graphic file) ..... [243](#), [580](#)
- occtaur.jpg (graphic file) ..... [243](#), [580](#)
- \oe ..... [1819](#), [1848](#)
- OETIKER, Tobias ..... [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[328](#), [329](#)]
- OKAMURA, Haruhito ..... [699](#),  $\hookrightarrow$ [[123](#)]
- OLD (file) ..... [687](#)
- Old Examples
- 2c.tex ..... [687](#), [689](#)
- add.bib ..... [688](#), [689](#)
- add.tex ..... [687](#), [689](#)

- addsec.tex . . . . . 679, 680, 687, 689
- amem.tex . . . . . 687
- app-mem.tex . . . . . 689
- apx.tex . . . . . 689
- bo.tex . . . . . 689
- ch0.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- cri.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- fo1.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- fo2.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- gaps.tex . . . . . 686, 689
- hia.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- hide.tex . . . . . 685
- hide1.tex . . . . . 685, 689
- hide2.tex . . . . . 685, 689
- hir.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- hop.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- livre.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- mem.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- mem1.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- mini-art.tex . . . . . 689
- minitoc-ex.tex . . . . . 689
- mtc-adds.tex . . . . . 691
- mtc-amem.tex . . . . . 691
- mtc-book.tex . . . . . 691
- mtc-gaps.tex . . . . . 691
- mtc-mem1.tex . . . . . 691
- mtc-subf.tex . . . . . 691
- mtc-tsfc.tex . . . . . 691
- mu.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- scr.tex . . . . . 687, 689
- second.tex . . . . . 687, 690
- subf.tex . . . . . 687, 690
- tbi.tex . . . . . 687, 690
- tlc.tex . . . . . 687, 690
- tsfc.tex . . . . . 687, 690
- OLKO, Mariusz . . . . . 582, 699, ⇔[330]
- omal (package) . . . . . 45, 471, 568, ⇔[5]
- omega-greek.ldf (file) . . . . . 530, 532, 533
- omega-polish.ldf (file) . . . . . 582
- omega-russian.ldf (file) . . . . . 590
- omega-spanish.ldf (file) . . . . . 604
- omega.sty (file) . . . . . 207
- oneside (*many classes* package) . . . . . 673
- open (feature) . . . . . 49, 50, 82, 87, 138, 139, 189, 216, 227, 232, 255, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 694
- \openin . . . . . 3502, 3568, 3629
- \openminilof (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \openminilof . . . . . 2939, 3181, 7701
- \openminilot (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \openminilot . . . . . 2939, 3249, 7701
- \openminitoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \openminitoc . . . . . 2939, 3109, 7701
- \openout 2707, 2711, 2782, 2961, 3426, 3438, 3471, 3518, 3546, 3583, 3607, 3644, 4116, 4130, 4204, 4228, 4264, 4288, 4324, 4737, 4755, 4808, 4833, 4868, 4893, 4928, 7289
- \openpartlof (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \openpartlof . . . . . 2939, 3912, 7686
- \openpartlot (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \openpartlot . . . . . 2939, 3987, 7686
- \openparttoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \openparttoc . . . . . 2939, 3835, 7686
- \opensectlof (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \opensectlof . . . . . 2939, 4502, 7716
- \opensectlot (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \opensectlot . . . . . 2939, 4569, 7716
- \opensecttoc (command) . . . . . 49, 87
- \opensecttoc . . . . . 2939, 4432, 7716
- Options
  - aathira (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - above (placeins) . . . . . 31–33, 183
  - addtotoc (abstract) . . . . . 54, 71, 160, 206
  - ambili (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - anahka (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - ashtamudi (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - aswathi (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - ayilyambold (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - below (placeins) . . . . . 31–33, 184
  - bhanu (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - bhavana (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - bibtotoc (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 51, 143
  - bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 51
  - checkfiles (default) . . . . . 31, 35, 62, 154, 174–176, 211, 232, 250, 401, 668
  - chippi (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - dotted (default) . . . . . 48, 81, 249, 402, 667
  - flsection . . . . . 250, 669
  - flsectionnb . . . . . 250, 669
  - gauri (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - gopika (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - hints (default) . . . . . 53–55, 58, 71, 73, 74, 76, 77, 80, 81, 156, 162, 170, 218, 232, 251, 252, 266, 269, 408, 417, 434, 437, 670, 674, 683
  - hints . . . . . 58
  - idxtotoc (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 51
  - indulekha (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - insection . . . . . 31, 54, 81, 101, 108, 172, 177, 183, 184, 197, 219, 234, 250, 251, 253, 402, 417, 418, 435, 669, 671, 684, 685
  - intoc (nomencl) . . . . . 136, 137
  - ISMashtamudi (malayalam) . . . . . 565
  - ISMkarthika (malayalam) . . . . . 565

ISMkaumudi (malayalam) . . . . . 565  
 ISMrevathi (malayalam) . . . . . 565  
 jaya (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
**k-loose** (default) . 43, 81, 220, 252, 271,  
 347, 401, 676  
**k-tight** . 43, 63, 81, 143, 220, 252, 271,  
 295, 324, 347, 401, 676  
 karthika (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 kaumudi (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 kottakkal (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
**listfiles** (default) . . . . . 53,  
 62, 81, 154, 205, 221, 232, 252, 254,  
 403, 436, 676, 689  
 liststotoc (KOMA-Script) . . . . 51, 143  
 liststotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) 51  
**loose** (default) 43, 81, 220, 222, 238, 249,  
 271, 347, 401, 667, 669  
 makam (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 malavika (o) . . . . . 566  
 mridula (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 nocheckfiles 35, 55, 174–176, 211, 232,  
 250, 401, 668  
 nohints . . . . . 53, 81, 218, 232, 408  
 nolistfiles . . . . . 53, 81, 232, 403, 677  
 notoccite 53, 81, 232, 271, 402, 436, 670  
 nottoc (tocbibind) . . . . . 145  
 oneside (*many classes*) . . . . . 673  
 parindent (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 43  
 parskip (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 43  
 payippad (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 periyar (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 ravivarma (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 revathi (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 sabari (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 sarada (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 section (placeins) . . 31–33, 54, 172, 435  
 shorttext . 54, 60, 81, 168, 208, 236, 249,  
 402, 667  
 sort&compress (natbib) . . . . . 693  
 sruthy (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
**tight** 43, 63, 81, 143, 220, 222, 238, 249,  
 271, 295, 324, 347, 401, 667, 669  
 triruvathira (malayalam) . . . . . 566  
 undotted . . . . . 48, 63, 81, 249, 402, 667  
 verbose (placeins) . . . . . 31, 435  
**\or** (command) . . . . . 241, 439  
 ORTOLO, Tanguy . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [331]  
**\osection** . . . . . 2051  
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik . . . . . 606, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [76]  
 OTT, Jörg . . . . . 699  
**\outer** (command) . . . . . 282  
 overcite (package) . . . . . 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [16]

## P

**\PackageError** (command) . . . . . 228, 251  
**\PackageError** . . . . . 7826  
**\PackageInfo** (command) 228, 251, 671, 675  
**\PackageInfo** . . . . . 7826  
 Packages  
   abstract 54, 71, 89, 160, 206, 251, 413, 673,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [430]  
   afoot . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [435]  
   afterpage . . . . . 29, 207, 680,  $\hookrightarrow$ [111]  
   Aleph . . . . . 221, 232,  $\hookrightarrow$ [49, 186]  
   alnumsec . 55, 77, 89, 185, 207, 253, 274,  
     428, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [254]  
   alphanum . 54, 76, 89, 170, 207, 408, 683,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [102]  
   Antomega . . 207, 471, 530, 532, 533, 556,  
     582, 587, 590, 600, 604,  $\hookrightarrow$ [252]  
   appendix 54, 65, 66, 89, 161, 207, 250, 409,  
     670, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [431]  
   Arabi . . 40, 45, 208, 477, 516, 688,  $\hookrightarrow$ [226]  
   ArabTeX . . 40, 45, 208, 471, 475, 477, 540,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [256, 257]  
   ArmTeX . . 45, 208, 471, 478, 667,  $\hookrightarrow$ [134]  
   babel . 40, 45, 76, 122, 208, 216, 248, 257,  
     470, 473, 480, 481, 483, 488, 490–  
     492, 497, 502, 503, 506–511, 517,  
     518, 520–522, 524, 525, 528–530,  
     541, 545–547, 554, 555, 558, 559,  
     563, 564, 574–578, 581, 583, 585–  
     587, 591, 595–600, 603, 606, 609,  
     612, 614, 616, 665, 666, 674, 684,  
     697,  $\hookrightarrow$ [53, 60, 73]  
   backref . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [117]  
   BangTeX . 45, 209, 471, 482, 680,  $\hookrightarrow$ [335]  
   bibtopic . . . . . 61, 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24]  
   bibunits . . . . . 61, 209, 228,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
   booktabs . . . . . 23, 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [155]  
   calc . . . . . 23, 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [402]  
   captcont . . 55, 77, 89, 185, 209, 253, 274,  
     428, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [127]  
   caption 55, 73, 89, 172, 209, 210, 252, 274,  
     428, 677,  $\hookrightarrow$ [383, 384]  
   caption2 . . 55, 73, 89, 172, 209, 210, 252,  
     275, 429, 677,  $\hookrightarrow$ [385, 386]  
   ccaption 55, 73, 89, 173, 210, 252, 275, 429,  
     677,  $\hookrightarrow$ [434]  
   CervanTeX . . . . . 45, 604,  $\hookrightarrow$ [47]  
   chapterbib . . . . . 61, 211, 228,  $\hookrightarrow$ [18]  
   chnngpage . . . . . 211, 256, 695,  $\hookrightarrow$ [427]  
   cite . . . . . 692,  $\hookrightarrow$ [15]

- CJK . 40, 45, 211, 212, 238, 239, 470, 498, 501, 535, 537–539, 550, 551, 608,  $\hookrightarrow$ [20, 21, 124, 153, 276, 277, 341]
- cmcyralt . . . . . 593,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52, 207]
- color . . . . . 116,  $\hookrightarrow$ [116]
- comment . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [149]
- dblaccnt . . . . . 213, 682,  $\hookrightarrow$ [304]
- Devanāgarī . . 45, 214, 218, 471, 506, 542,  $\hookrightarrow$ [337]
- doc . . . . . 23,  $\hookrightarrow$ [303]
- docmfp . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [436]
- docstrip . . . . . 23,  $\hookrightarrow$ [267, 305]
- $\varepsilon$ -TeX . . . 213, 216, 232, 266,  $\hookrightarrow$ [104, 297]
- ethiop . . . . . 45, 216, 471, 512,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]
- fancybox . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [412]
- FarsiTeX . . . . 45, 216, 471, 514,  $\hookrightarrow$ [152]
- flafter 32, 234, 435, 684, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [268, 306]
- float . . . 32, 55, 89, 163, 217, 235, 255, 268, 275, 430, 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [281]
- floatrow 32, 55, 89, 163, 217, 255, 268, 275, 430, 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [265]
- flowfram 54, 80, 89, 185, 217, 255, 414, 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [394, 395]
- fncychap . . 54, 76, 89, 184, 217, 253, 273, 426, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [280]
- franc . . . . . 93, 217, 244, 246
- frbib . . . . . 218, 244, 246
- frenchle . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [168]
- frenchpro . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [169, 170]
- frnew . . . . . 93, 218, 244, 246
- fullpage . . . . . 138, 139, 147,  $\hookrightarrow$ [136]
- geometry . . . . . 116, 218,  $\hookrightarrow$ [408]
- guarani . . . . . 45, 218, 471, 534,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]
- hangcaption 54, 80, 89, 185, 218, 254, 273, 426, 663, 691,  $\hookrightarrow$ [233]
- here . . . . . 217
- H $\LaTeX$  . . . . . 219, 471, 538, 540,  $\hookrightarrow$ [249]
- hypcap . . . . . 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [324]
- hypernat . . . . . 693,  $\hookrightarrow$ [39]
- hyperref . . . . . 23, 54, 63, 64, 73, 89, 116, 143, 153, 170, 171, 174, 219, 223, 239, 240, 246, 249, 252, 272, 310, 414, 668, 677, 681, 692, 693,  $\hookrightarrow$ [322, 325–327, 356, 357]
- HyperTeX . . . . . 219, 239,  $\hookrightarrow$ [344]
- ifmtarg . . . . . 219, 277,  $\hookrightarrow$ [443]
- ifpdf . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [323]
- ifthen . . . . . 219
- KannadaTeX . . . . . 220, 552,  $\hookrightarrow$ [445]
- ledarab . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [435]
- ledmac . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [437]
- ledpar . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [438]
- LH . . . . . 593,  $\hookrightarrow$ [316]
- lhcyr . . . . . 594, 595,  $\hookrightarrow$ [447]
- lipsum . . . . . 91, 95, 221, 686,  $\hookrightarrow$ [197]
- LuaTeX . . . . . 232,  $\hookrightarrow$ [215, 216]
- malayalam . . . . . 45, 471, 565–569,  $\hookrightarrow$ [4]
- marvosym . . . . . 224,  $\hookrightarrow$ [212]
- mcaption . . 55, 73, 89, 173, 222, 252, 275, 429, 677,  $\hookrightarrow$ [213]
- minitoc . . . . . 26, 260,  $\hookrightarrow$ [146, 147]
- minitoc-hyper . . . . . 63, 223,  $\hookrightarrow$ [414]
- minitocoff . . . . . 248, 249, 667
- minutes . . . . . 224, 294, 400,  $\hookrightarrow$ [279]
- MonTeX . . . . . 45, 224, 471, 485, 486, 493, 494, 571, 592, 617–619, 686,  $\hookrightarrow$ [130, 133]
- morefloats . . . . . 673,  $\hookrightarrow$ [219]
- mtcmess . . . 152, 228, 253, 442, 457, 683
- mtcoff . . . . . 36, 56, 59, 97, 150, 151, 200–203, 228, 248, 249, 441, 442, 455–457, 663, 667, 675, 694
- mtcpatchmem 150, 151, 203, 228, 241, 458
- multibib . . . . . 61, 228,  $\hookrightarrow$ [196]
- multicol . . . . . 92, 116, 228, 670,  $\hookrightarrow$ [301]
- multitoc . . . . . 94,  $\hookrightarrow$ [376]
- mypatches . . . . . 93
- nameref . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [354]
- natbib . . . . . 209, 228, 693,  $\hookrightarrow$ [137, 138]
- needspace . . . . . 59, 229,  $\hookrightarrow$ [428]
- nomencl . . . 52, 136, 137, 227, 398,  $\hookrightarrow$ [416]
- nomentbl . . . . . 52, 398,  $\hookrightarrow$ [151]
- notoccite . . 53, 89, 232, 250, 271, 298, 301, 304, 402, 436, 670,  $\hookrightarrow$ [13]
- omal . . . . . 45, 471, 568,  $\hookrightarrow$ [5]
- overcite . . . . . 209,  $\hookrightarrow$ [16]
- pict2e . . . . . 59,  $\hookrightarrow$ [167]
- placeins . . . . . 31, 32, 54, 89, 172, 183, 184, 217, 219, 234, 250, 267, 411, 418, 435, 675, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [14]
- P $\LaTeX$  . . . . . 234
- P $\LaTeX$  2 $\varepsilon$  . . . . . 234,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224, 237]
- polski . . . . . 45, 234, 582,  $\hookrightarrow$ [330, 423]
- quotchap . . 54, 76, 89, 184, 235, 253, 273, 427, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [403]
- RomanianTeX . . . . . 586,  $\hookrightarrow$ [362]
- romannum 55, 77, 89, 184, 235, 253, 273, 427, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [440]
- rotating . . . . . 235,  $\hookrightarrow$ [355]
- rotfloat 55, 89, 163, 217, 235, 255, 268, 276, 431, 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [382]
- sectsty 54, 71, 89, 129, 173, 236, 251, 267, 272, 425, 674, 684,  $\hookrightarrow$ [295]
- sfheaders . . 55, 77, 89, 185, 236, 253, 274, 427, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [283]
- shorttoc . . . . . 22, 236, 663,  $\hookrightarrow$ [145]

- shortverb . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [303]
- ST<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X . . . . . 45, 237, 606,  $\hookrightarrow$ [294]
- splitbib . . . . . 61, 237,  $\hookrightarrow$ [290]
- stdclsdv . . . . . 235, 237,  $\hookrightarrow$ [426]
- subfig . . . 35, 89, 147, 209, 228, 237, 390,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [128]
- subfigure . 35, 89, 141, 227, 237,  $\hookrightarrow$ [126]
- textcase . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [115]
- thailatex . . . . . 238, 608, 686,  $\hookrightarrow$ [296]
- titlesec . . . 54, 89, 186, 238, 256, 410, 695,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [46]
- titletoc . . . . 54, 89, 174, 238, 411,  $\hookrightarrow$ [46]
- tocbibind . . . . . 51, 54, 66,  
89, 97, 99, 101, 102, 105, 143, 145,  
146, 162, 226, 228, 238, 250, 409,  
668,  $\hookrightarrow$ [432]
- toch . . . . . 663
- tocloft 54, 65–67, 72, 79, 80, 89, 116, 129,  
162, 226, 228, 238, 410,  $\hookrightarrow$ [429]
- tocvsec2 . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [433]
- trivfloat55, 89, 163, 239, 255, 268, 276, 430,  
694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [444]
- txfonts . . . . . 37, 239,  $\hookrightarrow$ [368]
- url . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [19]
- varioref . . . . . 141,  $\hookrightarrow$ [302]
- varsects54, 74, 89, 173, 240, 252, 267, 272,  
425, 679,  $\hookrightarrow$ [398]
- vietnam . . . . . 45, 615,  $\hookrightarrow$ [278]
- vruler . . . . . 78,  $\hookrightarrow$ [232]
- wrapfig . . . . . 135, 227, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [17]
- xargs . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [345, 346]
- X<sub>A</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X . . . . . 232
- X<sub>Y</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X . . . . . 232,  $\hookrightarrow$ [239]
- xr . . 29, 240, 310, 662, 663, 679,  $\hookrightarrow$ [110]
- xr-hyper . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [113]
- \PackageWarning (command) 228, 251, 671,  
675
- \PackageWarning . . . . . 7826
- \PackageWarningNoLine (command) . . 228
- \PackageWarningNoLine . . . . . 7826
- \pagebreak . . 3125, 3197, 3265, 3854, 3928,  
4003, 4449, 4516, 4584
- \pagenumbering . . . . . 2206, 2212
- \pageref . . . . . 2413
- \pagestyle (command) . . . . . 50
- \pagestyle (feature) . 49, 50, 82, 87, 216, 233,  
288, 290, 388
- \pagestyle . . . . . 1294
- pageUn (environment) . . . . . 117
- PAÍĆ, Alan . . . . . 502, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [88]
- PAKIN, Scott . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [332–334]
- PAL, Palash Baran . . . . . 482, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [335]
- PANDEY, Anshuman 506, 542, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [336, 337]
- \par (command) . . . . . 679
- \paragraph (command) . . . . . 214, 236
- \paragraph . . 882, 898, 913, 934, 1083, 1103,  
1119, 1148, 3453, 4133, 4739
- \paragraph\* . . . . . 1091
- \paragraph@mtcck . . . . . 5145
- paraguay.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 535
- paraguayp.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 535
- \parbox . . . . . 1262, 2376
- parindent (KOMA-Script package) . . . . . 43
- PARK, Minje Byeng-sen . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [338]
- \parsep (command) . . . . . 43, 295, 324
- \parsep . . . . . 3049, 3778, 4375
- \parskip (command) . . . . . 43, 265, 295, 324
- \parskip (KOMA-Script package) . . . . . 43
- \parskip 2435, 3778, 3818, 3886, 3961, 4409,  
4476, 4543
- \part (command) . . . . . 28, 34, 52, 54, 61,  
64, 83, 157, 164, 167, 169, 171, 186,  
199, 208, 209, 214, 235, 236, 279,  
283, 305, 307, 321, 325, 328, 331,  
334, 337, 341, 343, 414, 415, 437
- part (counter) . . . . . 268, 269
- \part . . . . . 168, 171, 176, 274, 278, 284,  
572, 641, 828, 901, 922, 1018, 1091,  
1151, 1445, 1461, 1474, 1506, 1541,  
1676, 2716, 2984, 3278, 4103, 4215,  
4275, 5871, 5887, 5914, 5930, 5957,  
5973, 6582, 7335
- \part\* (command) . 73, 88, 94, 279, 292, 334,  
668
- \part\* . . . . . 1428, 1676
- \part@mtcck . 5139, 5167, 5176, 5183, 5190,  
5200, 5208
- \partbegin (command) . . . . . 64, 334
- \partbegin . . 1176, 4010, 4205, 4265, 4325,  
7564
- \partend (command) . . . . . 65
- \partend . . . . . 4010, 4195, 4255, 4315, 7564
- PARTL, Hubert . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [328, 329]
- \partlof (command) . 34, 38, 41, 42, 83, 88,  
178, 180, 219, 323, 325, 328, 665
- \partlof 572, 642, 828, 903, 922, 1018, 1091,  
3745, 3790, 3856, 6696, 6784, 6871,  
7363, 7568
- \partlof@ (command) . . . . . 328
- \partlof@ . . . . . 3319, 3856, 3857
- \partlof@mtcck . . . . . 5133, 5158
- partlofdepth (depth counter) . 35, 214, 233,  
321, 330
- \partlot (command) . 34, 38, 41, 42, 83, 88,  
178, 180, 219, 323, 325, 331, 665

- `\partlot` 572, 642, 828, 904, 922, 1018, 3745, 3790, 3930, 6705, 6793, 6882, 7363, 7568
- `\partlot@` (command) . . . . . 331
- `\partlot@` . . . . . 3319, 3930, 3931
- `\partlot@mtcck` . . . . . 5136, 5162
- `partlotdepth` (depth counter) . 35, 214, 233, 321, 333
- `\partoc` (command) . . . . . 325
- `\partopsep` (command) . . . . . 324
- `\partopsep` . . . . . 3051, 3778, 4374
- `\parttoc` (command) . 23, 34, 38, 39, 41, 42, 54, 64, 83, 88, 94, 179, 181, 219, 323, 325, 416, 418, 420, 422, 665, 669
- `\parttoc` . . . . . 27, 169, 174, 179, 272, 285, 572, 642, 828, 902, 922, 1018, 1091, 1151, 1428, 1516, 1517, 1519, 1521, 1554, 1555, 1557, 1559, 3745, 3790, 6687, 6775, 6860, 7363, 7568
- `\parttoc@` (command) . . . . . 325
- `\parttoc@` . . . . . 3319, 3790, 3791
- `\parttoc@mtcck` . . . . . 5130, 5152
- `parttocdepth` (depth counter) 23, 34, 35, 83, 214, 234, 321, 327
- PATASHNIK, Oren . . . . . 209, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [339, 340]
- payippad (malayalam package) . . . . . 566
- `\pchapter` . . . . . 4005, 4133, 7587
- PECHTA, Jonathan . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [341–343]
- PEETERS, Kasper . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [344]
- PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD, Manuel . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [345, 346]
- PELGER, Matthias . . . . . 699
- `\penalty` . . . . . 397, 558, 2051
- People
  - ABOLHASSANI, Hassan . . . . . 514, 698
  - ABRAHAMS, Paul W. . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2]
  - ABU EL-ATA, Nabil . . . . . 698
  - ADDABBO, Tommaso . . . . . 698
  - AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . 483, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [61]
  - AICARDI, Stéphane . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [3]
  - AKOPIAN, Vartan . . . . . 208, 478, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [134]
  - ALEX, A.J. . . . . 565–569, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [4, 5]
  - ALFORD, Mark . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [6]
  - ANDRÉ, Jacques . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [8, 9, 308]
  - ANDRIES, Patrick . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [10]
  - ANDRIEUX, Jérôme . . . . . 698
  - ANGELI, Ralf . . . . . 698
  - APPEL, Walter . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [11]
  - ARADIAN, Achod André . . . . . 698
  - ÁRNASON, Einar . . . . . 545, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [62]
  - ARNOLD, Tim . . . . . 311, 698
  - ARPONEN, Jouko . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [12]
  - ARSENEAU, Donald . . . . . 31, 32, 53, 89, 232, 250, 271, 277, 282, 298, 301, 304, 664, 667, 670, 682, 691, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [13–19, 443]
  - ASLASKEN, Helmer . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [20, 21]
  - ASPINALL, David . . . . . 698
  - ÅSSEN, Ivar . . . . . 578, 698
  - BACHMANN, Philipp . . . . . 698
  - BADENES, Gonçal . . . . . 497, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [63]
  - BALDRIDGE, Jason . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [22]
  - BALGARENSKY, Marin . . . . . 698
  - BARROCA, Leonor . . . . . 89, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [355]
  - BASSI, Giancarlo . . . . . 605, 698
  - BASSO, Pierre . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24]
  - BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . . 574, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [25]
  - BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves . . . . . 698
  - BAUSUM, David . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [26, 27]
  - BAYART, Benjamin . . . . . 50, 251, 370, 671, 672, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [28, 29]
  - BAYET, Thierry . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]
  - BECCARI, Claudio . . . . . 547, 549, 554, 555, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [30, 31, 64, 72]
  - BEFFARA, Emmanuel . . . . . 62, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [33]
  - BELET, Benoît . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [308]
  - BELMOUHOU, Rachid . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [34]
  - BÉRCES, József . . . . . 563, 564, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]
  - BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [35–38]
  - BERGER, Jens . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [39]
  - BERNDT, Tobias . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [40, 41]
  - BERRY, Karl . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2, 42, 43]
  - BEYENE, Berhanu . . . . . 512, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]
  - BEZOS, Javier . . . . . 89, 524, 534, 600, 604, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45–48]
  - BILOTTA, Giuseppe . . . . . 232, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [49]
  - BINISTI, Olivier . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [363]
  - BÍRÓ, Árpád . . . . . 563, 564, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]
  - BITOUZÉ, Denis . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [50]
  - BLANKENSHIP, Dr. Barbara . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [214]
  - BLOCH, Laurent . . . . . 698
  - BOMAN, Patrick . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]
  - BONVILA, Onofre . . . . . 602, 698
  - BOSHNAKOV, Georgi N. . . . 491, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [66]
  - BOUGETTE, Patrice . . . . . 698
  - BOURBONNAIS, Daniel . . . . . 698
  - BOWDEN, Andrew . . . . . 695, 698
  - BOYKO, Victor . . . . . 593, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52]
  - BRAAMS, Johannes L. 45, 208, 248, 473, 507–509, 528, 529, 546, 577, 578, 616, 665, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [53–101, 150, 260–263, 305–308]
  - BRAUN, Felix . . . . . 89, 207, 220, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [102]
  - BREEN, Jim . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [103]
  - BREITENLOHNER, Peter . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [104]
  - BUJDOSÓ, Gyöngyi . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [105, 106]
  - BURBANK, Mimi . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [347]
  - BURC, Mustafa . . . . . 609, 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67]



- BURGEL, Patrick . . . . . 698, ⇨[107]  
 BURYKIN, Alexey . . . . . 698, ⇨[36–38]  
 CARCAGNO, Samuele . . . . . 698, ⇨[108]  
 CARDI, Olivier . . . . . 698  
 CARELLA, David . . . . . 698, ⇨[109]  
 CARLISLE, David P. 29, 217, 240, 310, 663, 698, ⇨[68, 110–117, 306–308, 310]  
 CARMODY, Kevin . . . . . 506, 542, 698, ⇨[337]  
 CARRIBA, Manuel . . . . . 524, 698, ⇨[69, 70]  
 CASPAR, Régis . . . . . 698  
 CELES, Waldemar . . . . . 698, ⇨[223]  
 CHABBERT<sup>†</sup>, Raymond . . . . . 698, ⇨[118]  
 CHANG, Winston . . . . . 698, ⇨[119]  
 CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme . . . . . 698, ⇨[8, 50, 248, 308, 406]  
 CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal . . . . . 698, ⇨[120]  
 CHEN, Pehong . . . . . 698, ⇨[121]  
 CHEONG, Otfried . . . . . 698, ⇨[122]  
 CHEVALIER, Céline . . . . . 698, ⇨[11]  
 CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana . . . . . 598, 698, ⇨[71]  
 CHO, Jin-Hwan . . . . . 698, ⇨[123]  
 CHOU, Pai H. . . . . 698, ⇨[124]  
 CHUVIN, Pierre . . . . . 698, ⇨[125]  
 CLEGG, Marian . . . . . 698  
 COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . 35, 55, 77, 89, 698, ⇨[126–128]  
 CODOGNO, Maurizio . 547, 549, 698, ⇨[72]  
 COOK, David B. . . . . 698  
 CORFF, Oliver . . . . . 571, 617–619, 698, ⇨[130–133]  
 CORNET, Emmanuel . . . . . 698, ⇨[11]  
 COUNCHAM, Prakash . . . . . 698, ⇨[29]  
 DACHIAN, Sergueï . 208, 478, 698, ⇨[134]  
 DAERR, Adrian . . . . . 698  
 DALALYAN, Arnak . 208, 478, 698, ⇨[134]  
 DALY, Patrick W. . . . . 698, ⇨[135–138, 250]  
 DANIELSSON, Holger . . . . . 698, ⇨[341–343]  
 DAVISON, Alice . . . . . 698, ⇨[139]  
 DE FIGUEIRO, Luiz Henrique . . 698, ⇨[223]  
 DEININGER, Andreas . . . . . 256, 368, 695, 698  
 DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . 488, 698, ⇨[91]  
 DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien . . . . . 698  
 DEPARDIEU, Éric . . . . . 698, ⇨[29]  
 DE RYDT, Ben . . . . . 698  
 DESGRAUPES, Bernard . . . . . 698, ⇨[140–142]  
 DESPRAIRES, Cécile . . . . . 698, ⇨[34, 173, 378, 424]  
 DESREUX, Sébastien . . . . . 698, ⇨[11]  
 DETIG, Christine . . . . . 698, ⇨[143]  
 DILLER, Antoni R. . . . . 698, ⇨[144]  
 DORI, Dorjpalam . . . . . 571, 617–619, 698, ⇨[133]  
 DRIKIS, Ivars . . . . . 557, 698  
 DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. . . . . 27, ⇨[29, 145–147]  
 DRYER, Matthew S. . . . . 479, 698  
 DUCHIER, Denys . . . . . 698, ⇨[305]  
 DUDDING, Lyndon . . . . . 65, 698  
 DUNG, Ta Quang . . . . . 698  
 ÈEHAJA, Marko . . . . . 598, 698  
 EGAN, Patrick . . . . . 698, ⇨[151]  
 EIJKHOUT, Victor 698, ⇨[73, 148–150, 260]  
 ELMEGAARD, Brian . . . . . 698, ⇨[151]  
 ELS, Danie . . . . . 698, ⇨[155]  
 ESFAHBOD, Behdad . . . . . 514, 698, ⇨[152]  
 ESSER, Thomas . . . . . 698  
 ETIENNE, Gilhooly . . . . . 698, ⇨[173]  
 EVERITT, Karl F. . . . . 668, 698  
 FABIAN, Mike . . . . . 698, ⇨[153]  
 FAIRBAIRNS, Robin . . . . . 698, ⇨[154]  
 FAULHAMMER, Christian . . . . . 698, ⇨[351]  
 FEAR, Simon . . . . . 698, ⇨[155]  
 FENN, Jürgen . . . . . 698, ⇨[156, 404, 405]  
 FERGUSON, Michael J. . . . . 698, ⇨[157]  
 FESSLER, Jeff . . . . . 698  
 FISCHER, Ulrike . . . . . 698  
 FLECK, Jean-Julien . . . . . 698, ⇨[11]  
 FLIPO, Daniel . . . . . 520–522, 698, ⇨[74, 328]  
 FLOM, Peter L. . . . . 698, ⇨[158–160]  
 FLYNN, Peter . . . . . 698, ⇨[161–164]  
 FOX, Jim . . . . . 698  
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. . . . . 698  
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo . . . . . 698, ⇨[225]  
 GARCIA, Federico . . . . . 698, ⇨[165, 166]  
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego . . . . . 698  
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert . . . . . 59, 698, ⇨[167]  
 GAULLE<sup>†</sup>, Bernard . . . . . 698, ⇨[168–170]  
 GELDERMAN, Maarten . . . . . 699, ⇨[171]  
 GENSCHTE, Chuck . . . . . 699, ⇨[172]  
 GHODSI, Mohammad 471, 514, 699, ⇨[152]  
 GILHOOLY, Helen . . . . . 699, ⇨[173]  
 GIRDENIS, Aleksas Stanislovas . . . . . 558, 699  
 GIRON, François . . . . . 699, ⇨[174]  
 GLEISZNER, Markus . . . . . 679, 680, 699  
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali . . . . . 699  
 GOOSSENS, Michel . . . . . 665, 699, ⇨[175, 176, 306–308]  
 GORDON, Jr., Raymond G. . . . . 699, ⇨[177]  
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 GRANT, Fraser . . . . . 546, 596, 699, ⇨[56, 75]  
 GRÄTZER, George . . . . . 699, ⇨[178–180]  
 GRAY, Norman . . . . . 239, 699, ⇨[181]  
 GREENWADE, George D. . . . . 699, ⇨[182]  
 GREGORIO, Enrico . 605, 699, ⇨[183, 184]  
 GRENON, Loïc . . . . . 699  
 GRETHER, Charles . . . . . 699, ⇨[378]  
 GRIMES, Barbara F. . . . . 699, ⇨[177]

- GRINEVA, Olga A. . . . . 699, ⇨[35]  
 GROT, Sébastien . . . . . 699  
 GUIGNARD, Micael . . . . . 699  
 GUNN, Marion . . . . . 546, 699, ⇨[56]  
 GURARI, Eitan M. . . . . 699, ⇨[176]  
 HAFNER, Thomas . . . . . 699, ⇨[358]  
 HAGEN, Hans . . . . . 699,  
 ⇨[159, 186, 187, 194, 216]  
 HAHN, Reinhard F. . . . . 699, ⇨[188]  
 HAMZI, Boumediene . . . . . 699  
 HÀN, Thế Thành . . 213, 615, 682, 692, 699,  
 ⇨[189–194, 278]  
 HANSEN, Thorsten . . . . . 699, ⇨[195, 196]  
 HAPPEL, Patrick . . . . . 699, ⇨[197]  
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis . . . . . 232, 699,  
 ⇨[9, 198–206, 348, 349]  
 HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. . . . 699, ⇨[1, 2]  
 HARIN, Alexander . . . . . 593, 699, ⇨[207]  
 HARRIS, Russel L. . . . . 699  
 HARRISON, Michael A. . . . . 699, ⇨[121]  
 HARTKE, Stephen . . . . . 699, ⇨[208]  
 HEAP, Danny . . . . . 699  
 HEFFERON, Jim . . . . . 699, ⇨[210, 211]  
 HEIDER, André . . . . . 699  
 HEIN, Thorsten . . . . . 699  
 HELLMAN, Sten . . . . . 606, 699, ⇨[76]  
 HELSTRUP, Håvard . . 577, 578, 699, ⇨[57]  
 HENEL, Yvon . . . . . 699, ⇨[29, 404]  
 HENKEL, Hartmut . . . . . 699, ⇨[216]  
 HENLICH, Thomas . . . . . 699, ⇨[212]  
 HENNIG, Stephan . . 55, 73, 89, 699, ⇨[213]  
 HENRY, Florence . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 HERBORN, Stephen . . . . . 699  
 HESOLL, Jörg . . . . . 699  
 HINNENBUSH, Pr. Thomas J. . . 699, ⇨[214]  
 HOADLEY, David . . . . . 699, ⇨[379]  
 HOEKWATER, Taco . . . . . 699, ⇨[215, 216]  
 HOENIG, Alan . . . . . 699, ⇨[217]  
 HOGG, Joe . . . . . 699, ⇨[159]  
 HØGHOLM, Morten . . . . . 699  
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil . . 577, 578, 699, ⇨[57]  
 HÖPPNER, Klaus . . . . . 699, ⇨[218]  
 HORST, Umstatter . . . . . 585, 699, ⇨[77]  
 HOSEK, Don . . . . . 673, 699, ⇨[219]  
 HU, Yufan . . . . . 662, 699  
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel . . 699, ⇨[220, 308]  
 HUSEBY, Dave W. . . . . 699  
 HYNÄ, Helene . . . . . 699, ⇨[328, 329]  
 IKEDA, Hiroya . . . . . 699, ⇨[224]  
 IVANOV, Dmitry 207, 530, 532, 533, 556, 582,  
 587, 590, 699, ⇨[252]  
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar . 577, 578, 699, ⇨[57]  
 IWAKUMA, Tetsuo . . . . . 699, ⇨[225]  
 IZAOLA AZKONA, Zunbeltz . 483, 699, ⇨[61]  
 JABRI, Youssef . 208, 477, 516, 699, ⇨[226]  
 JACKOWSKI, Paweł . . . . . 699, ⇨[227]  
 JACQUES, Roland . . . . . 699, ⇨[228]  
 JACQUET, Christophe . . . . . 699, ⇨[229]  
 JAEHNE, Bernd . 63, 223, 249, 310, 314, 699,  
 ⇨[414]  
 JALAM, Radwan . . . . . 699  
 JANICH, Michael . . . . . 581, 699, ⇨[95]  
 JEFFREY, Alan . . . . . 699, ⇨[68, 230, 231, 310]  
 JENSEN, Frank . . . . . 699, ⇨[402]  
 JERNSETTEN, Regnor . . . . 595, 699, ⇨[78]  
 JIANG, Zhuhan . . . . . 78, 699, ⇨[232]  
 JOLY, Loïc . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 JONES, David M. . . . . 54, 80, 89, 699, ⇨[233]  
 JORSSSEN, Christophe . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 JUHASZ, Robert . . . . . 585, 699, ⇨[77]  
 JULAUD, Jean-Joseph . . . 699, ⇨[234–236]  
 JUNGE, Stefan . . . . . 699  
 JURAFSKY, Dan . . . . . 27, 247, 662, 699  
 KAKUTO, Akira . . . . . 699, ⇨[237]  
 KANERVA, Mikko . . . . . 517, 518, 699, ⇨[79]  
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak . . 608, 699,  
 ⇨[238, 296]  
 KASTRUP, David . . . . . 699  
 KERYELL, Ronan . . . . . 218, 699  
 KEW, Jonathan . . . . . 232, 699, ⇨[239]  
 KIELHORN, Axel . . . . . 89, 699, ⇨[317, 318]  
 KIM, Ki-Joo . . . . . 699, ⇨[240–242]  
 KLAUS, Guntermann . . . . . 699, ⇨[185]  
 KLEB, Bil . . . . . 54, 699  
 KLEIWEG, Peter . . . . . 545, 699, ⇨[80]  
 KLEVELAND, Rune . . . 577, 578, 699, ⇨[57]  
 KLÖCKL, Ingo . . . . . 699, ⇨[243]  
 KNAPPEN, Jörg . . . . . 480, 481, 497, 510, 699,  
 ⇨[81, 82, 93, 244]  
 KNUTH, Donald E. . 213, 229, 230, 232, 237,  
 699, ⇨[245–248]  
 KOAUNGI, Un . . . . . 219, 538, 540, 700, ⇨[249]  
 KOHM, Markus . . . . . 89, 699, ⇨[317, 318, 364]  
 KOPKA, Helmut . . . . . 699, ⇨[250]  
 KOPPANYI, Attila . . . . . 563, 564, 699, ⇨[65]  
 KORAI, Adamantios . . . . . 533, 699  
 KRAKOVIAK, Vincent . . . . . 699  
 KRATT, Kai . . . . . 699  
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar . . . . . 699  
 KROONENBERG, Siep . . . . . 699, ⇨[251]  
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. 207, 530, 532, 533, 556,  
 582, 587, 590, 604, 699, ⇨[252]  
 KUDLEK, Manfred . . . . . 512, 699, ⇨[44]  
 KUHN, Markus G. . . . . 699, ⇨[253]  
 KULZER, Florian . . . . . 699  
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki . . . . . 550, 552, 699  
 KUMMER, Olaf . . . . . 512, 699, ⇨[44]



- KÜSTER, Frank 55, 77, 89, 598, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [254]  
 LABORDE, Stéphane . . . . . 699  
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [255]  
 LAGALLY, Klaus 40, 208, 475, 477, 540, 699,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [256, 257]  
 LAMPORT, Leslie 221, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [68, 258–263]  
 LANARI, Fabio . . . . . 699  
 LANGE, Robert . . . . . 699  
 LANGMYHR, Dag . . . . . 577, 578, 666, 699  
 LAPKO, Olga G. 89, 217, 492, 574, 591, 612,  
 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [36–38, 83, 96, 264–266]  
 LARSEN, Henning . . . . . 506, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [84]  
 LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc . . . . . 699  
 LISIS, Andris . . . . . 557, 699  
 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM, . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [231, 261, 267–  
 272, 418]  
 LAUCOU, Christian . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]  
 LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe . . . . . 699  
 LAUNAY, Arnaud . . . . . 699  
 LAUVERNET, Claire . . . . . 699  
 LAVVA, Boris . . . . . 541, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [85]  
 LEBACQ, André . . . . . 699  
 LECARME, Olivier . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [273]  
 LECLERC, Jacques . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [274]  
 LEGRAND, Jeanne . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [331]  
 LEHMAN, Philipp . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [275]  
 LEMBERG, Werner . . . . . 211,  
 492, 498, 501, 535, 537–539, 550,  
 551, 574, 591, 608, 612, 615, 699,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [83, 96, 276–278, 304, 418]  
 LEONHARDT, Thomas . . . . . 669, 699  
 LE PENNEC, Erwan . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
 LÉPOLOZEC, Stéphane . . . . . 699  
 LE THUAUT, Julien . . . . . 699  
 LÉTOILE, René . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [125]  
 LEWENBERG, Adam . . . . . 699  
 LICKERT, Knut . . . . . 224, 400, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [279]  
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. . . . . 54, 76, 89, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [280]  
 LINGNAU, Anselm . . . . . 89, 217, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [281]  
 LIPKIN, Bernice Sacks . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [282]  
 LOBEL, Pierre . . . . . 699  
 LOKAJČEK, Miloš V. . . . . 503, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [86]  
 LOMBARD, Stoffel . . . . . 473, 699  
 LORETI, Maurizio . . . . . 55, 77, 89, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [283]  
 LORINO, Tristan . . . . . 699  
 LOVE, Tim . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [284, 285]  
 LOZANO, Vincent . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [286]  
 LUECKING, Daniel H. . . . . 699  
 LUNDE, Ken . . . . . 212, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [287–289]  
 LYHNE, Anders . . . . . 699  
 MAC KAY, Pierre A. . . . . 609, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67]  
 MADSEN, Lars . . . . . 699  
 MAHONEY, Richard . . . . . 506, 542, 699  
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 492, 591, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [266]  
 MALECKI, Pierre . . . . . 699  
 MARGOLIS, Bob . . . . . 481, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [82]  
 MARKEY, Nicolas . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29, 290, 291]  
 MARR, Marcus . . . . . 699  
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
 MARSHALL, Alan . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [292]  
 MART, Terry . . . . . 480, 481, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [81, 82]  
 MARTINI, Éric . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [293]  
 MASLOV, Vadim . . . . . 593, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52, 207]  
 MASSIAS, Henri . . . . . 67, 699  
 MATTHIAS, Andreas . . . . . 699  
 MATTISSON, Sven . . . . . 606, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [294]  
 McDONNELL, Rowland . . . . . 54, 71, 89, 699,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [295]  
 McKAY, Ben . . . . . 699  
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant . . . . . 608, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [296]  
 MENGIN, Sébastien . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
 METZINGER, Jochen . . . . . 512, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]  
 MICHOU, Yanick . . . . . 699  
 MITTELBACH, Frank . . . . . 221, 248,  
 294, 323, 346, 665, 669, 670, 699,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [68, 175, 262, 263, 297–310]  
 MOON, Young Joon . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [311]  
 MOORE, ROSS . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [176]  
 MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 89, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318]  
 MORI, Lapo Filippo 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [183, 312, 313]  
 MORRISON, Michael A. . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [314]  
 MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . . . 524, 699,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [69, 70]  
 MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan . . . . . 597, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [87]  
 NACU, Andrei . . . . . 468, 699  
 NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [315]  
 NAUMOV, Sergei O. . . . . 593, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [316]  
 NELSON H. F., Beebe . . . . . 698,  $\hookrightarrow$ [32]  
 NETHERTON, Lee . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [416]  
 NEUKAM, Frank . . . . . 89, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [317, 318]  
 NGUYEN, Cuong . . . . . 699  
 NICOLAS, Julien . . . . . 699  
 NIEDERMAIR, Elke . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [319]  
 NIEDERMAIR, Michael . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [319]  
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf . . . . . 59, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [167, 358]  
 NOIREL, Josselin . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]  
 NULL, Tim . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [320, 321, 422]  
 OBERDIEK, Heiko . . . . . 63,  
 89, 223, 249, 310, 314, 320, 668, 699,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [322–327, 356, 357]  
 OETIKER, Tobias . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [328, 329]  
 OKAMURA, Haruhito . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [123]  
 OLKO, Mariusz . . . . . 582, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [330]  
 ORTOLO, Tanguy . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [331]  
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik . . . . . 606, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [76]  
 OTT, Jörg . . . . . 699  
 PAIĆ, Alan . . . . . 502, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [88]

- PAKIN, Scott . . . . . 699, ⇨[332–334]  
 PAL, Palash Baran . . . . . 482, 699, ⇨[335]  
 PANDEY, Anshuman . . . . . 506, 542, 699,  
 ⇨[336, 337]  
 PARK, Minje Byeng-sen . . . . . 699, ⇨[338]  
 PARTL, Hubert . . . . . 699, ⇨[328, 329]  
 PATASHNIK, Oren . . . . . 209, 699, ⇨[339, 340]  
 PECHTA, Jonathan . . . . . 699, ⇨[341–343]  
 PEETERS, Kasper . . . . . 699, ⇨[344]  
 PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD, Manuel . . . . . 699,  
 ⇨[345, 346]  
 PELGER, Matthias . . . . . 699  
 PÉTIARD, François . . . . . 257, 695, 697, 699, 701  
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . . . . . 577, 578, 699,  
 ⇨[57]  
 PEYROUSE, Sébastien . . . . . 699, ⇨[125]  
 PICHAUREAU, Paul . . . . . 699, ⇨[11]  
 PICHERAL, Éric . . . . . 699, ⇨[206]  
 PIGUET, Bruno . . . . . 699, ⇨[29]  
 PÍŠKA, Karel . . . . . 699, ⇨[347]  
 PLAICE, John . . . . . 232, 699,  
 ⇨[202–206, 348, 349]  
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr . . . . . 608, 699,  
 ⇨[296, 350]  
 POPINEAU, Fabrice . . . . . 699, ⇨[406]  
 POPPELIER, Nico . . . . . 699, ⇨[73]  
 PORRAT, Rama . . . . . 541, 699  
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé . . . . . 699  
 POURNADER, Roozbeh . . . . . 514, 699, ⇨[152]  
 PREUSSE, Hilmar . . . . . 699, ⇨[351]  
 RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. . . . . 506, 542, 699,  
 ⇨[352, 416]  
 RAHTZ, Sebastian 89, 700, ⇨[117, 175, 176,  
 194, 325–327, 353–357]  
 RAICHLE, Bernd . . . . . 528, 529, 576, 586, 700,  
 ⇨[89, 90, 358, 362]  
 RAIMOND, Claude . . . . . 700, ⇨[359]  
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . . . . . 488, 583, 700,  
 ⇨[91]  
 RASCOE, Paul . . . . . 700, ⇨[360]  
 REINO, Keranen . . . . . 517, 518, 700, ⇨[79]  
 REUTENAUER, Arthur . . . . . 700, ⇨[361]  
 REZUŞ, Adrian . . . . . 586, 700, ⇨[362]  
 DE RHODES<sup>†</sup>, Alexandre . . . . . 617, 700, ⇨[228]  
 RICHAUDEAU, François . . . . . 700, ⇨[363]  
 RIVERA, Luis . . . . . 570, 700  
 ROBBERS, Yuri . . . . . 700, ⇨[364]  
 ROBERTO, Ierusalimschy . . . . . 699, ⇨[222, 223]  
 ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . . . . 63, 223, 249, 314,  
 700, ⇨[414]  
 ROBERTSON, Will . . . . . 700, ⇨[365]  
 ROEGEL, Denis B. . . . . 248, 665, 666, 700,  
 ⇨[175]  
 ROLLAND, Christian . . . . . 490, 700, ⇨[92, 366]  
 ROULUND, Rasmus Pank . . . . . 700, ⇨[364]  
 ROWLEY, Chris A. . . . . 700,  
 ⇨[68, 230, 306–310, 367, 402]  
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti . . . . . 510, 700, ⇨[93]  
 RYNNING, Jan Michael . . . . . 606, 665, 700  
 RYU, Young . . . . . 700, ⇨[368]  
 SAAR, Enn . . . . . 511, 700, ⇨[94]  
 SAMSOEN, David . . . . . 700  
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio . . . . . 483, 600, 700, ⇨[61]  
 SANGER, Larry . . . . . 240, 700  
 SANGEUX, Morgan . . . . . 700  
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie . . . . . 700, ⇨[369, 370]  
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar . . . . . 581, 700, ⇨[95]  
 SCHANDL, Bernd . . . . . 700, ⇨[416]  
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth . . . . . 700, ⇨[328, 329]  
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias . . . . . 598, 700, ⇨[71]  
 SCHMIDT, Walter 576, 700, ⇨[90, 371–373]  
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. . . . . 700, ⇨[374]  
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe . . . . . 700  
 SCHÖPF, Rainer . . . . . 700, ⇨[68, 263]  
 SCHROD, Joachim . . . . . 700, ⇨[143, 185, 375]  
 SCHRÖDER, Martin . . . . . 94, 700,  
 ⇨[194, 376, 377]  
 SCHWARTZ, Ulrich . . . . . 700, ⇨[351]  
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth . . . . . 700, ⇨[378]  
 SHELL, Michael . . . . . 700, ⇨[379]  
 SHIN, Jungshik . . . . . 700  
 SHOUKAT, Ali . . . . . 700  
 SHOUYI<sup>†</sup>, Bai . . . . . 700, ⇨[380]  
 SHVAIKA, Andrij M. . . . . 612, 700, ⇨[96]  
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop . . . . . 608, 700, ⇨[296]  
 SINGH, Sindhu . . . . . 700, ⇨[381]  
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna . . . . . 700, ⇨[424]  
 SLIMAK, Kristian . . . . . 599, 700  
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic . . . . . 597, 700, ⇨[87]  
 SMITH, John . . . . . 506, 542, 700, ⇨[337]  
 SOCHA, Robin S. . . . . 700  
 SOFRONIOU, Nick . . . . . 700, ⇨[389]  
 SOMMERFELDT, Axel . . . . . 55, 73, 89, 209, 210,  
 217, 700, ⇨[382–386]  
 SONG, Lianyi . . . . . 700, ⇨[378]  
 SOULET, Yves . . . . . 700, ⇨[308]  
 STEINER, Arjen . . . . . 700  
 STORY, D. P. . . . . 700, ⇨[387]  
 STREIT, Éric . . . . . 700, ⇨[29]  
 STUBNER, Ralf . . . . . 700  
 SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. . . . . 552, 700, ⇨[445]  
 SUTOR, Robert S. . . . . 700, ⇨[176]  
 SWOYER, Chris . . . . . 700  
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos . . . . . 530, 700,  
 ⇨[31, 97, 388, 389]  
 TABACCO, Raffaella . . . . . 554, 700

- TALBOT, Nicola L. C. . . . . 89, 700,  
     ↪[159, 390–397]
- TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Daniel . . . 54, 74, 89, 700, ↪[398]
- TAYLOR, Philip . . . . . 700, ↪[159, 399]
- THIELE, Christina . . . . . 700, ↪[159, 347]
- THIMBLEBY, Harold . . . . . 700, ↪[400, 401]
- THORUP, Kresten Krab . . . . . 700, ↪[402]
- THUREAU, Aurélien . . . . . 700
- TINNEFELD, Karsten 54, 76, 89, 700, ↪[403]
- 'T LAM, Ton . . . . . 700
- TOLUŠIS, Sigitas . . . . . 558, 559, 700
- TORDELLA, Laurent . . . . . 700
- TRETTIN, Mark . . . . . 700, ↪[404, 405]
- TRUU, Ahto . . . . . 700
- TSOLOMITIS, Antonis . . . . . 700, ↪[389]
- TWS-TDS, . . . . . ↪[406, 407]
- ULRICH, Stefan . . . . . 37, 668, 700, ↪[24]
- UMEKI, Hideo . . . . . 700, ↪[408]
- UYAR, Turgut . . . . . 609, 700, ↪[67]
- VAARIO, Jari . . . . . 700
- VAN OOSTRUM, Piet . . . . . 700, ↪[410]
- VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 700,  
     ↪[29, 411]
- VAN ZANDT, Timothy . . . . . 700, ↪[412]
- VAQUIN, Vincent . . . . . 700
- VENKATESAN, Suki K. . . . . 700, ↪[413]
- VERNA, Didier 63, 223, 249, 310, 314, 700,  
     ↪[414]
- VESCO, Sylvain . . . . . 700
- VEYTSMAN, Boris . . . . . 700, ↪[415, 416]
- VIAL, Alexandre . . . . . 700
- VOEGELIN, Carl F. . . . . 700, ↪[417]
- VOEGELIN, Florence M. . . . . 700, ↪[417]
- VOGEL, Martin . . . . . 700, ↪[212]
- VOLOVICH, Vladimir 492, 574, 591, 612, 700,  
     ↪[83, 96, 418]
- VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. 277, 668, 700,  
     ↪[419, 420]
- VOSS, Herbert . . . . . 700, ↪[175, 421]
- WAGNER, Zdeněk . . . 506, 542, 700, ↪[337]
- WALDEN, David . . . . . 700, ↪[159]
- WALES, Jimmy . . . . . 240, 700
- WARD, Nigel . . . . . 27, 247, 662, 700
- WARNOCK, John . . . . . 700, ↪[172]
- WAUD, Douglas . . . . . 700, ↪[422]
- WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek . . . . . 700, ↪[423]
- WEBANCK, Stephan B. . . . . 700
- WERNER, Eduard . 559, 614, 700, ↪[98, 99]
- WEST, Daphne . . . . . 700, ↪[424]
- WETTL, Ferenc . . . . . 700, ↪[105, 106]
- WIJNHOUT, Jeroen . . . . . 700, ↪[341–343]
- WILLIAMS, Graham . . . . . 700, ↪[425]
- WILSON, Peter R. . 51, 54, 55, 65, 66, 71, 73,  
     77, 89, 206, 207, 211, 223, 277, 700,  
     ↪[426–441, 441–443]
- WOLIŃSKI, Marcin . 582, 700, ↪[305, 330]
- WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth . . . . . 700
- WOODING, Mark . . . . . 700, ↪[305]
- WRIGHT, Joseph A. . 89, 239, 700, ↪[444]
- WRIGHT, Tim . . . . . 700
- WUJASTYK, Dominik 506, 542, 700, ↪[337]
- WYART, Damien . . . . . 700, ↪[29]
- YOGANANDA, C. S. . . . . 552, 700, ↪[445]
- ZAIMI, Adi . . . . . 473, 700, ↪[100]
- ZAMENHOF<sup>†</sup>, Ludwig Lejzer . . . . . 510, 700
- ZAVRTANIK, Danilo . . . . . 599, 700, ↪[101]
- ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad . 554, 555,  
     700, ↪[64]
- ZENDER, Charlie S. . . . . 700, ↪[446]
- ZENITH, Federico . . . . . 700, ↪[341–343]
- ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. . . . . 593–595, 700,  
     ↪[207, 447]
- ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe . . . . . 700
- ŽLAJPAH, Leon . . . . . 599, 700, ↪[101]
- periyar (malayalam package) . . . . . 566
- PÉTIARD, François . . . . . 257, 695, 697, 699, 701
- PETTERST, Terje Engeset . 577, 578, 699, ↪[57]
- PEYROUSE, Sébastien . . . . . 699, ↪[125]
- \pfill . . . . . 397, 558
- \pfloffset . . . . . 2459
- PICHAUREAU, Paul . . . . . 699, ↪[11]
- PICHERAL, Éric . . . . . 699, ↪[206]
- pict2e (package) . . . . . 59, ↪[167]
- PIGUET, Bruno . . . . . 699, ↪[29]
- PÍŠKA, Karel . . . . . 699, ↪[347]
- placeins (package) . . . . . 31, 32, 54,  
     89, 172, 183, 184, 217, 219, 234, 250,  
     267, 411, 418, 435, 675, 685, ↪[14]
- placeins.sty (file) . . . . . 32
- placeins.txt (file) . . . . . 32, 234
- PLAICE, John . 232, 699, ↪[202–206, 348, 349]
- plain.bst (file) . . . . . 214, 218
- plainurl.bst (file) . . . . . 254, 689
- PLATEX (package) . . . . . 234
- PLATEX 2<sub>ε</sub> (package) . . . . . 234, ↪[224, 237]
- \PLF@ . . . . . 4253, 4255
- \PLF@contentsline (command) . . . . . 341
- \PLF@contentsline . . . . . 4215, 4255
- \PLF@explist . . . . . 4213, 4239
- \PLF@line . . . . . 4251, 4253
- \PLF@list . . . . . 4210, 4213, 4239, 4255
- \PLF@lof . . . . . 4213, 4240, 4255
- \PLF@loop . . . . . 4210, 4240
- \PLF@next (command) . . . . . 341
- \PLF@next . . . . . 4027, 4210, 4239
- \plf@pgno . . . . . 2895, 2896, 3912

- \PLF@read . . . . . **4240, 4251, 4255**
- \plf@rule . . . . . **3022, 3889, 3925, 5006**
- \plf@setform (command) . . . . . *330, 381*
- \plf@setform . . . . . **3912, 5366**
- \PLF@test (command) . . . . . *342*
- \PLF@test . . . . . **4253, 4255, 4255**
- \PLF@WriteContentsLine . . . . . **4215**
- \plfdotsep . . . . . **5341, 5369, 5389, 5394**
- \plffont (command) . . . . . *38, 39, 74, 75, 83*
- \plffont . . . . . **1541, 3718, 3731, 3886, 7598**
- \plfname . . . . . **4215, 4218**
- \plfoffset (command) . . . . . *83*
- \plfoffset . . . . . **2461, 3907, 7473**
- \plfpagenumbers (command) . . . . . *47, 86*
- \plfpagenumbers . . . . . **2872, 2895, 2904, 7668**
- \plfpnumwidth . . . . . **5323, 5367, 5387, 5392**
- \plfrule (command) . . . . . *47, 86, 672*
- \plfrule . . . . . **5006, 7650**
- \plfSfont (command) . . . . . *38, 39, 74, 75, 83, 677*
- \plfSfont . . . . . **1541, 3718, 3731, 7598**
- \plftitle (command) . . . . . *38, 39, 83, 470*
- \plftitle . . . . . **3871, 3877, 3889, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7911, 7930, 7948, 7964, 7980, 7999, 8024, 8040, 8055, 8074, 8092, 8107, 8122, 8137, 8153, 8171, 8191, 8215, 8238, 8253, 8280, 8307, 8322, 8337, 8354, 8369, 8384, 8402, 8432, 8447, 8465, 8480, 8504, 8534, 8549, 8564, 8582, 8600, 8631, 8662, 8679, 8695, 8710, 8725, 8743, 8747, 8780, 8817, 8848, 8918, 8935, 8963, 8982, 9003, 9018, 9034, 9050, 9106, 9107, 9125, 9141, 9157, 9173, 9188, 9204, 9227, 9244, 9259, 9277, 9292, 9307, 9324, 9339, 9354, 9369, 9388, 9403, 9418, 9437, 9455, 9477, 9518, 9533, 9550, 9565, 9586, 9601, 9612, 9627, 9642, 9657, 9672, 9690, 9705, 9721, 9752, 9769, 9800, 9835, 9864, 9913, 9928, 9943, 9959, 9974, 9989, 10005, 10019, 10034, 10050, 10067, 10082, 10097, 10117, 10154, 10169, 10190, 10208, 10223, 10238, 10253**
- \plftocmarg . . . . . **5332, 5368, 5388, 5393**
- \PLT@ . . . . . **4313, 4315**
- \PLT@contentsline (command) . . . . . *343*
- \PLT@contentsline . . . . . **4275, 4315**
- \PLT@explist . . . . . **4273, 4299**
- \PLT@line . . . . . **4311, 4313**
- \PLT@list . . . . . **4270, 4273, 4299, 4315**
- \PLT@loop . . . . . **4270, 4300**
- \PLT@lot . . . . . **4273, 4300, 4315**
- \PLT@next (command) . . . . . *344*
- \PLT@next . . . . . **4031, 4270, 4299, 4651**
- \plt@pgno . . . . . **2901, 2902, 3987**
- \PLT@read . . . . . **4300, 4311, 4315**
- \plt@rule . . . . . **3022, 3968, 4001, 5015**
- \plt@setform (command) . . . . . *333, 381*
- \plt@setform . . . . . **3987, 5381**
- \PLT@test (command) . . . . . *344*
- \PLT@test . . . . . **4313, 4315, 4315**
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine . . . . . **4275**
- \pltdotsep . . . . . **5341, 5384**
- \pltfont (command) . . . . . *38, 39, 74, 75, 83*
- \pltfont . . . . . **1541, 3718, 3731, 3961, 7598**
- \pltname . . . . . **4275, 4278**
- \pltoffset (command) . . . . . *83*
- \pltoffset . . . . . **2459, 3982, 7473**
- \pltpagenumbers (command) . . . . . *47, 86*
- \pltpagenumbers . . . . . **2878, 2901, 2904, 7668**
- \pltptnumwidth . . . . . **5323, 5382**
- \plrulerule (command) . . . . . *47, 86, 672*
- \plrulerule . . . . . **5015, 7650**
- \pltSfont (command) . . . . . *38, 39, 74, 75, 83, 677*
- \pltSfont . . . . . **1541, 3718, 3731, 7598**
- \plttitle (command) . . . . . *38, 39, 83, 470*
- \plttitle . . . . . **3946, 3952, 3968, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7912, 7931, 7949, 7965, 7981, 8000, 8025, 8041, 8056, 8075, 8093, 8108, 8123, 8138, 8154, 8172, 8193, 8217, 8239, 8254, 8281, 8308, 8323, 8338, 8355, 8370, 8385, 8405, 8433, 8448, 8466, 8482, 8505, 8535, 8550, 8565, 8583, 8603, 8634, 8663, 8680, 8696, 8711, 8726, 8784, 8820, 8849, 8919, 8937, 8964, 8983, 9004, 9019, 9035, 9051, 9126, 9142, 9158, 9174, 9189, 9205, 9228, 9245, 9260, 9278, 9293, 9308, 9325, 9340, 9355, 9370, 9389, 9404, 9419, 9438, 9456, 9479, 9519, 9534, 9551, 9566, 9587, 9602, 9613, 9628, 9643, 9658, 9673, 9691, 9706, 9722, 9737, 9738, 9753, 9772, 9803, 9838, 9865, 9914, 9929, 9944, 9960, 9975, 9990, 10006, 10020, 10035, 10051, 10068, 10083, 10098, 10118, 10156, 10170, 10191, 10209, 10224, 10239, 10254**
- \plttoctmarg . . . . . **5332, 5383**
- pmk (script) . . . . . *234, 243–246*
- polish (language option) . . . . . *40, 581, 582*
- polish.dtx (file) . . . . . *581*
- polish.mld (file) . . . . . *242, 246, 257, 581, 696*
- polish2 (language option) . . . . . *40, 45, 582*
- polish2.mld (file) . . . . . *207, 242, 246, 582, 672*
- polmin.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 581*
- pologne.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . *243, 581*

- polski (package) . . . 45, 234, 582,  $\hookrightarrow$ [330, 423]  
 polski (language option) . . . . . 40, 234, 582  
 polski.dtx (file) . . . . . 582  
 polski.mld (file) 242, 246, 257, 582, 683, 696  
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 608, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [296, 350]  
 POPINEAU, Fabrice . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [406]  
 POPPELIER, Nico . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [73]  
 PORRAT, Rama . . . . . 541, 699  
 portu-a.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 585  
 portu-b.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 489  
 portu-p.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 584  
 portugal.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 583  
 portuges (language option) . . . . . 40, 583  
 portuges.dtx (file) . . . . . 488, 583  
 portuges.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 583, 673, 674  
 portuges.mld (file) . . . . . 673–675  
 portuguese (language option) . . . . . 40, 583  
 portuguese.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 583, 675  
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé . . . . . 699  
 POURNADER, Roozbeh . . . . . 514, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [152]  
 PREUSSE, Hilmar . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [351]  
 \printglossary (command) . . . . . 51  
 \printindex (command) . . . . . 52  
 \printindex . . . . . 480, 480, 714  
 \printnomenclature (command) . . . . . 52  
 \printnomenclature . . . . . 2033  
 proc (class) . . . . . 27, 212, 234, 236,  $\hookrightarrow$ [261]  
 \ProcessOptions . . . . . 7273  
 \ProcessOptions\* . . . . . 7273  
 \protect (command) . . . . . 59, 63, 666  
 \protect 1028, 1176, 3274, 3275, 4019, 4020,  
     4621, 4630, 4638, 5786, 5787, 5792,  
     5804, 5805, 5810, 5820, 5821, 5826,  
     5838, 5839, 5844, 5854, 5855, 5860,  
     6038, 7756, 7758, 7767, 7769, 7778,  
     7780, 7806, 7808, 7813, 7815, 7820,  
     7822, 7887, 7890, 9227, 9228, 9231,  
     9232, 9235, 9236  
 \providecommand . . . 1731, 1911, 1920, 5796,  
     5830, 6150, 7250, 7354  
 \ProvidesFile (command) . . . . . 692  
 \ProvidesFile . . . . . 3,  
     46, 105, 162, 185, 204, 257, 292, 387,  
     553, 752, 798, 983, 1184, 1379, 1431,  
     1488, 1508, 1536, 1573, 1622, 1669,  
     1710, 1881, 1908, 1939, 2012, 2043,  
     2094, 2145, 2199, 2246, 2281, 2326,  
     2359, 7375, 7902, 7905, 7908, 7923,  
     7926, 7942, 7945, 7960, 7976, 7992,  
     7995, 8011, 8014, 8017, 8020, 8036,  
     8052, 8067, 8086, 8089, 8104, 8119,  
     8134, 8149, 8165, 8168, 8183, 8186,  
     8211, 8235, 8250, 8265, 8268, 8271,  
     8274, 8277, 8292, 8298, 8304, 8319,  
     8334, 8349, 8366, 8381, 8396, 8418,  
     8444, 8459, 8462, 8477, 8498, 8501,  
     8519, 8525, 8531, 8546, 8561, 8576,  
     8579, 8594, 8616, 8647, 8650, 8653,  
     8656, 8676, 8691, 8707, 8722, 8737,  
     8774, 8811, 8845, 8860, 8867, 8874,  
     8881, 8889, 8894, 8902, 8910, 8915,  
     8930, 8955, 8958, 8975, 8978, 8994,  
     8997, 9000, 9015, 9030, 9046, 9062,  
     9068, 9075, 9082, 9088, 9095, 9101,  
     9118, 9121, 9137, 9153, 9169, 9185,  
     9200, 9216, 9219, 9222, 9239, 9256,  
     9271, 9274, 9289, 9304, 9319, 9322,  
     9336, 9351, 9366, 9381, 9385, 9400,  
     9415, 9430, 9433, 9449, 9452, 9467,  
     9503, 9506, 9509, 9512, 9515, 9530,  
     9545, 9562, 9577, 9594, 9609, 9624,  
     9639, 9654, 9669, 9684, 9687, 9702,  
     9717, 9733, 9749, 9764, 9795, 9826,  
     9861, 9876, 9882, 9889, 9894, 9900,  
     9905, 9910, 9925, 9940, 9955, 9971,  
     9986, 10001, 10017, 10031, 10046,  
     10062, 10079, 10094, 10109, 10114,  
     10129, 10132, 10135, 10138, 10141,  
     10144, 10166, 10181, 10184, 10187,  
     10202, 10205, 10220, 10235, 10250  
 \ProvidesPackage (command) . . . . . 152  
 \ProvidesPackage . . . 2428, 7379, 7827, 7840  
 ps.gz (extension) . . . . . 623  
 \ps@chapterverso . . . . . 1713, 1722  
 \ps@empty . . . . . 1713, 1722  
 \psect . . . . . 4005, 7587  
 ptc (counter) 88, 278, 279, 290, 321, 334, 337,  
     341, 343  
 \PTC@contentsline (command) . . . . . 337  
 \PTC@contentsline . . . . . 4103, 4195  
 \PTC@explist . . . . . 4101, 4179  
 \PTC@line . . . . . 4191, 4193  
 \PTC@list . . . . . 4098, 4101, 4179, 4195  
 \PTC@loop . . . . . 4098, 4180  
 \PTC@next (command) . . . . . 339  
 \PTC@next . . . . . 4023, 4098, 4179  
 \ptc@pgno . . . . . 2889, 2890, 3835  
 \PTC@read . . . . . 4180, 4191, 4195  
 \ptc@rule (command) . . . . . 322  
 \ptc@rule . . . . . 3713, 3821, 3851, 4000, 4997  
 \ptc@setform (command) . . . . . 327, 380  
 \ptc@setform . . . . . 3835, 5351  
 \ptc@spart . . . . . 4010  
 \PTC@test (command) . . . . . 340  
 \PTC@test . . . . . 4193, 4195  
 \PTC@toc . . . . . 4101, 4180, 4195  
 \ptc@verse (command) . . . . . 324

`\ptc@verse` (environment) . 324, 327, 330, 333, 380, 381, 695  
`\ptc@verse` . . . . . 3778  
`\ptcCfont` (command) . 34, 37, 39, 74, 75, 83, 322  
`\ptcCfont` . . . . . 3731, 7598  
`\ptcdotsep` . . . . . 5341, 5354  
`\ptcfont` (command) 34, 37–39, 43, 74, 75, 83  
`\ptcfont` . . . . . 1541, 3718, 3731, 3818, 7598  
`\ptcindent` (command) . . . . . 34, 83, 324  
`\ptcindent` . . 3716, 3778, 3830, 3903, 3978, 7387  
`\ptcname` . . . . . 4103, 4120  
`\ptcffset` (command) . . . . . 34, 83, 324  
`\ptcffset` . . . . . 2459, 3833, 7473  
`\ptcpagenumbers` (command) . . . . . 47, 86  
`\ptcpagenumbers` . . 2858, 2889, 2904, 7668  
`\ptcPfont` (command) . . . . . 38, 39, 74, 75, 83  
`\ptcPfont` . . . . . 1541, 3718, 3731, 7598  
`\ptcpnumwidth` . . . . . 5323, 5352  
`\ptcrule` (command) . . . . . 47, 86  
`\ptcrule` . . . . . 4997, 7650  
`\ptcSfont` (command) . . 34, 38, 39, 74, 75, 83  
`\ptcSfont` . . . . . 3718, 3731, 7598  
`\ptcSPfont` (command) . . . 38, 39, 74, 75, 83  
`\ptcSPfont` . . . . . 1541, 3718, 3731, 7598  
`\ptcSSfont` (command) . . . 38, 39, 74, 75, 83  
`\ptcSSfont` . . . . . 1541, 3718, 3731, 7598  
`\ptcSSSfont` (command) . . 38, 39, 74, 75, 83  
`\ptcSSSfont` . . . . . 1541, 3718, 3731, 7598  
`\ptctitle` (command) . . . 38, 39, 83, 470, 600  
`\ptctitle` . . . 3805, 3809, 3821, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7910, 7929, 7947, 7963, 7979, 7998, 8023, 8039, 8054, 8073, 8091, 8106, 8121, 8136, 8152, 8170, 8189, 8213, 8237, 8252, 8279, 8306, 8321, 8336, 8353, 8368, 8383, 8399, 8431, 8446, 8464, 8479, 8503, 8533, 8548, 8563, 8581, 8597, 8629, 8661, 8678, 8694, 8709, 8724, 8740, 8777, 8814, 8847, 8917, 8933, 8962, 8981, 9002, 9017, 9033, 9049, 9105, 9124, 9140, 9156, 9172, 9187, 9203, 9226, 9243, 9258, 9276, 9291, 9306, 9323, 9338, 9353, 9368, 9387, 9402, 9417, 9436, 9454, 9473, 9475, 9517, 9532, 9549, 9564, 9585, 9600, 9611, 9626, 9641, 9656, 9671, 9689, 9704, 9720, 9736, 9751, 9767, 9798, 9830, 9832, 9863, 9912, 9927, 9942, 9958, 9973, 9988, 10004, 10018, 10033, 10049, 10066, 10081, 10096, 10116, 10153, 10168, 10189, 10207, 10222, 10237, 10252  
`\ptctocmarg` . . . . . 5332, 5353

`\ptifont` (command) . 38, 39, 43, 67, 83, 671  
`\ptifont` 3718, 3731, 3753, 3760, 3767, 3821, 3889, 3968, 7598

## Q

`\quad` (command) . . . . . 36  
`\quad` . . . . . 1222, 2390, 2396, 2399, 2405  
Quốc Ngữ . . . . . 617  
`quotchap` (package) . 54, 76, 89, 184, 235, 253, 273, 427, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [403]  
`quote` (environment) . . . . . 59, 679  
`\qva` . . . . . 8348, 8957

## R

`\R` . . . . . 7975  
`\r@mti` . 3038, 3076, 3146, 3214, 3355, 3374, 3393  
`\r@pti` . 3745, 3760, 3809, 3877, 3952, 4038, 4057, 4076  
`\r@sti` . 4360, 4399, 4467, 4534, 4658, 4677, 4696  
RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. . . . . 506, 542, 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [352, 416]  
`\raggedbottom` . . . . . 813, 997  
`\raggedcolumns` . . . . . 308, 2056, 2101  
`\raggedright` (command) . . . . . 664  
`\raggedright` 1229, 1732, 2177, 3086, 3156, 3224, 3757, 3818, 3886, 3961, 4409, 4476, 4543  
RAHTZ, Sebastian . . 89, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [117, 175, 176, 194, 325–327, 353–357]  
RAICHLE, Bernd . . . . . 528, 529, 576, 586, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [89, 90, 358, 362]  
RAIMOND, Claude . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [359]  
RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . 488, 583, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [91]  
`rapport.doc` (file) . . . . . 606  
RASCOE, Paul . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [360]  
`ravivarma` (malayalam package) . . . . . 566  
`\re` . . . . . 8348, 8957  
`\read` . . 2687, 2768, 3514, 3579, 3640, 4192, 4252, 4312, 4796, 4856, 4916  
README (file) . . . . . 242, 244, 246  
`\ref` . . . 1818, 2190, 2413–2417, 2420, 2423  
`\refstepcounter` . . . . . 4606, 7867  
REINO, Keranen . . . . . 517, 518, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [79]  
`\relax` (command) 305, 334, 439, 448, 452, 664  
`\removelastskip` . . . . . 307



- `\renewcommand` (command) . . . . . 30, 32, 34, 37–39, 41, 45, 66, 71, 75, 77, 78, 265, 266, 448, 452
- `\renewcommand` 160, 172, 173, 177, 178, 193, 298, 807, 809, 992–994, 1206, 1273, 1278, 1292, 1301, 1302, 1738, **1913**, **1920**, 2149, 7845
- `\renewcommand*` (command) . . . . . 72
- `report` (class) . 27, 38, 39, 47, 48, 50, 61, 62, 72, 76, 77, 111, 127, 197, 198, 212, 214, 217, 220, 226, 227, 235, 236, 240, 280, 281, 288, 322, 688,  $\hookrightarrow$ [262]
- `\RequirePackage` . . **2428**, 2654, **7274**, **7280**, 7382, 7842
- `\reset@font` (command) . . . . . 61, 284, 664
- `\reset@font` . **2811**, 3088, 3095, 3099, 3158, 3165, 3169, 3226, 3233, 3237, 3664, 3669, 3682, 3684, 3818, 3823, 3827, 3888, 3895, 3899, 3963, 3970, 3974, 4411, 4419, 4423, 4478, 4485, 4490, 4545, 4552, 4557
- REUTENAUER, Arthur . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [361]
- revathi (malayalam package) . . . . . 566
- REZUŞ, Adrian . . . . . 586, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [362]
- DE RHODES<sup>†</sup>, Alexandre . . . . . 617, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [228]
- RICHAUDEAU, François . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [363]
- `\rightmargin` 3054, 3056, 3103, 3173, 3241, 3782, 3786, 3831, 3904, 3979, 4377, 4379, 4427, 4494, 4561
- `\rightskip` . . . . . 2826, 3287, 3299
- RIVERA, Luis . . . . . 570, 700
- `\rmfamily` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\rmfamily` . . . . . 807, 1517, 1555, 1922, 1923, 2159–2163, 2165–2168, 3030, 3031, 3036, 3037, 3719, 3720, 3729, 3732–3734, 3743, 4350, 4351, 4359
- `rmk` (script) . . . . . 235, 243–246
- ROBBERS, Yuri . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [364]
- ROBERTO, Ierusalimschy . . . . . 699,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 223]
- ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . 63, 223, 249, 314, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [414]
- ROBERTSON, Will . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [365]
- ROEGEL, Denis B. . 248, 665, 666, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [175]
- ROLLAND, Christian . . . . . 490, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [92, 366]
- `\Roman` . . . . . **8395**, **8417**, **8593**, **8615**
- romanian (language option) . . . . . 40, 585
- romanian.dtx (file) . . . . . 585, 586
- romanian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 585
- romanian.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 585
- romanian2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 586
- romanian2.mld (file) 242, 246, 586, 681, 688
- romanian3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 586
- romanian3.mld (file) 242, 246, 586, 681, 688
- RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . 586,  $\hookrightarrow$ [362]
- romannum (package) 55, 77, 89, 184, 235, 253, 273, 427, 685,  $\hookrightarrow$ [440]
- rotating (package) . . . . . 235,  $\hookrightarrow$ [355]
- rotfloat (package) . . 55, 89, 163, 217, 235, 255, 268, 276, 431, 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [382]
- ROULUND, Rasmus Pank . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [364]
- ROWLEY, Chris A. . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [68, 230, 306–310, 367, 402]
- `\rs` . . . . . **8348**, **8957**
- `\ru` . . . . . 2364, 2377
- rubber (tool) . . . . . 62, 235, 676,  $\hookrightarrow$ [33]
- RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti . . . . . 510, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [93]
- `\rule` . . . . . 1246, 1255, 2772, 2776, 2780, 3129, 3714, 4348, 5003–5005, 5012–5014, 5021–5023
- rus-re.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 589
- rus-su.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 590
- russian (language option) . 40, 587, 590–592
- russian-cca (language option) . . . . . 40, 593
- russian-cca.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 593, 683
- russian-cca.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 593
- russian-ccal (language option) . . . . . 40, 593
- russian-ccal.mld (file) . 242, 246, 593, 683
- russian-ccal.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 593
- russian-e.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 588
- russian-f.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243
- russian-lh (language option) . . . . . 40, 593
- russian-lh.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 593, 683
- russian-lh.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 593
- russian-lhcyralt (language option) 40, 594
- russian-lhcyralt.mld (file) 242, 246, 594, 683
- russian-lhcyralt.mlo (file) . 242, 246, 594
- russian-lhcyrkoi (language option) 40, 594
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mld (file) 242, 246, 594, 683
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo (file) . 242, 246, 594
- russian-lhcyrwin (language option) 40, 595
- russian-lhcyrwin.mld (file) 242, 246, 595, 683
- russian-lhcyrwin.mlo (file) . 242, 246, 595
- russian-n.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 587
- russian.def (file) . . . . . 592
- russian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 587
- russian.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 588
- russian.sty (file) . . . . . 593
- russian2m (language option) . . . 40, 45, 587
- russian2m.ldf (file) . . . . . 587
- russian2m.mld (file) 207, 242, 246, 587, 672
- russian2o (language option) . . . 40, 45, 590
- russian2o.mld (file) 207, 242, 246, 590, 672
- russianb (language option) . . . . . 40, 591
- russianb.dtx (file) . . . . . 492, 574, 591

russianb.mld (file) . . . . 242, 246, 591, 682  
 russianc (language option) . . . . . 40, 592  
 russianc.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 592  
 RYNNING, Jan Michael . . . . . 606, 665, 700  
 RYU, Young . . . . . 700, ⇨[368]

## S

SAAR, Enn . . . . . 511, 700, ⇨[94]  
 sabari (malayalam package) . . . . . 566  
 same-f.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 595  
 same.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 595  
 \samepage (command) . . . . . 664  
 samepage (environment) . . 297, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 326, 328, 329, 331–333, 348, 350, 351, 353–355, 664  
 samin (language option) . . . . . 40, 595  
 samin.dtx (file) . . . . . 595, 596  
 samin.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 595, 668  
 SAMSOEN, David . . . . . 700  
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio . . . . . 483, 600, 700, ⇨[61]  
 SANGER, Larry . . . . . 240, 700  
 SANGEUX, Morgan . . . . . 700  
 sarada (malayalam package) . . . . . 566  
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie . . . . . 700, ⇨[369, 370]  
 \scan@allowedtrue . . . . . 394, 556  
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar . . . . . 581, 700, ⇨[95]  
 SCHANDL, Bernd . . . . . 700, ⇨[416]  
 \schapter . . . . . 4585  
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth . . . . . 700, ⇨[328, 329]  
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias . . . . . 598, 700, ⇨[71]  
 SCHMIDT, Walter . . . 576, 700, ⇨[90, 371–373]  
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. . . . . 700, ⇨[374]  
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe . . . . . 700  
 SCHÖPF, Rainer . . . . . 700, ⇨[68, 263]  
 SCHROD, Joachim . . . . 700, ⇨[143, 185, 375]  
 SCHRÖDER, Martin . . 94, 700, ⇨[194, 376, 377]  
 SCHWARTZ, Ulrich . . . . . 700, ⇨[351]  
 scottish (language option) . . . . . 40, 596  
 scottish.dtx (file) . . . . . 596  
 scottish.mld (file) . . 242, 246, 257, 596, 696  
 scr.tex (old example document) . . 687, 689  
 scrartcl (class) 43, 51, 54, 76, 89, 161, 220, 235, 236, ⇨[317, 318, 364]  
 scrbook (class) . . . . . 43, 51, 54, 76, 89, 122, 128, 161, 220, 226, 227, 236, ⇨[317, 318, 364]  
 scrbook.cls (file) . . . . . 123  
 Scripts  
   cmk . . . . 212, 217, 224, 243–246, 253, 692  
   emk . . . . . 214, 219, 235, 243–246, 677  
   fmk . . . . . 217, 219, 235, 243–246, 677

imk 214, 217, 219, 235, 243–246, 677, 686  
 pmk . . . . . 234, 243–246  
 rmk . . . . . 235, 243–246  
 tmk . . . . . 238, 243–246, 254, 691  
 xmk . . . . . 240, 243–246, 687  
 \scriptsize (command) . . . . . 231  
 scrlettr (class) . . . . . 220, ⇨[317, 318, 364]  
 scrlettr2 (class) . . . . . 220, ⇨[317, 318, 364]  
 screpr (class) 43, 51, 54, 76, 89, 142, 161, 220, 227, 236, ⇨[317, 318, 364]  
 \scshape (command) . . . . . 231  
 \scshape. 1913, 1914, 1918, 1919, 1922–1924  
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth . . . . . 700, ⇨[378]  
 secnumdepth (depth counter) . . . . 213, 214  
 second.tex (old example document) 687, 690  
 \sectbegin (command) . . . . . 357  
 \sectbegin . . . 4635, 4799, 4859, 4919, 7564  
 \sectend (command) . . . . . 65, 357  
 \sectend . . . . 4635, 4799, 4859, 4919, 7564  
 \sectfont (command) . . . . . 123  
 \sectfont . . . . . 1493  
 \section (command) . . . . . 27, 28, 31–33, 52, 54, 68, 85, 153, 158, 164, 165, 167, 169, 174, 208, 209, 214, 234–236, 280, 283, 305, 307, 345, 347, 350, 353, 356, 360, 363, 365, 402, 414, 416, 438, 662  
 section (counter) . . . . . 269  
 section (placeins package) . . 31–33, 54, 172, 435  
 \section . . 829, 922, 1428, 1521, 1570, 1593, 1741, 1890, 1927, 2020, 2034, 2058, 2115, 2212, 2266, 2292, 2337, 2733, 2749, 3278, 3453, 4133, 4596, 4723, 4819, 4879, 6582, 6620, 7341  
 \section\* (command) 35, 36, 73, 88, 250, 280, 292, 668, 669  
 \section\* . . . . . 597, 867, 1027, 1091, 2306  
 \section@mtcck . . . 5142, 5193, 5203, 5211  
 \sectionfont . . . . . 1732  
 \sectlof (command)  
   32, 38, 42, 54, 85, 88, 179, 181, 219, 347, 350, 417, 665, 666  
 \sectlof . . . . . 572, 627, 646, 699, 723, 737, 829, 867, 922, 4450, 6675, 6754, 6842, 6941, 7369, 7580  
 \sectlof@ (command) . . . . . 350  
 \sectlof@ . . . . . 3329, 4450, 4451  
 \sectlof@mtcck . . . . . 5135, 5199  
 sectlofdepth (depth counter) . . 35, 214, 236, 345, 352  
 \sectlot (command) . . 32, 38, 42, 54, 85, 88, 179, 181, 219, 347, 353, 417, 665



- `\sectlot` . . . . . 572, 627, 646, 699, 723, 737, **867**, **922**, **1570**, **1593**, **4517**, 6675, 6763, 6851, 6952, **7369**, **7580**
- `\sectlot@` (command) . . . . . 353
- `\sectlot@` . . . . . **3329**, **4517**, **4518**
- `\sectlot@mtcck` . . . . . 5138, 5207
- `sectlotdepth` (depth counter) **35**, **67**, **214**, **236**, **345**, **355**
- `sectsty` (package) **54**, **71**, **89**, **129**, **173**, **236**, **251**, **267**, **272**, **425**, **674**, **684**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[295]**
- `\secttoc` (command) **31**, **32**, **38**, **39**, **42**, **85**, **88**, **179**, **181**, **219**, **346**, **347**, **665**
- `\secttoc` . . . . . **572**, 627, 646, 699, 723, 737, **829**, 869, 894, 906, 907, **922**, **2337**, **4383**, 6745, 6833, 6930, **7369**, **7580**
- `\secttoc@` (command) . . . . . **347**, **348**
- `\secttoc@` . . . . . **3329**, **4383**, **4384**
- `\secttoc@mtcck` . . . . . 5132, 5189
- `secttocdepth` (depth counter) **32**, **35**, **85**, **214**, **236**, **346**, **349**
- `serbia1.pdf` (graphic file) . . . . . **243**, **597**
- `serbian` (language option) . . . . . **40**, **597**
- `serbian.dtx` (file) . . . . . **597**
- `serbian.mld` (file) . . . . . **242**, **246**, **597**, **681**
- `serbianc` (language option) . . . . . **40**, **598**
- `serbianc.mld` (file) **45**, **242**, **246**, **598**, **671**, **681**
- `\setcounter` (command) . . . . . **30**, **32**, **34**, **60**, **64**, **83–85**, **393**
- `\setcounter` 8, **566**, 803, 804, 924, **974**, 1130, 1263, **1732**, **2153**, **2197**, **2212**, **2378**, 2962–2964, **2973**, **3007**, 3342, 3343, 3347, 3348, 3352, 3353, **3689**, **3695**, **4023**, **4027**, **4031**, **4331**, 4343, 4347, 4645, 4646, 4649, 4650, 4653, 4654, **5711**, **5755**, **5779**, **5793**, **5827**, **6041**
- `\setlength` (command) . . . . . **30**, **32**, **34**, **77**
- `\setlength` . . . . . 211, 301, 805, 875, 885, 916, 936, 958, 991, 1068, 1074, 1085, 1121, 1142, 1161, **1190**, 1202, 1257, 1492, 1942, **2101**, **2112**, **2328**, **2332**, 2437
- `\setvruler` . . . . . 166
- `\sf` . . . . . 809, 994
- `\sffamily` (command) . . . . . **231**
- `\sffamily` . . . . . 1222, 1224, 1231, 1737
- `sfheaders` (package) . . . . . **55**, **77**, **89**, **185**, **236**, **253**, **274**, **427**, **685**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[283]**
- `\sfloffset` . . . . . **2459**
- `\sh` . . . . . **8234**
- SHELL, Michael . . . . . **700**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[379]**
- SHIN, Jungshik . . . . . **700**
- `\SHORTEXT` (command) . . . . . **664**
- `shorttext` (option) . . . . . **54**, **60**, **81**, **168**, **208**, **236**, **249**, **402**, **667**
- `shorttoc` (package) . . . . . **22**, **236**, **663**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[145]**
- `\shorttoc` (command) . . . . . **22**
- `shortverb` (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$  **[303]**
- SHOUKAT, Ali . . . . . **700**
- SHOUYI<sup>†</sup>, Bai . . . . . **700**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[380]**
- SHVAIKA, Andrij M. . . . . **612**, **700**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[96]**
- `sidewaysfigure` (environment) . . . . . **235**
- `sidewaystable` (environment) . . . . . **235**
- `\sigma` . . . . . 2029, 2030
- SILPA-ANAN, Chanop . . . . . **608**, **700**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[296]**
- SINGH, Sindhu . . . . . **700**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[381]**
- SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna . . . . . **700**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[424]**
- `\sixt@n` . . . . . 2768
- `SJIS.cap` (file) . . . . . **551**
- `SJIS.cpx` (file) . . . . . **551**
- `SLATEX` (package) . . . . . **45**, **237**, **606**,  $\hookrightarrow$  **[294]**
- `\SLF@` . . . . . 4857, 4859
- `\SLF@contentsline` (command) . . . . . **363**
- `\SLF@contentsline` . . . . . **4819**, **4859**
- `\SLF@explist` . . . . . **4817**, **4843**
- `\SLF@line` . . . . . **4855**
- `\SLF@list` . . . . . **4814**, **4817**, **4843**, **4859**
- `\SLF@lof` . . . . . **4817**, **4844**, **4859**
- `\SLF@loop` . . . . . **4814**, **4844**
- `\SLF@next` (command) . . . . . **363**
- `\SLF@next` . . . . . **4647**, **4814**, **4843**
- `\slf@pgno` . . . . . 2893, 2894, **4502**
- `\SLF@read` . . . . . **4844**, **4855**, **4859**
- `\slf@rule` . . . . . **3022**, **4481**, 4514, **5006**
- `\slf@setform` (command) . . . . . **352**, **381**
- `\slf@setform` . . . . . **4502**, **5376**
- `\SLF@test` (command) . . . . . **364**
- `\SLF@test` . . . . . **4855**, **4859**
- `\slf@dotsep` . . . . . **5341**, 5379
- `\slffont` (command) . . . . . **38**, **41**, **85**
- `\slffont` . . . . . **4350**, **4476**, **7621**
- `\slflotrmarg` . . . . . **5332**
- `\slfname` . . . . . **4819**, **4823**
- `\slfoffset` (command) . . . . . **85**
- `\slfoffset` . . . . . 2468, **4497**, **7473**
- `\slfpagenumbers` (command) . . . . . **47**, **86**
- `\slfpagenumbers` . . . . . **2872**, 2893, **2904**, **7668**
- `\slfpnumwidth` . . . . . **5323**, 5377
- `\slfrule` (command) . . . . . **47**, **86**, **672**
- `\slfrule` . . . . . **5006**, **7650**
- `\slfSfont` (command) . . . . . **38**, **41**, **85**, **677**
- `\slfSfont` . . . . . **4350**, **7621**
- `\slftitle` (command) . . . . . **38**, **41**, **85**, **470**
- `\slftitle` . . . . . 4465, **4467**, **4481**, **6150**, **7250**, **7901**, 7919, 7938, 7956, 7972, 7988, 8007, 8032, 8048, 8063, 8082, 8100, 8115, 8130, 8145, 8161, 8179,

- 8205, 8229, 8246, 8261, 8288, 8315,  
8330, 8345, 8362, 8377, 8392, 8414,  
8440, 8455, 8473, 8492, 8514, 8542,  
8557, 8572, 8590, 8612, 8643, 8672,  
8687, 8703, 8718, 8733, 8765, 8769,  
8802, 8837, 8856, 8926, 8949, 8971,  
8990, 9011, 9026, 9042, 9058, 9114,  
9115, 9133, 9149, 9165, 9181, 9196,  
9212, 9235, 9252, 9267, 9285, 9300,  
9315, 9332, 9347, 9362, 9377, 9396,  
9411, 9426, 9445, 9463, 9497, 9526,  
9541, 9558, 9573, 9590, 9605, 9620,  
9635, 9650, 9665, 9680, 9698, 9713,  
9729, 9760, 9787, 9818, 9853, 9872,  
9921, 9936, 9951, 9967, 9982, 9997,  
10013, 10027, 10042, 10058, 10075,  
10090, 10105, 10125, 10160, 10177,  
10198, 10216, 10231, 10246, 10261  
\slftocrmarg ..... 5337, 5378  
slides (class) ..... 212, ↪[300]  
SLIMAK, Kristian ..... 599, 700  
SLOBODAN, Jankovic ..... 597, 700, ↪[87]  
\sloppy ..... 829, 1020  
slovak (language option) ..... 40, 598  
slovak-ok.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 599  
slovak.dtx (file) ..... 598  
slovak.mld (file) ..... 242, 246, 598  
slovakia.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 599  
slovene (language option) ..... 40, 599  
slovene.dtx (file) ..... 599  
slovene.mld (file) ..... 242, 246, 599  
slovenian.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 600  
slovenie.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 600  
\slshape (command) ..... 231  
\slshape ..... 2160, 2162, 2165, 2167, 3037  
\SLT@ ..... 4917, 4919  
\SLT@contentsline (command) ..... 365  
\SLT@contentsline ..... 4879, 4919  
\SLT@explist ..... 4877, 4903  
\SLT@line ..... 4915  
\SLT@list ..... 4874, 4877, 4903, 4919  
\SLT@loop ..... 4874, 4904  
\SLT@lot ..... 4877, 4904, 4919  
\SLT@next (command) ..... 365  
\SLT@next ..... 4654, 4874, 4903  
\slt@pgno ..... 2899, 2900, 4569  
\SLT@read ..... 4904, 4915, 4919  
\slt@rule ..... 3022, 4550, 4582, 5015  
\slt@setform (command) ..... 355, 382  
\slt@setform ..... 4569, 5391  
\SLT@test (command) ..... 366  
\SLT@test ..... 4915, 4919  
\sltdotsep ..... 5341  
\sltfont (command) ..... 38, 41, 85  
\sltfont ..... 4350, 4543, 7621  
\sltlotrmarg ..... 5332  
\sltname (command) ..... 667  
\sltname ..... 4879, 4883  
\sltoffset (command) ..... 85  
\sltoffset ..... 2459, 4564, 7473  
\sltpagenumbers (command) ..... 47, 86  
\sltpagenumbers .. 2878, 2899, 2904, 7668  
\sltpnumwidth ..... 5323  
\sltrule (command) ..... 47, 86, 672  
\sltrule ..... 5015, 7650  
\sltSfont (command) ..... 38, 41, 85, 677  
\sltSfont ..... 4350, 7621  
\sltttitle (command) ... 38, 41, 67, 85, 470  
\sltttitle ..... 4532, 4534,  
4548, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7920, 7939,  
7957, 7973, 7989, 8008, 8033, 8049,  
8064, 8083, 8101, 8116, 8131, 8146,  
8162, 8180, 8207, 8231, 8247, 8262,  
8289, 8316, 8331, 8346, 8363, 8378,  
8393, 8415, 8441, 8456, 8474, 8494,  
8515, 8543, 8558, 8573, 8591, 8613,  
8644, 8673, 8688, 8704, 8719, 8734,  
8806, 8840, 8857, 8927, 8951, 8972,  
8991, 9012, 9027, 9043, 9059, 9134,  
9150, 9166, 9182, 9197, 9213, 9236,  
9253, 9268, 9286, 9301, 9316, 9333,  
9348, 9363, 9378, 9397, 9412, 9427,  
9446, 9464, 9499, 9527, 9542, 9559,  
9574, 9591, 9606, 9621, 9636, 9651,  
9666, 9681, 9699, 9714, 9730, 9745,  
9746, 9761, 9790, 9821, 9856, 9873,  
9922, 9937, 9952, 9968, 9983, 9998,  
10014, 10028, 10043, 10059, 10076,  
10091, 10106, 10126, 10162, 10178,  
10199, 10217, 10232, 10247, 10262  
\slttocrmarg ..... 5340  
\small (command) ..... 231  
SMITH, John ..... 506, 542, 700, ↪[337]  
SOCHA, Robin S. .... 700  
SOFRONIOU, Nick ..... 700, ↪[389]  
SOMMERFELDT, Axel . . 55, 73, 89, 209, 210, 217,  
700, ↪[382–386]  
SONG, Lianyi ..... 700, ↪[378]  
sorabe-1.jpg (graphic file) ..... 243, 560  
sorabe-2.jpg (graphic file) ..... 243, 560  
sorben.jpg (graphic file) ..... 243, 562  
sorbian.jpg (graphic file) ..... 243, 561  
sort&compress (natbib package) ..... 693  
SOULET, Yves ..... 700, ↪[308]  
\space (command) ..... 36  
spain.pdf (graphic file) ..... 243, 601  
spanish (language option) ..... 40, 497, 600

- spanish.dtx (file) . . . . . 524, 600, 603, 604
- spanish.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 497, 600, 682
- spanish2 (language option) . . . . 40, 600, 603
- spanish2.mld (file) . . . . 242, 246, 603, 673
- spanish3 (language option) . . 40, 45, 600, 604
- spanish3.mld (file) . . 207, 242, 246, 604, 676
- spanish4 (language option) . . . . 40, 600, 604
- spanish4.mld (file) . . . . 242, 246, 604, 681
- \special (command) . . . . . 219
- splitbib (package) . . . . . 61, 237, ↔[290]
- \sqrt . . . . . 2037
- sruthy (malayalam package) . . . . . 566
- \star . . . . . 1273, 1278
- \starchapter (command) . . . . . 312
- \starchapter . . . . . 3340, 3471, 4160
- \starpagraph . . . . . 3485, 4160, 4770
- \starpart . . . . . 4118
- \starsection (command) . . . . . 356
- \starsection . . . . . 3485, 4160, 4596, 4755
- \starsubparagraph . . . . . 3485, 4160, 4770
- \starsubsection . . . . . 3485, 4160, 4770
- \starsubsubsection . . . . . 3485, 4160, 4770
- stc (counter) 88, 278, 280, 281, 290, 346, 360, 363, 365, 669
- \STC@contentsline (command) . . . . . 360
- \STC@contentsline . . . . . 4723, 4799
- \STC@explist . . . . . 4721, 4783
- \STC@line . . . . . 4795, 4797
- \STC@list . . . . . 4718, 4721, 4783, 4799
- \STC@loop . . . . . 4718, 4784
- \STC@next (command) . . . . . 361
- \STC@next . . . . . 4643, 4718, 4783
- \stc@pgno . . . . . 2887, 2888, 4432
- \STC@read . . . . . 4784, 4795, 4799
- \stc@rule (command) . . . . . 346
- \stc@rule 4338, 4414, 4446, 4513, 4548, 4581, 4997
- \stc@sect . . . . . 4635
- \stc@setform (command) . . . . . 349, 381
- \stc@setform . . . . . 4432, 5361
- \STC@test (command) . . . . . 362
- \STC@test . . . . . 4797, 4799
- \STC@toc . . . . . 4721, 4784, 4799
- stc@verse (environment) . . 347, 349, 352, 355, 381, 382, 673
- \stc@verse . . . . . 4371
- \stcdotsep . . . . . 5341, 5364
- \stcfont (command) . . . . 32, 38, 39, 41, 85
- \stcfont . . . . . 792, 4350, 4409, 7621
- \stcindent (command) . . . . . 32, 85, 346
- \stcindent . . . 792, 2332, 4338, 4377, 4426, 4493, 4560, 7383
- \stclotrmarg . . . . . 5332
- \stcname . . . . . 4723, 4727, 4755
- \stcoffset (command) . . . . . 32, 85, 347
- \stcoffset . . . . . 2467, 4430, 7473
- \stcpagenumbers (command) . . . . . 47, 86
- \stcpagenumbers . . . 2848, 2887, 2904, 7668
- \stcPfont (command) . . . . . 39, 41, 85
- \stcPfont . . . . . 811, 4350, 7621
- \stcpnumwidth . . . . . 5323, 5362
- \stcrule (command) . . . . . 47, 86
- \stcrule . . . . . 4997, 7650
- \stcSPfont (command) . . . . . 39, 41
- \stcSPfont . . . . . 811, 4350, 7621
- \stcSSfont (command) . . . . . 32, 39, 41, 85
- \stcSSfont . . . . . 792, 4350, 7621
- \stcSSSfont (command) . . . . . 39, 41, 85
- \stcSSSfont . . . . . 811, 4350, 7621
- \stctitle (command) . . . . . 38, 41, 85, 470
- \stctitle . . . . . 4399, 4414, 6150, 7250, 7901, 7918, 7937, 7955, 7971, 7987, 8006, 8031, 8047, 8062, 8081, 8099, 8114, 8129, 8144, 8160, 8178, 8203, 8227, 8245, 8260, 8287, 8314, 8329, 8344, 8361, 8376, 8391, 8413, 8439, 8454, 8472, 8491, 8513, 8541, 8556, 8571, 8589, 8611, 8642, 8671, 8686, 8702, 8717, 8732, 8762, 8799, 8834, 8855, 8925, 8947, 8970, 8989, 9010, 9025, 9041, 9057, 9113, 9132, 9148, 9164, 9180, 9195, 9211, 9234, 9251, 9266, 9284, 9299, 9314, 9331, 9346, 9361, 9376, 9395, 9410, 9425, 9444, 9462, 9493, 9495, 9525, 9540, 9557, 9572, 9589, 9604, 9619, 9634, 9649, 9664, 9679, 9697, 9712, 9728, 9744, 9759, 9785, 9816, 9851, 9871, 9920, 9935, 9950, 9966, 9981, 9996, 10012, 10026, 10041, 10057, 10074, 10089, 10104, 10124, 10159, 10176, 10197, 10215, 10230, 10245, 10260
- \stctocrmarg . . . . . 5334, 5363
- stdclsdv (package) . . . . . 235, 237, ↔[426]
- STEINER, Arjen . . . . . 700
- \stepcounter (command) . . . . . 36, 279–281
- \stepcounter . . . 2716, 2749, 2760, 2981, 3425, 3439, 3471, 3545, 3606, 4010, 4105, 4119, 4217, 4277, 4726, 4755, 4822, 4882
- \stifont (command) . . . . . 38, 41, 85
- \stifont . . . . . 4350, 4414, 4481, 4548, 7621
- STORY, D. P. . . . . 700, ↔[387]
- STREIT, Éric . . . . . 700, ↔[29]
- STUBNER, Ralf . . . . . 700
- subappendices (environment) . . . . . 207
- subf.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 690

subfig (package) [35](#), [89](#), [147](#), [209](#), [228](#), [237](#), [390](#),  
     ↪[\[128\]](#)  
`\subfigbottomskip` . . . . . [2153](#), [2181](#)  
`\subfigcapskip` . . . . . [2421](#)  
`\subfigtopskip` . . . . . [2153](#), [2181](#)  
subfigure (package) . . . [35](#), [89](#), [141](#), [227](#), [237](#),  
     ↪[\[126\]](#)  
`\subfigure` . . . [2179](#), [2182](#), [2184](#), [2388](#), [2391](#),  
     [2394](#), [2397](#), [2400](#), [2403](#), [2406](#), [3558](#),  
     [4230](#), [4835](#)  
`\subfigure@mtcck` . . . [5149](#), [5154](#), [5164](#), [5171](#),  
     [5187](#), [5195](#), [5213](#)  
`\subparagraph` (command) . . . . . [214](#), [236](#)  
`\subparagraph` . . . [883](#), [899](#), [914](#), [942](#), [1149](#),  
     [3453](#), [4133](#), [4739](#)  
`\subparagraph@mtcck` . . . . . [5146](#)  
SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. . . . . [552](#), [700](#), ↪[\[445\]](#)  
`\subref` . . . . . [2414](#)–[2417](#)  
`\subsection` (command) . . . [214](#), [236](#), [356](#), [662](#)  
`\subsection` . . . . . [343](#), [578](#),  
     [583](#), [628](#), [633](#), [647](#), [652](#), [700](#), [705](#),  
     [724](#), [729](#), [738](#), [743](#), [835](#)–[838](#), [841](#)–  
     [866](#), [873](#), [890](#), [896](#), [900](#), [911](#), [921](#),  
     [931](#), [943](#), [954](#)–[956](#), [963](#), [970](#), [971](#),  
     [1056](#), [1080](#), [1097](#), [1117](#), [1139](#), [1343](#),  
     [1348](#), [1360](#), [1365](#), [1400](#), [1521](#), [1565](#),  
     [1567](#), [1741](#), [2337](#), [3453](#), [4133](#), [4739](#)  
`\subsection*` . . . . . [1741](#)  
`\subsection@mtcck` . . . . . [5143](#)  
`\subsubsection` (command) . . . . . [214](#), [236](#)  
`\subsubsection` [638](#), [639](#), [880](#), [897](#), [912](#), [933](#),  
     [1082](#), [1100](#), [1118](#), [1140](#), [1741](#), [2337](#),  
     [3453](#), [4133](#), [4739](#)  
`\subsubsection@mtcck` . . . . . [5144](#)  
`\subtable` . . . . . [3619](#), [4290](#), [4895](#)  
`\subtable@mtcck` . . . [5150](#), [5156](#), [5160](#), [5173](#),  
     [5180](#), [5197](#), [5205](#)  
suede-a.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [607](#)  
suede-f.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [607](#)  
Suffixes . . . . . *see* Extensions  
SUTOR, Robert S. . . . . [700](#), ↪[\[176\]](#)  
`\sv@chapter` . . . . . [3268](#)  
`\SV@endmtc@verse` . . . . . [306](#), [310](#)  
`\sv@minilof@` . . . . . [3309](#)  
`\sv@minilot@` . . . . . [3309](#)  
`\sv@minitoc@` . . . . . [3309](#)  
`\SV@mtc@verse` . . . . . [305](#), [307](#)  
`\sv@part` . . . . . [4010](#)  
`\sv@partlof@` . . . . . [3319](#)  
`\sv@partlot@` . . . . . [3319](#)  
`\sv@parttoc@` . . . . . [3319](#)  
`\sv@sect` . . . . . [4589](#), [4595](#)  
`\sv@sectlof@` . . . . . [3329](#)  
`\sv@sectlot@` . . . . . [3329](#)

`\sv@secttoc@` . . . . . [3329](#)  
`\sv@spart` . . . . . [4010](#)  
svenska.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [607](#)  
swahili (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [605](#)  
swahili-m.png (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [605](#)  
swahili.mld (file) . . . [242](#), [246](#), [256](#), [605](#), [695](#)  
swahili.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [605](#)  
swahili.tex (file) . . . . . [605](#)  
sweden.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . [243](#), [607](#)  
swedish (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [606](#)  
swedish.dtx (file) . . . . . [606](#)  
swedish.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [606](#)  
swedish2 (language option) . . . . . [40](#), [606](#)  
swedish2.mld (file) . . . . . [242](#), [246](#), [606](#), [684](#)  
SWOYER, Chris . . . . . [700](#)  
syllabary . . . . . [467](#)  
SYROPOULOS, Apostolos . . . . . [530](#), [700](#),  
     ↪[\[31](#), [97](#), [388](#), [389\]](#)

## T

TABACCO, Raffaella . . . . . [554](#), [700](#)  
tabbing (environment) . . . . . [59](#)  
`\table` (command) . . . . . [318](#)  
table (environment) . . . . . [209](#), [237](#), [239](#)  
`\table` . . . . . [3619](#), [4290](#), [4895](#)  
`\table@mtcck` . . . [5148](#), [5155](#), [5159](#), [5172](#), [5179](#),  
     [5196](#), [5204](#)  
`\tableofcontents` (command)  
     [23](#), [30](#), [32](#), [34](#), [51](#), [54](#), [60](#), [64](#), [66](#), [79](#),  
     [82](#)–[85](#), [180](#), [181](#), [250](#), [283](#), [290](#), [416](#),  
     [422](#), [669](#), [673](#)  
`\tableofcontents` . . . . . [11](#), [191](#), [213](#),  
     [315](#), [404](#), [566](#), [750](#), [825](#), [1014](#), [1377](#),  
     [1428](#), [1496](#), [1506](#), [1541](#), [1674](#), [1741](#),  
     [1891](#), [1928](#), [1937](#), [2018](#), [2058](#), [2169](#),  
     [2206](#), [2265](#), [2283](#), [2743](#), [6644](#), [6862](#),  
     [6897](#), [6932](#)  
`\tableofcontents*` (command) . . . . . [133](#)  
`\tableofcontents*` . . . . . [1890](#), [1927](#)  
tabular (environment) . . . [59](#), [297](#), [300](#), [303](#), [327](#),  
     [329](#), [332](#), [349](#), [351](#), [354](#)  
TALBOT, Nicola L. C. . . . [89](#), [700](#), ↪[\[159](#), [390](#)–[397\]](#)  
TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Daniel . . . . . [54](#), [74](#), [89](#), [700](#), ↪[\[398\]](#)  
TAYLOR, Philip . . . . . [700](#), ↪[\[159](#), [399\]](#)  
tbi.tex (old example document) . . . [687](#), [690](#)  
`\tcArabTok` . . . . . [7959](#)  
TDS . . . [224](#), [237](#), [238](#), [245](#), [246](#), [254](#), [691](#), [692](#)  
`\testtemp` . . . . . [2363](#), [2365](#)–[2367](#), [2370](#)  
`\textbf` (command) . . . . . [231](#)  
textcase (package) . . . . . ↪[\[115\]](#)  
`\textheight` . . . . . [2328](#)

- `\textit` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textit` . . . . . 1249
- `\textmd` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textnormal` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textrm` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textsc` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textsc` 427, 593, 663, 1740, 1753, 1755, 1810, 1821, 1944
- `\textsf` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textsf` . . . . . 424, 521, 529, 537
- `\textsl` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textsl` . . . . . 427, 593, 663
- `\textsuperscript` . . . . . 1731
- `\texttt` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\texttt` . . . . . 447, 610, 682
- `\textup` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\textwidth` (command) . . . . . 688
- `\textwidth` . . . . . 2328
- `\tf@mtc` (command) . . . . . 264, 283, 436
- `\tf@mtc` 2434, 2684, 2782, 3412, 3422, 3426, 3438, 3471, 3518, 3546, 3583, 3607, 3644, 3660, 3680, 4095, 4103, 4129, 4130, 4203, 4204, 4215, 4227, 4228, 4263, 4264, 4275, 4287, 4288, 4323, 4324, 4715, 4723, 4736, 4737, 4767, 4768, 4807, 4808, 4819, 4832, 4833, 4867, 4868, 4879, 4892, 4893, 4927, 4928, 7283, 7587
- thai (language option) . . . . . 40, 608
- thai.dtx (file) . . . . . 648
- thai.ldf (file) . . . . . 608
- thai.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 608, 671
- thai.mlo (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 608
- thai.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 608
- thai.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 608
- thaicjk.ldf (file) . . . . . 608
- thailatex (package) . . . . . 238, 608, 686, ⇔[296]
- thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz (file) . . . . . 648
- `\the3668`, 3683, 5221, 5222, 5261, 5262, 5302, 5303, 5440, 5441, 5679, 5680, 5721, 5725, 5765, 5769
- `\The@mtc` (command) . . . . . 293, 668
- `\The@mtc` 3007, 3064, 3066, 3134, 3136, 3202, 3204
- thebibliography (environment) . . 136, 146
- `\thechapter` . . . . . 1222, 1302, 7887, 7890
- `\themtc` (command) . . . . . 293
- `\themtc` 3007, 3422, 3426, 3438, 3471, 3543, 3546, 3604, 3607
- `\Thepart` (command) . . . . . 321
- `\Thepart` . . . . . 3695, 3791, 3857, 3931
- `\theptc` (command) . . . . . 321
- `\theptc` 3695, 4103, 4122, 4123, 4126, 4127, 4215, 4220, 4221, 4224, 4225, 4275, 4280, 4281, 4284, 4285
- `\thesection` . . . . . 1301, 1302, 1732
- `\thestc` 4384, 4451, 4518, 4573, 4723, 4729, 4730, 4733, 4734, 4755, 4819, 4825, 4826, 4829, 4830, 4879, 4885, 4886, 4889, 4890
- THIELE, Christina . . . . . 700, ⇔[159, 347]
- THIMBLEBY, Harold . . . . . 700, ⇔[400, 401]
- `\thispageminilofstyle` (command) 49, 87, 300
- `\thispageminilofstyle` . 2948, 3144, 7701
- `\thispageminilotstyle` (command) 49, 87, 303
- `\thispageminilotstyle` . 2948, 3212, 7701
- `\thispageminitocstyle` (command) 49, 87, 296
- `\thispageminitocstyle` . 2948, 3074, 7701
- `\thispagepartlofsty` (command) 49, 87, 668
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . 2948, 3871, 7686
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` (command) 49, 87, 668
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` . 2948, 3946, 7686
- `\thispageparttocstyle` (command) 49, 87, 288, 668
- `\thispageparttocstyle` . 2948, 3805, 7686
- `\thispagesectlofsty` (command) . 49, 87
- `\thispagesectlofsty` . 2948, 4464, 7716
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` (command) . 49, 87
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` . 2948, 4531, 7716
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` (command) . 49, 87
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` . 2948, 4397, 7716
- `\thispagestyle` (command) . 49, 50, 87, 288
- `\thispagestyle` . . . . . 1717, 2948
- THORUP, Kresten Krab . . . . . 700, ⇔[402]
- THUREAU, Aurélien . . . . . 700
- tight (option) . . . . . 43, 63, 81, 143, 220, 222, 238, 249, 271, 295, 324, 347, 401, 667, 669
- `\tightmtcfalse` (command) . . . . . 43, 82
- `\tightmtcfalse` . . . . . 2581, 6046, 7732
- `\tightmtctrue` (command) . . . . . 43, 82
- `\tightmtctrue` . . . . . 6045
- TINNEFELD, Karsten . . . . . 54, 76, 89, 700, ⇔[403]
- `\tiny` (command) . . . . . 231
- `\title` . . . . . 1740
- titlesec (package) . . . . . 54, 89, 186, 238, 256, 410, 695, ⇔[46]
- titletoc (package) 54, 89, 174, 238, 411, ⇔[46]
- titletoc.sty (file) . . . . . 238
- 'T LAM, Ton . . . . . 700
- tlc.tex (old example document) . . . 687, 690

tmk (script) . . . . . 238, 243–246, 254, 691  
 tocbibind (package) . . . . . 51, 54, 66,  
     89, 97, 99, 101, 102, 105, 143, 145,  
     146, 162, 226, 228, 238, 250, 409,  
     668,  $\hookrightarrow$ [432]  
 tocdepth (depth counter) . . . . . 35, 64, 72,  
     83–85, 214, 238, 293, 297, 301, 393,  
     662, 674  
 toch (package) . . . . . 663  
 \toclevel@chapter . . . . . 2592  
 \toclevel@paragraph . . . . . 2596  
 \toclevel@part . . . . . 2591  
 \toclevel@section . . . . . 2593  
 \toclevel@starchapter . . . . . 2592  
 \toclevel@starparagraph . . . . . 2596  
 \toclevel@startpart . . . . . 2591  
 \toclevel@starsection . . . . . 2593  
 \toclevel@starsubparagraph . . . . . 2597  
 \toclevel@starsubsection . . . . . 2594  
 \toclevel@starsubsubsection . . . . . 2595  
 \toclevel@subparagraph . . . . . 2597  
 \toclevel@subsection . . . . . 2594  
 \toclevel@subsubsection . . . . . 2595  
 \toclevel@xchapter . . . . . 2589  
 \toclevel@xpart . . . . . 2588  
 \toclevel@xsect . . . . . 2590  
 tocloft (package) . . . . . 54, 65–67, 72, 79,  
     80, 89, 116, 129, 162, 226, 228, 238,  
     410,  $\hookrightarrow$ [429]  
 tocloft.pdf (file) . . . . . 79  
 tocvsec2 (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [433]  
 TODO (file) . . . . . 238, 242, 244, 246  
 TOLUŠIS, Sigitas . . . . . 558, 559, 700  
 Tools  
     dvips . . . . . 219, 239  
     dvipsone . . . . . 219  
     dviwindo . . . . . 219  
     newcommand . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [334]  
     rubber . . . . . 62, 235, 676,  $\hookrightarrow$ [33]  
     urlbst . . . . . 214, 218, 239, 253, 683,  $\hookrightarrow$ [181]  
     VTEX . . . . . 219  
     xargs . . . . . 53, 677  
 \topsep (command) . . . . . 295, 324  
 \topsep . . . . . 3049, 3778, 4373  
 TORDELLA, Laurent . . . . . 700  
 TRETTIN, Mark . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [404, 405]  
 triruvathira (malayalam package) . . . . . 566  
 trivfloat (package) . . . . . 55, 89, 163, 239, 255, 268,  
     276, 430, 694,  $\hookrightarrow$ [444]  
 TRUU, Ahto . . . . . 700  
 tsfc.tex (old example document) . . . . . 687, 690  
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [389]  
 \ttfamily (command) . . . . . 231  
 \ttfamily . . . . . 1519, 1521, 1557, 1559

turkish (language option) . . . . . 40, 609  
 turkish.dtx (file) . . . . . 609  
 turkish.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 257, 609, 696  
 turkish.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 610  
 turquie.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 610  
 TWS-TDS, . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [406, 407]  
 txfonts (package) . . . . . 37, 239,  $\hookrightarrow$ [368]

## U

u8hangul.tex (file) . . . . . 538  
 u8hanja.tex (file) . . . . . 540  
 uighur (language option) . . . . . 40, 609  
 uighur.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 609, 686  
 uighur.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 611  
 uighur2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 609  
 uighur2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 609, 686  
 uighur3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 612  
 uighur3.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 612, 686  
 UKenglish (language option) . . . . . 40, 612  
 UKenglish.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 612, 675  
 ukra.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 612  
 ukraine.jpg (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 613  
 ukraineb (language option) . . . . . 40, 612  
 ukraineb.dtx (file) . . . . . 612  
 ukraineb.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 256, 612, 695  
 ukraineb.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 613  
 ukrainian (language option) . . . . . 40, 612  
 ukrainian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 612, 681  
 ULRICH, Stefan . . . . . 37, 668, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24]  
 UMEKI, Hideo . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [408]  
 undotted (option) . . . . . 48, 63, 81, 249, 402, 667  
 \undottedmtcfalse (command) . . . . . 82  
 \undottedmtcfalse . . . . . 2822, 6052, 7734  
 \undottedmtctrue (command) . . . . . 82  
 \undottedmtctrue . . . . . 6051  
 \unhcopy . . . . . 2774, 2778  
 \unitlength . . . . . 875, 885, 916, 936, 958, 1068,  
     1074, 1085, 1121, 1142, 1161  
 \unpenalty . . . . . 2781  
 \unskip . . . . . 308, 397, 558  
 uppersorbian (language option) . . . . . 40, 614, 615  
 uppersorbian.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 614, 615,  
     681  
 \upshape (command) . . . . . 231  
 \upshape . . . . . 807, 1517, 1519, 1521, 1555, 1557,  
     1559, 2159, 2161, 2163, 2166, 2168,  
     3030, 3031, 3036, 3719, 3720, 3729,  
     3732–3734, 3743, 4350, 4351, 4359  
 url (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [19]  
 \url . . . . . 523, 524, 531, 532, 539, 540  
 urlbst (tool) . . . . . 214, 218, 239, 253, 683,  $\hookrightarrow$ [181]



USenglish (language option) . . . . . 40, 615  
 USenglish.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 615, 675  
 \usepackage (command) . . . 29–32, 34, 79, 202,  
     206, 233, 234, 442, 470  
 \usepackage . . . . . 5–7,  
     48, 107, 163, 164, 186, 187, 206–208,  
     210, 259–264, 294–297, 300, 389–  
     391, 399, 400, 555, 560, 561, 754–  
     757, 800–802, 985–988, 1186, 1188–  
     1190, 1200, 1201, 1207–1211, 1381,  
     1433–1436, 1490, 1491, 1510–1512,  
     1538–1540, 1575, 1576, 1624, 1625,  
     1671, 1672, 1724–1730, 1883–1886,  
     1888, 1910, 1916, 1917, 1941, 1943,  
     2014, 2015, 2045–2049, 2053, 2096–  
     2100, 2147, 2151, 2152, 2203–2207,  
     2248, 2283, 2284, 2332, 2360–2362,  
     7750  
 usorbian (language option) . . . . 40, 614, 615  
 usorbian.dtx (file) . . . . . 614  
 usorbian.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 256, 615, 683,  
     695  
 UYAR, Turgut . . . . . 609, 700, ⇨[67]

## V

VAARIO, Jari . . . . . 700  
 \value . . . 2564, **6961**, **8395**, **8417**, **8593**, **8615**  
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet . . . . . 700, ⇨[410]  
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas . . . 700,  
     ⇨[29, 411]  
 VAN ZANDT, Timothy . . . . . 700, ⇨[412]  
 VAQUIN, Vincent . . . . . 700  
 varioref (package) . . . . . 141, ⇨[302]  
 varsects (package) . . . 54, 74, 89, 173, 240, 252,  
     267, 272, 425, 679, ⇨[398]  
 \vbox . . . . . 2180, 2183, 2185, 2375, 2377  
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. . . . . 700, ⇨[413]  
 verbose (placeins package) . . . . . 31, 435  
 VERNÉ, Didier . . . . . 63, 223, 249, 310, 314, 700,  
     ⇨[414]  
 verse (environment) . . . 36, 295, 324, 347, 662  
 VESCO, Sylvain . . . . . 700  
 VEYTSMAN, Boris . . . . . 700, ⇨[415, 416]  
 \vfil . . . . . 2180, 2183, 2185, 2376  
 \vfill . . . . . 1250, 1266  
 VIAL, Alexandre . . . . . 700  
 viet-w.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 617  
 viet2.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 616  
 viet3.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 616  
 vietnam (package) . . . . . 45, 615, ⇨[278]  
 vietnam (language option) . . . . . 40, 615, 616

vietnam.mld (file) . . . 242, 246, 615, 616, 667  
 vietnamese (language option) . . . . . 40, 616  
 vietnamese.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 616  
 VOGELIN, Carl F. . . . . 700, ⇨[417]  
 VOGELIN, Florence M. . . . . 700, ⇨[417]  
 VOGEL, Martin . . . . . 700, ⇨[212]  
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir . . . 492, 574, 591, 612, 700,  
     ⇨[83, 96, 418]  
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. . . . 277, 668, 700,  
     ⇨[419, 420]  
 Voss, Herbert . . . . . 700, ⇨[175, 421]  
 \vref . . . . . 2193, 2194  
 \vrule . . . . . 2368, 2369, 2371  
 vruler (package) . . . . . 78, ⇨[232]  
 \vskip . . . 309, 1225, 1232, 2825, 3108, 3124,  
     3128, 3180, 3196, 3248, 3264, 3286,  
     3298, 3758, 3765, 3772, 3834, 3853,  
     3911, 3927, 3986, 4002, 4431, 4448,  
     4501, 4515, 4568, 4583  
 \vspace . . . . . 1218, 1228, 1254, 1277,  
     1281, 1284, **1947**, 2054, 2055, 2102,  
     2188, 3041, 3042, 3118, 3125, 3129,  
     3190, 3197, 3258, 3265, 3714, 3749,  
     3750, 3752, 3756, 3763, 3770, 3847,  
     3854, 3921, 3928, 3996, 4003, 4348,  
     4363, 4364, 4442, 4449, 4516, 4584,  
     5003–5005, 5012–5014, 5021–5023  
 \vspace\* (command) . . . . . 664  
 VTEX (tool) . . . . . 219

## W

W0001 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 164, 395  
 W0002 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 164, 397  
 W0003 (message) . . . . . 51, 55, 151, 164, 293  
 W0004 (message) . . . . . 51, 55, 151, 164, 321  
 W0005 (message) . . . . . 51, 55, 151, 165, 346  
 W0006 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 165, 395  
 W0007 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 165, 397  
 W0008 (message) . . . . . 151, 165, 316  
 W0009 (message) . . . . . 151, 165, 318  
 W0010 (message) . . . . . 151, 166, 313  
 W0011 (message) . . . . . 151, 166, 341  
 W0012 (message) . . . . . 151, 166, 344  
 W0013 (message) . . . . . 151, 166, 339  
 W0014 (message) . . . . . 151, 166, 364  
 W0015 (message) . . . . . 151, 167, 366  
 W0016 (message) . . . . . 151, 167, 361  
 W0017 (message) . . . . . 61, 151, 167, 280  
 W0018 (message) . . . . . 151, 167, 279  
 W0019 (message) . . . . . 151, 167, 283

- W0020 (message) . . . . . 151, 168, 236, 402  
 W0021 (message) . . . . . 61, 151, 168, 284  
 W0022 (message) . . . . . 61, 151, 168, 284  
 W0023 (message) . . . . . 151, 170, 219, 415, 416  
 W0024 (message) . . . . . 151, 170, 434  
 W0025 (message) 54, 76, 151, 170, 207, 408, 683  
 W0026 (message) . . 54, 67, 151, 170, 207, 413  
 W0027 (message) . . 54, 67, 151, 171, 207, 413  
 W0028 (message) . . . . . 151, 171, 219, 415  
 W0029 (message) 54, 76, 151, 171, 220, 414, 683  
 W0030 (message) . . . . . 151, 171, 219, 415  
 W0031 (message) . . . . . 151, 172, 234, 411  
 W0032 (message) . . . . . 151, 172, 234, 411  
 W0033 (message) . . 55, 73, 151, 172, 209, 428  
 W0034 (message) . . 55, 73, 151, 172, 209, 429  
 W0035 (message) . . 55, 73, 151, 173, 210, 429  
 W0036 (message) . . 55, 73, 151, 173, 222, 429  
 W0037 (message) . . 54, 71, 151, 173, 236, 425  
 W0038 (message) . . 54, 74, 151, 173, 240, 252, 425, 679  
 W0039 (message) . . . . . 151, 173, 219, 416  
 W0040 (message) . . . . . 54, 151, 174, 238, 411  
 W0041 (message) . . . . . 151, 174, 432  
 W0042 (message) . . . . . 151, 174, 432  
 W0043 (message) . . . . . 151, 174, 432  
 W0044 (message) . . . . . 151, 175, 431  
 W0045 (message) . . . . . 151, 175, 431  
 W0046 (message) . . . . . 151, 175, 431  
 W0047 (message) . . . . . 151, 175, 433  
 W0048 (message) . . . . . 151, 176, 433  
 W0049 (message) . . . . . 151, 176, 432  
 W0050 (message) . . . . . 151, 176, 433  
 W0051 (message) . . . . . 151, 176, 433  
 W0052 (message) . . . . . 151, 176, 434  
 W0053 (message) . . . 54, 55, 60, 151, 177, 424  
 W0054 (message) . . . 54, 55, 60, 151, 177, 424  
 W0055 (message) . . . 54, 55, 60, 151, 177, 424  
 W0056 (message) . . 31, 54, 151, 177, 219, 418  
 W0057 (message) . . . . . 151, 178, 419  
 W0058 (message) . . . . . 151, 178, 419  
 W0059 (message) . . . . . 151, 178, 419  
 W0060 (message) . . . . . 151, 178, 418  
 W0061 (message) . . . . . 151, 178, 418  
 W0062 (message) . . . . . 151, 179, 418  
 W0063 (message) . . . . . 151, 179, 419  
 W0064 (message) . . . . . 151, 179, 419  
 W0065 (message) . . . . . 151, 179, 419  
 W0066 (message) . . . . . 151, 179, 423  
 W0067 (message) . . . . . 151, 180, 423  
 W0068 (message) . . . . . 151, 180, 423  
 W0069 (message) . . . . . 151, 180, 422  
 W0070 (message) . . . . . 151, 180, 422  
 W0071 (message) . . . . . 151, 181, 422  
 W0072 (message) . . . . . 151, 181, 424  
 W0073 (message) . . . . . 151, 181, 424  
 W0074 (message) . . . . . 151, 181, 424  
 W0075 (message) . . . . . 151, 182, 420  
 W0076 (message) . . . . . 151, 182, 420  
 W0077 (message) . . . . . 151, 182, 420  
 W0078 (message) . . . . . 151, 182, 421  
 W0079 (message) . . . . . 151, 182, 421  
 W0080 (message) . . . . . 151, 183, 421  
 W0081 (message) . . . . . 151, 183, 421  
 W0082 (message) . . . . . 151, 183, 421  
 W0083 (message) . . . . . 151, 183, 421  
 W0084 (message) . . . . . 151, 183, 234, 411  
 W0085 (message) . . . . . 151, 184, 234, 411  
 W0086 (message) . . 54, 76, 151, 184, 217, 253, 426, 685  
 W0087 (message) . . 54, 76, 151, 184, 235, 253, 427, 685  
 W0088 (message) . . 55, 77, 151, 184, 235, 253, 427, 685  
 W0089 (message) . . 55, 77, 151, 185, 236, 253, 427, 685  
 W0090 (message) . . 55, 77, 151, 185, 207, 253, 428, 685  
 W0091 (message) . . 55, 77, 151, 185, 209, 428  
 W0092 (message) . . 54, 80, 151, 185, 218, 254, 426, 663, 691  
 W0093 (message) . . . . . 151, 168, 405  
 W0094 (message) . . . . . 151, 169, 241, 405, 471  
 W0095 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 169, 398  
 W0096 (message) . . . . . 52, 151, 169, 398  
 W0097 (message) . . 54, 80, 151, 185, 217, 255, 414, 694  
 W0098 (message) . . . . . 30, 151, 169  
 W0099 (message) . . 54, 151, 186, 238, 256, 410, 695  
 WAGNER, Zdeněk . . . . . 506, 542, 700, ⇨[337]  
 WALDEN, David . . . . . 700, ⇨[159]  
 WALES, Jimmy . . . . . 240, 700  
 WARD, Nigel . . . . . 27, 247, 662, 700  
 WARNOCK, John . . . . . 700, ⇨[172]  
 WAUD, Douglas . . . . . 700, ⇨[422]  
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek . . . . . 700, ⇨[423]  
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. . . . . 700  
 welsh (language option) . . . . . 40, 616  
 welsh.dtx (file) . . . . . 616  
 welsh.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 616  
 WERNER, Eduard . . . . . 559, 614, 700, ⇨[98, 99]  
 WEST, Daphne . . . . . 700, ⇨[424]  
 WETTL, Ferenc . . . . . 700, ⇨[105, 106]  
 \widowpenalty (command) . . . . . 664  
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen . . . . . 700, ⇨[341–343]  
 wiki.png (graphic file) . . . . . 240, 243, 465  
 wiki.f.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243



Wikipedia . . . . . 240  
 WILLIAMS, Graham . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [425]  
 WILSON, Peter R. . . . . 51, 54, 55, 65, 66, 71, 73,  
     77, 89, 206, 207, 211, 223, 277, 700,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [426–441, 441–443]  
 win-gn.def (file) . . . . . 534  
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin . . . . . 582, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [305, 330]  
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth . . . . . 700  
 WOODING, Mark . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [305]  
 wrapfig (package) . . . . . 135, 227, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [17]  
 wrapfigure (environment) . . . . . 135, 227, 240  
 wratable (environment) . . . . . 240  
 WRIGHT, Joseph A. . . . . 89, 239, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [444]  
 WRIGHT, Tim . . . . . 700  
 \write . 2571, 2574, 2708, 2782, 3660, 3680,  
     7293  
 wrs-a.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 467  
 wrs-c.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 467  
 WUJASTYK, Dominik . . . . . 506, 542, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [337]  
 WYART, Damien . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [29]

## X

\X . . 9321, 9335, 9350, 9365, 9384, 9399, 9414  
 xalx (language option) . . . . . 40, 553, 617–619  
 \xalx . . . . . 9860, 10249  
 xalx.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 553, 617, 678  
 xalx2 (language option) . . . . . 40, 618  
 xalx2.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 618, 684  
 xalx3 (language option) . . . . . 40, 619  
 xalx3.mld (file) . . . . . 242, 246, 619, 684  
 xargs (package) . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [345, 346]  
 xargs (tool) . . . . . 53, 677  
 \xchapter (command) . . . . . 315, 318

\xchapter . . . . . 3266, 3542, 3603, 7587  
 \xdef (command) . . . . . 393  
 \xdef . . . . . 5779, 5813, 5847  
 X<sub>3</sub>TEX (package) . . . . . 232  
 X<sub>3</sub>TEX (package) . . . . . 232,  $\hookrightarrow$ [239]  
 xinjiang.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 611  
 xinjiangc.png (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 611  
 xmk (script) . . . . . 240, 243–246, 687  
 \xpart . . . . . 3695, 4216, 4276, 7587  
 xr (package) . . . . . 29, 240, 310, 662, 663, 679,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [110]  
 xr-hyper (package) . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [113]  
 \xsect . . . . . 4585, 4821, 4881, 7587  
 xyugo.pdf (graphic file) . . . . . 243, 503

## Y

YOGANANDA, C. S. . . . . 552, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [445]

## Z

ZAIMI, Adi . . . . . 473, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [100]  
 ZAMENHOF<sup>+</sup>, Ludwig Lejzer . . . . . 510, 700  
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo . . . . . 599, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [101]  
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad . 554, 555, 700,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [64]  
 ZENDER, Charlie S. . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [446]  
 ZENITH, Federico . . . . . 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [341–343]  
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. . . . . 593–595, 700,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [207, 447]  
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe . . . . . 700  
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon . . . . . 599, 700,  $\hookrightarrow$ [101]